wavelet

Structure and Design

Daniel J. Greenhoe

Mathematical Structure and Design series

3

title:	*Wavelet Structure and Design*
document type:	book
series:	*Mathematical Structure and Design*
volume:	3
author:	Daniel J. Greenhoe
version:	VERSION 1.30
time stamp:	2019 July 26 (Friday) 07:49pm UTC
copyright:	Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
license:	Creative Commons license CC BY-NC-ND 4.0
typesetting engine:	XeLaTeX
document url:	https://www.researchgate.net/project/Mathematical-Structure-and-Design
Octave/MatLab code:	https://github.com/dgreenhoe/wavelets

This text was typeset using XƎLaTeX, which is part of the TeXfamily of typesetting engines, which is arguably the greatest development since the Gutenberg Press. Graphics were rendered using the *pstricks* and related packages, and LaTeX graphics support.

The main roman, *italic*, and **bold** font typefaces used are all from the *Heuristica* family of typefaces (based on the *Utopia* typeface, released by *Adobe Systems Incorporated*). The math font is XITS from the XITS font project. The font used in quotation boxes is adapted from *Zapf Chancery Medium Italic*, originally from URW++ Design and Development Incorporated. The font used for the text in the title is Adventor (similar to *Avant-Garde*) from the *TeX-Gyre Project*. The font used for the ISBN in the footer of individual pages is LIQUID CRYSTAL (*Liquid Crystal*) from *FontLab Studio*. The Latin handwriting font is *Lavi* from the *Free Software Foundation*.

The ship appearing throughout this text is loosely based on the *Golden Hind*, a sixteenth century English galleon famous for circumnavigating the globe.[1]

[1] Paine (2000) page 63 ⟨Golden Hind⟩

This book is dedicated to Jesus,
who brings us over the waves
and through the storms of life,
if we but put our trust in Him;
and to my wife "Apple", for the
joy she has brought and
continues to bring to my life
and to the lives of our children,
Jonathan and Katie.

– Daniel

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

❝*Here, on the level sand,*
Between the sea and land,
What shall I build or write
Against the fall of night? ❞

❝*Tell me of runes to grave*
That hold the bursting wave,
Or bastions to design
For longer date than mine. ❞

Alfred Edward Housman, English poet (1859–1936) [2]

❝*The uninitiated imagine that one must await inspiration in order to create. That is a mistake. I am far from saying that there is no such thing as inspiration; quite the opposite. It is found as a driving force in every kind of human activity, and is in no wise peculiar to artists. But that force is brought into action by an effort, and that effort is work. Just as appetite comes by eating so work brings inspiration, if inspiration is not discernible at the beginning.* ❞

Igor Fyodorovich Stravinsky (1882–1971), Russian-born composer [3]

❝*As I think about acts of integrity and grace, I realise that there is nothing in my knowledge to compare with Frege's dedication to truth. His entire life's work was on the verge of completion, much of his work had been ignored to the benefit of men infinitely less capable, his second volume was about to be published, and upon finding that his fundamental assumption was in error, he responded with intellectual pleasure clearly submerging any feelings of personal disappointment. It was almost superhuman and a telling indication of that of which men are capable if their dedication is to creative work and knowledge instead of cruder efforts to dominate and be known.* ❞

Bertrand Russell (1872–1970), British mathematician, in a 1962 November 23 letter to Dr. van Heijenoort. [4]

[2] quote: Housman (1936), page 64 ⟨"Smooth Between Sea and Land"⟩, Hardy (1940) ⟨section 7⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Housman.jpg

[3] quote: Ewen (1961), page 408, Ewen (1950)
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Igor_Stravinsky.jpg

[4] quote: Heijenoort (1967), page 127
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/PictDisplay/Russell.html

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

SYMBOLS

❝ *rugula XVI. Quae vero praesentem mentis attentionem non requirunt, etiamsi ad conclusionem necessaria sint, illa melius est per brevissimas notas designare quam per integras figuras: ita enim memoria non poterit falli, nec tamen interim cogitatio distrahetur ad haec retinenda, dum aliis deducendis incumbit.* ❞

❝ *Rule XVI. As for things which do not require the immediate attention of the mind, however necessary they may be for the conclusion, it is better to represent them by very concise symbols rather than by complete figures. It will thus be impossible for our memory to go wrong, and our mind will not be distracted by having to retain these while it is taken up with deducing other matters.* ❞

René Descartes (1596–1650), French philosopher and mathematician [5]

❝ *In signs one observes an advantage in discovery which is greatest when they express the exact nature of a thing briefly and, as it were, picture it; then indeed the labor of thought is wonderfully diminished.* ❞

Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716), German mathematician, [6]

Symbol list

symbol	description	
numbers:		
$\mathbb{Z}$	integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{W}$	whole numbers	$0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{N}$	natural numbers	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Z}^{\dashv}$	non-positive integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1, 0$

…continued on next page…

[5] quote: Descartes (1684a) ⟨rugula XVI⟩, translation: Descartes (1684b) ⟨rule XVI⟩, image: Frans Hals (circa 1650), http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Descartes, public domain

[6] quote: Cajori (1993) ⟨paragraph 540⟩, image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gottfried_Wilhelm_von_Leibniz.jpg, public domain

symbol	description	
$\mathbb{Z}^-$	negative integers	$\ldots, -3, -2, -1$
$\mathbb{Z}_o$	odd integers	$\ldots, -3, -1, 1, 3, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Z}_e$	even integers	$\ldots, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, \ldots$
$\mathbb{Q}$	rational numbers	$\frac{m}{n}$ with $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}\backslash 0$
$\mathbb{R}$	real numbers	completion of $\mathbb{Q}$
$\mathbb{R}^{\vdash}$	non-negative real numbers	$[0, \infty)$
$\mathbb{R}^{\dashv}$	non-positive real numbers	$(-\infty, 0]$
$\mathbb{R}^+$	positive real numbers	$(0, \infty)$
$\mathbb{R}^-$	negative real numbers	$(-\infty, 0)$
$\mathbb{R}^*$	extended real numbers	$\mathbb{R}^* \triangleq \mathbb{R} \cup \{-\infty, \infty\}$
$\mathbb{C}$	complex numbers	
$\mathbb{F}$	arbitrary field	(often either $\mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$)
∞	positive infinity	
$-\infty$	negative infinity	
π	pi	$3.14159265\ldots$
relations:		
®	relation	
$\circledwedge$	relational and	
$X \times Y$	Cartesian product of X and Y	
$(\triangle, \triangledown)$	ordered pair	
$\lvert z \rvert$	absolute value of a complex number z	
$=$	equality relation	
$\triangleq$	equality by definition	
$\rightarrow$	maps to	
$\in$	is an element of	
$\notin$	is not an element of	
$\mathcal{D}(®)$	domain of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{I}(®)$	image of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{R}(®)$	range of a relation ®	
$\mathcal{N}(®)$	null space of a relation ®	
set relations:		
$\subseteq$	subset	
$\subsetneq$	proper subset	
$\supseteq$	super set	
$\supsetneq$	proper superset	
$\nsubseteq$	is not a subset of	
$\not\subset$	is not a proper subset of	
operations on sets:		
$A \cup B$	set union	
$A \cap B$	set intersection	
$A \triangle B$	set symmetric difference	
$A \backslash B$	set difference	
A^c	set complement	
$\lvert \cdot \rvert$	set order	
$\mathbb{1}_A(x)$	set indicator function or characteristic function	
logic:		
1	"true" condition	
0	"false" condition	
$\neg$	logical NOT operation	

...continued on next page...

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

symbol	description	
$\wedge$	logical AND operation	
$\vee$	logical inclusive OR operation	
$\oplus$	logical exclusive OR operation	
$\Longrightarrow$	"implies";	"only if"
$\Longleftarrow$	"implied by";	"if"
$\Longleftrightarrow$	"if and only if";	"implies and is implied by"
$\forall$	universal quantifier:	"for each"
$\exists$	existential quantifier:	"there exists"
order on sets:		
$\vee$	join or least upper bound	
$\wedge$	meet or greatest lower bound	
$\leq$	reflexive ordering relation	"less than or equal to"
$\geq$	reflexive ordering relation	"greater than or equal to"
$<$	irreflexive ordering relation	"less than"
$>$	irreflexive ordering relation	"greater than"
measures on sets:		
$\lvert X \rvert$	order or counting measure of a set X	
distance spaces:		
d	metric or distance function	
linear spaces:		
$\lVert\cdot\rVert$	vector norm	
$\lvert\lvert\lvert\cdot\rvert\rvert\rvert$	operator norm	
$\langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle$	inner-product	
$\mathsf{span}(\boldsymbol{V})$	span of a linear space $\boldsymbol{V}$	
algebras:		
$\Re$	real part of an element in a $*$-algebra	
$\Im$	imaginary part of an element in a $*$-algebra	
set structures:		
$\boldsymbol{T}$	a topology of sets	
$\boldsymbol{R}$	a ring of sets	
$\boldsymbol{A}$	an algebra of sets	
$\varnothing$	empty set	
2^X	power set on a set X	
sets of set structures:		
$\mathcal{T}(X)$	set of topologies on a set X	
$\mathcal{R}(X)$	set of rings of sets on a set X	
$\mathcal{A}(X)$	set of algebras of sets on a set X	
classes of relations/functions/operators:		
2^{XY}	set of *relations* from X to Y	
Y^X	set of *functions* from X to Y	
$\mathcal{S}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *surjective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{I}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *injective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{B}_{\mathsf{j}}(X,Y)$	set of *bijective* functions from X to Y	
$\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *bounded* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *linear bounded* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
$\mathcal{C}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	set of *continuous* functions/operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{Y}$	
specific transforms/operators:		
$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$	*Fourier Transform* operator (Definition K.2 page 255)	
$\hat{\mathbf{F}}$	*Fourier Series* operator (Definition J.1 page 251)	

...continued on next page...

CC BY-NC-ND

symbol	description
$\check{\mathbf{F}}$	*Discrete Time Fourier Series* operator (Definition P.1 page 353)
$\mathbf{Z}$	*Z-Transform* operator (Definition O.4 page 340)
$\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$	*Fourier Transform* of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$
$\check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)$	*Discrete Time Fourier Transform* of a sequence $(\!(x_n \in \mathbb{C})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$
$\check{\mathsf{x}}(z)$	*Z-Transform* of a sequence $(\!(x_n \in \mathbb{C})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

SYMBOL INDEX

$T_n(x)$, 236
$\mathbb{C}$, 1
$\mathbb{Q}$, 6
$\mathbb{R}$, 1
$\mathbb{1}$, 2
D_n, 242
$\mathfrak{I}$, 211
$\mathfrak{R}$, 211
$\bar{\delta}_n$, 276
$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(z)$, 371
$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(z)$, 371
$\check{D}$, 395
$\doteq$, 209
$\left(\left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \subseteq\right)$, 21
$\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right)\right)$, 16
$\|\cdot\|$, 160
$\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$, 183
$\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, 183
$\boldsymbol{PW}^2_{\sigma}$, 12
$\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}$, 152
$\bigoplus$, 387
$\exp(ix)$, 218
$\tan$, 223
$\star$, 339
$\dot{=}$, 209
$\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C})$, 12
$\cos$, 223
$\cos(x)$, 213
$\sin$, 223
$\sin(x)$, 213
σ, 295
$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$, 371
$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$, 371
$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$, 256
$\vee$, 31
$\wedge$, 31
w_N, 243
X, 1
Y, 1
$\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$, 1
$\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$, 1
$\mathbf{D}^*$, 4
$\mathbf{D}_\alpha$, 2
$\mathbf{I}$, 156
$\mathbf{T}^*$, 4
$\mathbf{T}$, 2
$\mathbf{T}_\tau$, 2
$\mathbf{Z}$, 340
$\mathsf{N}_n(x)$, 295
ϕ, 16
span, 265
$x^{\overline{m}}$, **131**
Y^X, 1
$\lceil x \rceil$, 32
$\lfloor x \rfloor$, 32
T_n, 236
$\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$, 252
$\hat{\mathbf{F}}^*$, 254
$\hat{\mathbf{F}}$, 251
$|||\cdot|||$, 161
$\star$, 258
$\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$, 163
$\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$, 157

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CONTENTS

Front matter i
Front cover . . . i
Title page . . . v
Typesetting . . . vi
Dedication . . . vii
Quotes . . . ix
Symbol list . . . xi
Symbol index . . . xv
Contents . . . xvii

1 Transversal Operators 1
1.1 Families of Functions . . . 1
1.2 Definitions and algebraic properties . . . 2
1.3 Linear space properties . . . 3
1.4 Inner product space properties . . . 4
1.5 Normed linear space properties . . . 5
1.6 Fourier transform properties . . . 7
1.7 Examples . . . 12

2 MRA Structures 15
2.1 Introduction . . . 15
2.2 Definition . . . 16
2.3 Order structure . . . 21
2.4 Dilation equation . . . 21
2.5 Necessary Conditions . . . 27
2.6 Sufficient conditions . . . 31
2.7 Support size . . . 31
2.8 Scaling functions with partition of unity . . . 33

3 Wavelet Structures 41
3.1 Introduction . . . 41
3.1.1 What are wavelets? . . . 41
3.1.2 Analyses . . . 42
3.2 Definition . . . 43
3.3 Dilation equation . . . 44
3.4 Order structure . . . 45
3.5 Subspace algebraic structure . . . 46
3.6 Necessary conditions . . . 47
3.7 Sufficient condition . . . 50
3.8 Support size . . . 51
3.9 Examples . . . 52

4 Vanishing Moments Constraint 55
4.1 Moments . . . 55
4.2 Vanishing moments and the wavelet function . . . 56

4.3 Vanishing moments and the scaling function . . . 57
4.3.1 Results . . . 57
4.3.2 Scaling function and polynomials . . . 59
4.3.3 Scaling function and continuity . . . 64
4.4 Sufficient conditions . . . 65

5 Orthonormality Constraint **67**
5.1 Definition . . . 67
5.2 Orthonormal MRA systems . . . 67
5.2.1 Scaling coefficients from scaling function . . . 67
5.2.2 Necessary conditions . . . 69
5.2.3 Sufficient conditions . . . 74
5.2.4 Orthonormal basis from Riesz basis . . . 79
5.3 Orthonormal wavelet systems . . . 79
5.3.1 Subspace properties . . . 79
5.3.2 Wavelet coefficients from wavelet and scaling functions . . . 80
5.3.3 Necessary conditions . . . 81
5.3.4 Sufficient conditions . . . 89
5.4 Examples . . . 90

6 Minimum Phase Constraint **95**
6.1 General structure . . . 95
6.2 Design details . . . 105
6.3 Examples . . . 109

7 Quasi-symmetry Constraint **119**
7.1 Design details . . . 119
7.2 Examples . . . 122

I Appendices **127**

A Algebraic structures **129**

B Binomial Relations **131**
B.1 Factorials . . . 131
B.2 Binomial identities . . . 132
B.3 Binomial summations . . . 138

C Polynomials **143**
C.1 Definitions . . . 143
C.2 Ring properties . . . 144
C.2.1 Polynomial Arithmetic . . . 144
C.2.2 Greatest common divisor . . . 145
C.3 Roots . . . 148
C.4 Polynomial expansions . . . 152

D Operators on Linear Spaces **155**
D.1 Operators on linear spaces . . . 155
D.1.1 Operator Algebra . . . 155
D.1.2 Linear operators . . . 157
D.2 Operators on Normed linear spaces . . . 160
D.2.1 Operator norm . . . 160
D.2.2 Bounded linear operators . . . 163
D.2.3 Adjoints on normed linear spaces . . . 165
D.2.4 More properties . . . 166
D.3 Operators on Inner product spaces . . . 168
D.3.1 General Results . . . 168
D.3.2 Operator adjoint . . . 169
D.4 Special Classes of Operators . . . 171
D.4.1 Projection operators . . . 171
D.4.2 Self Adjoint Operators . . . 172

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

D.4.3 Normal Operators . . . 174
D.4.4 Isometric operators . . . 175
D.4.5 Unitary operators . . . 178

E Calculus **183**

F Finite Sums **187**
F.1 Summation . . . 187
F.2 Means . . . 189
F.2.1 Weighted ϕ-means . . . 189
F.2.2 Power means . . . 190
F.3 Power Sums . . . 199

G Infinite Sums **201**
G.1 Convergence . . . 201
G.2 Multiplication . . . 205
G.3 Summability . . . 207
G.4 Convergence in Banach spaces . . . 209
G.5 Convergence tests for real sequences . . . 209

H Trigonometric Functions **211**
H.1 Definition Candidates . . . 211
H.2 Definitions . . . 213
H.3 Basic properties . . . 213
H.4 The complex exponential . . . 218
H.5 Trigonometric Identities . . . 220
H.6 Planar Geometry . . . 226
H.7 The power of the exponential . . . 227

I Trigonometric Polynomials **231**
I.1 Trigonometric expansion . . . 231
I.2 Trigonometric reduction . . . 236
I.3 Spectral Factorization . . . 240
I.4 Dirichlet Kernel . . . 241
I.5 Trigonometric summations . . . 245

J Fourier Series **251**
J.1 Definition . . . 251
J.2 Inverse Fourier Series operator . . . 252
J.3 Fourier series for compactly supported functions . . . 254

K Fourier Transform **255**
K.1 Definitions . . . 255
K.2 Operator properties . . . 256
K.3 Convolution . . . 258
K.4 Real valued functions . . . 259
K.5 Moment properties . . . 260
K.6 Examples . . . 262

L Linear Combinations **265**
L.1 Linear combinations in linear spaces . . . 265
L.2 Bases in topological linear spaces . . . 269
L.3 Schauder bases in Banach spaces . . . 270
L.4 Linear combinations in inner product spaces . . . 272
L.5 Orthonormal bases in Hilbert spaces . . . 276
L.6 Riesz bases in Hilbert spaces . . . 283
L.7 Frames in Hilbert spaces . . . 288

M B-Splines **295**
M.1 Definitions . . . 295
M.2 Algebraic properties . . . 299
M.3 Projection properties . . . 308
M.4 Fourier analysis . . . 309

BY-NC-ND

M.5 Basis properties . . . 311
M.5.1 Uniqueness properties . . . 311
M.5.2 Partition of unity properties . . . 312
M.5.3 Riesz basis properties . . . 313
M.6 Mutiresolution properties . . . 319
M.6.1 Introduction . . . 319
M.6.2 B-spline dyadic decomposition . . . 319
M.6.3 B-spline MRA scaling functions . . . 321
M.6.4 B-spline MRA coefficient sequences . . . 322

N Interpolation **327**
N.1 Polynomial interpolation . . . 327
N.2 Hermite interpolation . . . 331
N.3 Cardinal Series and Sampling . . . 334
N.3.1 Cardinal series basis . . . 334
N.3.2 Sampling . . . 336

O Operations on Sequences **339**
O.1 Convolution operator . . . 339
O.2 Z-transform . . . 340
O.3 From z-domain back to time-domain . . . 342
O.4 Zero locations . . . 343
O.5 Pole locations . . . 344
O.6 Mirroring for real coefficients . . . 345
O.7 Rational polynomial operators . . . 346
O.8 Filter Banks . . . 347
O.9 Inverting non-minimum phase filters . . . 351

P Discrete Time Fourier Transform **353**
P.1 Definition . . . 353
P.2 Properties . . . 353
P.3 Derivatives . . . 361

Q Partition of Unity **363**
Q.1 Definition and motivation . . . 363
Q.2 Results . . . 364
Q.3 Examples . . . 365

R Power Spectrum Functions **371**
R.1 Correlation . . . 371
R.2 Power Spectrum . . . 371

S Pollen Parameterized Wavelets **379**

T Fast Wavelet Transform (FWT) **383**

U Translation Spaces **387**
U.1 Translation . . . 387
U.1.1 Definitions . . . 387
U.1.2 Examples . . . 388
U.1.3 Additive properties . . . 390
U.1.4 Subtractive properties . . . 392
U.2 Operations . . . 395

V Source Code **397**
V.1 GNU Octave script file . . . 397
V.2 B-spline polynomial calculation and plotting . . . 407
V.3 Auto-power spectrum plot . . . 410

Back Matter **413**
References . . . 414
Reference Index . . . 441
Subject Index . . . 445

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

License 460
End of document 461

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 1

TRANSVERSAL OPERATORS

❝ *Je me plaisois surtout aux mathématiques, à cause de la certitude et de l'évidence de leurs raisons: mais je ne remarquois point encore leur vrai usage; et, pensant qu'elles ne servoient qu'aux arts mécaniques, je m'étonnois de ce que leurs fondements étant si fermes et si solides, on n'avoit rien bâti dessus de plus relevé:* ❞

❝ *I was especially delighted with the mathematics, on account of the certitude and evidence of their reasonings; but I had not as yet a precise knowledge of their true use; and thinking that they but contributed to the advancement of the mechanical arts, I was astonished that foundations, so strong and solid, should have had no loftier superstructure reared on them.* ❞

René Descartes, philosopher and mathematician (1596–1650) [1]

1.1 Families of Functions

This text is largely set in the space of *Lebesgue square-integrable functions* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183). The space $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is a subspace of the space $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$, the set of all functions with *domain* $\mathbb{R}$ (the set of real numbers) and *range* $\mathbb{R}$. The space $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ is a subspace of the space $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$, the set of all functions with *domain* $\mathbb{C}$ (the set of complex numbers) and *range* $\mathbb{C}$. That is, $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \subseteq \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$. In general, the notation Y^X represents the set of all functions with domain X and range Y (Definition 1.1 page 1). Although this notation may seem curious, note that for finite X and finite Y, the number of functions (elements) in Y^X is $\left| Y^X \right| = | Y |^{| X |}$.

Definition 1.1. *Let X and Y be sets.*

DEF *The space Y^X represents the set of all functions with* DOMAIN *X and* RANGE *Y such that*

$$Y^X \triangleq \{\mathsf{f}(x) | \mathsf{f}(x) : X \to Y\}$$

Definition 1.2. [2] *Let X be a set.*

[1] quote: Descartes (1637b)
translation: Descartes (1637c) ⟨part I, paragraph 10⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Frans_Hals_-_Portret_van_Ren%C3%A9_Descartes.jpg, public domain

[2] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 126, Hausdorff (1937), page 22, de la Vallée-Poussin (1915) page 440

DEF *The* ***indicator function*** $\mathbb{1} \in \{0,1\}^{2^X}$ *is defined as*

$$\mathbb{1}_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in A \quad \forall x \in X,\ A \in 2^X \\ 0 & \text{for } x \notin A \quad \forall x \in X,\ A \in 2^X \end{cases}$$

The indicator function $\mathbb{1}$ *is also called the* ***characteristic function****.*

1.2 Definitions and algebraic properties

Much of the wavelet theory developed in this text is constructed using the **translation operator T** and the **dilation operator D** (next).

Definition 1.3. [3]

DEF $\mathbf{T}_\tau$ *is a* ***translation operator*** *on* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *if* $\mathbf{T}_\tau \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x-\tau) \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$.

$\mathbf{D}_\alpha$ *is a* ***dilation operator*** *on* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *if* $\mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(\alpha x) \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$.

Moreover, $\mathbf{T} \triangleq \mathbf{T}_1$ *and* $\mathbf{D} \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathbf{D}_2$.

Example 1.1. Let **T** and **D** be defined as in Definition 1.3 (page 2).

EX

Proposition 1.1. *Let* $\mathbf{T}_\tau$ *be a* TRANSLATION OPERATOR *(Definition 1.3 page 2).*

PRP $$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x+\tau) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x) \text{ is PERIODIC with period } \tau\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x+\tau) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x - n\tau + \tau) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_\tau && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x - m\tau) && \text{where } m \triangleq n-1 && \Longrightarrow \quad n = m+1 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^m \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_\tau && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

In a linear space, every operator has an *inverse*. Although the inverse always exists as a *relation*, it may not exist as a *function* or as an *operator*. But in some cases the inverse of an operator is itself an operator. The inverses of the operators **T** and **D** both exist as operators, as demonstrated next.

Proposition 1.2 (transversal operator inverses)**.** *Let* **T** *and* **D** *be as defined in Definition 1.3 page 2.*

PRP **T** *has an* INVERSE $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *in* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *expressed by the relation*

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}} \qquad \textit{(translation operator inverse).}$$

D *has an* INVERSE $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *in* $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *expressed by the relation*

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}} \qquad \textit{(dilation operator inverse).}$$

[3] Walnut (2002) pages 79–80 ⟨Definition 3.39⟩, Christensen (2003) pages 41–42, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 18 ⟨Definitions 2.3,2.4⟩, Kammler (2008) page A-21, Bachman et al. (2000) page 473, Packer (2004) page 260, Benedetto and Zayed (2004) page , Heil (2011) page 250 ⟨Notation 9.4⟩, Casazza and Lammers (1998) page 74, Goodman et al. (1993a), page 639, Heil and Walnut (1989) page 633 ⟨Definition 1.3.1⟩, Dai and Lu (1996), page 81, Dai and Larson (1998) page 2

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ is the inverse of $\mathbf{T}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x-1) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \mathsf{f}([x+1]-1)\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \mathsf{f}([x-1]+1)\\
&= \mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x+1) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\\
\Longrightarrow \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T} &= \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ is the inverse of $\mathbf{D}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \left(\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}\left(2\left[\tfrac{1}{2}x\right]\right)\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \sqrt{2}\left[\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}[2x]\right)\right]\\
&= \mathbf{D}\left[\tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\tfrac{1}{2}x\right)\right] && \text{by defintion of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\\
\Longrightarrow \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D} &= \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition 1.3. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as defined in Definition 1.3 page 2.*
Let $\mathbf{D}^0 = \mathbf{T}^0 \triangleq \mathbf{I}$ *be the* IDENTITY OPERATOR.

PRP $\quad \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) = 2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x - n\right) \qquad \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$

1.3 Linear space properties

Proposition 1.4. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2.*

PRP $\quad \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\left[\mathsf{f}\mathsf{g}\right] = 2^{-j/2}\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}\right]\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}\right] \qquad \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\left[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)\right] &= 2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x - n\right)\mathsf{g}\left(2^j x - n\right) && \text{by Proposition 1.3 page 3}\\
&= 2^{-j/2}\left[2^{j/2}\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x - n\right)\right]\left[2^{j/2}\mathsf{g}\left(2^j x - n\right)\right]\\
&= 2^{-j/2}\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x)\right]\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}(x)\right] && \text{by Proposition 1.3 page 3}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

In general the operators $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *noncommutative* ($\mathbf{TD} \neq \mathbf{DT}$), as demonstrated by Counterexample 1.1 (next) and Proposition 1.5 (page 4).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

BY-NC-ND

Counterexample 1.1.

CNT

As illustrated to the right, it is **not** always true that $\mathbf{TD} = \mathbf{DT}$:

Proposition 1.5 (commutator relation)**.** [4] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2.*

PRP

$$\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n = \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n}\mathbf{D}^j \quad \forall j,n\in\mathbb{Z}$$
$$\mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}^j = \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{2^j n} \quad \forall n,j\in\mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{2^j n}\mathsf{f}(x) &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(2^j x - 2^j n) && \text{by Proposition 1.4 page 3} \\
&= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j[x-n]\right) && \text{by } \textit{distributivity} \text{ of the field } (\mathbb{R},+,\cdot,0,1) \quad \text{(Definition A.6 page 130)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}^n 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}^j\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{n}\mathsf{f}(x) &= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(2^j x - n) && \text{by Proposition 1.4 page 3} \\
&= 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j\left[x - 2^{-j/2}n\right]\right) && \text{by } \textit{distributivity} \text{ of the field } (\mathbb{R},+,\cdot,0,1) \quad \text{(Definition A.6 page 130)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n} 2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^j x\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}^{2^{-j/2}n}\mathbf{D}^j\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

1.4 Inner product space properties

In an inner product space, every operator has an *adjoint* (Proposition D.3 page 169) and this adjoint is always itself an operator. In the case where the adjoint and inverse of an operator $\mathbf{U}$ coincide, then $\mathbf{U}$ is said to be *unitary* (Definition D.14 page 178). And in this case, $\mathbf{U}$ has several nice properties (see Proposition 1.9 and Theorem 1.1 page 7). Proposition 1.6 (next) gives the adjoints of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{T}$, and Proposition 1.7 (page 5) demonstrates that both $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{T}$ are unitary. Other examples of unitary operators include the *Fourier Transform operator* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ (Corollary K.1 page 257) and the *rotation matrix operator* (Example D.10 page 182).

Proposition 1.6. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the* TRANSLATION OPERATOR *(Definition 1.3 page 2) with* ADJOINT $\mathbf{T}^*$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *the* DILATION OPERATOR *with* ADJOINT $\mathbf{D}^*$ *(Definition D.8 page 165).*

PRP

$$\mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1) \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \quad \text{(TRANSLATION OPERATOR ADJOINT)}$$
$$\mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \quad \text{(DILATION OPERATOR ADJOINT)}$$

✎PROOF:

[4] Christensen (2003) page 42 ⟨equation (2.9)⟩, Dai and Larson (1998) page 21, Goodman et al. (1993a), page 641, Goodman et al. (1993b), page 110

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by change of variable } x \to u \\
&= \langle \mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint } \mathbf{T}^* && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \langle \mathsf{g}(u-1) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(x+1)\rangle && \text{where } x \triangleq u-1 \implies u = x+1 \\
\implies \mathbf{T}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathsf{f}(x+1)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by change of variable } x \to u \\
&= \langle \mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}(u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}^* && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \left\langle \sqrt{2}\mathsf{g}(2u) \,|\, \mathsf{f}(u)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\mathsf{g}(2u)\mathsf{f}^*(u)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle \\
&= \int_{x\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{g}(x)\left[\sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\frac{1}{2}\right]^*\mathrm{d}x && \text{where } x = 2u \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{g}(x) \,|\, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \nabla\rangle \\
\implies \mathbf{D}^*\mathsf{f}(x) &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

✍

Proposition 1.7. [5] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 (page 2).*
Let $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition 1.2 (page 2).*

PRP
$\mathbf{T}$ *is* UNITARY *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $\quad(\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{T}^*$ *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}})$.
$\mathbf{D}$ *is* UNITARY *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $\quad(\mathbf{D}^{-1} = \mathbf{D}^*$ *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}})$.

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}^{-1} &= \mathbf{T}^* && \text{by Proposition 1.2 page 2 and Proposition 1.6 page 4} \\
\implies &\quad \mathbf{T} \text{ is } \textit{unitary} && \text{by the definition of } \textit{unitary} \text{ operators (Definition D.14 page 178)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^{-1} &= \mathbf{D}^* && \text{by Proposition 1.2 page 2 and Proposition 1.6 page 4} \\
\implies &\quad \mathbf{D} \text{ is } \textit{unitary} && \text{by the definition of } \textit{unitary} \text{ operators (Definition D.14 page 178)}
\end{aligned}$$

✍

1.5 Normed linear space properties

Proposition 1.8. *Let* $\mathbf{D}$ *be the* DILATION OPERATOR *(Definition 1.3 page 2).*

PRP
$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} (1). & \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x) \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & \mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is } \text{CONTINUOUS} \end{array}\right\} \iff \{\mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is a } \text{CONSTANT}\} \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

[5] Christensen (2003) page 41 ⟨Lemma 2.5.1⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 18 ⟨Lemma 2.5⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

1. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ *constant* property:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) &\triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\ &= \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by } \textit{constant} \text{ hypothesis}\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\Longleftarrow$ *constant* property:

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x+h)\| &= \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x)\| && \text{by } \textit{constant} \text{ hypothesis}\\ &= \|0\|\\ &= 0 && \text{by } \textit{nondegenerate} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\|\\ &\le \varepsilon\\ &\Longrightarrow \forall h>0,\ \exists\varepsilon \quad \text{such that} \quad \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(x+h)\|<\varepsilon\\ &\overset{\text{def}}{\Longleftrightarrow} \mathsf{f}(x) \text{ is } \textit{continuous}\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (1,2) $\Longrightarrow$ *constant* property:
   (a) Suppose there exists $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathsf{f}(x) \neq \mathsf{f}(y)$.
   (b) Let $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence with limit x and $(\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ a sequence with limit y
   (c) Then

$$\begin{aligned}0 &< \|\mathsf{f}(x)-\mathsf{f}(y)\| && \text{by assumption in item (3a) page 6}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathsf{f}\left(x_n\right)-\mathsf{f}\left(y_n\right)\right\| && \text{by (2) and definition of } (\!(x_n)\!) \text{ and } (\!(y_n)\!) \text{ in item (3b) page 6}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathsf{f}\left(2^m x_n\right)-\mathsf{f}\left(2^\ell y_n\right)\right\| \quad \forall m,\ell\in\mathbb{Z} && \text{by (1)}\\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

   (d) But this is a *contradiction*, so $\mathsf{f}(x)=\mathsf{f}(y)$ for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, and $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *constant*.

✏

Remark 1.1.

REM In Proposition 1.8 page 5, it is not possible to remove the *continuous* constraint outright, as demonstrated by the next two counterexamples.

Counterexample 1.2. Let $\mathsf{f}(x)$ be a function in $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.

CNT Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x=0\\ 1 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$

Then $\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x)$, but $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *not constant*.

Counterexample 1.3. Let $\mathsf{f}(x)$ be a function in $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.
Let $\mathbb{Q}$ be the set of *rational numbers* and $\mathbb{R}\backslash\mathbb{Q}$ the set of *irrational numbers*.

CNT Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x\in\mathbb{Q}\\ -1 & \text{for } x\in\mathbb{R}\backslash\mathbb{Q}.\end{cases}$

Then $\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) = \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(x)$, but $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *not constant*.

Proposition 1.9 (Operator norm)**.** *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2. Let* $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition 1.2 page 2. Let* $\mathbf{T}^*$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^*$ *be as in Proposition 1.6 page 4. Let* $\|\cdot\|$ *and* $\langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle$ *be as in Definition E.1 page 183. Let* $|||\cdot|||$ *be the operator norm (Definition D.6 page 161) induced by* $\|\cdot\|$.

PRP $|||\mathbf{T}||| = |||\mathbf{D}||| = |||\mathbf{T}^*||| = |||\mathbf{D}^*||| = |||\mathbf{T}^{-1}||| = |||\mathbf{D}^{-1}||| = 1$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *unitary* (Proposition 1.7 page 5) and from Theorem D.23 page 178 and Theorem D.24 page 179. ✏

Theorem 1.1. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2.*
Let $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *be as in Proposition 1.2 page 2. Let* $\|\cdot\|$ *and* $\langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle$ *be as in Definition E.1 page 183.*

THM							
1.	$\|\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}\|$	$\forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN LENGTH)
2.	$\|\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}-\mathsf{g}\|$	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN DISTANCE)
3.	$\left\|\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\|$	$=$	$\left\|\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}-\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\|$	$=$	$\|\mathsf{f}-\mathsf{g}\|$	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(ISOMETRIC IN DISTANCE)
4.	$\langle\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}\,\|\,\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}\,\|\,\mathbf{D}\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathsf{f}\,\|\,\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(SURJECTIVE)
5.	$\left\langle\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\,\middle\|\,\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\rangle$	$=$	$\left\langle\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\,\middle\|\,\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\rangle$	$=$	$\langle\mathsf{f}\,\|\,\mathsf{g}\rangle$	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(SURJECTIVE)

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ are *unitary* (Proposition 1.7 page 5) and from Theorem D.23 page 178 and Theorem D.24 page 179. ✏

Proposition 1.10. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2. Let* $\mathbf{A}^*$ *be the* ADJOINT *(Definition D.8 page 165) of an operator* $\mathbf{A}$*. Let the property "*SELF ADJOINT*" be defined as in Definition D.11 (page 172).*

PRP		
	$\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) = \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)^*$	$\left(\textit{The operator}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right]\textit{ is}\ \text{SELF-ADJOINT}\right)$

✎PROOF:

$$\left\langle\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle = \left\langle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{f}(x-n)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle \quad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}$$

$$= \left\langle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{f}(x+n)\,\middle|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle \quad \text{by } \textit{commutative} \text{ property} \quad \text{(Definition A.5 page 130)}$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\langle\mathsf{f}(x+n)\,|\,\mathsf{g}(x)\rangle \quad \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\langle\mathsf{f}(u)\,|\,\mathsf{g}(u-n)\rangle \quad \text{where } u \triangleq x+n$$

$$= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(u)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{g}(u-n)\right\rangle \quad \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle$$

$$= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{g}(x-n)\right\rangle \quad \text{by change of variable: } u\to x$$

$$= \left\langle\mathsf{f}(x)\,\middle|\,\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle \quad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) = \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right)^* \quad \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} \quad \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\right) \text{ is } \textit{self-adjoint} \quad \text{by definition of } \textit{self-adjoint} \quad \text{(Definition D.11 page 172)}$$

✏

1.6 Fourier transform properties

Proposition 1.11. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2.*
Let $\mathbf{B}$ *be the* TWO-SIDED LAPLACE TRANSFORM *defined as* $[\mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}](s) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(x)e^{-sx}\,dx$.

CC BY-NC-ND

PRP

1.	$\mathbf{BT}^n$	$=$	$e^{-sn}\mathbf{B}$			$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$	
2.	$\mathbf{BD}^j$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}^{-j}\mathbf{B}$			$\forall j\in\mathbb{Z}$	
3.	$\mathbf{DB}$	$=$	$\mathbf{BD}^{-1}$			$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$	
4.	$\mathbf{BD}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^{-1}$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B}$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}$	$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$	($\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ *is* SIMILAR *to* $\mathbf{D}$)
5.	$\mathbf{DBD}$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{BD}^{-1}$	$=$	$\mathbf{B}$	$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$	

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{BT}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-s(u+n)}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq x-n\\
&= e^{-sn}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= e^{-sn}\,\mathbf{B}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{BD}^j\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{B}\left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx\right)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}\left(2^jx\right)\right]e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[2^{j/2}\,\mathsf{f}(u)\right]e^{-s2^{-j}}2^{-j}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2^jx \implies x = 2^{-j}u\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-s2^{-j}u}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] && \text{by Proposition 1.6 page 4 and} && \text{Proposition 1.7 page 5}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}\,\mathbf{B}\,\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
\mathbf{DB}\,\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-sx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-2sx}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}\left(\frac{u}{2}\right)e^{-su}\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2x \implies x = \tfrac{1}{2}u\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{u}{2}\right)\right]e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\right](u)\,e^{-su}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Proposition 1.6 page 4 and} && \text{Proposition 1.7 page 5}\\
&= \mathbf{BD}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{B}\\
\mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{B} &= \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{BD} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{D} && \text{by definition of operator inverse} && \text{(Definition D.3 page 156)}\\
\mathbf{BD}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^{-1} &= \mathbf{DBB}^{-1} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{D} && \text{by definition of operator inverse} && \text{(Definition D.3 page 156)}\\
\mathbf{DBD} &= \mathbf{DD}^{-1}\mathbf{B} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator inverse} && \text{(Definition D.3 page 156)}\\
\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{BD}^{-1} &= \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{DB} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator inverse} && \text{(Definition D.3 page 156)}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✏

Corollary 1.1. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2. Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of some function* $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

COR

1. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n = e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
2. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j = \mathbf{D}^{-j}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
3. $\mathbf{D}\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$
4. $\mathbf{D} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$
5. $\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{D}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^{-1}$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from Proposition 1.11 page 7 with $\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{B}|_{s=i\omega}$. ✏

Proposition 1.12. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as in Definition 1.3 page 2. Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of some function* $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

PRP

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{2^{j/2}}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \mathbf{D}^{-j}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9 (3)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9 (3)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}^{-j}e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &&\\
&= 2^{-j/2}e^{-i2^{-j}\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(2^{-j}\omega\right) && \text{by Proposition 1.2 page 2}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition 1.13. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the translation operator (Definition 1.3 page 2). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

PRP

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) = \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \qquad \forall (\!(a_n)\!)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \phi(x)\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) &&\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi(x) && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9}\\
&= \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right]\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\\
&= \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \textit{DTFT} \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Definition 1.4. *Let* $L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$ *be the* SPACE OF LEBESGUE SQUARE-INTEGRABLE FUNCTIONS *(Definition E.1 page 183). Let* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *be the* SPACE OF ALL ABSOLUTELY SQUARE SUMMABLE SEQUENCES OVER $\mathbb{R}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

DEF

$\mathbf{S}$ *is the* ***sampling operator*** *in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}{}^{L^2_{\mathbb{R}}}$ *if* $[\mathbf{S}\mathsf{f}(x)](n) \triangleq \mathsf{f}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}, \tau\in\mathbb{R}^+$

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem 1.2 (Poisson Summation Formula—PSF). [6] *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\mathbf{S}$ *be the* SAMPLING OPERATOR *(Definition 1.4 page 9).*

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}_\tau^n \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)}_{\text{summation in "time"}} = \underbrace{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)]}_{\text{operator notation}} = \underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}}_{\text{summation in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: If $\mathsf{h}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)$ then $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$. Proof:

   Note that $\mathsf{h}(x)$ is *periodic* with period τ (Lemma F.3 page 199). Because h is periodic, it is in the domain of $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ and thus $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$.

2. Proof of PSF (this theorem—Theorem 1.2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau) &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau) && \text{by (1) lemma page 10}\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)\right)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)\right]} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition J.1 page 251)}\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u=n\tau}^{u=(n+1)\tau} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k(u-n\tau)}\,\mathrm{d}u\right] && \text{where } u \triangleq x+n\tau \implies x = u-n\tau\\
&= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi kn}}\int_{u=n\tau}^{u=(n+1)\tau} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}ku}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}]\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)} && \text{by evaluation of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)}\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)]\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}k\right)\right] && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}\\
&= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \quad \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} && \text{by evaluation of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem 1.3 (Inverse Poisson Summation Formula—IPSF). [7]
Let $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

[6] Andrews et al. (2001), page 624, Knapp (2005b) page 389, Lasser (1996), page 254, Rudin (1987), pages 194–195, Folland (1992), page 337

[7] Gauss (1900), page 88

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n_{2\pi/\tau}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)}_{\textit{summation in "frequency"}} = \underbrace{\frac{\tau}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)e^{-i\omega n\tau}}_{\textit{summation in "time"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: If $\mathsf{h}(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)$, then $\mathsf{h} \equiv \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$. Proof:
   Note that $\mathsf{h}(\omega)$ is periodic with period $2\pi/T$:
   $$\mathsf{h}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}\right) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau} + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + (n+1)\frac{2\pi}{\tau}\right) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \triangleq \mathsf{h}(\omega)$$
   Because h is periodic, it is in the domain of $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ and is equivalent to $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{h}$.
2. Proof of IPSF (this theorem—Theorem 1.3):
   $$\begin{aligned}
   &\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) && \text{by (1) lemma page 11} \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\int_0^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{-i\omega\frac{2\pi}{2\pi/\tau}k}\,d\omega\right]}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)\right]} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition J.1 page 251)} \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_0^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)e^{-i\omega Tk}\,d\omega\right] \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u=\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}^{u=\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(n+1)} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-i\left(u-\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)Tk}\,du\right] && \text{where } u \triangleq \omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n \implies \omega = u - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi nk}}\int_{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}^{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(n+1)} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-iu\tau k}\,du\right] \\
   &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{-iu\tau k}\,du\right] \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u)e^{iu(-\tau k)}\,du\right]}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}](-k\tau)} \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left[[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}](-k\tau)\right] && \text{by value of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem K.1 page 256)} \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\,\tilde{\mathsf{f}} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \quad \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)} \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)} \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(-k\tau) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \quad \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)} \\
   &= \sqrt{\tau}\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(-k\tau)e^{i2\pi\frac{1}{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}k\omega} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)} \\
   &= \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(-k\tau)e^{ik\tau\omega} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \quad \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)} \\
   &= \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(m\tau)e^{-i\omega m\tau} && \text{let } m \triangleq -k
   \end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

Remark 1.2. The left hand side of the *Poisson Summation Formula* (Theorem 1.2 page 10) is very similar to the *Zak Transform* $\mathbf{Z}$: [8]

$$(\mathbf{Z}\mathsf{f})(t,\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau)e^{i2\pi n\omega}$$

Remark 1.3. A generalization of the *Poisson Summation Formula* (Theorem 1.2 page 10) is the **Selberg Trace Formula**.[9]

1.7 Examples

Example 1.2 (linear functions). [10] Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the *translation operator* (Definition 1.3 page 2). Let $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$ be the set of all *linear* functions in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX

1. $\{x, \mathbf{T}x\}$ is a *basis* for $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)\mathbf{T}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \mathcal{L}(\mathbb{C},\mathbb{C})$

✎PROOF: By left hypothesis, f is *linear*; so let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq ax+b$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)\mathbf{T}x &= \mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)(x-1) && \text{by Definition 1.3 page 2}\\
&= (ax+b)|_{x=1}\,x - (ax+b)|_{x=0}\,(x-1) && \text{by left hypothesis and definition of } \mathsf{f}\\
&= (a+b)x - b(x-1)\\
&= ax + bx - bx + b\\
&= ax + b\\
&= \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by left hypothesis and definition of } \mathsf{f}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 1.3 (Cardinal Series). Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the *translation operator* (Definition 1.3 page 2). The *Paley-Wiener* class of functions $\boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma$ (Definition N.3 page 334) are those functions which are "*bandlimited*" with respect to their Fourier transform (Definition K.2 page 255). The cardinal series forms an orthogonal basis for such a space (Theorem N.3 page 335). The *Fourier coefficients* (Definition L.11 page 276) for a projection of a function f onto the Cardinal series basis elements is particularly simple—these coefficients are samples of $\mathsf{f}(x)$ taken at regular intervals (Theorem N.4 page 335). In fact, one could represent the coefficients using inner product notation with the *Dirac delta distribution* δ as follows:

$$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\delta(x)\rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n)\,\mathrm{d}x \triangleq \mathsf{f}(n)$$

EX

1. $\left\{ \mathbf{T}^n \dfrac{\sin(\pi x)}{\pi x} \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{N} \right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{f}(n)\mathbf{T}^n \dfrac{\sin(\pi x)}{\pi x}}_{\textit{Cardinal series}} \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{PW}^2_\sigma,\ \sigma \le \frac{1}{2}$

✎PROOF: See Theorem N.3 page 335. ✏

[8] Janssen (1988), page 24, Zayed (1996), page 482
[9] Lax (2002), page 349, Selberg (1956), Terras (1999)
[10] Higgins (1996) page 2

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Example 1.4 (Fourier Series).

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}_n e^{ix} \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}_n e^{ix} \quad \forall x\in(0:2\pi), \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$ where
3. $\alpha_n \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_0^{2\pi} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}_n e^{-ix}\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}(0:2\pi)$

✎PROOF: See Theorem J.1 page 252. ✏

Example 1.5 (Fourier Transform). [11]

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{ix} | \omega\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\mathbf{D}_x e^{i\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{-ix}\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

Example 1.6 (Gabor Transform). [12]

EX

1. $\left\{\left(\mathbf{T}_\tau e^{-\pi x^2}\right)\left(\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{ix}\right) \middle| \tau,\omega\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{G}(\tau,\omega)\,\mathbf{D}_x e^{i\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\mathsf{G}(\tau,\omega) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\left(\mathbf{T}_\tau e^{-\pi x^2}\right)\left(\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{-ix}\right)\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}, \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

Example 1.7 (wavelets). Let $\psi(x)$ be a *wavelet*.

EX

1. $\left\{\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi(x) \middle| k,n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and
2. $\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_{k,n}\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi(x) \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ where
3. $\alpha_n \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathbf{D}^k\mathbf{T}^n\psi^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \quad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

[11] cross reference: Definition K.2 page 255

[12] Gabor (1946), Qian and Chen (1996) ⟨Chapter 3⟩, Forster and Massopust (2009) page 32 ⟨Definition 1.69⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 2

MRA STRUCTURES

2.1 Introduction

In 1989, Stéphane G. Mallat introduced the *Multiresolution Analysis* (MRA, Definition 2.1 page 16) method for wavelet construction. The MRA has become the dominate wavelet construction method. This text uses the MRA method extensively, and combines the MRA "scaling subspaces" (Definition 2.1 page 16) with "wavelet subspaces" (Definition 3.1 page 43) to form a subspace structure as represented by the *Hasse diagram* to the right. The *Fast Wavelet Transform* combines both sets of subspaces as well, providing the results of projections onto both wavelet and MRA subspaces. Moreover, P.G. Lemarié has proved that all wavelets with *compact support* are generated by an MRA.[1]

The MRA is an **analysis** of the linear space $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. An analysis of a linear space X is any sequence $(\!(V_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ of linear subspaces of X. The partial or complete reconstruction of X from $(\!(V_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a **synthesis**.[2] An analysis is completely *characterized* by a *transform*. For example, a Fourier analysis is a sequence of subspaces with sinusoidal bases. Examples of subspaces in a Fourier analysis include $V_1 = \operatorname{span}\left\{e^{ix}\right\}$, $V_{2.3} = \operatorname{span}\left\{e^{i2.3x}\right\}$, $V_{\sqrt{2}} = \operatorname{span}\left\{e^{i\sqrt{2}x}\right\}$, etc. A **transform** is loosely defined as a function that maps a family of functions into an analysis. A very useful transform (a "*Fourier transform*") for Fourier Analysis is (Definition K.2 page 255)

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathrm{d}x$$

[1] Lemarié (1990), Mallat (1999) page 240

[2] The word *analysis* comes from the Greek word ἀνάλυσις, meaning "dissolution" (Perschbacher (1990), page 23 ⟨entry 359⟩), which in turn means "the resolution or separation into component parts" (Black et al. (2009), http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/dissolution)

2.2 Definition

A multiresolution analysis provides "coarse" approximations of a function in a linear space $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ at multiple "scales" or "resolutions". Key to this process is a sequence of *scaling functions*. Most traditional transforms feature a single *scaling function* $\phi(x)$ set equal to one ($\phi(x) = 1$). This allows for convenient representation of the most basic functions, such as constants.[3] A multiresolution system, on the other hand, uses a generalized form of the scaling concept:

1. Instead of the scaling function simply being set *equal to unity* ($\phi(x) = 1$), a multiresolution system (Definition 2.3 page 25) is often constructed in such a way that the scaling function $\phi(x)$ forms a *partition of unity* (Definition Q.1 page 364) such that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) = 1$.
2. Instead of there being *just one* scaling function, there is an entire sequence of scaling functions $\left(\!\left(\mathbf{D}^j\phi(x)\right)\!\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$, each corresponding to a different "*resolution*".

Definition 2.1. [4] *Let* $\left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be a sequence of subspaces on* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183). Let* A^- *be the* CLOSURE *of a set* A.

DEF

The sequence $\left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is a* ***multiresolution analysis*** *on* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *if*

1. $V_j = V_j^-$ $\quad\forall j\in\mathbb{Z}$ $\quad$ (CLOSED) $\quad$ *and*
2. $V_j \subset V_{j+1}$ $\quad\forall j\in\mathbb{Z}$ $\quad$ (LINEARLY ORDERED) $\quad$ *and*
3. $\left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j\right)^- = L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $\quad$ (DENSE *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$) $\quad$ *and*
4. $\mathsf{f} \in V_j \iff \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f} \in V_{j+1}$ $\quad\forall j\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $\quad$ (SELF-SIMILAR) $\quad$ *and*
5. $\exists\phi$ such that $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ *is a* RIESZ BASIS *for* V_0.

A MULTIRESOLUTION ANALYSIS *is also called an* ***MRA***.
An element V_j *of* $\left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is a* ***scaling subspace*** *of the space* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.
The pair $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right)\right)$ *is a* ***multiresolution analysis space****, or* ***MRA space***.
The function ϕ *is the* ***scaling function*** *of the* MRA SPACE.

The traditional definition of the *MRA* also includes the following:

1. $\mathsf{f} \in V_j \iff \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f} \in V_j$ $\quad\forall n,j\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ $\quad$ (*translation invariant*)
2. $\bigcap_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j = \{\mathbb{0}\}$ $\quad$ (*greatest lower bound* is $\mathbf{0}$)

However, Proposition 2.1 (next) demonstrates that both of these follow from the *MRA* as defined in Definition 2.1.

Proposition 2.1. [5]

PRP

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ is an MRA} \\ \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1.\ \mathsf{f} \in V_j \iff \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f} \in V_j \quad \forall n,j\in\mathbb{Z}, \mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{(TRANSLATION INVARIANT) and} \\ 2.\ \bigcap_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j = \{\mathbb{0}\} & \text{(GREATEST LOWER BOUND is } \mathbf{0}\text{)}\end{array}\right.$$

[3] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

[4] Hernández and Weiss (1996) page 44, Mallat (1999) page 221 ⟨Definition 7.1⟩, Mallat (1989) page 70, Meyer (1992) page 21 ⟨Definition 2.2.1⟩, Christensen (2003) page 284 ⟨Definition 13.1.1⟩, Bachman et al. (2000) pages 451–452 ⟨Definition 7.7.6⟩, Walnut (2002) pages 300–301 ⟨Definition 10.16⟩, Daubechies (1992) pages 129–140 ⟨Riesz basis: page 139⟩

[5] Hernández and Weiss (1996) page 45 ⟨Theorem 1.6⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 19–28 ⟨Proposition 2.14⟩, Pinsky (2002) pages 313–314 ⟨Lemma 6.4.28⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF: Proof for (1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f} \in V_j \\
&\iff \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f} \in \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^m\phi|_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \{\phi\} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)}\\
&\iff \exists\,(\!(\alpha_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^k\phi(x) && \text{by definition of } \{\phi\} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)}\\
&\iff \exists\,(\!(\alpha_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathsf{f}(x) &&= \mathbf{T}^{-n}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^k\phi(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
& &&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k\mathbf{T}^{-n}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^k\phi(x) \\
& &&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{k-2n}\phi(x) && \text{by } \textit{commutator relation} && \text{(Proposition 1.5 page 4)}\\
& &&= \sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_{\ell+2n}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{\ell}\phi(x) && \text{where } \ell \triangleq k-2n \implies && k = \ell+2n\\
& &&= \sum_{\ell\in\mathbb{Z}} \beta_{\ell}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^{\ell}\phi(x) && \text{where } \beta_\ell \triangleq \alpha_{\ell+2n}\\
& &&\iff \mathsf{f} \in V_j && \text{by def. of } \{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof for (2):

1. Let $\mathbf{P}_j$ be the *projection operator* that generates the scaling subspace V_j such that
   $\mathbf{V}_j = \left\{\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}|\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\right\}$
2. lemma: Functions with *compact support* are *dense* in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Therefore, we only need to prove that the proposition is true for functions with support in $[-R : R]$, for all $R > 0$.
3. For some function $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, let $(\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be a sequence of functions in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ with *compact support* such that
   $\operatorname{supp}\mathsf{f}_n \subseteq [-R : R]$ for some $R > 0$ and $\mathsf{f}(x) = \lim_{n\to\infty}(\!(\mathsf{f}_n(x))\!)$.
4. lemma: $\bigcap V_j = \{\mathbb{0}\} \iff \lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}\right\| = 0 \quad \forall\mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Proof:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bigcap_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j &= \bigcap_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}|\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\right\} && \text{by definition of } V_j && \text{(definition 1 page 17)}\\
&= \lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\{\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}|\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \cap \\
&= \mathbb{0} \iff \lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}\right\| = 0 && \text{by } \textit{nondegenerate} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\| && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}
\end{aligned}
$$

5. lemma: $\lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}\right\| = 0 \quad \forall\mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Proof:
   Let $\mathbb{1}_{A(x)}$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1)

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}\right\|^2 \\
&= \lim_{j\to-\infty}\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\lim_{n\to\infty}(\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!)\right\|^2 && \text{by definition 3 page 17}\\
&\le \lim_{j\to-\infty} B\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\left\langle \mathbf{P}_j\lim_{n\to\infty}(\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!)\,|\,\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{frame property} && \text{(Proposition L.5 page 286)}\\
&= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\left\langle \lim_{n\to\infty}(\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!)\,|\,\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{P}_j && \text{(definition 1 page 17)}\\
&= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\lim_{n\to\infty}(\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!)\,|\,\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } (\!(\mathsf{f}_n)\!) && \text{(definition 3 page 17)}
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \lim_{n\to\infty} (\!|\mathsf{f}_n|\!) \mid \mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right\rangle\right|^2$$ prop. of $\langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle$ in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183)

$$\le \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\|\lim_{n\to\infty} (\!|\mathsf{f}_n|\!)\right\|^2 \left\|\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right\|^2$$ by *CS Inequality*

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right\|^2$$ by definition of $(\!|\mathsf{f}_n|\!)$ (definition 3 page 17)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\left[\underbrace{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{D}^{-j}}_{\mathbf{I}}\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\right]\left[\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right]\right\|^2$$ by property of $\mathbf{D}$ (Proposition 1.2 page 2)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|2^{j/2}\mathbf{D}^j\left\{\left[\mathbf{D}^{-j}\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(x)\right]\left[\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right]\right\}\right\|^2$$ by Proposition 1.4 page 3

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbf{D}^j\left\{2^{j/2}2^{-j/2}\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(2^{-j}x)\left[\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right]\right\}\right\|^2$$ by property of $\mathbf{D}$ (Proposition 1.2 page 2)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbf{D}^j\left\{\left[\underbrace{\mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{T}^{-n}}_{\mathbf{I}}\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(2^{-j}x)\right]\left[\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right]\right\}\right\|^2$$ by property of $\mathbf{T}$ (Proposition 1.2 page 2)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbf{D}^j\left\{\left[\mathbf{T}^n\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(2^{-j}x+n)\right]\left[\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\right]\right\}\right\|^2$$ by property of $\mathbf{T}$ (Proposition 1.2 page 2)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\left\{\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(2^{-j}x+n)\phi(x)\right\}\right\|^2$$ by property of $\mathbf{D}$ (Proposition 1.2 page 2)

$$= \lim_{j\to-\infty} B \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \left\|\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}(2^{-j}x+n)\phi(x)\right\|^2$$ by *unitary* prop. (Theorem 1.1 page 7)

$$= B\|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lim_{j\to-\infty} \left\|\mathbb{1}_{[-2^jR+n:2^jR+n]}(u)\phi(2^{-j}(u-n))\right\|^2$$ $u \triangleq 2^jx+n \implies x = 2^{-j}(u-n)$

$$= B\|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lim_{j\to-\infty} \int_{-2^jR+n}^{2^jR+n} \left|\phi(2^{-j}(u-n))\right|^2 \,\mathrm{d}u$$

$$= B\|\mathsf{f}\|^2 \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_n^n |\phi(0)|^2 \,\mathrm{d}u$$

$$= 0$$

6. Final step in proof that $\bigcap V_j = \{\mathbb{0}\}$: by (4) lemma page 17 and (5) lemma page 17

✏

Proposition 2.2. [6]

PRP

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & (\!|\mathbf{T}^n\phi|\!) \textit{ is a } \textsc{Riesz sequence} & \textit{and} \\ (2). & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \textit{ is } \textsc{continuous} \textit{ at } 0 & \textit{and} \\ (3). & \tilde{\phi}(0) \ne 0 & \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j\right)^{-} = L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \quad (\textsc{dense in } L^2_{\mathbb{R}})\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Let $\mathbf{P}_j$ be the *projection operator* that generates the scaling subspace V_j such that
   $\mathbf{V}_j = \{\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{f} \in H\}$
2. definition: Choose $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ such that $\mathsf{f} \perp \bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j$. Let $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier Transform* (Definition K.2 page 255) of $\mathsf{f}(x)$.

6 Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 28–31 ⟨Proposition 2.15⟩

2019 JULY 26 (FRIDAY) 07:49PM UTC
COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

3. lemma: The function f (definition 2 page 18) *exists* because the set of functions that can be chosen to be f at least contains 0 (it is not the emptyset). Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(x) = 0 \implies & \left\langle \mathsf{f} \,\middle|\, \left\{ \mathsf{h} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \mathsf{h} \in \bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j \right\} \right\rangle \\
= & \left\langle 0 \,\middle|\, \left\{ \mathsf{h} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \mathsf{h} \in \bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j \right\} \right\rangle \\
= & \; 0 \\
\implies & \quad \mathsf{f} \perp \bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j \\
\implies & \quad \mathsf{f} \text{ exists}
\end{aligned}$$

4. lemma: $\left\|\mathbf{P}_j \mathsf{f}\right\| = 0 \quad \forall_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathbf{P}_j \mathsf{f}\right\| &= \|0\| && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f} && \text{(definition 2 page 18)} \\
&= 0 && \text{by } \textit{nondegenerate} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\|
\end{aligned}$$

5. definition: Choose some function $\mathsf{g} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ such that $\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\mathbb{1}_{[-R:R]}$ (Definition 1.2 page 1) for some $R > 0$ and such that $\|\mathsf{f} - \mathsf{g}\| < \varepsilon$. Let $\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier Transform* (Definition K.2 page 255) of $\mathsf{g}(x)$.

6. lemma: The function g (definition 5 page 19) *exists*. Proof: For some (possibly very large) R,

$$\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon &> \left\|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) - \tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\right\| && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{g} && \text{(definition 5 page 19)} \\
&= \left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) - \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\right\| && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}} \text{ and } \tilde{\mathsf{g}} && \text{(definition 2 page 18), (definition 5 page 19)} \\
&= \left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}(x) - \mathsf{g}(x)\right]\right\| && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition D.4 page 157)} \\
&= \|\mathsf{f}(x) - \mathsf{g}(x)\| && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.2 page 256)} \\
\implies & \quad \mathsf{g} \text{ exists} && \text{because it's possible to satisfy definition 5 page 19}
\end{aligned}$$

7. lemma: $\left\|\mathbf{P}_j \mathsf{g}\right\| < \varepsilon \quad \forall_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ for sufficiently large R. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon &> \|\mathsf{f} - \mathsf{g}\| && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{g} && \text{(definition 5 page 19)} \\
&\geq \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\left[\mathsf{f} - \mathsf{g}\right]\right\| && \text{by property of } \textit{projection operators} && \text{(Definition D.10 page 171)} \\
&= \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f} - \mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g}\right\| && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \mathbf{P}_j && \text{(Definition D.4 page 157)} \\
&\geq \left|\left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{f}\right\| - \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g}\right\|\right| && \text{by } \textit{Reverse Triangle Inequality} \\
&= \left|0 - \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g}\right\|\right| && \text{by ((4) lemma page 19)} \\
&= \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g}\right\| && \text{by } \textit{strictly positive} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\| && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}
\end{aligned}$$

8. lemma: $\mathsf{g} = 0$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \lim_{j\to\infty} \left\|\mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g}\right\|^2 && \text{by (7) lemma page 19} \\
&\geq \lim_{j\to\infty} A \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \mathbf{P}_j\mathsf{g} \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{frame property} && \text{(Proposition L.5 page 286)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} A \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \mathsf{g} \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{P}_j && \text{(item (1) page 18)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} A \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g} \,|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.2 page 256)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} A \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) \,|\, 2^{-j/2}e^{-i2^{-j}\omega n}\tilde{\phi}(2^{-j}\omega) \right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by Proposition 1.12 page 9}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \lim_{j\to\infty} A \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*(2^{-j}\omega) \,|\, 2^{-j/2}e^{-i2^{-j}\omega n}\right\rangle\right|^2 \quad \text{by property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

$$= \lim_{j\to\infty} A \left\|\tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*(2^{-j}\omega)\right\|^2 \quad \text{by } \textit{Parseval's Identity} \quad \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}$$

$$= A \left\|\tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*(0)\right\|^2 \quad \text{by left hypothesis (2)}$$

$$= A\left|\tilde{\phi}^*(0)\right|^2 \|\tilde{g}(\omega)\|^2 \quad \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\|$$

$$= A\left|\tilde{\phi}(0)\right|^2 \|g\|^2 \quad \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Theorem K.2 page 256)}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \|g\| = 0 \quad \text{by left hypothesis (3)}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow g = 0 \quad \text{by } \textit{nondegenerate} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\|$$

9. Final step in proof that $\left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j\right)^- = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$:

$$g = 0 \quad \text{by (8) lemma page 19}$$

$$\Longrightarrow f = 0 \quad \text{by definition of } g \quad \text{(definition 5 page 19)}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j\right)^- = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✏

Definition 2.1 defines an MRA on the space $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, which is a special case of a *separable Hilbert space*. A Hilbert space is a *linear space* that is equipped with an *inner product*, is *complete* with respect to the *metric* induced by the inner product, and contains a subset that is *dense* in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

An *inner product* on a linear space endows the linear space with a *topology*. The sum such as $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n f_n$ is finite and thus suitable for a finite linear space only. An infinite space requires an infinite sum $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n \phi_n$, and an infinite sum is defined in terms of a limit (Definition G.1 page 202). The limit, in turn, is defined in terms of a *topology*. The *inner product* induces a *norm* (Definition D.5 page 160) which induces a *metric* which induces a topology.

Definition 2.1 defines each subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ to be *closed* ($\boldsymbol{V}_j = \boldsymbol{V}_j^-$) in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. As one might imagine, the properties of *completeness* and *closure* are closely related. Moreover, Every *complete* sequence is also *bounded*, and so each subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ is *bounded* as well.

Proposition 2.3. *Let* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(\boldsymbol{V}_j)\!)\right)$ *be an* MRA SPACE.

PRP *Each subspace* $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ *is* COMPLETE.

✎PROOF:

1. By definition Definition 2.1, $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is *complete*.
2. In any metric space, (which includes all inner product spaces such as $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$), a *closed* subspace of a *complete* metric space is itself also *complete*.
3. In any *complete* metric space $\boldsymbol{X}$ (which includes all Hilbert spaces such as $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$), the two properties coincide—that is, a subspace is complete *if and only if* it is closed in the space $\boldsymbol{X}$.
4. So because $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is *complete* and each $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ is *closed*, then each $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ is also *complete*.

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2.3 Order structure

A *multiresolution analysis* (Definition 2.1 page 16) together with the set inclusion relation $\subseteq$ forms the *linearly ordered set* $(\{V_j\}, \subseteq)$, illustrated to the right by a *Hasse diagram*. Subspaces V_j increase in "size" with increasing j. That is, they contain more and more vectors (functions) for larger and larger j—with the upper limit of this sequence being $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Alternatively, we can say that approximation within a subspace V_j yields greater "*resolution*" for increasing j.

The *least upper bound* (*l.u.b.*) of the linearly ordered set $(\{V_j\}, \subseteq)$ is $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition 2.1 page 16):

$$\left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j\right)^{-} = L^2_{\mathbb{R}}.$$

The *greatest lower bound* (*g.l.b.*) of the linearly ordered set $(\{V_j\}, \subseteq)$ is $\mathbf{0}$ (Proposition 2.1 page 16):

$$\bigcap_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} V_j = \mathbf{0}.$$

All linear subspaces contain the zero vector. So the intersection of any two subspaces must at least contain $\mathbb{0}$. If the intersection of any two linear subspaces X and Y is exactly $\{\mathbb{0}\}$, then for any vector in the sum of those subspaces ($u \in X \dotplus Y$) there are **unique** vectors $\mathsf{f} \in X$ and $\mathsf{g} \in Y$ such that $u = \mathsf{f} + \mathsf{g}$. This is *not* necessarily true if the intersection contains more than just $\{\mathbb{0}\}$.

2.4 Dilation equation

Several functions in mathematics exhibit a kind of *self-similar* or *recursive* property:

- If a function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *linear*, then (Example 1.2 page 12)
  $$\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(1)x - \mathsf{f}(0)\mathbf{T}x.$$
- If a function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is sufficiently *bandlimited*, then the *Cardinal series* (Example 1.3 page 12) demonstrates
  $$\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{f}(n)\mathbf{T}^n \frac{\sin[\pi(x)]}{\pi(x)}.$$
- *B-splines* (Theorem M.3 page 304) are another example:
  $$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \frac{1}{n}x\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) - \frac{1}{n}x\mathbf{T}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \frac{n+1}{n}\mathbf{T}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}\backslash\{1\}, \forall x\in\mathbb{R}.$$

The scaling function $\phi(x)$ (Definition 2.1 page 16) also exhibits a kind of *self-similar* property. By Definition 2.1 page 16, the dilation $\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}$ of each vector f in V_0 is in V_1. If $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_0, then $\{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_1, $\{\mathbf{D}^2\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_2, …; and in general $\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^m\phi|j \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ is a basis for V_j. Also, if ϕ is in V_0, then it is also in V_1 (because $V_0 \subset V_1$). And because ϕ is in V_1 and because $\{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_1, ϕ is a linear combination of the elements in $\{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$. That is, ϕ can be represented as a linear combination of translated and dilated versions of itself. The resulting equation is called the *dilation equation* (Definition 2.2, next).[7]

[7] The property of *translation invariance* is of particular significance in the theory of *normed linear spaces* (a Hilbert

CC BY-NC-ND

Definition 2.2. [8] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!)\right)$ *be a* MULTIRESOLUTION ANALYSIS SPACE *with scaling function* ϕ *(Definition 2.1 page 16). Let* $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be a* SEQUENCE *(Definition O.1 page 339) in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

DEF

The EQUATION $\left\{ \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \right\}$ *is called the* ***dilation equation****.*

It is also called the ***refinement equation****,* ***two-scale difference equation****, and* ***two-scale relation****.*

Remark 2.1.

REM

The *dilation equation* under the defintions of **T** and **D** evaluates to

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n).$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\phi(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem 2.1 (dilation equation)**.** *Let an* MRA SPACE *and* SCALING FUNCTION *be as defined in Definition 2.1 page 16.*

THM

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!)\right) \text{ is an MRA SPACE} \\ \text{with SCALING FUNCTION } \phi \end{array} \right\} \implies \underbrace{\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \exists (\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ such that} \\ \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \end{array} \right\}}_{\text{DILATION EQUATION IN “TIME”}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi &\in V_0 && \text{by definition of MRA} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)} \\
&\subseteq V_1 && \text{by definition of MRA} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)} \\
&\triangleq \operatorname{span}\{ \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \mid n\in\mathbb{Z} \} && \text{by definition of } V_j && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)} \\
&\implies \exists (\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ such that } \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) && \text{by definition of span} && \text{(Definition L.2 page 265)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma 2.1. [9] *Let* $\phi(x)$ *be a function in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183). Let* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of* $\phi(x)$*. Let* $\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$*.*

LEM

$$\begin{aligned}
(A) \quad \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \quad &\iff \tilde{\phi}(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \forall \omega\in\mathbb{R} && (1) \\
&\iff \tilde{\phi}(\omega) = \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right) \prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) && \forall n\in\mathbb{N}, \omega\in\mathbb{R} && (2)
\end{aligned}$$

space is a complete normed linear space equipped with an inner product).

[8] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), page 7

[9] Mallat (1999) page 228

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\phi}(\omega) &\triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) && \text{by (A)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n} \phi\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)} && \text{by Proposition 1.12 page 9} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \underbrace{\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n}\right]}_{\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega/2)} \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } DTFT \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (A) $\Longleftarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi(x) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by (1)} \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n} \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } DTFT \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n} \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by property of linear operators} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{DT}^n \phi && \text{by Proposition 1.12 page 9} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) && \text{by definition of } \textit{operator inverse}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

   (a) Proof for $N = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right) \prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right)\Bigg|_{N=1} &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \\
&= \tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Proof that [N case] $\Longrightarrow$ [$N+1$ case]:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^{N+1}}\right) \prod_{n=1}^{N+1} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) &= \left[\prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right)\right] \underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^{N+1}}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^{N+1}}\right)}_{\tilde{\phi}(\omega/2^N)} \\
&= \tilde{\phi}(\omega/2^N) \prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) \\
&= \tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by [}N\text{ case] hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

4. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) &= \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right)\Bigg|_{N=1} && \text{by (2)}\\ &= \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma 2.2. *Let $\phi(x)$ be a function in $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183). Let $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of $\phi(x)$. Let $\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$. Let $\prod_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\prod_{n=1}^{N} x_n$, with respect to the standard norm in $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.*

LEM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) = C\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right)\\ \forall C>0,\omega\in\mathbb{R}\qquad (A)\end{array}\right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\Longrightarrow\quad \phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x) && \forall x\in\mathbb{R} && (1)\\ \Longleftrightarrow\quad \tilde{\phi}(\omega) &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \forall\omega\in\mathbb{R} && (2)\\ \Longleftrightarrow\quad \tilde{\phi}(\omega) &= \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) && \forall n\in\mathbb{N},\omega\in\mathbb{R} && (3)\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (3): by Lemma 2.1 page 22

2. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) &= C\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) && \text{by left hypothesis}\\ &= C\,\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^{n+1}}\right)\\ &= C\,\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega/2}{2^n}\right)\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left[C\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega/2}{2^n}\right)\right]\\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by left hypothesis}\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition 2.4. *Let $\phi(x)$ be a function in $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183). Let $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of $\phi(x)$. Let $\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$. Let $\prod_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\prod_{n=1}^{N} x_n$, with respect to the standard norm in $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.*

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

PRP

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is}\\ \text{CONTINUOUS}\\ \text{at } \omega = 0\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lllll}
 & \phi(x) & = & \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) & \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \quad (1)\\
\iff & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) & = & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) & \forall \omega\in\mathbb{R} \quad (2)\\
\iff & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) & = & \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) & \forall n\in\mathbb{N}, \omega\in\mathbb{R} \quad (3)\\
\iff & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) & = & \tilde{\phi}(0)\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) & \omega\in\mathbb{R} \quad (4)
\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\iff$ (2) $\iff$ (3): by Lemma 2.1 page 22
2. Proof that (3) $\implies$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\phi}(0)\prod_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) &= \lim_{N\to\infty}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{n=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^n}\right) && \text{by } \textit{continuity} \text{ and definition of } \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n\\ &= \tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by (3) and Lemma 2.1 page 22}\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (2) $\impliedby$ (4): by Lemma 2.2 page 24

✏

Definition 2.3 (next) formally defines the coefficients that appear in Theorem 2.1 (page 22).

Definition 2.3. *Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!)\right)$ be a multiresolution analysis space with scaling function ϕ. Let $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be a sequence of coefficients such that $\phi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi$.*

DEF

*A **multiresolution system** is the tuple $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$. The sequence $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is the **scaling coefficient sequence**. A multiresolution system is also called an **MRA system**. An* MRA SYSTEM *is an **orthonormal MRA system** if $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is* ORTHONORMAL.

Theorem 2.2. *Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25).*
Let $\operatorname{span} A$ be the LINEAR SPAN *(Definition L.2 page 265) of a set A.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} = V_0}_{\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} \text{ is a BASIS for } V_0} \implies \underbrace{\operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} = V_j \quad \forall j\in\mathbb{W}}_{\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} \text{ is a BASIS for } V_j}$$

✎PROOF: Proof is by induction:[10]

1. induction basis (proof for $j = 0$ case):

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}\Big|_{j=0} &= \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}\\ &= V_0 && \text{by left hypothesis}\end{aligned}$$

[10] Smith (2011) page 4

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

2. induction step (proof that j case $\implies$ $j+1$ case):

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^{j+1}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \exists\, (\alpha_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}^{j+1}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\} && \text{by definition of span} && \text{(Definition L.2 page 265)} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \exists\, (\alpha_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathbf{D}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}^{j}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \exists\, (\alpha_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}^{j}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\} \\
&= \left\{ [\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}] \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \exists\, (\alpha_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathbf{D}^{-1}[\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x)] = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}^{j}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\} \\
&= \mathbf{D}\left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \,|\, \exists\, (\alpha_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_n \mathbf{D}^{j}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\} \\
&= \mathbf{D}\operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^{j}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} && \text{by definition of span} && \text{(Definition L.2 page 265)} \\
&= \mathbf{D}\boldsymbol{V}_j && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\
&= \boldsymbol{V}_{j+1} && \text{by \textit{self-similar} property} && \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Example 2.1.

EX

In the *Haar* MRA, the scaling function $\phi(x)$ is the *pulse function*

$$\phi(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in [0:1) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

In the subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ ($j \in \mathbb{Z}$) the scaling functions are

$$\mathbf{D}^j\phi(x) = \begin{cases} (2)^{j/2} & \text{for } x \in \left[0 : \left(2^{-j}\right)\right) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The scaling subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_0$ is the span $\boldsymbol{V}_0 \triangleq \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$. The scaling subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_j$ is the span $\boldsymbol{V}_j \triangleq \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, n \in \mathbb{Z}\right\}$. Note that $\left\|\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\|$ for each resolution j and shift n is unity:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\|^2 &= \|\phi\|^2 && \text{by \textit{unitary} properties of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Theorem 1.1 page 7)} \\
&= \int_0^1 |1|^2 \, dx && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \text{ on } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\mathsf{f}(x) = \sin(\pi x)$. Suppose we want to project $\mathsf{f}(x)$ onto the subspaces $\boldsymbol{V}_0$, $\boldsymbol{V}_1$, $\boldsymbol{V}_2$, ...

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

The values of the transform coefficients for the subspace V_j are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{R}_j \mathsf{f}(x)\right](n) &= \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\|^2}\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{\cancelto{1}{\|\phi\|^2}}\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, 2^{j/2}\phi\left(2^j x - n\right)\right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.3 page 3} \\
&= 2^{j/2}\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \phi\left(2^j x - n\right)\right\rangle \\
&= 2^{j/2}\int_{2^{-j}n}^{2^{-j}(n+1)} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= 2^{j/2}\int_{2^{-j}n}^{2^{-j}(n+1)} \sin(\pi x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= 2^{j/2}\left(-\frac{1}{\pi}\right)\cos(\pi x)\Big|_{2^{-j}n}^{2^{-j}(n+1)} \\
&= \frac{2^{j/2}}{\pi}\left[\cos\left(2^{-j}n\pi\right) - \cos\left(2^{-j}(n+1)\pi\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

And the projection $\mathbf{A}_n\mathsf{f}(x)$ of the function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ onto the subspace V_j is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A}_j\mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \\
&= \frac{2^{j/2}}{\pi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\cos\left(2^{-j}n\pi\right) - \cos\left(2^{-j}(n+1)\pi\right)\right]2^{j/2}\phi\left(2^j x - n\right) \\
&= \frac{2^{j}}{\pi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\cos\left(2^{-j}n\pi\right) - \cos\left(2^{-j}(n+1)\pi\right)\right]\phi\left(2^j x - n\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The transforms of $\sin(\pi x)$ into the subspaces V_0, V_1, and V_2, as well as the approximations in those subspaces are as illustrated in Figure 2.1 (page 28).

2.5 Necessary Conditions

Theorem 2.3 (admissibility condition)**.** *Let* $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ *be the* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) and* $\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

THM

$$
\left\{\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ (\!(V_j)\!),\ \phi,\ (\!(h_n)\!)\right) \text{ is an MRA SYSTEM (Definition 2.3 page 25)}\right\}
$$

$$
\underset{\not\Leftarrow}{\Rightarrow}\ \underbrace{\left\{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n = \sqrt{2}\right\}}_{\text{(1) ADMISSIBILITY in "time"}} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\Big|_{z=1} = \sqrt{2}\right\}}_{\text{(2) ADMISSIBILITY in "z domain"}} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = \sqrt{2}\right\}}_{\text{(3) ADMISSIBILITY in "frequency"}}
$$

✎PROOF:

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure 2.1: Projections of $\sin(\pi x)$ on Haar subspaces (Example 2.1 page 26)

1. Proof that MRA system $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n &= \frac{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \\
&= \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} \phi(2y-n) 2\,\mathrm{d}y && \text{let } y \triangleq \frac{x+n}{2} \implies x = 2y-n \implies \mathrm{d}x = 2\,\mathrm{d}y \\
&= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}y && \text{by definitions of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} \text{ (Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sqrt{2} \frac{1}{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(y)\,\mathrm{d}y && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} \text{ (Theorem 2.1 page 22)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Alternate proof that MRA system $\Longrightarrow$ (1):
   Let $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq 1 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi \,|\, \mathsf{f} \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi \,\middle|\, \mathsf{f} \right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi \,|\, \mathsf{f} \rangle && \text{by linearity of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n)^* \mathsf{f} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator adjoint} && \text{(Theorem D.13 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{T}^*)^n \mathbf{D}^* \mathsf{f} \rangle && \text{by property of operator adjoint} && \text{(Theorem D.13 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \left\langle \phi \,\middle|\, (\mathbf{T}^{-1})^n \mathbf{D}^{-1} \mathsf{f} \right\rangle && \text{by unitary property of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Proposition 1.7 page 5)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \left\langle \phi \,\middle|\, (\mathbf{T}^{-1})^n \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \mathsf{f} \right\rangle && \text{because } \mathsf{f} \text{ is a constant hypothesis} && \text{and by Proposition 1.2 page 2}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \left\langle \phi \,\middle|\, \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\mathsf{f} \right\rangle && \text{by } \mathsf{f}(x) = 1 \text{ definition} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \langle \phi \,|\, \mathsf{f} \rangle && \text{by property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \\
&= \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \langle \phi \,|\, \mathsf{f} \rangle \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \\
&\Longrightarrow \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n = \sqrt{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Proof that (1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (3): by Proposition P.2 page 355.

4. Proof for $\not\Longleftarrow$ part: by Counterexample 2.1 page 29.

✏

Counterexample 2.1. Let $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ be an *MRA system* (Definition 2.3 page 25).

CNT

$$
\left\{ \left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\bar{\delta}_{n-1} \triangleq \begin{cases} \sqrt{2} & \text{for } n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \right\} \Longrightarrow \{\phi(x) = 0\}
$$

which means

$$
\left\{ \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n = \sqrt{2} \right\} \not\Longrightarrow \left\{ \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right) \text{ is an MRA system for } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}. \right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi(x) && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x - n) && \text{by definitions of } \mathbf{D} \text{ and } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\sqrt{2}\bar{\delta}_{n-1}}_{\left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right)} \phi(2x - n) && \text{by definitions of } \left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right) \\
&= \sqrt{2}\phi(2x - 1) && \text{by definition of } \phi(x) \\
\Longrightarrow \phi(x) &= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies $\phi(x) = 0$, which implies that $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ is *not* an *MRA system* for $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ because

$$
\left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{V}_j\right)^{-} = \left(\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}\right)^{-} \neq \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}
$$

(the *least upper bound* is *not* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$). ✏

Theorem 2.4 (Quadrature condition in "time"). *Let* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25)*.

THM

$$
\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}^*_k \left\langle \phi \,\middle|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle = \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\phi \rangle \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi \mid \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \mid \mathbf{T}^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \mid \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi\right\rangle && \text{by properties of } \langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \phi \mid (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi\right\rangle && \text{by definition of operator adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \phi \mid (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi\right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.5 page 4}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \phi \mid \mathbf{T}^{*m}\mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi\right\rangle && \text{by operator star-algebra properties} && \text{(Theorem D.13 page 169)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \phi \mid \mathbf{T}^{-m}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi\right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.7 page 5}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_k^* \left\langle \phi \mid \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi\right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem 2.5 (next) presents the *quadrature necessary conditions* of a *wavelet system*. These relations simplify dramatically in the special case of an *orthonormal wavelet system* (Theorem P.4 page 359).

Theorem 2.5 (Quadrature condition in "frequency"). [11] *Let* $\left(\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle \mathbf{V}_j\rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) for a sequence* $\langle\!\langle x_n\rangle\!\rangle_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\boldsymbol{\ell}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *(Definition R.3 page 371) of* ϕ.

THM

$$\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) = 2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(2\omega)$$

(*Note:* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1$ *for* ORTHONORMAL *MRA (Lemma 5.1 page 71)*)

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(2\omega)\\
&= 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(2\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2 && \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353}\\
&= \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\left(2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2\right) + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\left(2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi+2\pi n)\right|^2\right)\\
&= \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

[11] Chui (1992), page 135, Goswami and Chan (1999), page 110

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2.6 Sufficient conditions

Theorem 2.6 (next) gives a set of *sufficient* conditions on the *scaling function* (Definition 2.1 page 16) ϕ to generate an *MRA*. Theorem 5.2 (page 74) provides a set of sufficient conditions on the *scaling coefficients* (Definition 2.3 page 25) $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ to generate an *MRA*; howbeit, this set results in the more restrictive *orthonormal* MRA.

Theorem 2.6. [12] *Let* $\mathsf{V}_j \triangleq \mathsf{span}\{\,\mathbf{T}\phi(x)|\,_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ *(Definition L.2 page 265).*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & (\!(\mathbf{T}^n\phi)\!) \text{ is a RIESZ SEQUENCE (Definition L.14 page 283)} & \text{and} \\ (2). & \exists\,(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!) \quad \text{such that} \quad \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) & \text{and} \\ (3). & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is CONTINUOUS at } 0 & \text{and} \\ (4). & \tilde{\phi}(0) \neq 0 & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{c} (\!(\mathsf{V}_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ is an MRA} \\ \text{(Definition 2.1 page 16)} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: For this to be true, each of the conditions in the definition of an *MRA* (Definition 2.1 page 16) must be satisfied:

1. Proof that each V_j is *closed*: by definition of span
2. Proof that $(\!(\mathsf{V}_j)\!)$ is *linearly ordered*:
$$\mathsf{V}_j \subseteq \mathsf{V}_{j+1} \iff \mathsf{span}\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} \subseteq \mathsf{span}\{\mathbf{D}^{j+1}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} \qquad \iff (2)$$
3. Proof that $\bigcup_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{V}_j$ is *dense* in $\mathsf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$: by Proposition 2.2 page 18
4. Proof of *self-similar* property:
$$\{\mathsf{f} \in \mathsf{V}_j \iff \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f} \in \mathsf{V}_{j+1}\} \iff \mathsf{f} \in \mathsf{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} \iff \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f} \in \mathsf{span}\{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} \qquad \iff (2)$$
5. Proof for *Riesz basis*: by (1) and Proposition 2.2 page 18.

✏

2.7 Support size

The *support* of a function is what it's non-zero part "sits" on. If the support of the scaling coefficients $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ goes from say $[0,3]$ in $\mathbb{Z}$, what is the support of the scaling function $\phi(x)$? The answer is $[0,3]$ in $\mathbb{R}$—essentially the same as the support of $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ except that the two functions have different domains ($\mathbb{Z}$ versus $\mathbb{R}$). This concept is defined in Definition 2.4 (next definition), and proven in Theorem 2.7 (next theorem).

Definition 2.4. *Let* $\left(\mathsf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ (\!(\mathsf{V}_j)\!),\ \phi,\ (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* X^- *represent the* CLOSURE *of a set* X *in* $\mathsf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, $\vee X$ *the* LEAST UPPER BOUND *of an* ORDERED SET $(X,\leq)$, $\wedge X$ *the* GREATEST LOWER BOUND *of* $(X,\leq)$, *and*

[12] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 28 ⟨Theorem 2.13⟩, Pinsky (2002) page 313 ⟨Theorem 6.4.27⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

$$\lfloor x \rfloor \triangleq \bigvee \{n \in \mathbb{Z} | n \le x\} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \quad \text{(FLOOR of } x\text{)}$$
$$\lceil x \rceil \triangleq \bigwedge \{n \in \mathbb{Z} | n \ge x\} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \quad \text{(CEILING of } x\text{)}.$$

DEF *The set* $\mathsf{supp f}$ *of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in Y^X$ *is the* ***support*** *of* f *if*

$$\mathsf{supp f} \triangleq \begin{cases} \{x \in \mathbb{R} | \mathsf{f}(x) \neq 0\}^- & \text{for } X = \mathbb{R} \quad \text{(domain of } \mathsf{f} \text{ is } \mathbb{R}\text{)} \quad \text{and} \\ \{x \in \mathbb{R} | \mathsf{f}(\lfloor x \rfloor) \neq 0 \text{ and } \mathsf{f}(\lceil x \rceil) \neq 0\}^- & \text{for } X = \mathbb{Z} \quad \text{(domain of } \mathsf{f} \text{ is } \mathbb{Z}\text{)} \quad . \end{cases}$$

Theorem 2.7 (support size). [13] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25).* *Let* $\mathsf{supp f}$ *be the support of a function* f *(Definition 2.4 page 31).*

THM $\mathsf{supp}\phi = \mathsf{supp h}$

✎PROOF:

1. Definitions: $\mathsf{supp}\phi \triangleq [a, b]$
   $\mathsf{supp h} \triangleq [k, m]$.

2. lemma: $\mathsf{supp}\phi(x) = [a, b] \iff \mathsf{supp}\phi(2x) = \left[\frac{a}{2}, \frac{b}{2}\right]$

3. lemma: $\mathsf{supp}[\lambda\phi(x)] = \mathsf{supp}[\phi(x)] \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\backslash 0$

4. Proof that $k = a$:

$$\begin{aligned}
a &= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\phi(x) && \text{by definition of } a && \text{(item (1) page 32)} \\
&\triangleq \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x)\right] && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)} \\
&= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\left[\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by (3) lemma} \\
&= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\left[\mathsf{h}_k \phi(2x-k)\right] && \text{because } n = k \text{ is the } \textit{least value} \text{ of } n \text{ for which } \mathsf{h}_n \neq 0 \\
&= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}[\phi(2x-k)] && \text{by (3) lemma} \\
&= \bigwedge \mathsf{supp}\left[\phi\left(2\left[x - \frac{k}{2}\right]\right)\right] \\
&= \bigwedge \left\{t | \phi\left(2\left[x - \frac{k}{2}\right]\right) \neq 0\right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{supp} && \text{(Definition 2.4 page 31)} \\
&= x \quad \text{such that} \quad x - \frac{k}{2} = \frac{a}{2} && \text{by (2) lemma} \\
&= \frac{k}{2} + \frac{a}{2} \\
&\implies && \frac{k}{2} = a - \frac{a}{2} \\
&\iff && k = a
\end{aligned}$$

[13] Mallat (1999) pages 243–244

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

5. Proof that $m = b$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
b &= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\phi(x) && \text{by definition of } b && \text{(item (1) page 32)}\\
&\triangleq \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)\right] && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)}\\
&= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by (3) lemma}\\
&= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\mathsf{h}_m \phi(2x-m)\right] && \text{because } n=m \text{ is the } \textit{greatest value} \text{ of } n \text{ for which } \mathsf{h}_n \neq 0\\
&= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\phi(2x-m)\right] && \text{by (3) lemma}\\
&= \bigvee \operatorname{supp}\left[\phi\left(2\left[x-\frac{m}{2}\right]\right)\right]\\
&= \bigvee \left\{t \,|\, \phi\left(2\left[x-\frac{m}{2}\right]\right) \neq 0\right\} && \text{by definition of supp} && \text{(Definition 2.4 page 31)}\\
&= x \quad \text{such that} \quad x-\frac{m}{2} = \frac{b}{2} && \text{by (2) lemma}\\
&= \frac{m}{2}+\frac{b}{2}\\
&\Longrightarrow \quad \frac{m}{2} = b - \frac{b}{2}\\
&\Longleftrightarrow \quad m = b
\end{aligned}
$$

✍

Example 2.2.

EX

B-spline $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$ (Example M.2 page 298) | *B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$ (Example M.3 page 298) | *Daubechies-3 scaling function* (Example 6.5 page 111)

2.8 Scaling functions with partition of unity

The Z transform (Definition O.4 page 340) of a sequence $(\!(h_n)\!)$ with sum $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n\mathsf{h}_n = 0$ has a zero at $z=-1$. Somewhat surprisingly, the *partition of unity* and *zero at* $z=-1$ properties are actually equivalent (next theorem).

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem 2.8. [14] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a* MULTIRESOLUTION SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\bar{\delta}_n$ *be the* KRONECKER DELTA FUNCTION *(Definition L.12 page 276). Let* c *be some contant in* $\mathbb{R}\backslash 0$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\phi = c}_{\text{(1) PARTITION OF UNITY}} \quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n \mathsf{h}_n = 0}_{\text{(2) ZERO AT } z=-1} \quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_{2n} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_{2n+1} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}_{\text{(3) sum of even = sum of odd = } \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}$$

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}$ be the set of even integers and $\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{o}}$ the set of odd integers.

1. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\phi &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi\right] && \text{by } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^m\phi && \text{by } \textit{commutator relation} && \text{(Proposition 1.5 page 4)}\\
&= \mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \\
&= \mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \left[\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{2}}\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{T}^m\phi)\right] && \text{by } \textit{PSF} && \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10)}\\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}_2 e^{-i\omega m}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9} \\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{2}km}\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} && \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)}\\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}(-1)^{km}\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi \\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{km}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{2}kx}\right] && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} && \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{2}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{km}\mathsf{h}_m \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{2}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{km}\mathsf{h}_m + \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{2}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{o}}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{km}\mathsf{h}_m \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{2}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx}\underbrace{\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_m}_{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{2}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{o}}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx}\underbrace{\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{m}\mathsf{h}_m}_{0} \\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}}\left(\mathbf{S}_2\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)e^{i\pi kx} && \text{by Theorem 2.3 (page 27) and right hypothesis} \\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\pi}{2}k\right)e^{i\pi kx} && \text{by definitions of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ and } \mathbf{S}_2 \\
&= \sqrt{\pi}\mathbf{D}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(2\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{Z}_{\mathsf{e}}
\end{aligned}$$

[14] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8, Chui (1992), page 123

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{D}\left\{\sqrt{2\pi}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(2\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx}\right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{D}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x+n) \qquad \text{by } PSF \qquad \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10))}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{D}\sum_{n}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \qquad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}$$

The above equation sequence demonstrates that

$$\mathbf{D}\sum_n \mathbf{T}^n\phi = \sqrt{2}\sum_n \mathbf{T}^n\phi$$

(essentially that $\sum_n \mathbf{T}^n\phi$ is equal to it's own dilation). This implies that $\sum_n \mathbf{T}^n\phi$ is a constant (Proposition 1.8 page 5).

2. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$c = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \qquad \text{by left hypothesis}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi \qquad \text{by } PSF \qquad \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10)}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathbf{S}\underbrace{\sqrt{2}\left(\mathbf{D}^{-1}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n e^{-i\omega n}\right)\left(\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right)}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi} \qquad \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\mathbf{S}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n e^{-i\omega n}\right)\left(\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\phi\right) \qquad \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\mathbf{S}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n}\right)\left(\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\phi\right) \qquad \text{by evaluation of } \mathbf{D}^{-1} \qquad \text{(Proposition 1.2 page 2)}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n e^{-i\frac{2\pi k}{2}n}\right)\left(\mathbf{S}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\phi\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \qquad \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\right)\left(\mathbf{S}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{F}\phi\right)$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\right)\left(\mathbf{S}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{S} \qquad \text{(Definition 1.4 page 9)}$$

$$= \sqrt{2\pi}\,\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\pi k}{2}\right)\right)$$

$$= \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\,\tilde{\phi}(\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx} \qquad \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \qquad \text{(Theorem J.1 page 252)}$$

$$= \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\text{ even}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\,\tilde{\phi}(\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx} + \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\text{ odd}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^{kn}\,\tilde{\phi}(\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx}$$

$$= \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\text{ even}}\left(\cancel{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n}\right)^{\sqrt{2}}\tilde{\phi}(\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx} + \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\text{ odd}}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^n\right)\tilde{\phi}(\pi k)e^{i2\pi kx}$$

$$= \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sqrt{2}\,\tilde{\phi}(\pi 2k)e^{i2\pi 2kx} + \sqrt{\pi}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^n\right)\tilde{\phi}(\pi[2k+1])e^{i2\pi[2k+1]x} \qquad \text{by Theorem 2.3 page 27}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2\pi}}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\tilde{\phi}(0) + \sqrt{\pi}e^{i2\pi x}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n(-1)^n\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\pi[2k+1])e^{i4\pi kx} \qquad \text{by left hypothesis and Theorem Q.1 page 364}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

$$\Longrightarrow \qquad \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n(-1)^n\right) = 0 \qquad \text{because the right side must equal } c$$

3. Proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e} \mathsf{h}_n = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o} \mathsf{h}_n = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \qquad \text{by (2) and Proposition P.4 page 356}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \qquad \text{by } \textit{admissibility condition} \text{ (Theorem 2.3 page 27)}$$

4. Proof that (2) $\Longleftarrow$ (3):

$$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} = \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}(-1)^n\mathsf{h}_n}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}(-1)^n\mathsf{h}_n}_{\text{odd terms}} \qquad \text{by (3)}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n\mathsf{h}_n = 0 \qquad \text{by Proposition P.4 page 356}$$

✏

Not every function that forms a *partition of unity* is a *basis* for an *MRA*, as formerly stated next and demonstrated by Counterexample 2.2 (page 36) and Counterexample 2.3 (page 38).

Proposition 2.5.

PRP

$\phi(x)$ *generates a* PARTITION OF UNITY $\quad \not\Longrightarrow \quad$ $\phi(x)$ *generates an* MRA *system.*

✎PROOF: By Counterexample 2.2 (page 36) and Counterexample 2.3 (page 38). ✏

Counterexample 2.2. Let a function ϕ be defined in terms of the sine function (Definition H.3 page 213) as follows:

CNT

$$\phi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } x \in [0:2] \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = 1$ and ϕ induces a *partition of unity*

but $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \mid n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ does **not** generate an *MRA*.

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1) on a set A.

1. Proof that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = 1$: by Example Q.3 (page 366)
2. Proof that $\phi(x)$ forms a *partition of unity*: by Example Q.3 (page 366)
3. Proof that $\phi(x) \notin \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x) \mid n\in\mathbb{Z}\}$ (and so does not generate an *MRA*):
   (a) Note that the *support* (Definition 2.4 page 31) of ϕ is $\operatorname{supp}\phi = [0:2]$.
   (b) Therefore, the *support* of (h_n) is $\operatorname{supp}(h_n) = \{0,1,2\}$ (Theorem 2.7 page 32).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(c) So if $\phi(x)$ *is* an *MRA*, we only need to compute $\{h_0, h_1, h_2\}$ (the rest would be 0).

Here would be the values of $\{h_1, h_2, h_3\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \phi(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) \mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2x-n)\right) \mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n) \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{2} \mathsf{h}_n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2x-n)\right) \mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n) && \text{by Theorem 2.7 page 32}
\end{aligned}$$

(d) The values of $(\!(h_0, h_1, h_2)\!)$ can be conveniently calculated at the knot locations $x = \frac{1}{2}$, $x = 1$, and $x = \frac{3}{2}$ (see the diagram in item (3c) page 37):

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2} &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \\
&\triangleq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\phi\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(1-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(1-n) \\
&= \mathsf{h}_0 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(1-0)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(1-0) + \mathsf{h}_1 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(1-1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(1-1) \\
&\qquad + \mathsf{h}_2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(1-2)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(1-2) \\
&= \mathsf{h}_0\cdot 1\cdot 1 + \mathsf{h}_1\cdot 0\cdot 1 + \mathsf{h}_2(-1)\cdot 0 \\
&= \mathsf{h}_0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\cdot 1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}(1)^2 \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) \\
&\triangleq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\phi(1) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2-n) \\
&= \mathsf{h}_0 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2-0)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2-0) + \mathsf{h}_1 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2-1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2-1) \\
&\qquad + \mathsf{h}_2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(2-2)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2-2) \\
&= \mathsf{h}_0\cdot 0\cdot 1 + \mathsf{h}_1\cdot 1\cdot 1 + \mathsf{h}_2\cdot 0\cdot 1
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \mathsf{h}_1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2} &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(\frac{1}{-\sqrt{2}}\right)^2\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sin^2\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)\\
&\triangleq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\phi\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(3-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(3-n)\\
&= \mathsf{h}_0\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(3-0)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(3-0)+\mathsf{h}_1\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(3-1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(3-1)\\
&\quad+\mathsf{h}_2\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(3-2)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(3-2)\\
&= \mathsf{h}_0\cdot(-1)\cdot 0+\mathsf{h}_1\cdot 0\cdot 1+\mathsf{h}_2 1\cdot 1\\
&= \mathsf{h}_2
\end{aligned}$$

(e) These values for (h_0, h_1, h_2) are valid for the knot locations $x = \frac{1}{2}$, $x = 1$, and $x = \frac{3}{2}$, **but** they don't satisfy the *dilation equation* (Theorem 2.1 page 22). In particular,

$$\phi(x) \neq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)$$

(see the diagram in item (3c) page 37)

✏

Counterexample 2.3 (raised sine). [15] Let a function f be defined in terms of a shifted cosine function (Definition H.2 page 213) as follows:

CNT

$$\phi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases}\frac{1}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|x-1|)]\right\} & \text{for} \quad 0\le x<2\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{cases}$$

Then ϕ forms a *partition of unity*:

but $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\}$ does **not** generate an *MRA*.

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1) on a set A.

1. Proof that $\phi(x)$ forms a *partition of unity*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x+1) && \text{by Proposition 1.1 page 2}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x+1-n) && \text{by Definition 1.3 page 2}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{1}{2}\{1+\cos[\pi(|x-1+1-n|)]\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x+1-n) && \text{by definition of } \phi(x)
\end{aligned}$$

[15] Proakis (2001) pages 560–561

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{2}\{1+\cos[\pi(|x-n|)]\}\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n) \qquad \text{by Definition 1.2 page 1}$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x-n|-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n)\Big|_{\beta=1}}_{\textit{raised cosine}\ \text{(Example Q.4 page 367) with } \beta=1}$$

$$= 1 \qquad \text{by Example Q.4 page 367}$$

2. Proof that $\phi(x) \notin \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ (and so does not generate an *MRA*):

   (a) Note that the *support* (Definition 2.4 page 31) of ϕ is $\operatorname{supp}\phi = [0:2]$.

   (b) Therefore, the *support* of $(\!|h_n|\!)$ is $\operatorname{supp}(\!|h_n|\!) = \{0,1,2\}$ (Theorem 2.7 page 32).

   (c) So if $\phi(x)$ *is* an *MRA*, we only need to compute $\{h_0, h_1, h_2\}$ (the rest would be 0). Here would be the values of $\{h_1, h_2, h_3\}$:

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{DT}^n \frac{1}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|x-1|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x) \qquad \text{by definition of } \phi(x)$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|2x-1-n|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n) \qquad \text{by Definition 1.3 page 2}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{2} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|2x-1-n|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n) \qquad \text{by Theorem 2.7 page 32}$$

   (d) The values of $(\!|h_0, h_1, h_2|\!)$ can be conveniently calculated at the knot locations $x = \frac{1}{2}$, $x = 1$, and $x = \frac{3}{2}$ (see the diagram in item (3c) page 37):

$$\frac{1}{2} = \sum_{n=0}^{2} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|2x-1-n|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n)\Big|_{x=\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$= \mathsf{h}_0 \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[1-1-0]\right\}$$

$$= \mathsf{h}_0\sqrt{2}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \mathsf{h}_0 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$$

$$1 = \sum_{n=0}^{2} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|2x-1-n|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n)\Big|_{x=1}$$

$$= \mathsf{h}_1 \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[2-1-1]\right\}$$

$$= \mathsf{h}_1\sqrt{2}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \mathsf{h}_1 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} = \sum_{n=0}^{2} \mathsf{h}_n \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[\pi(|2x-1-n|)]\right\}\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(2x-n)\Big|_{x=\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$= \mathsf{h}_2 \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left\{1+\cos[1-1-0]\right\}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \mathsf{h}_2\sqrt{2}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \mathsf{h}_2 = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$$

(e) These values for $(\!(h_0, h_1, h_2)\!)$ are valid for the knot locations $x = \frac{1}{2}$, $x = 1$, and $x = \frac{3}{2}$, **but** they don't satisfy the *dilation equation* (Theorem 2.1 page 22). In particular (see diagram),

$$\phi(x) \neq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi(x)\,.$$

✏

Example 2.3 (2 coefficient case/Haar wavelet system/order 0 B-spline wavelet system). [16]
Let $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(\boldsymbol{V}_j)\!), (\!(\boldsymbol{W}_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ be an *wavelet system*.

EX

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \operatorname{supp}\phi(x) = [0:1] & \text{(Theorem 2.7 page 32)} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \textit{admissibility condition} & \text{(Theorem 2.3 page 27)} \quad \text{and} \\ 3. & \textit{partition of unity} & \text{(Theorem 2.8 page 34)} \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{c|c} n & \mathsf{h}_n \\ \hline 0 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ 1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ \text{other} & 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ that only h_0 and h_1 are non-zero: by Theorem 2.7 page 32.
2. Proof for values of h_0 and h_1:
   (a) Method 1: Under the constraint of two non-zero scaling coefficients, a scaling function design is fully constrained using the *admissibility equation* (Theorem 2.3 page 27) and the *partition of unity* constraint (Definition Q.1 page 364). The partition of unity formed by $\phi(x)$ is illustrated in Example M.13 (page 313).
   Here are the equations:

$\mathsf{h}_0 + \mathsf{h}_1$	$=$	$\sqrt{2}$	(admissibility equation	Theorem 2.3 page 27)
$\mathsf{h}_0 - \mathsf{h}_1$	$=$	0	(partition of unity/zero at -1	Theorem 2.8 page 34)

   Here are the calculations for the coefficients:

   $$(h_0 + h_1) + (h_0 - h_1) = 2h_0 \quad = \sqrt{2} \quad \text{(add two equations together)}$$
   $$(h_0 + h_1) - (h_0 - h_1) = 2h_1 \quad = \sqrt{2} \quad \text{(subtract second from first)}$$

   (b) Method 2: By Theorem M.11 page 322.
3. Note: h_0 and h_1 can also be produced using other systems of equations including the following:
   (a) *admissibility condition* and *orthonormality* (Example 5.3 page 90)
   (b) *Daubechies-p*1 wavelets computed using spectral techniques (Example 6.3 page 109)

✏

[16] Haar (1910), Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 14–15 ⟨"Sources and comments"⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CHAPTER 3

WAVELET STRUCTURES

❝*...on fait la science avec des faits comme une maison avec des pierres ; mais une accumulation de faits n'est pas plus une science qu'un tas de pierres n'est une maison.*❞

❝*Science is built up of facts, as a house is built of stones; but an accumulation of facts is no more a science than a heap of stones is a house.*❞

Jules Henri Poincaré (1854-1912), physicist and mathematician [1]

❝*The bottom line for mathematicians is that the architecture has to be right. In all the mathematics that I did, the essential point was to find the right architecture. It's like building a bridge. Once the main lines of the structure are right, then the details miraculously fit. The problem is the overall design.*❞

Freeman Dyson (1923–), physicist and mathematician [2]

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 What are wavelets?

In Fourier analysis, *continuous* dilations (Definition 1.3 page 2) of the *complex exponential* (Definition H.5 page 218) form a *basis* (Definition L.7 page 270) for the *space of square integrable functions* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183) such that

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} = \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}_\omega e^{ix} \,|\, \omega\in\mathbb{R}\right\}.$$

[1] quote: Poincaré (1902a) ⟨Chapter IX, paragraph 7⟩
translation: Poincaré (1902b), page 141
image: http://www-groups.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history/PictDisplay/Poincare.html

[2] quote: Albers and Dyson (1994), page 20
image: http://www.isepp.org/Media/Speaker%20Images/95-96%20Images/dyson.jpg

In Fourier series analysis (Theorem J.1 page 252), *discrete* dilations of the complex exponential form a basis for $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}(0 : 2\pi)$ such that

$$L^2_{\mathbb{R}}(0 : 2\pi) = \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}_j e^{ix} \middle| j \in \mathbb{Z}\right\}.$$

In Wavelet analysis, for some *mother wavelet* (Definition 3.1 page 43) $\psi(x)$,

$$L^2_{\mathbb{R}} = \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}_\omega \mathbf{T}_\tau \psi(x) | \omega, \tau \in \mathbb{R}\right\}.$$

However, the ranges of parameters ω and τ can be much reduced to the countable set $\mathbb{Z}$ resulting in a *dyadic* wavelet basis such that for some mother wavelet $\psi(x)$,

$$L^2_{\mathbb{R}} = \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j \mathbf{T}^n \psi(x) | j, n \in \mathbb{Z}\right\}.$$

This text deals almost exclusively with dyadic wavelets. Wavelets that are both *dyadic* and *compactly supported* have the attractive feature that they can be easily implemented in hardware or software by use of the *Fast Wavelet Transform* (Figure T.1 page 385).

3.1.2 Analyses

An analysis can be partially characterized by its order structure with respect to an order relation such as the set inclusion relation $\subseteq$. Most transforms have a very simple M-n order structure, as illustrated to the right. The M-n lattices for $n \geq 3$ are *modular* but not *distributive*. Analyses typically have one subspace that is a *scaling* subspace; and this subspace is often simply a family of constants (as is the case with Fourier Analysis).

A special characteristic of wavelet analysis is that there is not just one scaling subspace, but an entire sequence of scaling subspaces. These scaling subspaces are *linearly ordered* with respect to the ordering relation $\subseteq$. In wavelet theory, this structure is called a *multiresolution analysis*, or *MRA* (Definition 2.1 page 16).
The MRA was introduced by Stéphane G. Mallat in 1989. The concept of a scaling space was perhaps first introduced by Taizo Iijima in 1959 in Japan, and later as the *Gaussian Pyramid* by Burt and Adelson in the 1980s in the West.[3]

A second special characteristic of wavelet analysis is that it's order structure with respect to the $\subseteq$ relation is not a simple M-n lattice (as is with the case of Fourier and other analyses). Rather, it is a lattice of the form illustrated to the right. This lattice is *non-complemented*, *non-distributive*, *non-modular*, and *non-Boolean* (Proposition 3.1 page 45).

[3] Mallat (1989) page 70, Iijima (1959), Burt and Adelson (1983), Adelson and Burt (1981), Lindeberg (1993), Alvarez et al. (1993), Guichard et al. (2012), Weickert (1999) ⟨historical survey⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

The wavelet subspace structure is similar in form to that of the *Primorial numbers*,[4] illustrated to the right by a *Hasse diagram*.

An analysis can be represented using three different structures:

① sequence of subspaces
② sequence of basis coefficients
③ sequence of basis vectors

These structures are isomorphic to each other, and can therefore be used interchangeably.

Figure 3.1 (page 53) illustrate the order structures of some analyses, including two wavelet analyses:

3.2 Definition

The term "wavelet" comes from the French word "*ondelette*", meaning "small wave". And in essence, wavelets are "small waves" (as opposed to the "long waves" of Fourier analysis) that form a basis for the Hilbert space $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.[6]

Definition 3.1. [7] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *be as defined in Definition 1.3 page 2.*

DEF

A function $\psi(x)$ *in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *is a* ***wavelet function*** *for* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *if*

$$\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\psi \,|\, j,n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\} \text{ is a RIESZ BASIS for } L^2_{\mathbb{R}}.$$

In this case, ψ *is also called the* ***mother wavelet*** *of the basis* $\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\psi \,|\, j,n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$. *The sequence of subspaces* $(\!(W_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is the* ***wavelet analysis*** *induced by* ψ, *where each subspace* W_j *is defined as*

$$W_j \triangleq \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\psi \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}.$$

A *wavelet analysis* $(\!(W_j)\!)$ is often constructed from a *multiresolution anaysis* (Definition 2.1 page 16) $(\!(V_j)\!)$ under the relationship

$$V_{j+1} = V_j \hat{+} W_j, \qquad \text{where } \hat{+} \text{ is subspace addition (\textit{Minkowski addition})}.$$

By this relationship alone, $(\!(W_j)\!)$ is in no way uniquely defined in terms of a multiresolution analysis $(\!(V_j)\!)$. In general there are many possible complements of a subspace V_j. To uniquely define

[4] Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A002110⟩
[6] Strang and Nguyen (1996) page ix, Atkinson and Han (2009) page 191
[7] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 17 ⟨Definition 2.1⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

such a wavelet subspace, one or more additional constraints are required. One of the most common additional constraints is *orthogonality*, such that V_j and W_j are orthogonal to each other (see CHAPTER 5 page 67).

3.3 Dilation equation

Suppose $(\!(\mathbf{T}^n\psi)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a basis for W_0. By Definition 3.1 page 43, the wavelet subspace W_0 is contained in the scaling subspace V_1. By Definition 2.1 page 16, the sequence $(\!(\mathbf{DT}^n\phi)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a basis for V_1. Because W_0 is contained in V_1, the sequence $(\!(\mathbf{DT}^n\phi)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is also a basis for W_0.

Theorem 3.1 (wavelet dilation equation)**.** *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* MULTIRESOLUTION SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25) and* $(\!(W_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be a* WAVELET ANALYSIS *(Definition 3.1 page 43) with respect to* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *and with* WAVELET FUNCTION ψ *(Definition 3.1 page 43).*

THM

$$\exists\,(\!(g_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that} \quad \psi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n\mathbf{DT}^n\phi$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\psi &\in W_0 && \text{by Definition 3.1 page 43}\\
&\subseteq V_1 && \text{by Definition 3.1 page 43}\\
&= \operatorname{span}(\!(\mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x))\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} && \text{by Definition 2.1 page 16 (MRA)}\\
&\implies \exists\,(\!(g_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that} \quad \psi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n\mathbf{DT}^n\phi
\end{aligned}$$

✏

A *wavelet system* (next definition) consists of two subspace sequences:

- A **multiresolution analysis** $(\!(V_j)\!)$ (Definition 2.1 page 16) provides "coarse" approximations of a function in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ at different "scales" or resolutions.
- A **wavelet analysis** $(\!(W_j)\!)$ provides the "detail" of the function missing from the approximation provided by a given scaling subspace (Definition 3.1 page 43).

Definition 3.2. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* MULTIRESOLUTION SYSTEM *(Definition 2.1 page 16) and* $(\!(W_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *a wavelet analysis (Definition 3.1 page 43) with respect to* $(\!(V_j)\!)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$*. Let* $(\!(g_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be a sequence of coefficients.*

DEF

A ***wavelet system*** *is the tuple* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *and the sequence* $(\!(g_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *that satisfies the equation* $\psi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n\mathbf{DT}^n\phi$ *is the* ***wavelet coefficient sequence****.*

Remark 3.1. The pair of coefficient sequences $\left((\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ generates the scaling function $\phi(x)$ (Definition 2.1 page 16) and the wavelet function $\psi(x)$ (Definition 3.1 page 43). These functions in turn generate the multiresolution analysis $(\!(V_j)\!)$ (Definition 2.1 page 16) and the wavelet analysis $(\!(W_j)\!)$ (Definition 3.1 page 43). Therefore, the coefficient sequence pair $\left((\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ totally defines a wavelet system $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Furthermore, especially in the case of orthonormal wavelets, the wavelet coefficient sequence $(\!(g_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is often defined in terms of the scaling coefficient sequence $(\!(h_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ in a very simple and straightforward manner. Therefore, in the case of an orthonormal wavelet system, the coefficient scaling sequence $(\!(h_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ often totally defines the entire wavelet system. And in this case, designing a wavelet system is only a matter of finding a handful of scaling coefficients $(\!(h_1, h_2, \ldots, h_n)\!)$...because once you have these, you can generate everything else.

3.4 Order structure

The *wavelet system* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44) together with the set inclusion relation $\subseteq$ forms an *ordered set*, illustrated to the right by a *Hasse diagram*.

Proposition 3.1. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a wavelet system with order relation* $\subseteq$. *The lattice* $L \triangleq \left((\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \vee, \wedge; \subseteq\right)$ *has the following properties:*

PRP

1. L *is* NONDISTRIBUTIVE.
2. L *is* NONMODULAR.
3. L *is* NONCOMPLEMENTED.
4. L *is* NONBOOLEAN.

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that L is *nondistributive*:
   (a) L contains the $N5$ lattice.
   (b) Because L contains the $N5$ lattice, L is *nondistributive*.
2. Proof that L is *nonmodular* and *nondistributive*:
   (a) L contains the $N5$ lattice.
   (b) Because L contains the $N5$ lattice, L is *nonmodular*.
3. Proof that L is *noncomplemented*:
$$\begin{aligned} x' &= y' = v' = z \\ z' &= \{x, y, v\} \\ x'' &= (x')' \\ &= z' \\ &= \{x, y, v\} \\ &\neq x \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that L is *nonBoolean*:
   (a) L is *nondistributive* (item (1)).
   (b) Because L is *nondistributive*, it is *nonBoolean*.

CC BY-NC-ND

3.5 Subspace algebraic structure

Theorem 3.2. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $V_1 \hat{+} V_2$ *represent* MINKOWSKI ADDITION *of two subspaces* V_1 *and* V_2 *of a Hilbert space* H.

THM

$$\begin{aligned} L^2_{\mathbb{R}} &= \lim_{j\to\infty} V_j && \text{(}L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\text{ is equivalent to one very large scaling subspace)} \\ &= V_j \hat{+} W_j \hat{+} W_{j+1} \hat{+} W_{j+2} \hat{+} \cdots && \left(\begin{array}{l} L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\text{ is equivalent to one scaling space} \\ \text{and a sequence of wavelet subspaces} \end{array}\right) \\ &= \cdots \hat{+} W_{-2} \hat{+} W_{-1} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} \cdots && \text{(}L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\text{ is equivalent to a sequence of wavelet subspaces)} \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1):

$$L^2_{\mathbb{R}} = \lim_{j\to\infty} V_j \qquad \text{by Definition 2.1 page 16}$$

2. Proof for (2):

$$\begin{aligned} \underbrace{V_j \hat{+} W_j}_{V_{j+1}} \hat{+} W_{j+1} \hat{+} W_{j+2} \hat{+} \cdots &= \underbrace{V_{j+1} \hat{+} W_{j+1}}_{V_{j+2}} \hat{+} W_{j+2} \hat{+} W_{j+3} \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \underbrace{V_{j+2} \hat{+} W_{j+2}}_{V_{j+3}} \hat{+} W_{j+3} \hat{+} W_{j+4} \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \underbrace{V_{j+3} \hat{+} W_{j+3}}_{V_{j+4}} \hat{+} W_{j+4} \hat{+} W_{j+5} \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \underbrace{V_{j+5} \hat{+} W_{j+5}}_{V_{j+5}} \hat{+} W_{j+6} \hat{+} W_{j+6} \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \lim_{j\to\infty} V_{j+5} \hat{+} W_{j+5} \hat{+} W_{j+6} \hat{+} W_{j+6} \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (3):

$$\begin{aligned} L^2_{\mathbb{R}} &= \underbrace{V_0}_{V_{-1} \hat{+} W_{-1}} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} W_3 \hat{+} \cdots && \text{by (2)} \\ &= \underbrace{V_{-1}}_{V_{-2} \hat{+} W_{-2}} W_{-1} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} W_3 \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \underbrace{V_{-2}}_{V_{-3} \hat{+} W_{-3}} W_{-2} \hat{+} W_{-1} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} W_3 \hat{+} \cdots \\ &= \underbrace{V_{-3}}_{V_{-4} \hat{+} W_{-4}} W_{-3} \hat{+} W_{-2} \hat{+} W_{-1} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} W_3 \hat{+} \cdots \\ &\vdots \\ &= \cdots \hat{+} W_{-3} \hat{+} W_{-2} \hat{+} W_{-1} \hat{+} W_0 \hat{+} W_1 \hat{+} W_2 \hat{+} W_3 \hat{+} \cdots \end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Remark 3.2. In the special case that two subspaces W_1 and W_2 are *orthogonal* to each other, then the *subspace addition* operation $W_1 \hat{+} W_2$ is frequently expressed as $W_1 \oplus W_2$. In the case of an *orthonormal wavelet system* (Definition 5.1 page 67), the expressions in Theorem 3.2 (page 46) could be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} L^2_{\mathbb{R}} &= \lim_{j\to\infty} V_j \\ &= V_j \oplus W_j \oplus W_{j+1} \oplus W_{j+2} \oplus \cdots \\ &= \cdots \oplus W_{-2} \oplus W_{-1} \oplus W_0 \oplus W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots . \end{aligned}$$

.

3.6 Necessary conditions

Theorem 3.3 (quadrature conditions in "time"). *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(W_j \right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n \right)\!\right)\right)$ *be a wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44).

THM

1. $$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle = \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \phi \rangle \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$
2. $$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle = \langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \psi \rangle \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$
3. $$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle = \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \psi \rangle \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1): by Theorem 2.4 page 29.

2. Proof for (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\psi \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,\middle|\, \mathbf{T}^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{wavelet dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 3.1 page 44)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by properties of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by def. of operator adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.5 page 4} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{*m}\mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by operator star-algebra prop.} && \text{(Theorem D.13 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{-m}\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n}\mathbf{T}^k\phi \right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.7 page 5} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

3. Proof for (3):

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \psi \rangle \\
&= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by Theorem 2.1 page 22} && \text{and Theorem 3.1 page 44} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by properties of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{T}^n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by definition of operator adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, (\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m)^* \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n} \mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.5 page 4} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{*m} \mathbf{D}^* \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n} \mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by operator star-algebra properties} && \text{(Theorem D.13 page 169)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{-m} \mathbf{D}^{-1} \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^{2n} \mathbf{T}^k \phi \right\rangle && \text{by Proposition 1.7 page 5} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g_k^* \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k} \phi \right\rangle
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Proposition 3.2. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a wavelet system. Let* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *and* $\tilde{\psi}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORMS *(Definition K.2 page 255) of* $\phi(x)$ *and* $\psi(x)$*, respectively. Let* $\breve{\mathrm{g}}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of* $(\!(g_n)\!)$.

PRP

$$\tilde{\psi}(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, \breve{\mathrm{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\psi}(\omega) &\triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\psi \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi && \text{by } \textit{wavelet dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 3.1 page 44)} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \mathbf{D}^{-1} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n \phi && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \mathbf{D}^{-1} e^{-i\omega n} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \sqrt{2} \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1} e^{-i\omega n}\right) \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right) && \text{by Proposition 1.4 page 3} \\
&= \sqrt{2} \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n e^{-i\omega n}\right) \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right) \\
&= \sqrt{2} \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1} \breve{\mathbf{F}} (\!(g_n)\!)\right) \left(\mathbf{D}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\right) && \text{by definition of } \breve{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \sqrt{2} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, \breve{\mathrm{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by property of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Proposition 1.2 page 2)} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\, \breve{\mathrm{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem 3.4 (next) presents the *quadrature* necessary conditions of a wavelet system. These relations simplify dramatically in the special case of an *orthonormal wavelet system* (Theorem P.4 page 359).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem 3.4 (Quadrature conditions in "frequency"). [8] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a wavelet system. Let* $\tilde{x}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) for a sequence* $\langle\!\langle x_n \rangle\!\rangle_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *(Definition R.3 page 371) of* ϕ, $\tilde{S}_{\psi\psi}(\omega)$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *of* ψ, *and* $\tilde{S}_{\phi\psi}(\omega)$ *be the* CROSS-POWER SPECTRUM *of* ϕ *and* ψ.

THM

1. $\left|\check{h}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{h}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) = 2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(2\omega)$
2. $\left|\check{g}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{g}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) = 2\tilde{S}_{\psi\psi}(2\omega)$
3. $\check{h}(\omega)\check{g}^*(\omega)\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \check{h}(\omega+\pi)\check{g}^*(\omega+\pi)\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) = 2\tilde{S}_{\phi\psi}(2\omega)$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1): by Theorem 2.5 page 30.
2. Proof for (2):

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\tilde{S}_{\psi\psi}(2\omega) &\triangleq 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\psi}(2\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 \\
&= 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{g}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 \qquad \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22} \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}\left|\check{g}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \\
&\quad 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}\left|\check{g}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{2\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\check{g}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\check{g}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\check{g}(\omega)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\check{g}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2 \\
&= \left|\check{g}(\omega)\right|^2\left(2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 + \right)\left|\check{g}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\left(2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi+2\pi n)\right|^2\right) \\
&= \left|\check{g}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{g}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) \qquad \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Proof for (3):

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\tilde{S}_{\phi\psi}(2\omega) &= 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(2\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\psi}^*(2\omega+2\pi n) \\
&= 2(2\pi)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{h}(\omega+\pi n)\,\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi n)\,\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{g}^*(\omega+\pi n)\,\tilde{\phi}^*(\omega+\pi n) \qquad \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22} \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\check{h}(\omega+\pi n)\,\check{g}^*(\omega+\pi n)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi n)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}\check{h}(\omega+\pi n)\,\check{g}^*(\omega+\pi n)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi n)\right|^2 \\
&\quad + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}\check{h}(\omega+\pi n)\,\check{g}^*(\omega+\pi n)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi n)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\check{h}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\,\check{g}^*(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2 \\
&\quad + 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\check{h}(\omega+2\pi n)\,\check{g}^*(\omega+2\pi n)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2
\end{aligned}
$$

[8] Chui (1992), page 135, Goswami and Chan (1999), page 110

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\,\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+\pi)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n+\pi)\right|^2 + 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\,\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2$$

$$= \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\,\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)\left(2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2\right)$$

$$+ \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\,\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+\pi)\left(2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi+2\pi n)\right|^2\right)$$

$$= \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)\left(2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2\right) + \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+\pi)\left(2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+\pi+2\pi n)\right|^2\right)$$

$$= \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+\pi)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) \qquad \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}$$

✏

3.7 Sufficient condition

In this text, an often used sufficient condition for designing the *wavelet coefficient sequence* $(\!(g_n)\!)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44) is the *conjugate quadrature filter condition* (Definition O.9 page 347). It expresses the sequence $(\!(g_n)\!)$ in terms of the *scaling coefficient sequence* (Definition 2.3 page 25) and a "shift" integer N as $g_n = \pm(-1)^n h^*_{N-n}$. The *CQF condition* has the following "nice" properties:

1. Given a *scaling coefficient sequence* $(\!(h_n)\!)$ (Definition 2.3 page 25), it is extremely simple to compute the *wavelet coefficient sequence* $(\!(g_n)\!)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44).
2. If $\{\mathbf{T}\phi\}$ of a *wavelet system* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44) is *orthonormal* and $\left((\!(g_n)\!), (\!(h_n)\!), N\right)$ satisfies the *CQF condition*, then $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\right\}$ is also *orthnormal* (Theorem 5.5 page 89).
3. If $\{\mathbf{T}\phi\}$ of a *wavelet system* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44) is *orthonormal* and $\left((\!(g_n)\!), (\!(h_n)\!), N\right)$ satisfies the *CQF condition*, then the *wavelet subspace* W_0 is *orthnormal* to the *scaling subspace* V_0 ($W_0 \perp V_0$) (Theorem 5.5 page 89).

Theorem 3.5. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $\check{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353) and* $\check{\mathsf{g}}(z)$ *the* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) of* $(\!(g_n)\!)$.

THM

$$\underbrace{g_n = \pm(-1)^n h^*_{N-n},\ N\in\mathbb{Z}}_{\text{CONJUGATE QUADRATURE FILTER}} \iff \check{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) = \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} \qquad (1)$$

$$\implies \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n g_n = \sqrt{2} \qquad (2)$$

$$\iff \check{\mathsf{g}}(z)\Big|_{z=-1} = \sqrt{2} \qquad (3)$$

$$\iff \check{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = \sqrt{2} \qquad (4)$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that CQF $\iff$ (1): by Theorem O.5 page 347

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that CQF $\Longrightarrow$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{g}(\pi) &= \breve{g}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} \\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\breve{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by } \textit{CQF theorem} && \text{(Theorem O.5 page 347)} \\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\pi N}\breve{h}^*(2\pi) \\
&= \pm(-1)^N(-1)^N\breve{h}^*(0) && \text{by } \textit{DTFT periodicity} && \text{(Proposition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \sqrt{2} && \text{by } \textit{admissibility condition} && \text{(Theorem 2.3 page 27)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (2) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (4): by Proposition P.4 page 356

✏

3.8 Support size

Theorem 3.6 (support size). [9] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j\rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44) induced by the* CQF CONDITIONS *(Theorem 3.5 page 50). Let* $\operatorname{supp} f$ *be the support of a function* f *(Definition 2.4 page 31).*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{supp}\phi &= \operatorname{supp} h \\
\operatorname{supp}\psi &= \left[\frac{N-(n_2-n_1)}{2} : \frac{N+(n_2-n_1)}{2}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\operatorname{supp}\phi = \operatorname{supp} h$: by Theorem 2.7 (page 32)

2. Proof that $\operatorname{supp}\psi = \left[\frac{N-(n_2-n_1)}{2} : \frac{N+(n_2-n_1)}{2}\right]$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{supp}\psi(x) &= \operatorname{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n \mathbf{DT}^n\phi(x)\right] && \text{by } \textit{wavelet dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 3.1 page 44)} \\
&= \operatorname{supp}\left[\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} g_n\phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \operatorname{supp}\left[\sqrt{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \pm(-1)^N h(N-n)\phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by } \textit{CQF conditions} && \text{(Theorem 3.5 page 50)} \\
&= \operatorname{supp}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h(N-n)\phi(2x-n)\right] && \text{by (3) lemma (page 32)} \\
&= \left\{x\in\mathbb{R} \,\middle|\, \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h(N-n)\phi(2x-n) \neq 0\right\}^- && \text{by definition of } \operatorname{supp} && \text{(Definition 2.4 page 31)} \\
&= \left[\frac{n_1}{2}+\frac{N-n_2}{2} : \frac{n_2}{2}+\frac{N-n_1}{2}\right] \\
&= \left[\frac{N-(n_2-n_1)}{2} : \frac{N+(n_2-n_1)}{2}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

[9] Mallat (1999) pages 243–244

CC BY-NC-ND

Example 3.1. Here are some examples using *Daubechies wavelet functions*.

EX

Daubechies-1
(Example 6.3 page 109)

Daubechies-2
(Example 6.4 page 110)

Daubechies-3
(Example 6.5 page 111)

3.9 Examples

No further examples of wavelets are presented in this section. Examples begin in the next chapter which is about a property called the *partition of unity*. Other design constraints leading to wavelets with more "powerful" properties include *vanishing moments* (CHAPTER 4 page 55), *orthonormality* (CHAPTER 5 page 67), *compact support* (CHAPTER 6 page 95), and *minimum phase* (Definition ?? page ??).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure 3.1: examples of the order structures of some analyses

BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 4

VANISHING MOMENTS CONSTRAINT

One of the most common wavelet design constraints is the number of *vanishing moments* p on the wavelet function such that

$$\langle \psi(x) \mid x^n \rangle = 0 \qquad \text{for} \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, p-1.$$

This chapter investigates wavelet design under the vanishing moment constraint.

4.1 Moments

Definition 4.1. [1]

DEF

*The quantity M_n is the n**th moment** of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ if*

$$M_n \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n \mathsf{f}(x)\, \mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{W}.$$

Definition 4.2. [2] *Let M_n be the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition 4.1 page 55) of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (Definition E.1 page 183).*

DEF

*The function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ has an n**th vanishing moment** if $M_n = 0$.*
*The function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ has p **vanishing moments** if $M_0 = M_1 = \cdots = M_{p-1} = 0$ and $M_p \neq 0$.*

Let $\left(\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(\mathbf{V}_j)\!), (\!(\mathbf{W}_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ be a *wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44). Let $\mathbf{P}$ be the *projection operator* that generates the subspace $\mathbf{V}_0$ and $\mathbf{Q}$ the *projection operator* that generates the subspace $\mathbf{W}_0$. The number of *vanishing moments* of a wavelet is important when using wavelets for the analysis and synthesis of a function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ as in

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathbf{T}^n \phi(x) \rangle}_{\text{Fourier coefficient}} \mathbf{T}^n \phi(x)}_{\textit{Fourier expansion}\ \text{(Definition L.11 page 276) of } \mathbf{P}\mathsf{f}(x)} + \underbrace{\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathbf{D}^k \mathbf{T}^n \psi(x) \right\rangle}_{\text{Fourier coefficient}} \mathbf{D}^k \mathbf{T}^n \psi(x)}_{\textit{Fourier expansion}\ \text{(Definition L.11 page 276) of } \mathbf{Q}\mathsf{f}(x)}$$

[1] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83

[2] Mallat (1999), page 241

All differentiable functions have a *Taylor polynomial expansion* (Theorem C.13 page 153). The *Fourier coefficients* (Definition L.11 page 276) of this polynomial decrease as the order of each term increases. The inner-product of the function and a wavelet with many vanishing moments results in a smaller value, giving a better approximation for a fixed number of Fourier coefficients.

Theorem 4.1.

THM

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \textit{a function } \mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ has } p \textit{ vanishing moments} \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \textit{a polynomial } \mathsf{q}(x) \textit{ is of order } p-1 \textit{ or less} \end{array}\right\} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{q} \rangle = 0}_{\mathsf{f} \textit{ is } \text{ORTHOGONAL } \textit{to } \mathsf{q}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,\middle|\, \sum_{n=0}^{p-1} a_n x^n \right\rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{p-1} a_n^* \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid x^n \rangle = \sum_{n=0}^{p-1} a_n^* \cdot 0 = 0$$

✏

4.2 Vanishing moments and the wavelet function

The number of vanishing moments a wavelet has is closely related to how the derivatives of the Fourier transforms of the wavelet and wavelet coefficients behave (next theorem).

Theorem 4.2. [3] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(W_j \right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n \right)\!\right)\right)$ *be a wavelet system. Let* $\tilde{\psi}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of* $\psi(x)$. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *and* $\breve{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFTs *(Definition P.1 page 353) of* $\left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right)$ *and* $\left(\!\left(g_n \right)\!\right)$, *respectively.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{llll} (A) & \underbrace{\langle \psi(x) \mid x^n \rangle = 0}_{\psi(x) \textit{ has a vanishing } n\textit{th moment}} & \Longleftrightarrow \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\psi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 & (B) \\ & & \Longleftrightarrow \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \breve{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 & (C) \\ & & \Longleftrightarrow \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n g_n = 0 & (D) \end{array}\right\} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{W}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(A) \iff (B)$: by Lemma K.2 page 260
2. Proof that $(B) \implies (C)$:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\psi}(2\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\ &= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \breve{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by Proposition 3.2 page 48} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \breve{\mathsf{g}}^{(k)}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-k)}(\omega)\Bigg|_{\omega=0} && \text{by } \textit{Leibnitz GPR} \quad \text{(Lemma E.2 page 185)} \\ &= \left[\breve{\mathsf{g}}^{(n)}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega) + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k} \breve{\mathsf{g}}^{(k)}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-k)}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=0} \\ &= \breve{\mathsf{g}}^{(n)}(0)\tilde{\phi}(0) + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \binom{n}{k} \breve{\mathsf{g}}^{(k)}(0)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-k)}(0) \end{aligned}$$

[3] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned}
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(0)}(0) &= 0\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(1)}(0) &= 0\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(2)}(0) &= 0\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(3)}(0) &= 0\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(4)}(0) &= 0\\
\vdots \qquad \vdots\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(n)}(0) &= 0\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \breve{g}^{(n)}(0) &= 0 \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $(B) \Longleftarrow (C)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\psi}(2\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} &= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \breve{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by Proposition 3.2 page 48}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \breve{g}^{(k)}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-k)}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by } \textit{Leibnitz GPR} \qquad \text{(Lemma E.2 page 185)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} 0\ \tilde{\phi}^{(n-k)}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $(C) \Longleftrightarrow (D)$: by Theorem P.5 page 361

✏

4.3 Vanishing moments and the scaling function

4.3.1 Results

Lemma 4.1. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a wavelet system and* M_n *the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition 4.1 page 55) of* $\phi(x)$.

LEM

$$\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \breve{h}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = 0 \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)M_n\delta_k$$

✎PROOF:

1. By Lemma K.1 page 260, $\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n M_n$.

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} &= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \breve{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} && \text{by Proposition 3.2 page 48}\\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\Bigg|_{\omega=2\pi k} && \text{by } \textit{Leibnitz GPR} \quad \text{(Lemma E.2 page 185)}\\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\underbrace{\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}(\pi k)}_{0 \text{ for } k \text{ odd}}\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}(\pi k)\\
&= \begin{cases}\displaystyle\sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}(\pi k)\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}(\pi k) & \text{for } k \text{ even}\\ 0 & \text{for } k \text{ odd}\end{cases} && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

3. And so

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 0) &= (-i)^n M_n\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 1) &= 0\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 2) &= \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}(2\pi 1)\underbrace{\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}(2\pi 1)}_{0} = 0\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 3) &= 0\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 4) &= \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}(2\pi 2)\underbrace{\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}(2\pi 2)}_{0} = 0\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 5) &= 0\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi 6) &= \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}\breve{\mathsf{h}}^{(m)}(2\pi 3)\underbrace{\tilde{\phi}^{(n-m)}(2\pi 3)}_{0} = 0\\
&\vdots\ \vdots\\
\tilde{\phi}^{(n)}(2\pi k) &= \bar{\delta}_k(-i)^n M_n
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem 4.3. [4] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j\rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *and* $\breve{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFTs *(Definition P.1 page 353) of* $\langle\!\langle h_n\rangle\!\rangle$ *and* $\langle\!\langle g_n\rangle\!\rangle$*, respectively.*

THM

Let $g_n = \pm(-1)^n h^*_{N-n}$ *(*CQF CONDITION*, Definition O.9 page 347). Then*

$$\left\{\begin{aligned}
&\underbrace{\langle\psi(x)\,|\,x^n\rangle = 0}_{(1)\ n\text{TH VANISHING MOMENT}} && \iff \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \breve{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 && (2)\\
& && \iff \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = 0 && (3)\\
& && \iff \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^k k^n h_k = 0 && (4)\\
& && \iff \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n g_k = 0 && (5)
\end{aligned}\right\} \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\iff$ (2): by Theorem 4.2 (page 56)

[4] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure 4.1: Zero locations for B-cardinal spline $N_p(x)$ and Daubechies-p scaling coefficients

2. Proof that (2) $\iff$ (3): by Theorem O.6 page 349
3. Proof that (3) $\iff$ (4): by Theorem P.5 page 361
4. Proof that (2) $\iff$ (5): by Theorem P.5 page 361; see also Theorem 4.2 page 56.
5. Proof that CQF $\not\Leftarrow$ (1): by Theorem P.5 page 361; see also Theorem 4.2 page 56.

✏

These relationships imply that a compactly supported scaling function with p vanishing moments has p zeros at $z = -1$ (due to the spline component) as illustrated in Figure 4.1.

4.3.2 Scaling function and polynomials

Linear combinations of $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\,|\,{}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\}$ of a wavelet system with p vanishing moments can perfectly represent any polynomial of order $p-1$ or less (Theorem 4.4 page 60). Example 4.1 page 60 illustrates this using the Strang-Fix condition (Lemma 4.2 page 59) to represent any polynomial of dgree 4 or less.

Lemma 4.2. [5] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a wavelet system and* M_n *the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition 4.1 page 55) of* $\phi(x)$.

LEM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\psi \text{ has } p\\ \text{vanishing}\\ \text{moments}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \displaystyle\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^n\phi(x-k) = M_n & \text{and}\\ 2. & \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n\bar{\delta}_k M_n & \end{array}\right\} \quad \text{for } n = 1,2,\ldots,p-1$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\iff$ (2): by Lemma K.3 page 261
2. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) assertion:

$$\begin{aligned}\langle\psi(x)\,|\,x^n\rangle = 0 &\iff \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n\check{\mathrm{h}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = 0 && \text{by Theorem 4.3 page 58}\\ &\Longrightarrow \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)M_n\delta_k && \text{by Lemma 4.1 page 57}\\ &\iff \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^n\phi(x-k) = M_n && \text{by } \textit{Strang-Fix condition} \quad \text{(Lemma K.3 page 261)}\end{aligned}$$

[5] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83, Goswami and Chan (1999), page 102, Mallat (1999), pages 241–243

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

Theorem 4.4. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a wavelet system with* p *vanishing moments. Let* $\mathsf{q}(x)$ *be a* POLYNOMIAL. *Let*

$$Q_p \triangleq \left\{\mathsf{q}(x) | \mathsf{q}(x) \text{ is a POLYNOMIAL of order } p-1 \text{ or less}\right\}.$$

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \psi \text{ has } p \text{ vanishing moments} \\ 2. & \mathsf{q}(x) \text{ is of order } p-1 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \text{There exists } (\!(b_n)\!)_0^{p-1} \text{ such that} \\ & \mathsf{q}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{p-1} b_n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n \phi(x-k) \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x) |_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\} \text{ is a BASIS for } Q_p. \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: This follows from Lemma 4.2 page 59 (Strang-Fix condition). See Example 4.1 page 60. ✏

Example 4.1. Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ be a *wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44) in which $\psi(x)$ has 5 vanishing moments.

EX

$$\begin{array}{lllllllllllll}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) & = & M_0 \\
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) & = & M_0 x & - & M_1 \\
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) & = & M_0 x^2 & - & 2M_1 x & + & M_2 \\
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) & = & M_0 x^3 & - & 3M_1 x^2 & + & 3M_2 x & - & M_3 \\
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^4\phi(x-k) & = & M_0 x^4 & - & 4M_1 x^3 & + & 6M_2 x^2 & - & 4M_3 x & + & M_4 \\
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^5\phi(x-k) & = & M_0 x^5 & - & 5M_1 x^4 & + & 10M_2 x^3 & - & 10M_3 x^2 & + & 5M_4 x & - & M_5
\end{array}$$

These equations can be represented in matrix algebra form as

EX

$$\begin{bmatrix} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^4\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M_0 & -4M_1 & 6M_2 & -4M_3 & M_4 \\ 0 & M_0 & -3M_1 & 3M_2 & -M_3 \\ 0 & 0 & M_0 & -2M_1 & M_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 & -M_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x^4 \\ x^3 \\ x^2 \\ x \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The operator matrix is triagular and therefore it's inverse always exists. The monomials $1, x, x^2, x^3$ and x^4 can be computed by computing the inverse of the operator matrix.

EX

$$\begin{array}{lllllllll}
1 & = & \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) \\
x & = & \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) & + & \frac{M_1}{M_0} \\
x^2 & = & \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) & + & \frac{2M_1}{M_0^2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) & + & \frac{2M_1^2 - M_2M_0}{M_0^2} \\
x^3 & = & \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) & + & \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) & + & \frac{6M_1^2 - 3M_2M_0}{M_0^3}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) \\
 & & & + & \frac{6M_1^3 - 6M_2M_1M_0 + M_3M_0^2}{M_0^3}
\end{array}$$

Note that each monomial x^n is simply a linear combination of $(\!(\phi(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} M_0 &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^0 \phi(x-k) \\ &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) \end{aligned}$$

$$M_1 = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^1 \phi(x-k)$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= t\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k) - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k)$$
$$= M_0 t - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k)$$

$$M_2 = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^2\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k) - 2t\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k) + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^2 M_0 - 2t(M_0 t - M_1) + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k)$$
$$= -M_0 x^2 + 2M_1 x + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k)$$

$$M_3 = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^3\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^3\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k) - 3x^2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k) + 3x\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k) - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^3 M_0 - 3x^2\left[M_0 t - M_1\right] + 3x\left[M_0 x^2 - 2M_1 x + M_2\right] - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k)$$
$$= (M_0 - 3M_0 + 3M_0)x^3 + (3M_1 - 6M_1)x^2 + 3M_2 x - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k)$$
$$= M_0 x^3 - 3M_1 x^2 + 3M_2 t - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k)$$

$$M_4 = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^4\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^4\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k) - 4x^3\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k) + 6x^2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k) - 4x\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k) + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^4 M_0 - 4x^3\left[M_0 t - M_1\right] + 6x^2\left[M_0 x^2 - 2M_1 x + M_2\right] - 4x\left[M_0 x^3 - 3M_1 x^2 + 3M_2 t - M_3\right]$$
$$+ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^4 M_0 + \left[-4M_0 x^4 + 4M_1 x^3\right] + \left[6M_0 x^4 - 12M_1 x^3 + 6M_2 x^2\right]$$
$$+ \left[-4M_0 x^4 + 12M_1 x^3 - 12M_2 x^2 + 4M_3 x\right] + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k)$$
$$= (M_0 - 4M_0 + 6M_0 - 4M_0)x^4 + (4M_1 - 12M_1 + 12M_1)x^3 + (6M_2 - 12M_2)x^2 + 4M_3 x$$
$$+ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k)$$
$$= -M_0 x^4 + 4M_1 x^3 - 6M_2 x^2 + 4M_3 x + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k)$$

$$M_5 = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^5\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^5\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k) - 5x^4\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k\phi(x-k) + 10x^3\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^2\phi(x-k) - 10x^2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^3\phi(x-k)$$
$$+ 5t\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^4\phi(x-k) - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}k^5\phi(x-k)$$
$$= x^5 M_0 - 5x^4\left[M_0 x - M_1\right] + 10x^3\left[M_0 x^2 - 2M_1 x + M_2\right] - 10x^2\left[M_0 x^3 - 3M_1 x^2 + 3M_2 x - M_3\right]$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\quad + 5t\left[M_0x^4 - 4M_1x^3 + 6M_2x^2 - 4M_3x + M_4\right] - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^5\phi(x-k)\\
&= x^5M_0\left[-5M_0x^5 + 5M_1x^4\right] + \left[10M_0x^5 - 20M_1x^4 + 10M_2x^3\right]\\
&\quad + \left[-10M_0x^5 + 30M_1x^4 - 30M_2x^3 + 10M_3x^2\right]\\
&\quad + \left[5M_0x^5 - 20M_1x^4 + 30M_2x^3 - 20M_3x^2 + 5M_4x\right] - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^5\phi(x-k)\\
&= (M_0 - 5M_0 + 10M_0 + 5M_0 - 10M_0)x^5 + (5M_1 - 20M_1 + 30M_1 - 20M_1)x^4\\
&\quad + (10M_2 - 30M_2 + 30M_2)x^3 + (10M_3 - 20M_3)x^2 + 5M_4x - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^5\phi(x-k)\\
&= M_0x^5 - 5M_1x^4 + 10M_2x^3 - 10M_3x^2 + 5M_4x - \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^5\phi(x-k)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
M_0 & -3M_1 & 3M_2 & -M_3 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0\\
0 & M_0 & -2M_1 & M_2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0\\
0 & 0 & M_0 & -M_1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0\\
0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
M_0 & -3M_1 & 3M_2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{M_3}{M_0}\\
0 & M_0 & -2M_1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{M_2}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{M_1}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
M_0 & -3M_1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{3M_2}{M_0} & -\frac{3M_2M_1}{M_0^2} + \frac{M_3}{M_0}\\
0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{2M_1}{M_0} & \frac{2M_1^2}{M_0^2} - \frac{M_2}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{M_1}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3M_1}{M_0} & \frac{6M_1^2}{M_0^2} - \frac{3M_2}{M_0} & \frac{6M_1^3}{M_0^3} - \frac{3M_1M_2}{M_0^2} - \frac{3M_2M_1}{M_0^2} + \frac{M_3}{M_0}\\
0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{2M_1}{M_0} & \frac{2M_1^2}{M_0^2} - \frac{M_2}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{M_1}{M_0}\\
0 & 0 & 0 & M_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{6M_1^2}{M_0^3} - \frac{3M_2}{M_0^2} & \frac{6M_1^3}{M_0^4} - \frac{3M_1M_2}{M_0^3} - \frac{3M_2M_1}{M_0^3} + \frac{M_3}{M_0^2}\\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{2M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{2M_1^2}{M_0^3} - \frac{M_2}{M_0^2}\\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{M_1}{M_0^2}\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0}
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cccccccc}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{6M_1^2-3M_2M_0}{M_0^3} & \frac{6M_1^3-6M_2M_1M_0+M_3M_0^2}{M_0^4}\\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{2M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{2M_1^2-M_2M_0}{M_0^3}\\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{M_1}{M_0^2}\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0}
\end{array}\right| \rightarrow
$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$$\begin{bmatrix} x^3 \\ x^2 \\ x \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{6M_1^2-3M_2M_0}{M_0^3} & \frac{6M_1^3-6M_2M_1M_0+M_3M_0^2}{M_0^4} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{2M_1}{M_0^2} & \frac{2M_1^2-M_2M_0}{M_0^3} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} & \frac{M_1}{M_0^2} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{M_0} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) \\ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x^3 &= \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) + \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) + \frac{6M_1^2-3M_2M_0}{M_0^3}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) \\ &\quad + \frac{6M_1^3-6M_2M_1M_0+M_3M_0^2}{M_0^4}\underbrace{\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\phi(x-k)}_{M_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^3\phi(x-k) + \frac{3M_1}{M_0^2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) + \frac{6M_1^2-3M_2M_0}{M_0^3}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) \\ &\quad + \frac{6M_1^3-6M_2M_1M_0+M_3M_0^2}{M_0^3} \\ x^2 &= \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^2\phi(x-k) + \frac{2M_1}{M_0^2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \phi(x-k) + \frac{2M_1^2-M_2M_0}{M_0^2} \\ x &= \frac{1}{M_0}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k\phi(x-k) + \frac{M_1}{M_0} \end{aligned}$$

✏

Conjecture 4.1. [6] Let $\left(\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle \mathbf{V}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle \mathbf{W}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ be a wavelet system with p vanishing moments and let M_n be the nth moment (Definition 4.1 page 55) of $\phi(x)$.

CNJ $$\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n\phi(x-k) = \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m M_m x^{n-m}$$

✎PROOF: This conjecture is supported by the results of Example 4.1 (page 60). However, I have no proof at this time.

$$\begin{aligned} (-1)^n M_n &= (-1)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^n\phi(x-k) \\ &= (-1)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m} x^{n-m}(-k)^m\phi(x-k) \\ &= (-1)^n \sum_{m=0}^{n}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m x^{n-m}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) \\ &= \left[(-1)^{2n}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n\phi(x-k)\right] + (-1)^n\sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m x^{n-m}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) \\ &= \left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n\phi(x-k)\right] + (-1)^n\sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m x^{n-m}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) \end{aligned}$$

[6] Zumkeller (2005) http://oeis.org/A110555 $\langle T(n,k) \triangleq \sum_{k=0,1,\ldots,n}\binom{n}{k}(-1)^k\rangle$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n\phi(x-k) &= -(-1)^n\sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m x^{n-m}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) + (-1)^n M_n\\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m \underbrace{\left[(-1)^{n-1}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k)\right]}_{M_m?} x^{n-m} + (-1)^n M_n
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
M_m &\stackrel{?}{=} (-1)^{n-1}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k)\\
M_m &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^m\phi(x-k)\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{p=0}^{m}\binom{m}{p}x^{m-p}(-k)^p\phi(x-k)\\
&= (-1)^m\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) + \underbrace{\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{p=0}^{m-1}\binom{m}{p}x^{m-p}(-k)^p\phi(x-k)}_{0?}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n\phi(x-k) &= -(-1)^n\sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m x^{n-m}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k) + (-1)^n M_n\\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m(-1)^{n-1}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^m\phi(x-k)\right]x^{n-m} + (-1)^n M_n\\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{n-1}\binom{n}{m}(-1)^m(-1)^{n-1}\left[\sum_{p=0}^{m-1}\binom{m}{p}(-1)^p(-1)^{m-1}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^p\phi(x-k)\right]x^{m-p} + (-1)^m M_m\right]x^{n-m}\\
&\quad + (-1)^n M_n
\end{aligned}$$

✏

4.3.3 Scaling function and continuity

Theorem 4.5. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j\rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n\rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of* $\phi(x)$.

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \psi \text{ has } p\geq 2 \text{ VANISHING MOMENTS} & \text{and}\\ (2). & g_n = (-1)^n h^*_{N-n} & [\text{CQF CONDITION (Definition O.9 page 347)}]\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is CONTINUOUS}\\ \text{at } \omega = 0\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
(1)\text{ and }(2) &\Longrightarrow \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n\bar{\delta}_k M_n && \text{by Lemma 4.2 page 59}\\
&\Longrightarrow \frac{d}{d\omega}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^1 M_1\\
&\Longrightarrow \frac{d}{d\omega}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 && \text{by (1) and def. of } \textit{vanishing moments} \text{ (Definition 4.2 page 55)}\\
&\Longrightarrow \frac{d}{d\omega}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} < \infty\\
&\Longrightarrow \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is } \textit{continuous} \text{ at } \omega = 0
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✏

4.4 Sufficient conditions

How can we design a *wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44) to have p *vanishing moments*? One way is to design the *scaling coefficient sequence* (Definition 2.3 page 25) $(\!(h_n)\!)$ in the *z-domain* (Definition O.4 page 340) such that $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ includes the factor $\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p$ (next theorem). This factor is included in the $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ of the *Daubechies-p wavelet system* (Definition 6.1 page 105). A similar factor (Lemma M.5 page 310) also appears in the *Fourier transform* (Definition K.2 page 255) of *B-splines* (Definition M.2 page 295).

Lemma 4.3. [7] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $(\!(q_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be a sequence with* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340)* $\check{\mathsf{q}}(z)$.

LEM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lrcll} (1). & \check{\mathsf{h}}(z) & = & \left(\dfrac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \check{\mathsf{q}}(z) & \textit{and} \\ (2). & g_n & = & (-1)^n h^*_{N-n} & [\text{CQF CONDITION } (\textit{Definition O.9 page 347})] \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l} \psi \textit{ has } p \\ \textit{vanishing moments} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \check{\mathsf{q}}(z) \qquad \text{by (1)}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \quad \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) = \left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p \tilde{\mathsf{q}}(\omega) \qquad \text{by Definition P.1 page 353}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \quad \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p \tilde{\mathsf{q}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi}$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \left[\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^k \left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p\right] \left[\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^{n-k} \tilde{\mathsf{q}}(\omega)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} \qquad \text{by Lemma E.2 page 185}$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} \left[\frac{p!}{2^p(p-k)!} \prod_{k=1}^{p} \left[ie^{i\omega}\left(1+e^{i\omega}\right)^k\right]\right] \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}^{n-k} \tilde{\mathsf{q}}(\omega)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}$$

$$= 0$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow \quad \psi \text{ has } p \text{ vanishing moments} \qquad \text{by Theorem 4.3 page 58}$$

✏

[7] Daubechies (1992), page 155, Vidakovic (1999), pages 80–82

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 5

ORTHONORMALITY CONSTRAINT

5.1 Definition

In any Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ with a subspace $\boldsymbol{Y}$, $\boldsymbol{Y} \dotplus \boldsymbol{Y}^{\perp} = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (*Projection Theorem*). The subspace $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\perp}$ is the *orthogonal complement* of $\boldsymbol{Y}$ in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. In wavelet theory, the orthogonal complement of a scaling subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_n$ in the subspace $\boldsymbol{V}_{n+1}$ is the *wavelet subspace* $\boldsymbol{W}_n$ (next definition). The wavelet subspace $\boldsymbol{W}_n$ is *unique* with respect to $\boldsymbol{V}_n$ because in a Hilbert space, $\boldsymbol{W}_n^{\perp} = \boldsymbol{V}_n^{\perp\perp} = \boldsymbol{V}_n$.

Definition 3.2 (page 44) defines a *general* wavelet system. An *orthonormal wavelet system* is simply a wavelet system with additional constraints of orthonormality (Definition 5.1 page 67).

Definition 5.1. *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{W}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44) and* $\boldsymbol{\Gamma} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *its component* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\bar{\delta}_n$ *be the* KRONECKER DELTA FUNCTION *(Definition L.12 page 276).*

DEF

1. *The* MRA SYSTEM $\boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ *is* ***orthonormal*** *if* $\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \phi \rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}.$
2. *The* WAVELET SYSTEM $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *is* ***orthonormal*** *if* $\langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \psi \rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$
   and $\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \psi \rangle = 0 \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}.$

In the case of (1), $\boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ *is an* ***orthonormal MRA system****.*
In the case of (2), $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *is an* ***orthonormal wavelet system****.*

5.2 Orthonormal MRA systems

5.2.1 Scaling coefficients from scaling function

The *dilation equation* (Theorem 2.1 page 22) demonstrates that if we know the *scaling coefficients* $\left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right)$ (Definition 2.3 page 25), we can (recursively) compute the scaling function ϕ (Definition 2.1 page 16). The converse is in general not so easy to compute. However, in an *orthonormal MRA system*, we can compute the scaling coefficients $\left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right)$ from the scaling function ϕ (next).

Proposition 5.1. [1] *Let* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25).*

[1] Mallat (1999) page 228 ⟨(7.29)⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 38

PRP

$$\underbrace{\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n}_{\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}\ \textit{is}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL}} \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \mathsf{h}_n = \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\phi^*(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}t \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,\middle|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\rangle && \text{by the } \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \left\langle \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-m) \,\middle|\, \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-n) \right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \int_{x\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-m)\sqrt{2}\phi^*(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\phi(u-m)\sqrt{2}\phi^*(u-n)\tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq 2x \implies && \mathrm{d}u = 2\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(u-m)\phi^*(u-n)\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(u-m)\phi^*(u-n)\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(v)\phi^*(v-(n-m))\,\mathrm{d}v && \text{where } v \triangleq u-m \implies && u = v+m\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{n-m}\phi\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \bar{\delta}_{m-n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \mathsf{h}_n && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle &= \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\phi(x-n)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \left\langle \phi \,\middle|\, \tfrac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\phi(2x-n) \right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\phi^*(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}t && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 5.1 (Haar scaling function).

EX

$$\text{Let } \phi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x\in[0:1)\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

$$\text{Then, } \mathsf{h}_n = \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n\in\{0,1\}\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

$\mathsf{h}_n = \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle$ by Proposition 5.1 page 67

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(x) \,|\, \mathbf{DT}^{-n}\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \phi \\
&= \left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2}\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} && \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(x) \,|\, \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\right\rangle && \text{by properties of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(x)\,\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } L^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\int_0^1 \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} 1\,\mathrm{d}x &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \quad \text{for } n=0 \\ \sqrt{2}\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{1} 1\,\mathrm{d}x &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \quad \text{for } n=1 \\ 0 &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{cases} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

5.2.2 Necessary conditions

Proposition 5.2. [2] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of* $\phi(x)$.

PRP

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{ll} \text{(A).} & \left(\!\left(\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right)\!\right) \text{ is ORTHONORMAL} \quad \text{and} \\ \text{(B).} & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is CONTINUOUS at } 0 \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lll} \text{(1).} & \left|\tilde{\phi}(0)\right| = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} & \text{and} \\ \text{(2).} & \left|\displaystyle\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\right| = 1 & \end{array}\right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

1. Let $\mathbf{P}_j$ be the *projection operator* that generates the scaling subspace V_j such that
   $\mathbf{V}_j = \left\{\mathbf{P}_j \mathsf{f} \,|\, \mathsf{f} \in H\right\}$

2. Let $\mathsf{g}(x)$ a function in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ such that its *Fourier transform* (Definition K.2 page 255) $\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ has support $\operatorname{supp}\tilde{\mathsf{g}} \subseteq [-1 : 1]$

3. lemma: The set $\left\{\dfrac{1}{2^{j/2}\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n} \,\middle|\, n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ is an *orthonormal basis* for functions in $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ that have support in $\left[-2^j\pi : 2^j\pi\right]$. Proof: This follows from Theorem J.3 page 254.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{-2^j\pi}^{2^j\pi} \left[\frac{1}{2^{j/2}\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n}\right]\left[\frac{1}{2^{j/2}\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}m}\right]^* \mathrm{d}\omega &= \int_{-2^j\pi}^{2^j\pi} \frac{1}{2^j(2\pi)} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}(n-m)}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \frac{1}{2^j(2\pi)}\left(2^j\pi + 2^j\pi\right)\bar{\delta}_{nm} \\
&= \bar{\delta}_{nm}
\end{aligned}
$$

[2] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 31 ⟨Proposition 2.16⟩, Pinsky (2002) pages 315–316 ⟨6.4.3.1 Additional remarks⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

4. Proof for (1): Let $A \triangleq [-1 : 1]$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\|g\|^2 &= \left\|\lim_{j\to\infty} \mathbf{P}_j g\right\|^2 \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \mathbf{P}_j g \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by (A) and } \textit{Parseval's Identity} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle g \,|\, \mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{P}_j && \text{(item (1) page 69)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}g \,|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.2 page 256)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \tilde{g}(\omega) \,\middle|\, \frac{1}{2^{j/2}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n} \tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right)\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by Proposition 1.12 page 9} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right) \frac{1}{2^{j/2}} e^{i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n}\right|^2 d\omega && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\left\langle \sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right) \,\middle|\, \frac{1}{2^{j/2}\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2^j}n}\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)} \\
&= \lim_{j\to\infty} \left\|\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2^j}\right)\right\|^2 && \text{by (3) lemma and } \textit{Parseval's Identity} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)} \\
&= \left\|\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{g}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}^*(0)\right\|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\left|\tilde{\phi}^*(0)\right|^2 \|\tilde{g}(\omega)\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\| && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)} \\
&= 2\pi\left|\tilde{\phi}(0)\right|^2 \|g\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.2 page 256)} \\
&\implies \left|\tilde{\phi}(0)\right| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof for (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)\, dx\right| &= \left|\sqrt{2\pi}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)e^{-i\omega x}\, dx\right|_{\omega=0} \\
&= \left|\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)} \\
&= \left|\sqrt{2\pi}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\right| && \text{by (1)} && \text{(item (4) page 70)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✍

Every *MRA system* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle \boldsymbol{V}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$, regardless of whether it is *orthonormal* or not, has the following necessary conditions on $\langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle$:

1. $\displaystyle\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n = \sqrt{2}$ — *admissibility condition* (Theorem 2.3 page 27)
2. $\displaystyle\langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k^* \left\langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi\right\rangle$ — *quadrature condition* in "time" (Theorem 2.4 page 29)
3. $\displaystyle\tilde{\phi}(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$ — *frequency dilation equation* (Lemma 2.1 page 22)
4. $\displaystyle\left|\check{h}(\omega)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) + \left|\check{h}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega+\pi) = 2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(2\omega)$ — *quadrature condition* in "frequency" (Theorem 2.5 page 30)

In an *orthonormal MRA system*, the *orthonormal* property is equivalent to $\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1$ (where $\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}$ is the *auto-power spectrum*), and so the quadrature conditions simplify considerably (next theorem).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

The *orthonormal quadrature conditions* in "time" and "frequency" are also equivalent to each other and are implied by the $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1$ condition. However, the *orthonormal quadrature conditions* are *not* equivalent to the $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1$ condition (Counterexample 5.1 page 71).

Lemma 5.1 (orthonormal quadrature conditions). [3] *Let* $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *of* $\left(\!\left(\mathsf{h}_n\right)\!\right)$ *(Definition P.1 page 353). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *of* $\phi(x)$ *(Definition R.3 page 371).*

LEM

$$\underbrace{\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \phi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}}_{(1)\ \{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}\ \textit{is}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1}_{(2)\ \textit{auto-power spectrum is 1}}$$

$$\underset{\not\Longleftarrow}{\Longrightarrow} \quad \underbrace{\left\{ \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m \mathsf{h}^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z} \right\}}_{(3)\ \text{ORTHOGONAL QUADRATURE CONDITION}\ \textit{in "time"}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\left\{ \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2 \right\}}_{(4)\ \text{ORTHOGONAL QUADRATURE CONDITION}\ \textit{in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2): by Theorem R.3 page 377.

2. Proof that [(1)/(2)] $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \mathsf{h}^*_{m-2n} &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}^*_k \bar{\delta}_{k-m+2n} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}^*_k \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi \right\rangle && \text{by (1)} \\
&= \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \phi\rangle && \text{by } \textit{quadrature condition in "time"} && \text{(Theorem 2.4 page 29)}\\
&= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (3) $\not\Longrightarrow$ [(1)/(2)]: by Counterexample 5.1 page 71.

4. Proof that (3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (4): by Lemma 5.2 page 81.

✏

Counterexample 5.1. [4] Let $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ be an *MRA system* (Definition 2.3 page 25).

CNT

Let $\phi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \frac{1}{3} & \text{for } x \in [0:3) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

$$\text{Then,} \left\{ \begin{aligned} \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) + \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi) &= 2 && \text{but} \\ \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) &= \tfrac{1}{9}[3 + 4\cos(\omega) + 2\cos(2\omega)] && \text{and so} \\ \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) + \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi) = 2 \quad &\not\Longrightarrow \quad \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) = 1. \end{aligned} \right\}$$

[3] Chui (1992), page 135, Mallat (1999) pages 229–238, Goswami and Chan (1999), page 110, Vaidyanathan (1990), page 65

[4] Vidakovic (1999) page 57 ⟨Remark 3.3.3⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\phi}(\omega) &\triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi(x) \\
&\triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{1}_{[0:3)}e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \phi(x) \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{0}^{3} e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{e^{-i\omega x}}{-i\omega}\right)\Bigg|_0^3 \\
&= \left(\frac{3i}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i3\omega}-1}{3\omega}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) &= \sqrt{2}\frac{\tilde{\phi}(2\omega)}{\tilde{\phi}(\omega)} && \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\frac{\left(\frac{3i}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i4\omega}-1}{6\omega}\right)}{\left(\frac{3i}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i2\omega}-1}{3\omega}\right)} && \text{by Lemma M.5 page 310} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(\frac{e^{-i6\omega}-1}{e^{-i3\omega}-1}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(\frac{e^{-i6\omega}-1}{e^{-i3\omega}-1}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i3\omega}+1}{e^{-i3\omega}+1}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(\frac{\left(e^{-i6\omega}-1\right)\left(e^{-i3\omega}+1\right)}{e^{-i6\omega}-1}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(1+e^{-i3\omega}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\left(e^{i\frac{3}{2}\omega}+e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\left[2\cos\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)\right] \\
&= \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\cos\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(1+e^{-i3(\omega+\pi)}\right) && \text{by previous } \breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) \text{ result} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(1+e^{-i3\omega}e^{-i3\pi}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\left(1-e^{-i3\omega}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\left(e^{i\frac{3}{2}\omega}-e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\right) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\left[2i\sin\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)\right] \\
&= i\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\sin\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\left|\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2+\left|\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \left|\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\cos\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)\right|^2 + \left|i\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{3}{2}\omega}\sin\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\cos^2\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right) + 2\sin^2\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right) \\
&= 2\left[\cos^2\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right) + \sin^2\left(\frac{3}{2}\omega\right)\right] \\
&= 2 && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} && \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) &\triangleq \check{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(z)\big|_{z=e^{in\omega}} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi} && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)} \\
&\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle\, z^{-n}\Big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi} && \text{(Definition R.2 page 371)} \\
&\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} \frac{1}{3}\mathbb{1}_{[0:3)}(x)\frac{1}{3}\mathbb{1}_{[-n:3-n)}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\right] z^{-n}\Big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} && \text{by definition of } \phi \\
&= \frac{1}{9}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_0^3 \mathbb{1}_{[-n:3-n)}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\right] z^{-n}\Big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{9}\left[z^{-2} + 2z^{-1} + 3 + 2z + z^2\right]\Big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \frac{1}{9}\left[e^{-i2\omega} + 2e^{-i\omega} + 3 + 2e^{-i\omega} + e^{-i2\omega}\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{9}[3 + 4\cos(\omega) + 2\cos(2\omega)]
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem 5.1. *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle \boldsymbol{V}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44).
Let $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ *be the* Z-TRANSFORM (Definition O.4 page 340) *of* h.

THM

$$
\underbrace{\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}}_{\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}\ \textit{is}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL}} \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \left\{\begin{array}{llll}
1. & \displaystyle\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^m \mathsf{h}_m & = 0 & \text{(LOW-PASS FILTER)} \quad \textit{and} \\
2. & \displaystyle\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m\phi & = 1 & \text{(PARTITION OF UNITY)} \quad \textit{and} \\
3. & \check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\big|_{z=-1} & = 0 & \text{(ZERO AT } z=-1\text{)}
\end{array}\right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1):

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[-2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2\right]_{\omega=0} && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal quadrature condition} && \text{(Lemma 5.2 page 81)} \\
&= -2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(0)\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\pi)\right|^2 \\
&= -2 + \left|\sqrt{2}\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\pi)\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{admissibility condition} && \text{(Theorem 2.3 page 27)} \\
&= 0 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\pi)\right|^2 \\
&= \left|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n e^{-i\omega n}\right|^2_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{h}} && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \left|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n \mathsf{h}_n\right|^2 && \text{because } e^{-i\pi n} = \left(e^{-i\pi}\right)^n = (-1)^n \\
\Longrightarrow \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n \mathsf{h}_n &= \pm 0 = 0
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Proof for (2): by (1) and Theorem 2.8 page 34.

3. Proof for (3): by (1) and Proposition P.4 page 356.

✏

5.2.3 Sufficient conditions

The *admissibility condition* (Theorem 2.3 page 27) and *quadrature condition* (Lemma 5.2 page 81) give **necessary** conditions for $(\!|\mathsf{h}_n|\!)$ to generate an orthogonal scaling function. Theorem 5.2 (next) shows that these two conditions are not only **necessary**, but also **sufficient** conditions.

Theorem 5.2. [5] *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the* TRANSLATION OPERATOR *and* $\mathbf{D}$ *the* DILATION OPERATOR *(Definition 1.3 page 2). Let* $\left\{\mathsf{h}_n \middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}$ *be a sequence in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}$ *over some field* $\mathbb{F}$ *and with* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353)* $\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$. *Let* $\phi(x)$ *be a function in* $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *with* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255)* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *and defined in terms of* $(\!|\mathsf{h}_n|\!)$ *as*

$$\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right) \qquad \textit{and} \qquad \mathbf{V}_j \triangleq \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{D}^j\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)\middle| n\in\mathbb{Z}\right\}\ \forall j\in\mathbb{Z}.$$

Let an MRA *be defined as in Definition 2.1 page 16.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (A). & \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_n = \sqrt{2} & \textit{and} \\ (B). & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{h}_m h^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ (C). & \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\ \textit{is}\ \text{CONTINUOUS}\ \textit{at}\ 0 & \textit{and} \\ (D). & \inf_{\omega\in[-\pi/2:\pi/2]}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right| > 0 & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\left(\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ (\!|\mathbf{V}_j|\!),\ \phi,\ (\!|h_n|\!)\right)\ \textit{is an} \\ \text{ORTHONORMAL MRA SYSTEM} \\ \textit{(Definition 2.3 page 25)}\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (A) $\Longleftarrow$ (right hypothesis): by Theorem 2.3 page 27.

2. Proof that (B) $\Longleftarrow$ (right hypothesis): by Lemma 5.2 page 81.

3. Proof that $(\!|\mathbf{T}^n\phi|\!)$ is *orthonormal*:

   (a) lemma: $(\!|\mathbf{T}^n\phi|\!)$ is *orthonormal* $\Longleftrightarrow$ $\int_{\mathbb{R}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega = \bar{\delta}_n$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{\delta}_n &= \langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} && (\text{for } \Longrightarrow \text{ case}) \\
&= \left\langle\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\phi\,\middle|\,\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && (\text{Theorem K.2 page 256}) \\
&= \left\langle\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\,\middle|\,e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right\rangle && \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9} \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\left[\tilde{\phi}(\omega)e^{-i\omega n}\right]^*\mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle \text{ in } \mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && (\text{Definition D.9 page 168}) \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by right hypothesis} && (\text{for } \Longleftarrow \text{ case})
\end{aligned}$$

[5] Mallat (1999) pages 229–234, Mallat (1989), page 76, Mallat (2009) pages 271–276 ⟨Theorem 7.2⟩, Meyer (1992)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(b) definition: $\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right) \mathbb{1}_A(\omega)$ and where $A \triangleq \left[-2^N\pi : 2^N\pi\right]$.

(c) definition: Let $\mathtt{I}_N(n) \triangleq \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega$

(d) lemma: $\mathtt{I}_N(n) = 2\pi\bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall N \in \mathbb{N}$. Proof:

i. $N = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathtt{I}_1(n) &\triangleq \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \Bigg|_{N=1} && \text{by definition of } \mathtt{I}_N \quad \text{(definition 3c page 75)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{0} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi} e^{in\omega} \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= 2\pi\bar{\delta}_n
\end{aligned}$$

ii. Proof that $\mathtt{I}_{N+1}(n) = \mathtt{I}_N(n)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathtt{I}_{N+1}(n) \\
&= \int_0^{2^{N+1}\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathtt{I}_N \text{ (definition 3c page 75)} \\
&= \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega + \int_{\omega=2^N\pi}^{\omega=2^{N+1}\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega + \int_{v=0}^{v=2^N\pi} e^{i(v-2^N\pi)n} \prod_{k=1}^{N} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v+2^N\pi}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}v \\
&\quad \text{where } v \triangleq \omega - 2^N\pi \implies \omega = v + 2^N\pi \\
&= \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2 \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&+ \int_{v=0}^{v=2^N\pi} e^{in(v} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v}{2^N}+\pi\right)\right| \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v}{2^k}+2^{N-k}\pi\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}v \\
&= \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \frac{1}{2}\left[\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}+\pi\right)\right|^2\right] \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353} \\
&= \int_0^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega} \frac{1}{2}[2] \prod_{k=1}^{N-1} \frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by (B) and } \textit{orthonormal quad. cond.} \text{ (Lemma 5.1 page 71)} \\
&= \mathtt{I}_N(n) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathtt{I}_N(n) \text{ (definition 3c page 75)}
\end{aligned}$$

iii. Proof that $\mathtt{I}_N(n) = 2\pi\bar{\delta}_n$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathtt{I}_N(n) &= \mathtt{I}_1(n) && \text{by induction and (3(d)ii) lemma page 75} \\
&= 2\pi\bar{\delta}_n && \text{by (3(d)i) lemma page 75}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

(e) lemma: $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \forall N\in\mathbb{N}$. Proof:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{in\omega}\left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-2^N\pi:2^N\pi]}\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}_N(\omega) \text{ (definition 3b page 75)} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-2^N\pi}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-2^N\pi}^{0} e^{in\omega}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{v=0}^{v=2^N\pi} e^{i(v-2^N\pi)n}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v}{2^k}-2^{N-k}\pi\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}v \\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{where } v \triangleq \omega+2^N\pi \implies \omega = v-2^N\pi \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{v=0}^{v=2^N\pi} e^{ivn}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v}{2^k}-\pi\right)\right|^2\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{v}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}v \\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}-\pi+2\pi\right)\right|^2\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\frac{1}{2}\left[\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2+\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}+\pi\right)\right|^2\right]\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2^N\pi} e^{in\omega}\frac{1}{2}[2]\prod_{k=1}^{N-1}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \text{by (B) and Lemma 5.2 page 81} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathtt{I}_N(n) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathtt{I}_N(n) \text{ (definition 3c page 75)} \\
&= \bar{\delta}_n \qquad \text{by (3d) lemma page 75}
\end{aligned}
$$

(f) lemma: $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ is in $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ (alternatively, proof that $\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2$ is *integrable*). Proof:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \lim_{N\to\infty}\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}_N(\omega) && \text{(definition 3b page 75)} \\
&\le \lim_{N\to\infty}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 \mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by } \textit{Fatou's Lemma} \\
&= 1 && \text{by (3e) lemma page 76} \\
&\implies \quad \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}
\end{aligned}
$$

(g) lemma (*upper-bound condition*): $\exists C \ge 1$ such that $\left|\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\right| \le C\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2$. Proof:

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

i. Proof for $|\omega| > 2^N\pi$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\right| &= \left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } |\cdot| \\
&= \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-2^N\pi:2^N\pi]}(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by def. of } \tilde{\phi}_N(\omega) \quad \text{(definition 3b page 75)} \\
&= 0 \qquad \forall|\omega| > 2^N\pi && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&\le \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } |\cdot|
\end{aligned}$$

ii. lemma: $\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 \ge \frac{1}{2\pi C}\ \forall|\omega|\le\pi \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \left|\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\right| \le C\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2\ \forall|\omega|\le 2^N\pi$

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 &= \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \\
&= \left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by Lemma 2.2 page 24} \\
&= 2\pi\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2\left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \\
&= 2\pi\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by def. of } \tilde{\phi}_N(\omega) \quad \text{(definition 3b page 75)} \\
&\ge (2\pi)\frac{1}{2\pi C}\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \frac{1}{C}\left|\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)\right|^2 e^{in\omega}\right|
\end{aligned}$$

$\Longrightarrow$ right hypothesis

iii. Proof for $0 \le |\omega| < \varepsilon$:

A. lemma: There exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 \le 2 = \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(0)\right|^2$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 &\le \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 \\
&= 2 && \text{by (B) and (Lemma 5.1 page 71)} \\
&= \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(0)\right|^2 && \text{by (A) and Proposition P.2 page 355}
\end{aligned}$$

B. It follows from (3(g)iiiA) lemma that there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $\forall|\omega| \le \varepsilon$

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &\ge \log_e\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\right) && \text{by (3(g)iiiA) lemma} \\
-|\omega| &\le \log_e\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2\right) \le 0
\end{aligned}$$

C. last step in proof for $0 < \varepsilon < |\omega| \le 2^N\pi$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 &= \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\exp\log_e\left[\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\exp\left\{\log_e\left[\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2\right]\right\}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \tfrac{1}{2\pi}\exp\left\{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\log_e\left[\tfrac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2\right]\right\}\\
&\geq \tfrac{1}{2\pi}\exp\left\{\log_e\left[\tfrac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^0}\right)\right|^2\right]\right\}\\
&\geq \tfrac{1}{2\pi}e^{-|\omega|}\\
&\geq \tfrac{1}{2\pi}e^{-\varepsilon}\\
&\Longrightarrow \quad \text{upper bound condition} \qquad \text{by (3(g)ii) lemma page 77}
\end{aligned}
$$

iv. Proof for $\varepsilon \leq |\omega| \leq \pi$:

A. Choose N such that $2^{-N}\pi < \varepsilon$

B. Let $K = \inf_{\omega\in[-\omega/2:\omega/2]}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right| > 0$

C. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 &= \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\\
&= \left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by Lemma 2.2 page 24}\\
&= 2\pi\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^N}\right)\right|^2\left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2\\
&\geq 2\pi\frac{1}{2\pi}e^{-\varepsilon}\frac{1}{2\pi}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by item (3(g)ivA) and (3(g)iiiC) lemma page 77}\\
&\geq \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{-\varepsilon}\prod_{k=1}^{N}\frac{1}{2}|K|^2\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{-\varepsilon}\frac{K^{2N}}{2^N}
\end{aligned}
$$

(h) Final step in proof for (2) (proof that $(\!|\mathbf{T}^n\phi|\!)$ is *orthonormal*):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}}\left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega)e^{in\omega}\right|^2\,\mathrm{d}\omega &= \int_{\mathbb{R}}\lim_{N\to\infty}\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)e^{in\omega}\right|^2\,\mathrm{d}\omega\\
&= \lim_{N\to\infty}\int_{\mathbb{R}}\left|\tilde{\phi}_N(\omega)e^{in\omega}\right|^2\,\mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by (3g) lemma and } \textit{Dominated Convergence Theorem}\\
&= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by (3e) lemma page 76}\\
\Longrightarrow (2) && \text{by (3a) lemma page 74}
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Proof that $(\!|V_j|\!)$ is an *MRA* (Definition 2.1 page 16):

(a) $V_j \triangleq \operatorname{span}(\!|\mathbf{T}^n\mathbf{D}^j\phi|\!)$, so we just need to prove that ϕ is a *scaling function* (Definition 2.1 page 16), and then the claim that $(\!|V_j|\!)$ is an *MRA* follows from Theorem 2.6 page 31.

(b) Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}$ is an *MRA*:

i. Proof that $(\!|\mathbf{T}^n\phi|\!)$ is a *Riesz basis*: by (1) (*orthonormal* property, item (3) page 74) and by Theorem L.13 page 284.

ii. Proof that $\exists\,(\!|\mathsf{h}_n|\!)$ such that $\phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi(x)$: by definition of $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$, hypothesis (C), and Lemma 2.2 page 24.

iii. Proof that $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ is *continuous* at 0: by hypothesis (C).

iv. Proof that $\tilde{\phi}(0) \neq 0$: by hypothesis (D).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

5. Proof that $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ is a *scaling coefficient sequence* (Definition 2.3 page 25):

$$\tilde{\phi}(\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2^k}\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\phi}(\omega)$$

$$\Longrightarrow \quad \phi(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi(x) \qquad \text{by Lemma 2.2 page 24}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \quad (\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!) \text{ is a } \textit{scaling coefficient sequence} \qquad \text{by (Definition 2.3 page 25)}$$

✏

5.2.4 Orthonormal basis from Riesz basis

The definition of a general wavelet system (Definition 3.2 page 44) requires an MRA. The last condition of the definition of an MRA (Definition 2.1 page 16) only requires that a *Riesz basis* exist for the scaling subspace V_0. The MRA definition does *not* require this basis to be *orthonormal*. However, the definition of an *orthonormal wavelet system* (Definition 5.1 page 67) does require an orthonormal basis for V_0. The good news is that if you have a Riesz basis for V_0 (which of course you do since you have an MRA), then from this Riesz basis you can generate an orthonormal basis. One way of doing this is given by Theorem 5.3 (next). That is, Theorem 5.3 gives a sufficient condition for generating an orthonormal basis $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}$ from a Riesz basis $\{\mathbf{T}^n\theta\}$.

Theorem 5.3 (Battle-Lemarié orthogonalization). [6] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ *be the Fourier Transform (Definition K.2 page 255) of an arbitrary function* $\phi \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \left\{\mathbf{T}^n\theta \,|\, {\scriptstyle n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\} \textit{ is a } \text{RIESZ BASIS} \textit{ for } V_0 \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \triangleq \dfrac{\tilde{\theta}(\omega)}{\sqrt{2\pi \sum_n \left|\tilde{\theta}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2}} \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l} \left\{\mathbf{D}^m\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, {\scriptstyle n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\} \\ \textit{is an } \text{ORTHONORMAL BASIS} \textit{ for } V_m \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, {\scriptstyle n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is orthonormal: by Theorem L.15 page 287
2. Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, {\scriptstyle n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_0: by Lemma L.1 page 271.
3. Proof that $\{\mathbf{D}^m\mathbf{T}^n\phi \,|\, {\scriptstyle n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is a basis for V_m: by Theorem 2.2 page 25.

✏

5.3 Orthonormal wavelet systems

5.3.1 Subspace properties

Definition 5.1 (page 67) requires that the scaling subspace V_0 and the wavelet subspace W_0 be orthogonal. However, Proposition 5.3 (next) shows that this constraint implies that for all scales n, V_n

[6] Vidakovic (1999), page 71, Mallat (1989), page 72, Mallat (1999) page 225

CC BY-NC-ND

is orthogonal to W_n:

Proposition 5.3. [7] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44).

PRP

$$\underbrace{V_0 \perp W_0}_{\text{orthogonal subspaces}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{V_n \perp W_n \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}}_{\text{orthogonal subspaces}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \phi(x) \,|\, \psi(x) \rangle && \text{because } V_0 \perp W_0 \\
&= \left\langle \phi(2^j u) \,|\, \psi(2^j u) \right\rangle && \text{where } u = 2^{-j}x \iff x = 2^j u \\
\Longrightarrow \quad & V_j \perp W_j
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.3.2 Wavelet coefficients from wavelet and scaling functions

In an *orthonormal MRA system* (Definition 5.1 page 67), the scaling coefficients $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ can be computed from ϕ (Proposition 5.1 page 67). In an *orthonormal wavelet system* (Definition 5.1 page 67), the wavelet coefficients $(\!(\mathsf{g}_n)\!)$ can be computed from ϕ and ψ (next proposition).

Proposition 5.4. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM (Definition 3.2 page 44).

PRP

$$\underbrace{\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n \phi \rangle = \bar{\delta}_n}_{\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} \text{ is ORTHONORMAL}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \mathsf{g}_n = \langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n \phi \rangle \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,\middle|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \right\rangle && \text{by Theorem 3.1 page 44} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \langle \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^m\phi \,|\, \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \rangle \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \left\langle \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-m) \,\middle|\, \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-n) \right\rangle && \text{by definitions of } \mathbf{T} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \int_{x\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\phi(2x-m)\sqrt{2}\phi^*(2x-n)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \text{ in } L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \quad \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\phi(u-m)\sqrt{2}\phi^*(u-n)\tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && u = 2x \qquad \mathrm{d}u = 2\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(u-m)\phi^*(u-n)\,\mathrm{d}u \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(u-m)\phi^*(u-n)\,\mathrm{d}u \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} \phi(v)\phi^*(v-(n-m))\,\mathrm{d}v && \text{where } v \triangleq u-m \implies u = v+m \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{n-m}\phi \rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \text{ in } L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \quad \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}
\end{aligned}$$

[7] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 10–11

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \bar{\delta}_{m-n} \qquad \text{by left hypothesis}$$
$$= g_n$$

✏

Example 5.2 (Haar wavelet).

EX

$$\text{Let } \phi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in [0:1) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{and } \psi(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in \left[0:\frac{1}{2}\right) \\ -1 & \text{for } x \in \left[\frac{1}{2}:1\right) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Then, } g_n = \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n = 0 \\ -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
g_n &= \langle \psi \mid \mathbf{DT}^n \phi \rangle && \text{by Proposition 5.4 page 80} \\
&= \left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) - 2\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{1}{2}:1\right)}(x) \mid \sqrt{2}\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n) \right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \phi \text{ and } \psi \\
&= \sqrt{2}\left\langle \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) \mid \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n) \right\rangle - 2\sqrt{2}\left\langle \mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{1}{2}:1\right)}(x) \mid \mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n) \right\rangle && \text{by property of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \\
&= h_n - 2\sqrt{2}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{1}{2}:1\right)}(x)\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\,dx && \text{by Example 5.1 page 68} \\
&= h_n - 2\sqrt{2}\int_{\left[\frac{1}{2}:1\right)} (x)\mathbb{1}_{[0,1)}(2x-n)\,dx && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= h_n - 2\sqrt{2}\tfrac{1}{2}\bar{\delta}_{n-1} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - 0 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n = 0 \\ \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{2} &= -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n = 1 \\ 0 &= 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} \quad \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

5.3.3 Necessary conditions

Lemma 5.2 (orthonormal quadrature conditions). [8] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle \boldsymbol{V}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle \boldsymbol{W}_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44). *Let* $\check{h}(\omega)$ *and* $\tilde{g}(\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORMS

[8] Chui (1992), page 135, Mallat (1999) pages 229–238, Goswami and Chan (1999), page 110, Vaidyanathan (1990), page 65

CC BY-NC-ND

(Definition P.1 page 353) of $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ *and* $(\!(\mathsf{g}_n)\!)$*, respectively.*

LEM

$$\underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ 2. & \langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ 3. & \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle = 0 & \end{array}\right\}}_{\boldsymbol{\Omega}\ \textit{is}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL}\ \textit{(Definition 5.1 page 67)}} \implies \underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{lll} A. & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m\mathsf{h}^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ B. & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{g}_m\mathsf{g}^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ C. & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m\mathsf{g}^*_{m-2n} = 0 & \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{ORTHONORMAL QUADRATURE CONDITIONS}\ \textit{in "time"}} \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$

$$\iff \underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{llllll} a. & |\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)|^2 & + & |\breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)|^2 & = 2 & \textit{and} \\ b. & |\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)|^2 & + & |\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+\pi)|^2 & = 2 & \textit{and} \\ c. & \breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega) & + & \breve{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+\pi) & = 0 & \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{ORTHONORMAL QUADRATURE CONDITIONS}\ \textit{in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1,2,3) $\implies$ (A): by Lemma 5.1 page 71.
2. Proof that (1,2,3) $\implies$ (B):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m g^*_{m-2n} &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g^*_k \bar{\delta}_{k-m+2n} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}_n && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)} \\ &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} g_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g^*_k \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi\right\rangle && \text{by hypothesis (1)} \\ &= \langle \psi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle && \text{by } \textit{quadrature conditions in "time"} && \text{(Theorem 3.3 page 47)} \\ &= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by hypothesis (2)} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (1,2,3) $\implies$ (C):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m g^*_{m-2n} &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g^*_k \bar{\delta}_{k-m+2n} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}_n && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)} \\ &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} g^*_k \left\langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^{2n-m+k}\phi\right\rangle && \text{by hypothesis (1)} \\ &= \langle \phi \,|\, \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle && \text{by } \textit{quadrature conditions in "time"} && \text{(Theorem 3.3 page 47)} \\ &= 0 && \text{by hypothesis (3)} \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that (A,B,C) $\iff$ (a,b,c): by Lemma 5.2 page 81.

✏

Proposition 5.5. [9] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(\boldsymbol{V}_j)\!), (\!(\boldsymbol{W}_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$ *be a* 2π PERIODIC *and* MEASURABLE *function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

PRP

Let $\boldsymbol{V}_0 \perp \boldsymbol{W}_0$ *and* $\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\}$ *be* ORTHONORMAL. *Then*

$$\underbrace{\mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{W}_0}_{(A)} \iff \left\{\begin{array}{ll} (1). & \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{V}_1 \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & \textit{There exists a}\ \text{MEASURABLE}\ \textit{function}\ \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}\ \textit{such that} \\ & \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega+2\pi)\ (2\pi\ \text{PERIODIC})\ \textit{and} \\ & \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)\breve{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \end{array}\right\}$$

[9] Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 32–36 ⟨Proposition 2.18⟩, Hernández and Weiss (1996) pages 55–57 ⟨Lemma 2.11⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{W}_0 &\Longrightarrow \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{W}_0 \hat{+} \boldsymbol{V}_0 && \text{by definition of } \textit{Minkowski addition } \hat{+} && \text{(Definition U.2 page 387)}\\
&\Longleftrightarrow \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{V}_1 && \text{because } \boldsymbol{V}_1 = \boldsymbol{V}_0 \hat{+} \boldsymbol{W}_0 && \text{(Definition 3.1 page 43)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

   (a) There exists a 2π *periodic* function $\tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)$ such that $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}\\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi && \text{by (A), } \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{W}_0 \subseteq \boldsymbol{V}_1 \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by Proposition 1.12 page 9} \\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } \textit{DTFT} && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) $\tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega) + \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi) = 0$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \mathsf{S}_{\mathsf{f}\phi}(\omega) && \text{by } \boldsymbol{V}_0 \perp \boldsymbol{W}_0 \text{ hypothesis and Theorem R.3 page 377} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\phi}^*(\omega+2\pi n) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)}_{\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)} \underbrace{\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)}_{\tilde{\phi}^*(\omega+2\pi n)} && \text{by item (2a) page 83} \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\left|\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right|^2}_{\text{even terms}} \\
&\quad + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\left|\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\right|^2}_{\text{odd terms}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right|^2 + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\left|\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\right|^2 \\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) \\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) && \text{by } \textit{orthonormality} \text{ and Theorem R.3 page 377} \\
&\Longrightarrow \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega) + \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

   (c) The vectors $[\tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega), \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi)]$ and $[\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega), \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)]$ are *orthogonal*. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{bmatrix} \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) \\ \check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi) \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega) \\ \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi) \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega) & \check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega) \\ \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega) + \tilde{\mathsf{a}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi) \\
&= 0 && \text{by item (2b) page 83}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

(d) There exists a 2π *periodic* function $\tilde{b}(\omega)$ such that $[\tilde{a}(\omega), \tilde{a}(\omega+\pi)] = \tilde{b}(\omega)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi), -\check{h}^*(\omega)\right]$. Proof: Because the two vectors are *orthogonal* (item (2c) page 83), if one vector is rotated by 90°, then for fixed ω it is a scalar multiple of the other…

$$\begin{aligned}
[\tilde{a}(\omega), \tilde{a}(\omega+\pi)] &= \tilde{b}(\omega)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega), \check{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\right] \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \cos 90^\circ & -\sin 90^\circ \\ \sin 90^\circ & \cos 90^\circ \end{bmatrix}}_{\textit{rotation matrix}} && \text{by item (2c) page 83} \\
&= \tilde{b}(\omega)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega), \check{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\right] \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \tilde{b}(\omega)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi), -\check{h}^*(\omega)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

(e) By item (2d), $[\tilde{a}(\omega+\pi), \tilde{a}(\omega)] = \tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega), -\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\tilde{a}(\omega+\pi), \tilde{a}(\omega)] &= [\tilde{a}(\omega+\pi), \tilde{a}(\omega+\pi+\pi)] \\
&= \tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi+\pi), -\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\right] && \text{by item (2d) page 84} \\
&= \tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)\left[\check{h}^*(\omega), -\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

(f) By item (2d) and item (2e), $\tilde{b}(\omega) = -\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)$. Proof:

$$\underbrace{\begin{aligned}
\tilde{a}(\omega) &= \tilde{b}(\omega)\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (2d)} \\
\tilde{a}(\omega) &= -\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)\check{h}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (2e)}
\end{aligned}}_{\Downarrow \atop \tilde{b}(\omega) = -\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)}
\qquad
\underbrace{\begin{aligned}
\tilde{a}(\omega+\pi) &= -\tilde{b}(\omega)\check{h}^*(\omega) && \text{by item (2d)} \\
\tilde{a}(\omega+\pi) &= \tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)\check{h}^*(\omega) && \text{by item (2e)}
\end{aligned}}_{\Downarrow \atop \tilde{b}(\omega) = -\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi)}$$

(g) Note that $\tilde{b}(\omega) = -\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) \iff e^{-i(\omega+\pi)}\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) = e^{-i(\omega)}\tilde{b}(\omega)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
-\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) &= -e^{i(\omega+\pi)}e^{-i(\omega+\pi)}\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) \\
&= -e^{i(\omega+\pi)}e^{-i\omega}\tilde{b}(\omega) && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= e^{-i\pi}e^{i(\omega+\pi)}e^{-i\omega}\tilde{b}(\omega) \\
&= e^{i\omega}e^{-i\omega}\tilde{b}(\omega) \\
&= \tilde{b}(\omega)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{-i(\omega+\pi)}\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) &= -e^{-i\omega}\tilde{b}(\omega+\pi) \\
&= e^{-i\omega}\tilde{b}(\omega) && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

(h) Let $\tilde{v}(\omega) \triangleq \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$. Then (2) is true …

i. $\tilde{v}(\omega)$ is 2π *periodic*. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{v}(\omega+2\pi) &\triangleq \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{v}(\omega) \\
&= \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega+2\pi}{2}}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi}{2}\right) \\
&= \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) \\
&= -\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) \\
&= -\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\left[-\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right] && \text{by item (2f) page 84} \\
&= \sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{b}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by item (2f) page 84} \\
&\triangleq \tilde{v}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{v}(\omega)
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

ii. $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by item (2a) page 83}\\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{b}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by item (2d) page 84}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)
\end{aligned}$$

3. lemma: proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ $\mathsf{f} \perp V_0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{S}_{\mathsf{f}\phi}(\omega)\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(\omega+2\pi n) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega+2\pi n)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right]^* && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\left[e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)\right] && \text{by (C)}\\
&= \sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\left[e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)\right]}_{\text{even terms}}\\
&\quad+\sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\left[e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)\right]}_{\text{odd terms}}\\
&= \sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+4\pi n)\left[e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right]}_{\text{even terms}}\\
&\quad+\sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+4\pi n+2\pi)\left[e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+2\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\right]}_{\text{odd terms}}\\
&= \sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+4\pi n)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\\
&\quad-\sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\phi}(\omega+4\pi n+2\pi)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right) && \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353}\\
&= \sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\\
&\quad-\sqrt{2}\pi\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left[2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right|^2\right]\\
&\quad-\frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\left[2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi+2\pi n\right)\right|^2\right] && \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353}\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)-\frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)-\frac{1}{4}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}^*(\omega)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) && \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

$$= 0 \qquad \text{by Lemma 5.2 page 81}$$
$$\iff \langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \qquad \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377}$$
$$\iff \mathsf{f} \perp \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}$$
$$\iff \mathsf{f} \perp V_0$$

4. Proof that (A) $\Longleftarrow$ (1,2):
   (a) by (1), $\mathsf{f} \in V_1 = V_0 \hat{+} W_0$
   (b) by hypothesis, $V_0 \perp W_0$
   (c) by item (3) page 85, $\mathsf{f} \perp V_0$
   (d) so $\mathsf{f} \in W_0$

✏

Theorem 5.4. [10] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 3.2 page 44). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$ *be a measurable function in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

THM

If $\left\{\phi|\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\} = \bar{\delta}_n$ *then*

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (A). & \tilde{\psi}(\omega) = \underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}_{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\ \text{(Definition 3.2 page 44)}} & \textit{and} \\ (B). & \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega+2\pi) & \textit{and} \\ (C). & |\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)| = 1 & \end{array}\right\} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \langle\psi \mid \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_n & \textit{and} \\ (2). & \langle\phi \mid \mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & 0 & \textit{and} \\ (3). & \operatorname{span}\left\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\right\} & = & W_0 & \end{array}\right\}}_{\substack{V_0 \perp W_0 \ \textit{and} \\ \psi\ \textit{is an}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL WAVELET}\ \textit{for}\ L^2_{\mathbb{R}}}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: proof that (A) and $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} = \bar{\delta}_n \implies \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\psi\psi}(\omega) = |\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\psi\psi}(\omega) \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\psi}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2 \qquad \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371} \\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{i\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)}\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega+2\pi n)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 \qquad \text{by (A)} \\
&= \pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\underbrace{\left|e^{i\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)}\right|^2}_{1}|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 \qquad \text{by property of } |\cdot| \\
&= \pi|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega+2\pi n}{2}\right)\right|^2 \qquad \text{by (B) and (C)} \\
&= \pi|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}\underbrace{\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)\right|^2}_{\text{even terms}} + \pi|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}\underbrace{\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi n\right)\right|^2}_{\text{odd terms}} \\
&= \pi|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\underbrace{\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right|^2}_{\text{even terms}} + \pi|\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\underbrace{\left|\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n+\pi\right)\right|^2}_{\text{odd terms}}
\end{aligned}$$

[10] Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 32–37 ⟨Section 2.4, Theorem 2.20⟩, Hernández and Weiss (1996) page 57 ⟨PROPOSITION 2.13⟩, MALLAT (1999) PAGES 236–238 ⟨THEOREM 7.3⟩, DAUBECHIES (1992) PAGE 133

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{|\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2}{2}\left\{\left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 \underbrace{\left[2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi n\right)\right|^2\right]}_{\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)} + \left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2 \underbrace{\left[2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi+2\pi n\right)\right|^2\right]}_{\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)}\right\}$$

because *DTFT* is 2π *periodic* (Proposition P.1 page 353)

$$= \frac{|\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2}{2}\left\{\left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right\}$$

$$= \frac{|\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2}{2}\left\{\left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2\cancelto{1}{\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)} + \left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2\cancelto{1}{\tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)}\right\} \qquad \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377}$$

$$= |\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2 \qquad \text{by Lemma 5.2 page 81}$$

2. Proof that (A,B,C) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_{\psi\psi}(\omega) &= |\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2 && \text{by item (1) page 86}\\
&= 1 && \text{by (B)}\\
\Longleftrightarrow \langle\tilde{\psi}\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\tilde{\psi}\rangle &= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (A,B) $\Longrightarrow$ (2): by Proposition 5.5 page 82 with $\tilde{f}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\psi}(\omega)$.

4. lemma: Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} = \bar{\delta}_n$ and (A,B,C) $\Longrightarrow$ for all $(\!(a_n)\!)$, there exists $(\!(b_n)\!)$ and $(\!(c_n)\!)$ such that $\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) = \tilde{b}(\omega)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tilde{c}(\omega)\tilde{g}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$

   (a) First note the following relations hold in this case:

$$\begin{aligned}
|\check{h}(\omega)|^2 + |\check{h}(\omega+\pi)|^2 &= 2 && \text{by } \{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} = \bar{\delta}_n \text{ and by Lemma 5.2 page 81}\\
|\tilde{g}(\omega)|^2 + |\tilde{g}(\omega+\pi)|^2 &= 2 && \text{by (1) and by Lemma 5.2 page 81}\\
\check{h}(\omega)\tilde{g}^*(\omega) + \check{h}(\omega+\pi)\tilde{g}^*(\omega+\pi) &= 0 && \text{by (2) and by Lemma 5.2 page 81}\\
\tilde{g}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) = e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{v}(\omega)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) & && \text{by (A)}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Then, the following values of $(\!(b_n)\!)$ and $(\!(c_n)\!)$ are solutions for all $(\!(a_n)\!)$

$$\begin{aligned}
b(\omega) &= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\\
c(\omega) &= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{g}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{g}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\tilde{b}(\omega)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tilde{c}(\omega)\tilde{g}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\\
&\quad + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\tilde{g}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{g}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{g}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right) \qquad \text{by item (4b) page 87}\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\\
&\quad + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{v}(\omega)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}\tilde{v}(\omega)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)}\tilde{v}^*(\omega+2\pi)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+2\pi\right)\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\\
&\quad + \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\tilde{v}(\omega)\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)|\tilde{v}(\omega)|^2\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{a}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left[\left|\check{h}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right|^2 + \left|\check{h}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\right|^2\right]
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$+\tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\left[\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)-\check{\mathsf{h}}^*\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]$$

$$=\tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)[2]+\tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}+\pi\right)[0] \qquad \text{by Lemma 5.2 page 81}$$

$$=\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$$

5. Proof that (A,B,C) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\} = W_0$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ V_1 = V_0 \hat{+} \underbrace{\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\}}_{W_0} \qquad \text{by Definition 3.1 page 43}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \underbrace{\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}}_{V_1} = \underbrace{\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}}_{V_0} \hat{+} \underbrace{\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\}}_{W_0} \qquad \text{by Definition 2.1 page 16}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} c_n\mathbf{T}^n\psi \qquad \text{by Definition L.2 page 265}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right] = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right] + \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} c_n\mathbf{T}^n\psi\right] \qquad \text{by Definition K.2 page 255}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{T}^n\phi = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\phi + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} c_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}^n\psi$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\left[\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right] = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} c_n e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\psi}(\omega)$$

by Corollary 1.1 page 9

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}n} = \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n e^{-i\omega n} + \tilde{\psi}(\omega)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} c_n e^{-i\omega n}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) = \tilde{\phi}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega) + \tilde{\psi}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{c}}(\omega) \qquad \text{by def. of } DTFT \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \text{(by Lemma 2.1 page 22)}$$

$$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\tilde{\mathsf{c}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\tilde{\phi}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$$

$$\Longleftrightarrow\ \begin{matrix}\forall(a_n)\exists(b_n),(c_n)\\ \text{such that}\end{matrix}\quad \tilde{\mathsf{a}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) = \tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{h}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) + \tilde{\mathsf{c}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$$

$$\Longrightarrow\ (3) \qquad \text{by item (4) page 87}$$

6. Proof that (A,B) $\Longleftarrow$ (3):

$$\mathrm{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\} = W_0 \ \Longrightarrow\ \psi \in W_0$$

$$\Longrightarrow\ \text{(A) and (C)} \qquad \text{by Proposition 5.5 page 82}$$

7. Proof that (C) $\Longleftarrow$ (3) and $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\} = \bar{\delta}_n$:

$$1 = \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\psi\psi}(\omega) \qquad \text{by right hypothesis and Theorem R.3 page 377}$$

$$= |\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)|^2 \qquad \text{by item (1) page 86}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

5.3.4 Sufficient conditions

If we know the *scaling coefficient sequence* $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ (Definition 2.3 page 25), then Theorem 5.4 page 86 gives a necessary and sufficient condition for the *wavelet coefficient sequence* $(\!(\mathsf{g}_n)\!)$ (Definition 3.2 page 44) to generate a *wavelet system* (Definition 3.2 page 44). The actual value of $(\!(\mathsf{g}_n)\!)$ depends on $(\!(\mathsf{h}_n)\!)$ and the choice of $\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$ (Theorem 5.4 page 86). Here are some possible choices:[11]

1.	$\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	1	$\Longrightarrow$	g_n	$=$	$(-1)^n\mathsf{h}^*_{-1-n}$
2.	$\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$e^{i\omega}$	$\Longrightarrow$	g_n	$=$	$(-1)^n\mathsf{h}^*_{-3-n}$
3.	$\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$e^{-i\omega}$	$\Longrightarrow$	g_n	$=$	$(-1)^n\mathsf{h}^*_{1-n}$ *conjugate mirror filter* (CMF)
4.	$\tilde{\mathsf{v}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$\pm(-1)^{N+1}e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}(N+1)}$	$\Longrightarrow$	g_n	$=$	$\pm(-1)^n\mathsf{h}^*_{N-n}$ *conjugate quadrature filter* (CQF), $N\in\mathbb{Z}$, (Definition O.9 page 347)

Theorem 5.5. [12] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ (\!(V_j)\!),\ (\!(W_j)\!),\ \phi,\ \psi,\ (\!(h_n)\!),\ (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a* WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 5.1 page 67)*.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (A). & \underbrace{\langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\phi\rangle=\bar{\delta}_n}_{\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\}\ \text{is ORTHONORMAL}} & \text{and} \\ (B). & \mathsf{g}_n=\underbrace{\pm(-1)^n\mathsf{h}^*_{N-n}}_{\text{CQF condition}} & \forall n\in\mathbb{Z} \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lllll} (1). & \langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & 0 & \text{and} \\ (2). & \langle\psi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_n & \text{and} \\ (3). & \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\,|\,n\in\mathbb{Z}\} & = & W_0 & \end{array}\right\} \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{g}_n=\pm(-1)^n h^*_{N-n} &\Longleftrightarrow \tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)=\pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by } \textit{CQF theorem} \text{ (Theorem O.5 page 347)}\\
&\Longrightarrow \tilde{\psi}(2\omega)=\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\underbrace{\pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi)}_{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)}\tilde{\phi}(\omega) && \text{by Proposition 3.2 page 48}\\
&\Longrightarrow \tilde{\psi}(2\omega)=\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\underbrace{\left[\pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega(N+1)}\right]}_{v(2\omega)}e^{i\omega}\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(\omega+\pi)\,\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\\
&\Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lllll} (1). & \langle\phi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & 0 & \text{and} \\ (2). & \langle\psi\,|\,\mathbf{T}^n\psi\rangle & = & \bar{\delta}_n & \text{and} \\ (3). & \operatorname{span}\{\mathbf{T}^n\psi\,|\,n\in\mathbb{Z}\} & = & W_0 & \end{array}\right\} && \text{by Theorem 5.4 page 86}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem 5.6. *Let* $\Omega\triangleq\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}},\ (\!(V_j)\!),\ (\!(W_j)\!),\ \phi,\ \psi,\ (\!(h_n)\!),\ (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be a tuple.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{llllll} (A). & \sum_n \mathsf{h}_n & = & \sqrt{2} & & [\text{ADMISSIBILITY } (\textit{Theorem 2.3 page 27})] & \textit{and} \\ (B). & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{h}_m h^*_{m-2n} & = & \bar{\delta}_n & & [\text{ORTHO. QUADRATURE CONDITION } (\textit{Lemma 5.1 page 71})] & \textit{and} \\ (C). & \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n \mathsf{h}_k & = & 0 & \forall n=0,1,\ldots,p-1 & [p \text{ VANISHING MOMENTS } (\textit{Theorem 4.3 page 58})] & \textit{and} \\ (D). & \inf_{\omega\in[-\pi/2:\pi/2]} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right| & > & 0 & & [\text{LOW-PASS RESPONSE}] & \textit{and} \\ (E). & \mathsf{g}_n & = & (-1)^n h^*_{N-n} & & [\text{CQF CONDITION } (\textit{Definition O.9 page 347})] & \end{array}\right\}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} (1). & \Omega \textit{ is an } \text{ORTHONORMAL WAVELET SYSTEM} \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & \psi \textit{ has } p \text{ VANISHING MOMENTS} \end{array}\right\}$$

[11] Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 109 ⟨"A Brief History of h_1"⟩, Vidakovic (1999) page 59
[12] Mallat (1999) pages 236–238

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ is an *orthonormal MRA system*. Proof:
   (a) If $p = 1$, then this is the *Haar MRA system*.
   (b) If $p \geq 2$, then proof follows from Theorem 5.2 page 74:
      i. Proof that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n = \sqrt{2}$: by left hypothesis (A)
      ii. Proof that $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m h^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n$: by left hypothesis (B)
      iii. Proof that $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ is *continuous* at 0:

$$\begin{aligned}(C) &\implies \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n \mathsf{h}_k = 0 \quad \forall n{=}0,1,\ldots,p{-}1,\, p{\geq}2 \\ &\implies \psi \text{ has } p \textit{ vanishing moments} && \text{by Theorem 4.3 page 58} \\ &\implies \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is } \textit{continuous} \text{ at } \omega = 0 && \text{by Theorem 4.5 page 64}\end{aligned}$$

      iv. Proof that $\inf_{\omega\in[-\pi/2:\pi/2]} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right| > 0$: by left hypothesis (D)
2. Proof for (1): by (1) lemma, (E), and Theorem 5.5 page 89.
3. Proof for (2): by (C) and Theorem 4.3 page 58.

✏

5.4 Examples

The scaling coefficients can be directly computed using simultaneous equations generated from the following necessary conditions.[13] They can be solved using a symbolic equation software package[14] or by hand.

Example 5.3 (2 coefficient case—Haar wavelet system). Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ be an *orthogonal* wavelet system with two non-zero scaling coefficients.

EX

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \operatorname{supp}\phi(x) = [0:1] & \text{(Theorem 3.6 page 51) and} \\ 2. & \textit{admissibility condition} & \text{(Theorem 2.3 page 27) and} \\ 3. & \left\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi\right\} \text{ is } \textit{orthonormal} & \text{(Lemma 5.2 page 81) and} \\ 4. & \mathsf{g}_n = \pm(-1)^n \mathsf{h}^*_{N-n}\ \forall n{\in}\mathbb{Z} & \text{(Theorem 5.5 page 89)} \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{c|c|c} n & \mathsf{h}_n & \mathsf{g}_n \\ \hline 0 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ 1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ \text{other} & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right\}$$

[13] Vidakovic (1999), pages 92–93

[14]

Maxima™	http://maxima.sourceforge.net/	free and open source
Macsyma™	http://www.scientek.com/macsyma/mxmain.htm	a very non-free relative of *Maxima*
MuPAD™	http://www.mupad.de/	30 day free trial
Maple™	http://www.maplesoft.com/	
Mathematica™	http://www.wolfram.com/	

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ that only h_0 and h_1 are non-zero: by Theorem 3.6 page 51.
2. Proof for values of h_0 and h_1:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_0 + \mathsf{h}_1 &= \sqrt{2} && \text{by admissibility condition—Theorem 2.3 page 27} \\ \mathsf{h}_0^2 + \mathsf{h}_1^2 &= 1 && \text{orthogonal quadrature condition—Lemma 5.2 page 81} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_0^2 + \left(\sqrt{2} - h_0\right)^2 &= 1 \\ 2h_0^2 - 2\sqrt{2}h_0 + 1 &= 0 \\ \mathsf{h}_0 &= \frac{2\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(2\sqrt{2}\right)^2 - 4 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}}{2 \cdot 2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_1 &= \sqrt{2} - \mathsf{h}_0 \\ &= \sqrt{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

3. Note: h_0 and h_1 are the *Haar scaling coefficients*. They can also be produced using other systems of equations including the following:
   (a) Admissibility condition and *partition of unity*—Example 2.3 (page 40)
   (b) *Daubechies-p*1 wavelets computed using spectral techniques—Example 6.3 (page 109)
4. Proof for values of g_0 and g_1: by (4) and Theorem 5.5 page 89.

✏

Example 5.4. [15] In this example, we constrain the system to have $p = 2$ vanishing moments. This same wavelet system is identical to the *Daubechies-p*2 wavelet system which is computed using a spectral factorization technique—Example 6.4 (page 110). Here are the equations:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccl} \mathsf{h}_0 & + & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & \mathsf{h}_2 & + & \mathsf{h}_3 & = & \sqrt{2} & & \text{(admissibility—Theorem 2.3 page 27)} \\ \mathsf{h}_0 & - & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & \mathsf{h}_2 & - & \mathsf{h}_3 & = & 0 & & \text{(vanishing 0th moment/partition of unity—page 34)} \\ & - & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & 2h_2 & - & 3h_3 & = & 0 & & \text{(vanishing 1st moment—Theorem 4.3 page 58)} \\ \mathsf{h}_0^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_1^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_2^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_3^2 & = & 1 & & (m = 0 \text{ ortho. quad. con.—Lemma 5.2 page 81}) \end{array}$$

Then the scaling coefficients have the following values:

EX	n	$\sqrt{2}\mathsf{h}_n$	$\sqrt{2}\mathsf{g}_n$
	0	$\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$\frac{1-\sqrt{3}}{4}$
	1	$\frac{3+\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$-\frac{3-\sqrt{3}}{4}$
	2	$\frac{3-\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$\frac{3+\sqrt{3}}{4}$
	3	$\frac{1-\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$-\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{4}$

[15] Vidakovic (1999), page 92, Soman et al. (2010) page 83

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

1. Solve the 3 linear equations in terms of h_3:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \sqrt{2} \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \to \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & -2 & 0 & -2 & -\sqrt{2} \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \to \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 & -2 & \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & 0 & -4 & 4 & -\sqrt{2} \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \to$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 & -2 & \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} \end{bmatrix} \to \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_0 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} - \mathsf{h}_3 \\ \mathsf{h}_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \mathsf{h}_3 \\ \mathsf{h}_2 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} + \mathsf{h}_3 \end{aligned}$$

2. Solve the forth quadratic equation in terms of h_3:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} - h_3\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - h_3\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} + h_3\right)^2 + \mathsf{h}_3^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{8} - \sqrt{2}2h_3 + h_3^2\right) + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \sqrt{2}h_3 + h_3\right) + \left(\frac{1}{8} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + h_3^2\right) + \mathsf{h}_3^2 \\ &= 4h_3^2 - \sqrt{2}h_3 + \frac{3}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$4h_3^2 - \sqrt{2}h_3 - \frac{1}{4} = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_3 &= \frac{\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{2+4}}{8} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2} \pm \sqrt{6}}{8} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1 \pm \sqrt{3}) \end{aligned}$$

3. Simplify the results:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{h}_3 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3}) \\ \mathsf{h}_2 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} + \mathsf{h}_3 &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(2+1-\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3-\sqrt{3}) \\ \mathsf{h}_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \mathsf{h}_3 &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(4-1+\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3+\sqrt{3}) \\ \mathsf{h}_0 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} - \mathsf{h}_3 &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(2-1+\sqrt{3}) &&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1+\sqrt{3}) \end{aligned}$$

4. Solution using *Maxima*™ (2 sets of solutions):

```
solve([h0+h1+h2+h3=sqrt(2),h0-h1+h2-h3=0,-h1+2*h2-3*h3=0,h0^2+h1^2+h2^2+h3^2=1],
      [h0,h1,h2,h3]);
```


COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned} h_0 &= -\frac{\sqrt{6}-\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_1 &= -\frac{\sqrt{6}-3\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_2 &= \frac{\sqrt{6}+3\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_3 &= \frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{8} \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} h_0 &= \frac{\sqrt{6}+\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{6}+3\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_2 &= -\frac{\sqrt{6}-3\sqrt{2}}{8} \\ h_3 &= -\frac{\sqrt{6}-\sqrt{2}}{8} \end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 5.5 (4 scaling coefficient case). This example attempts to use the admissibility condition (Theorem 2.3 page 27) and orthonormal quadrature condition (Lemma 5.2 page 81) to design a 4 coefficient wavelet system. However, it fails due to the failure of the equations to be independent.

Let $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{W}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ be an *orthogonal* wavelet system with four non-zero scaling coefficients.

1. We can use the following four equations to try to compute the values of the four scaling coefficients, and then compute the four wavelet coefficients from the four scaling coefficients. Note that the second, third, and fourth equations all assume orthonormality.

$$\begin{array}{rcrcrcrcrl} h_0 & + & h_1 & + & h_2 & + & h_3 & = & \sqrt{2} & \text{(admissibility—Theorem 2.3 page 27)} \\ h_0 & - & h_1 & + & h_2 & - & h_3 & = & 0 & \text{(zero at } -1 \text{ from orthonormality—page 73)} \\ h_0^2 & + & h_1^2 & + & h_2^2 & + & h_3^2 & = & 1 & (m=0 \text{ ortho. quad. con.—page 81)} \\ h_0h_2 & + & h_1h_3 & & & & & = & 0 & (m=1 \text{ ortho. quad. con.—page 81)} \end{array}$$

2. These equations are linearly independent, however they are still dependent [16] as shown next:

$$\begin{aligned} &\left[(h_0+h_1+h_2+h_3)+(h_0-h_1+h_2-h_3)\right]^2 \\ &\qquad + \left[(h_0+h_1+h_2+h_3)-(h_0-h_1+h_2-h_3)\right]^2 \\ &= [2h_0+2h_2]^2+[2h_1+2h_3]^2 \\ &= 4[h_0+h_2]^2+4[h_1+h_3]^2 \\ &= 4[h_0^2+2h_0h_2+h_2^2]+4[h_1^2+2h_1h_3+h_3^2] \\ &= 4[h_0^2+h_1^2+h_2^2+h_3^2+2h_0h_2+2h_1h_3] \\ &= 4(h_0^2+h_1^2+h_2^2+h_3^2)+8(h_0h_2+h_1h_3) \end{aligned}$$

$\Longrightarrow$ The last two equations are (non-linearly) dependent on the first two.

3. Because of this dependence, the system of equations has one degree of freedom.

4. Solutions using *Maxima*

```
solve([h0+h1+h2+h3=sqrt(2),h0-h1+h2-h3=0,h0^2+h1^2+h2^2+h3^2=1,h0*h2+h1*h3=0],
      [h0,h1,h2,h3]
     );
```

16 email

Many many thanks to 謝欣霖 (Xiè Xīn Lín) for pointing this out to me in a 2005 October 13 email. (If you are viewing this text as a pdf file, zoom in on the figure to the left to see text from 謝欣霖's 2005 October 13 email.)

CC BY-NC-ND

(a) *Maxima* first solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{h}_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(\sqrt{-8h_0^2+4\sqrt{2}h_0+1}+1\right)\\
h_2 &= \frac{2h_0-\sqrt{2}}{2}\\
h_3 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(\sqrt{-8h_0^2+4\sqrt{2}h_0+1}-1\right)
\end{aligned}$$

(b) *Maxima* second solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{h}_1 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(\sqrt{-8h_0^2+4\sqrt{2}h_0+1}-1\right)\\
h_2 &= -\frac{2h_0-\sqrt{2}}{2}\\
h_3 &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(\sqrt{-8h_0^2+4\sqrt{2}h_0+1}+1\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Example 5.6. [17] This example gives the equations for a 6 coefficient wavelet system. See also the six coefficient *Daubechies-p*3 wavelet system which is computed using a spectral factorization technique (Example 6.5 page 111).

$$\begin{array}{rcrcrcrcrcrcrl}
\mathsf{h}_0 & + & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & \mathsf{h}_2 & + & \mathsf{h}_3 & + & \mathsf{h}_4 & + & \mathsf{h}_5 & = & \sqrt{2} & \text{(admissibility)}\\
\mathsf{h}_0 & - & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & \mathsf{h}_2 & - & \mathsf{h}_3 & + & \mathsf{h}_4 & - & \mathsf{h}_5 & = & 0 & \text{(vanishing 0th moment)}\\
 & - & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & 2h_2 & - & 3h_3 & + & 4h_4 & - & 5h_5 & = & 0 & \text{(vanishing 1st moment)}\\
 & - & \mathsf{h}_1 & + & 4h_2 & - & 9h_3 & + & 16h_4 & - & 25h_5 & = & 0 & \text{(vanishing 2nd moment)}\\
\mathsf{h}_0^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_1^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_2^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_3^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_4^2 & + & \mathsf{h}_5^2 & = & 1 & (m=0 \text{ orthonormal quadrature condition})\\
\mathsf{h}_0 h_2 & + & \mathsf{h}_1 h_3 & + & \mathsf{h}_2 h_4 & + & \mathsf{h}_3 h_5 & & & & & = & 0 & (m=1 \text{ orthonormal quadrature condition})
\end{array}$$

[17] Soman et al. (2010) page 84

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 6

MINIMUM PHASE CONSTRAINT

❝ I regard as quite useless the reading of large treatises of pure analysis: too large a number of methods pass at once before the eyes. It is in the works of applications that one must study them; one judges their ability there and one apprises the manner of making use of them.❞

Joseph Louis Lagrange (1736-1813), mathematician [1]

6.1 General structure

This chapter introduces a wavelet design technique that represents the orthogonal quadrature condition in terms of a polynomial in z. It is the technique that was used by Ingrid Daubechies in her celebrated *Daubechies-p* class of wavelets (see Section 6.2 page 105). The technique can be summarized as follows:

1. **Design requirements.** Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(W_j \right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n \right)\!\right)\right)$ be a wavelet system. We want to design this system to have two properties:
   (a) The scaling functions $\left(\!\left(\mathbf{T}^n \phi \right)\!\right)$ are **orthonormal** (Definition 5.1 page 67).
   (b) The wavelet function ψ has p *vanishing moments* (Definition 4.2 page 55).
2. **Form of solution.** Lemma 4.3 (page 65) demonstrates that the presence of the factor $\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p$ in the z transform $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ of the scaling coefficient sequence $\left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right)$ is a sufficient condition for ψ to have p vanishing moments. Therefore, we constrain $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ to be of the following form:

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \sqrt{2} \underbrace{\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p}_{\substack{\text{provides } p \\ \text{vanishing moments} \\ \text{(Lemma 4.3 page 65)}}} \underbrace{\mathsf{Q}(z)}_{\text{provides orthogonality}}$$

[1] quote: Stopple (2003), page xi
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Langrange_portrait.jpg, public domain

So we need to compute the factor $\mathsf{Q}(z)$. Once we have $\mathsf{Q}(z)$, we can multiply the two factors, and the scaling coefficient sequence $(\!(h_n)\!)$ will simply be the coefficients of the polynomial $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$:

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = h_0 + h_1 z^{-1} + h_2 z^{-2} + h_3 z^{-3} + \cdots + h_{2p-1} z^{-2p+1}$$

3. **Computing** $\mathsf{Q}(z)$**.**

   (a) The frequency representation of the orthogonal quadrature condition $\left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2$ (Lemma 5.1 page 71) is *periodic* in ω with period 2π and is even about 0. Because it's *periodic*, the quadrature condition can be expressed as a *Fourier Series* (Definition J.1 page 251). Because it's *even*, the quadrature condition can be expressed using only cosine terms.

   (b) Any *harmonic* cosine representation of a function may alternatively be expressed as a *trigonometric expansion* (Theorem I.2 page 231 with examples in Example I.1 page 233 and Example I.2 page 234). Therefore, the frequency orthogonal quadrature condition can be represented as a polynomial in $\cos\omega$.

   (c) As indicated by the trigonometric identity $\sin^2\theta \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2\theta)$ (Theorem H.11 page 226), any polynomial in $\cos\omega$ can alternatively be represented as a polynomial in $\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$. Therefore, the frequency orthogonal quadrature condition can be represented as a polynomial in $\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$.

   (d) With y defined as $y \triangleq \sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$, the orthogonal quadrature condition together with the p vanishing moments constraint can be represented as (Lemma 6.2 page 98)

   $$(1-y)^p P(y) + y^p P(1-y) = 1 \quad \text{for some polynomial } P(y).$$

   (e) The forms $(1-y)^p P(y)$ and $y^p P(1-y)$ are also used in *Hermite interpolation* (Section N.2 page 331) with the result of the endpoints at $y=0$ and $y=1$ being increasingly "flatter" with increasing p. In particular, the first $p-1$ derivatives at the endpoints are 0 (Theorem N.1 page 332).

   (f) There are an infinite number of solutions for $\mathsf{P}(y)$. These solutions are of the form (Lemma 6.3 page 99)

   $$\mathsf{P}(y) \triangleq \mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p \mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2} - y\right) \quad \text{where} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathsf{P}_m(y) \triangleq \displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p-1+k}{k} y^k \quad \text{and} \\ \underbrace{\mathsf{R}(y) = -\mathsf{R}(-y)}_{\mathsf{R}\text{ is any } \textit{odd} \text{ polynomial}} \end{array} \right\}$$

   Furthermore, $\mathsf{P}(y)$ has minimum order when $\mathsf{R}(y) = 0$.

   (g) Examples of *odd polynomials* include the *Chebyshev polynomials* (Definition I.1 page 236) $\mathsf{T}_n(x)$ with n *odd* (Theorem I.3 page 236).

   (h) **Spectral factorization.** The quantity y can be expressed in terms of z as (Lemma 6.1 page 97)

   $$y = \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1-z^{-1}}{2}\right).$$

   This implies that for each root of a polynomial in y, there are two roots in the equivalent polynomial in z, and that these roots occur in recipricol pairs (if z is a root, then z^{-1} is also a root). Therefore, any polynomial $\mathsf{P}(y)$ in y can be factored into two factors in z such that $\mathsf{P}(y) = \mathsf{Q}(z)\mathsf{Q}(z^{-1})$. Once $\mathsf{P}(y)$ has been computed, we can then proceed to compute $\mathsf{Q}(z)$ with help from Theorem 6.1 (page 104).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Lemma 6.1.

LEM

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} y & \triangleq & \sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \quad \textit{and} \\ z & \triangleq & e^{i\omega} \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{rcl} y & = & \frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4} = \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1-z^{-1}}{2}\right) \\ 1-y & = & \cos^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \\ & = & \frac{2+z+z^{-1}}{4} = \left(\frac{1+z}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right) \\ \frac{1}{2}-y & = & \frac{1}{2}\cos\omega \\ z & = & 1-2y \pm \sqrt{y(y-1)} \end{array}\right.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} y &\triangleq \sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } y \\ &= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos(\omega) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\frac{e^{i\omega}+e^{-i\omega}}{2} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)} \\ &= \frac{2}{4} - \frac{z+z^{-1}}{4} && \text{by definition of } z \\ &= \frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4} \\ &= \left(\frac{1-z}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1-z^{-1}}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1-y &= 1-\sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } y \\ &= \cos^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(1+\cos\omega) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 1-y &= 1-\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4} && \text{by previous result} \\ &= \frac{4-2+z+z^{-1}}{4} \\ &= \frac{2+z+z^{-1}}{4} \\ &= \left(\frac{1+z}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}-y &= \frac{1}{2}-\sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by definition of } y \\ &= \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}(1-\cos\omega) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\cos\omega \end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma 5.1 (page 71) demonstrates that all orthogonal scaling functions satisfy the *orthonormal quadrature condition* $\left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{h}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2$. When designing orthogonal scaling functions with compact support, it is very useful to be able to express this quadrature condition as a polynomial

CC BY-NC-ND

in $\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$. Lemma 6.2 (next) does this by expressing the quadrature condition as a polynomial in y where $y = \sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$.

Lemma 6.2. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle W_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \psi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle, \langle\!\langle g_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ *be a wavelet system. Let* $y \triangleq \sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)$ *and* $P(y)$ *a polynomial in* y.

LEM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \underbrace{\left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{h}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2}_{\text{QUADRATURE CONDITION } \textit{in "frequency"}} \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \psi \textit{ has } p \text{ VANISHING MOMENTS} \end{array}\right\} \iff \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \textit{there exists } P(y) \textit{ such that} \\ & \left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 = 2(1-y)^p P(y) \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \underbrace{(1-y)^p P(y) + y^p P(1-y) = 1}_{\text{QUADRATURE CONDITION } \textit{as polynomial in } y} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Because $|Q(\omega)|^2$ is *periodic*, it has a *Fourier series* expansion (Definition J.1 page 251). Because it is real, it has no imaginary part. Therefore, $|Q(\omega)|^2$ can be expressed as a harmonic cosine polynomial as

$$|Q(\omega)|^2 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cos\omega n$$

2. Proof for $\Longrightarrow$ part:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 &= \left|\sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p Q(\omega)\right|^2 && \text{by Lemma 4.3 page 65} \\
&= 2\left|\left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p\right|^2 |Q(\omega)|^2 \\
&= 2\left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p \left(\frac{1+e^{-i\omega}}{2}\right)^p |Q(\omega)|^2 \\
&= 2\left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}}{2}\right)^p \left(\frac{1+e^{-i\omega}}{2}\right)^p \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by item (1)} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{1+e^{i\omega}+e^{-i\omega}+1}{4}\right)^p \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cos\omega n && \text{by item (1)} \\
&= 2\left(\frac{2+2\cos\omega}{4}\right)^p \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cos\omega n \\
&= 2\left(\cos^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^p P'(\cos\omega) && \text{by } \textit{trigonometric expansion} \quad \text{(Theorem I.2 page 231)} \\
&= 2\left(1-\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^p P'\left(1-2\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \\
&= 2\left(1-\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^p P\left(\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right) \\
&= 2(1-y)^p P(y)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{h}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 &= 2\left(1-\sin^2\frac{\omega+\pi}{2}\right)^p P\left(\sin^2\frac{\omega+\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by previous result} \\
&= 2\left(1-\cos^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^p P\left(\cos^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by Theorem H.7 page 220} \\
&= 2\left(\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^p P\left(1-\sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}\right) && \text{by } \textit{half-angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.11 page 226)} \\
&= 2y^p P(1-y) && \text{by definition of } y
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned} 2 &= \left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{h}(\omega+\pi))\right|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\ &= (1-y)^p P(y) + y^p P(1-y) && \text{by previous results} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for $\Longleftarrow$ part:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= (1-y)^p P(y) + y^p P(1-y) && \text{by right hypothesis} \\ &= \left|\tilde{h}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{h}(\omega+\pi))\right|^2 && \text{by previous results} \end{aligned}$$

✏

In the polynomial quadrature condition, what are the possible solutions of $P(y)$? Lemma 6.3 (next) answers this question.

Lemma 6.3. [2] *Let* P, Q, *and* R *be polynomials over* $\mathbb{R}$.

LEM

$$\underbrace{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y) = 1}_{\textit{quadrature condition as polynomial in } y} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \begin{cases} 1. \quad \mathsf{P}(y) \triangleq \mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) & \textit{where} \\ \quad\quad \mathsf{P}_m(y) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k & \textit{and} \\ 2. \quad \underbrace{\mathsf{R}(y) = -\mathsf{R}(-y)}_{\mathsf{R}\ \textit{is any } \textbf{odd} \textit{ polynomial.}} \end{cases}$$

Furthermore, $\mathsf{P}(y)$ *has minimum order when* $\mathsf{R}(y) = 0$.

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y) = 1 \implies \mathsf{P}(y) = \mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)$:

   (a) lemma: proof that $\frac{1}{(1-y)^p} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{(1-y)^p} &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}\frac{1}{(1-y)^p}\right]_{y=0} y^k && \text{by } \textit{Maclaurin series} \text{ (Theorem C.13 page 153)} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}(1-y)^{-p}\right]_{y=0} y^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[(-p)(-1)\frac{\mathrm{d}^{k-1}}{\mathrm{d}y^{k-1}}(1-y)^{-p-1}\right]_{y=0} y^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[(p)(-p-1)(-1)\frac{\mathrm{d}^{k-2}}{\mathrm{d}y^{k-2}}(1-y)^{-p-2}\right]_{y=0} y^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[(p)(p+1)(p+2)\frac{\mathrm{d}^{k-3}}{\mathrm{d}y^{k-3}}(1-y)^{-p-3}\right]_{y=0} y^k \\ &\vdots \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[(p)(p+1)(p+2)\cdots(p+k-2)\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}y}(1-y)^{-p-(k-1)}\right]_{y=0} y^k \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}\left[(p)(p+1)(p+2)\cdots(p+k-2)(p+k-1)(1-y)^{-p-k}\right]_{y=0} y^k \end{aligned}$$

[2] Daubechies (1992), page 171, Pinsky (2002), pages 331–333, Chui (1992), pages 175–176

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}(p)(p+1)(p+2)\cdots(p+k-2)(p+k-1)\ y^k$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(p+k-1)!}{k!(p-1)!}\ y^k$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(p+k-1)!}{k!(p+k-1-k)!}\ y^k$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{p+k-1}{k}\ y^k \qquad \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k} \text{ (Definition B.3 page 132)}$$

(b) There are an infinite number of solutions for $\mathsf{P}(y)$. These solutions are here expressed as

$$\mathsf{P}(y) \triangleq \underbrace{\mathsf{P}_m(y)}_{\text{order } p-1} + \underbrace{y^p \mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2} - y\right)}_{\text{order} \geq p}$$

(c) Note that $(1-y)^p$ and y^p are *relatively prime* and are both of order p. Therefore by *Bézout's Theorem* (Theorem C.4 page 147), there exists a unique solution for $\mathsf{P}(y)$ of order $p-1$. This unique solution is here labeled $\mathsf{P}_m(y)$. The more general solution (of order $\geq p$) is here expressed as $\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p \mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2} - y\right)$.

$$\underbrace{(1-y)^p}_{\text{order } p}\ \underbrace{\mathsf{P}_m(y)}_{\text{order } p-1} + \underbrace{y^p}_{\text{order } p}\ \underbrace{\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}_{\text{order } p-1} = 1$$

(d) We can compute the unique order $p-1$ solution $\mathsf{P}_m(y)$ of $\mathsf{P}(y)$ by using a Maclaurin expansion of $\mathsf{P}(y)$. Let $\mathbf{T}\mathsf{P}(y)$ represent a polynomial $\mathsf{P}(y)$ with all terms of order $\geq p$ truncated.

$$\underbrace{\mathsf{P}_m(y)}_{\text{order } p-1} = \frac{1}{(1-y)^p} - \frac{y^p \mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}{(1-y)^p} \qquad \text{by (1c) lemma}$$

$$= \mathbf{T}\left\{ \frac{1}{(1-y)^p} - \underbrace{\cancelto{0}{\frac{y^p \mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}{(1-y)^p}}}_{\text{all terms order} \geq p} \right\} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Bézout's Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem C.4 page 147)}$$

$$= \mathbf{T}\left\{ \frac{1}{(1-y)^p} \right\} \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}$$

$$= \mathbf{T}\left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{p+k-1}{k}\ y^k \right\} \qquad \text{by item (1a) page 99}$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p+k-1}{k}\ y^k \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)}$$

(e) Alternatively, specific cases of $\mathsf{P}_m(y)$ can also be calculated using the *Extended Euclid's Algorithm*:

i. $p = 2$ case: See Example C.1 (page 146).

ii. $p = 3$ case: See Example C.2 (page 146).

iii. $p = 4$ case: See Example C.3 (page 147).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(f) Proof that $\mathsf{R}(y)$ must be an odd polynomial:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y)\\
&= (1-y)^p\left[\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)\right] + y^p\left[\mathsf{P}_m(1-y) + (1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-[1-y]\right)\right]\\
&= (1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y) + (1-y)^p y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + y^p\mathsf{P}_m(1-y) + y^p(1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(-\frac{1}{2}+y\right)\\
&= \underbrace{\left[(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)\right]}_{1} + \left[(1-y)^p y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + y^p(1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(y-\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]\\
&= 1 + (1-y)^p y^p\left[\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + \mathsf{R}\left(y-\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]\\
&= 1\\
&\iff \left[\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + \mathsf{R}\left(y-\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0\right]\\
&\iff \mathsf{R}(y) = -\mathsf{R}(-y) \qquad (\mathsf{R}(y) \text{ is odd})
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that $(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y) = 1 \impliedby \mathsf{P}(y) = \mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)$:

(a) Examples of specific cases with $\mathsf{R}(y) = 0$:

$p = 1$ case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^1\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^1\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)\\
&= (1-y)^1\sum_{k=0}^{k=1-1}\binom{1+k-1}{k}y^k + y^1\sum_{k=0}^{k=1-1}\binom{1+k-1}{k}(1-y)^k\\
&= (1-y)^1(1) + y^1(1)\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$p = 2$ case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^2\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^2\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)\\
&= (1-y)^2\sum_{k=0}^{k=2-1}\binom{2+k-1}{k}y^k + y^2\sum_{k=0}^{k=2-1}\binom{2+k-1}{k}(1-y)^k\\
&= (1-y)^2(1+2y) + y^2[1+2(1-y)]\\
&= (1-2y+y^2)(1+2y) + y^2(3-2y)\\
&= \underbrace{1-2y+y^2+2y-4y^2+2y^3}_{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)} + \underbrace{3y^2-2y^3}_{y^p\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}\\
&= \underbrace{1+0y-3y^2+2y^3}_{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)} + \underbrace{3y^2-2y^3}_{y^p\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$p = 3$ case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^3\mathsf{P}_m(y) + y^3\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)\\
&= (1-y)^3\sum_{k=0}^{k=3-1}\binom{3+k-1}{k}y^k + y^3\sum_{k=0}^{k=3-1}\binom{3+k-1}{k}(1-y)^k\\
&= (1-y)^3(1+3y+6y^2) + y^3\left[1+3(1-y)+6(1-y)^2\right]\\
&= \underbrace{(1-3y+3y^2-y^3)(1+3y+6y^2)}_{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)} + \underbrace{y^3\left[4-3y+6(1-2y+y^2)\right]}_{y^p\mathsf{P}_m(1-y)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \underbrace{1 - 3y + 3y^2 - y^3 + 3y - 9y^2 + 9y^3 - 3y^4 + 6y^2 - 18y^3 + 18y^4 - 6y^5}_{(1-y)^p \mathsf{P}_m(y)} \\
&\quad + \underbrace{y^3\left[10 - 15y + 6y^2\right]}_{y^p \mathsf{P}_m(1-y)} \\
&= \underbrace{1 + 0y + 0y^2 - 10y^3 + 15y^4 - 6y^5}_{(1-y)^p \mathsf{P}_m(y)} + \underbrace{10y^3 - 15y^4 + 6y^5}_{y^p \mathsf{P}_m(1-y)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

(b) Proof for $\mathsf{R}(y) = 0$ case (using induction): [3]

i. Define $\mathsf{P}_p(y) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^k$.

ii. lemma: proof that $(1-y)\mathsf{P}_p(y) = \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p (1-2y)$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)\mathsf{P}_p(y) \\
&= \mathsf{P}_p(y) - y\mathsf{P}_p(y) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^k - \sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^{k+1} \\
&= \underbrace{1 + \sum_{k=1}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^k}_{\sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^k} \underbrace{- \sum_{k=1}^{p} \binom{p+k-1}{k-1} y^k - \binom{2p}{p} y^p}_{-\sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k}{k} y^{k+1}} \\
&= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{p} \left[\binom{p+k}{k} - \binom{p+k-1}{k-1}\right] y^k - \binom{2p}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{p} \left[\underbrace{\binom{p+k-1}{k} + \binom{p+k-1}{k-1}}_{\binom{p+k}{k}} - \binom{p+k-1}{k-1}\right] y^k - \binom{2p}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&\qquad \text{by Pascal's Rule page 133} \\
&= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{p} \binom{p+k-1}{k} y^k - \binom{2p}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p} \binom{p+k-1}{k} y^k - \binom{2p}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p+k-1}{k} y^k + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p - \binom{2p}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p - \frac{(2p)!}{p!p!} y^{p+1} \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{P}_p(y) \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p - \frac{2p}{p} \frac{(2p-1)!}{p!(p-1)!} y^{p+1} \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p - 2\binom{2p-1}{p} y^{p+1} \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p} y^p (1-2y)
\end{aligned}
$$

[3] Many thanks to Chip Eastham for his extremely valuable help with this proof.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

iii. lemma: proof that $y\mathsf{P}_p(1-y) = \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) - \binom{2p-1}{p}(1-y)^p(1-2y)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
y\mathsf{P}_p(1-y) &= \left[(1-u)\mathsf{P}_p(u)\right]_{u\triangleq 1-y} \\
&= \left[(1-u)\mathsf{P}_p(u)\right]_{u\triangleq 1-y} \\
&= \left[\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(u) + \binom{2p-1}{p}u^p(1-2u)\right]_{u\triangleq 1-y} && \text{by previous lemma} \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) + \binom{2p-1}{p}(1-y)^p(-1+2y) \\
&= \mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) - \binom{2p-1}{p}(1-y)^p(1-2y)
\end{aligned}$$

iv. Proof that $p-1$ case $\implies$ p case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^{p+1}\mathsf{P}_p(y) + y^{p+1}\mathsf{P}_p(1-y) \\
&= (1-y)^p(1-y)\mathsf{P}_p(y) + y^p y\mathsf{P}_p(1-y) \\
&= (1-y)^p\underbrace{\left[\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + \binom{2p-1}{p}y^p(1-2y)\right]}_{\text{by item (2(b)ii) page 102}} + y^p\underbrace{\left[\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) - \binom{2p-1}{p}(1-y)^p(1-2y)\right]}_{\text{by item (2(b)iii) page 103}} \\
&= \underbrace{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y)}_{1} + \binom{2p-1}{p}(1-2y)\underbrace{\left[(1-y)^p y^p - y^p(1-y)^p\right]}_{0} \\
&= 1 \qquad \text{by induction hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

v. Therefore by induction, $(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) = 1$ is true for all $p \in \mathbb{N}$.

(c) Proof for $\mathsf{R}(y) \neq 0$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y) \\
&= (1-y)^p\left[\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)\right] + y^p\left[\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) + (1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-[1-y]\right)\right] \\
&= (1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + (1-y)^p y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + y^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) + y^p(1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(-\frac{1}{2}+y\right) \\
&= \left[(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y)\right] + \underbrace{\left[(1-y)^p y^p\mathsf{R}\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right) + -y^p(1-y)^p\mathsf{R}\left(y-\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]}_{0 \text{ because } \mathsf{R}(y) \text{ is an odd polynomial}} \\
&= (1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(y) + y^p\mathsf{P}_{p-1}(1-y) \\
&= 1 \qquad \text{by item (2b) page 102}
\end{aligned}$$

✎

Example 6.1. [4] Here are some examples of the minimal polynomial $\mathsf{P}_m(y)$ for varying number of vanishing moments p:

EX

p	$\mathsf{P}_m(y) = \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k$
1	1
2	$1 + 2y$
3	$1 + 3y + 6y^2$
4	$1 + 4y + 10y^2 + 20y^3$
5	$1 + 5y + 15y^2 + 35y^3 + 70y^4$
6	$1 + 6y + 21y^2 + 56y^3 + 126y^4 + 252y^5$
7	$1 + 7y + 28y^2 + 84y^3 + 210y^4 + 462y^5 + 924y^6$
8	$1 + 8y + 36y^2 + 120y^3 + 330y^4 + 792y^5 + 1716y^6 + 3432y^7$
9	$1 + 9y + 45y^2 + 165y^3 + 495y^4 + 1287y^5 + 3003y^6 + 6435y^7 + 12870y^8$
10	$1 + 10y + 55y^2 + 220y^3 + 715y^4 + 2002y^5 + 5005y^6 + 11440y^7 + 24310y^8 + 48620y^9$

[4] Pinsky (2002), page 333

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

Example 6.2. Here are some examples of the minimal polynomial $\mathsf{P}_m(y)$ evaluated at $y = [(-z+2-1/z)/4]$:

EX

p	$\mathsf{P}_m\left(\frac{z-2+z^{-1}}{-4}\right)$
1	1
2	$\frac{z^2-4z-1}{-2z}$
3	$\frac{3z^4-18z^3+38z^2-18z+3}{2^3z^2}$
4	$\frac{5z^6-40z^5+131z^4-208z^3+131z^2-40z+5}{-2^4z^3}$
5	$\frac{35z^8-350z^7+1520z^6-3650z^5+5018z^4-3650z^3+1520z^2-350z+35}{2^7z^4}$
6	$\frac{63z^{10}-756z^9+4067z^8-12768z^7+25374z^6-32216z^5+25374z^4-12768z^3+4067z^2-756z+63}{-2^8z^5}$

Theorem 6.1 (next) gives a method for computing scaling functions with compact support and p vanishing moments. This method results in an infinite number of possible solutions. For each value p, there are exactly $2^{\lfloor p/2 \rfloor}$ solutions that are of minimum order $2p-1$. Of these $2^{\lfloor p/2 \rfloor}$ solutions, there is one solution that is also *minimum phase*. This is the Daubechies-p scaling function. All the $2^{\lfloor p/2 \rfloor}$ solutions occur when $\mathsf{R}(y) = 0$. An infinite number of other solutions are also available when $\mathsf{R}(y) \neq 0$.

Theorem 6.1. *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *be an* ***orthonormal*** *wavelet system.*

THM

1. *If* ψ *has* p *vanishing moments, then* $(\!(h_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *must be of a form that satisfies*

$$i) \quad \sum_n h_n z^{-n} = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathsf{Q}(z)$$

$$ii) \quad \mathsf{Q}(z)\mathsf{Q}(z^{-1}) = \left[\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k + y^p R\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)\right]\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}}$$

2. *The support of* $(\!(h_n)\!)$ *is minimized when* $R(y) = 0$.

3. *If* ψ *has* p *vanishing moments, then the minimum support size of* $(\!(h_n)\!)$ *is* $2p-1$ *(*$2p$ *non-zero elements).*

4. *If* $(\!(h_n)\!)$ *has support size* $2p-1$ *(*$2p$ *non-zero coefficients) then* ψ *has maximum of* p *vanishing moments.*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for the form of $(\!(h_n)\!)$:

   (a) For $y \triangleq \sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$

$$\underbrace{\left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2}_{\text{quadrature condition in frequency domain}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{(1-y)^p\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(y) + y^p\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(1-y) = 1}_{\text{quadrature condition as a polynomial in } y}$$

   (b) The polynomial $\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(\omega)$ is non-negative and therefore can be factorized into two factors:

$$\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(y)\Big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} = \mathsf{Q}\left(z\right)\mathsf{Q}\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Fejér-Riesz factorization} \text{ (Theorem I.5 page 240)}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(c)

$$|\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)|^2 = 2\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(z) \qquad = 2\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathsf{Q}\left(z\right)\mathsf{Q}\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right)$$

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathsf{Q}(z)$$

2. Proof that the support of $(\!|h_n|\!)$ is minimized when $R(y) = 0$:
   This follows directly from *Bezout's Theorem* (Lemma C.4 page 147).

$$\begin{aligned}
Q\left(z\right)Q\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right) &= \ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(y)\Big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} && \text{by Theorem I.5 page 240}\\
&= \left[\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k + y^p \cancelto{0}{R\left(\frac{1}{2}-y\right)}\right]_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} && \text{by Lemma 6.3 page 99}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)^k && \text{by Lemma 6.3 page 99}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that the minimum support size of $(\!|h_n|\!)$ is $2p-1$ ($2p$ non-zero elements).

$$\begin{aligned}
\underbrace{\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}(y)\Big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}}}_{\text{order } p-1 \text{ in } y} &= \underbrace{\ddot{\mathsf{Q}}\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)}_{\text{order } 2p-2 \text{ in } z}\\
&= \underbrace{\mathsf{Q}\left(z\right)}_{\text{order } p-1}\underbrace{\mathsf{Q}\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right)}_{\text{order } p-1} && \text{by } \textit{Fejér-Riesz factorization} \text{ (Theorem I.5 page 240)}\\
\underbrace{\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)}_{\text{order } 2p-1} &= \underbrace{\sqrt{2}\left(\frac{z+1}{2}\right)^p}_{\text{order } p}\underbrace{Q(z)}_{\text{order } p-1}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

6.2 Design details

Definition 6.1. *Let $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ be the* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) of a sequence $(\!|h_n|\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$. Let $Q(z)$ be a polynomial with real coefficients and*

$$\begin{aligned}
y &\triangleq \sin^2\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\\
P(y) &\triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\\
\dot{Q} &\triangleq \left\{Q(z)|Q(z)Q(z^{-1}) = P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right\}\right) && \textit{(FEJÉR-RIESZ SPECTRAL FACTORIZATIONS of } P\textit{)}\\
\mathbf{R}Q &\triangleq \left\{z_n|z_n \textit{ is a zero of } Q(z)\right\} && \textit{(roots of } Q(z)\textit{)}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

DEF

$\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *is a* ***Daubechies-p wavelet system*** *if*

1. $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p Q(z)$ *and*
2. $Q(z)$ *is the polynomial in* $\dot{Q}$ such that $\forall z_n \in \mathbf{R}Q,\ |z_n| < 1$ *and*
3. $g_n = (-1)^n h_{2p-1-n}$

$\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$ *is also called a* D_p ***wavelet system***.

The Daubechies-p wavelets of Definition 6.1 page 105 can be calculated [5] by the following steps:

1. Compute the polynomial $P(y)$. This polynomial has $p-1$ roots in y.

$$P(y) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p-1+k}{k} y^k \qquad \text{where } \binom{n}{k} \triangleq \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$$

2. Compute $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$. This polynomial has $2p-2$ roots in z.

(a) Because the coefficients of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ are real, all of its roots occur in *complex conjugate pairs*:

$$\text{root at } z_1 = re^{i\theta} \iff \text{root at } z_1^* = \left(re^{i\theta}\right)^* = re^{-i\theta}$$

(b) All of the roots of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ occur in *conjugate reciprocal pairs*:

$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) \text{ has a root at } z = re^{i\theta} \qquad \iff$$

$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) \text{ has a root at } z = \left(re^{i\theta}\right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{r}e^{-i\theta}$$

[5] For an actual implementation using *Octave*, see Section V.1 (page 397).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure 6.1: Zero locations for B-cardinal spline $N_p(x)$ (left) and Daubechies-p (right) scaling coefficients

3. By the *Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization theorem* (Theorem I.5 page 240), [6] $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ can be factored in the form
$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) = Q(z)Q(z^{-1}).$$

4. Form $Q(z)$ from the $p-1$ zeros *inside* the unit circle.

5. The scaling coefficients $(\!(h_n)\!)$ are the coefficients of the polynomial
$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \underbrace{\sqrt{2}\underbrace{\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^{p}}_{\text{order } p}\underbrace{Q(z)}_{\text{order } p-1}}_{\text{order } 2p-1\ (2p \text{ coefficients})}$$

As the number of vanishing moments approaches infinity ($p \to \infty$), the zeros of the Daubechies-p scaling coefficients approach two asymptotic arcs as described in the next theorem and illustrated in Figure 6.1 (page 107).

Lemma 6.4. [7] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(V_j)\!), (\!(W_j)\!), \phi, \psi, (\!(h_n)\!), (\!(g_n)\!)\right)$.

LEM

$\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ is a DAUBECHIES-p WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 6.1 page 105)* $\Longrightarrow$
with increasing vanishing moments parameter p, the zeros of $Q(z)Q(z^{-1})$ asymptotically approach the area of the complex plain enclosed by the arcs
$$|z-1| = \sqrt{2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad |z+1| = \sqrt{2}$$

[6] *Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization* (Theorem I.5 page 240)

[7] Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 170 ⟨0961408871⟩, Vidakovic (1999) page 78 ⟨Fig. 3.14⟩, Shen and Strang (1996) page 3823, Kateb and Lemarié-Rieusset (1997)

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem 6.2. *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{W}_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \psi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right), \left(\!\left(g_n\right)\!\right)\right)$. *Let* $\operatorname{supp}\left(\!\left(x_n\right)\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be defined as in Definition 2.4 page 31.*

THM

$\{\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *is a* DAUBECHIES-p WAVELET SYSTEM *(Definition 6.1 page 105)*$\}$ $\Longrightarrow$

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \boldsymbol{\Omega} \text{ is an ORTHONORMAL WAVELET SYSTEM.} & \text{and} \\ (2). & \tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) \text{ has MINIMUM PHASE.} & \text{and} \\ (3). & \operatorname{supp}\left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right) = 2p-1 \ \left(\left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right) \text{ has } 2p \text{ non-zero elements}\right) & \text{and} \\ (4). & \text{the support size of } \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right) \text{ is the smallest possible} & \\ & \text{for wavelets with } p \text{ vanishing moments.} & \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. proof for (1): For $p = 1$, this is the *Haar wavelet system*. For $p \geq 2$, this follows from Theorem 5.2 page 74.

   (a) Proof that $\left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)$ satisfies $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n = \sqrt{2}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\big|_{z=1} &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p Q(z)\bigg|_{z=1} && \text{by def. of } \textit{Daubechies-}p \textit{ wavelet system} && \text{(Definition 6.1 page 105)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+1^{-1}}{2}\right)^p Q(1) \\
&= \sqrt{2}Q(1) \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{Q(1)Q^*(1^{-1})} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{Q(z)Q^*\left(z^{-1}\right)}\bigg|_{z=1} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)}\bigg|_{z=1} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{P(0)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k}\bigg|_{y=0} && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal quadrature conditions} && \text{(Lemma 6.3 page 99)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\left(1\cdot 0^0 + 0\right)} && \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k} && \text{(Definition B.3 page 132)} \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{(1+0)} \\
&= \sqrt{2} \\
\Longrightarrow \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n &= \sqrt{2} && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal quadrature conditions} && \text{(Lemma 5.1 page 71)}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Proof that $\left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)$ satisfies $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m h^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\boldsymbol{\Omega} \text{ is a } D_p \textit{ wavelet system} \\
\Longrightarrow\ & (1-y)^p P(y) + y^p P(1-y) = 1 && \text{by Definition 6.1 page 105 and Lemma 6.3 page 99} \\
\Longleftrightarrow\ & \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|^2 + \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega+\pi)\right|^2 = 2 && \text{by Lemma 6.2 page 98} \\
\Longleftrightarrow\ & \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h_m h^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by } \textit{orthonormal quadrature conditions} \text{ (Lemma 5.1 page 71)}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(c) Proof that $\tilde{\phi}(\omega)$ is *continuous* at 0:

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p Q(z) \qquad \text{by Definition 6.1 page 105}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \psi \text{ has } p \textit{ vanishing moments} \qquad \text{by Lemma 4.3 page 65}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \tilde{\phi}(\omega) \text{ is } \textit{continuous} \text{ at } \omega = 0 \qquad \text{by Theorem 4.5 page 64}$$

(d) Proof that $\inf_{\omega\in[-\pi/2:\pi/2]} \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right| > 0$:
by Lemma 6.4 page 107—note that the zeros are never on the unit circle in the range $[-\pi/2 : \pi/2]$.

2. Proof for (2): The zeros are chosen to be *inside* the unit circle, thus giving $\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)$ *minimum phase*.
3. Proof for (3): See Theorem 6.1 page 104.
4. Proof for (4): See Theorem 6.1 page 104.

✏

6.3 Examples

Example 6.3. The **Daubechies-**1 wavelet system yields the following results.

EX

n	h_n	g_n
0	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
1	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$

The **Daubechies-**1 wavelet system is equivalent to the *Haar wavelet system*, and it is possible to compute this wavelet system using "time-domain" techniques as well:

1. Admissibility condition and *orthonormality*—Example 5.3 (page 90)
2. Admissibility condition and *partition of unity*—Example 2.3 (page 40)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{Q}(z)\mathsf{Q}(z^{-1}) &= P(y)\big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{0}\binom{1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= 1 \\
&= \underbrace{1}_{\mathsf{Q}(z)} \cdot \underbrace{1}_{\mathsf{Q}(z^{-1})}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

n	h_n	g_n
0	$\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$\frac{1-\sqrt{3}}{4}$
1	$\frac{3+\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$-\frac{3-\sqrt{3}}{4}$
2	$\frac{3-\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$\frac{3+\sqrt{3}}{4}$
3	$\frac{1-\sqrt{3}}{4}$	$-\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{4}$

Figure 6.2: *Daubechies-2 wavelet system* (Example 6.4 page 110)

$$\begin{aligned}\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \cancelto{1}{\mathsf{Q}(z)} \\ &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}_{h_0} + z^{-1}\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}_{h_1}\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example 6.4. The **Daubechies-2 wavelet system** yields the results illustrated in Figure 6.2 (page 110). It is also possible to compute this wavelet system using a "time-domain" technique as well—see Example 2.3 (page 40).

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{Q}(z)\mathsf{Q}(z^{-1}) &= P(y)\big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{1}\binom{1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\ &= (1+2y)\big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\ &= 1+\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{2} \\ &= \frac{4-z-z^{-1}}{2} \\ &= \frac{4z-z^2-1}{2z} \\ &= \frac{z^2-4z+1}{-2z} \\ &= \frac{1}{-2z}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[z-(2+\sqrt{3})\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{-2}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[1-(2+\sqrt{3})z^{-1}\right]\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX

n	h_n	g_n
0	0.3326705530	0.0352262919
1	0.8068915093	0.0854412739
2	0.4598775021	−0.1350110200
3	−0.1350110200	−0.4598775021
4	−0.0854412739	0.8068915093
5	0.0352262919	−0.3326705530

Figure 6.3: *Daubechies-3 wavelet system* (Example 6.5 page 111)

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[(2+\sqrt{3})z^{-1}-1\right] \\
&= \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[\frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2+\sqrt{3}}z^{-1}-\frac{1}{2+\sqrt{3}}\right] \\
&= \frac{2+\sqrt{3}}{2}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[z^{-1}-(2-\sqrt{3})\right] \\
&= \underbrace{\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{2}}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]}_{\mathrm{Q}(z)}\underbrace{\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{2}}\left[z^{-1}-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]}_{\mathrm{Q}(z^{-1})}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathrm{h}}(z) &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^{p}\mathrm{Q}(z) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\left(\frac{z+1}{z}\right)^{2}\mathrm{Q}(z) \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4z^2}\frac{1+\sqrt{3}}{2}\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right][z+1]^2 \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8z^2}(1+\sqrt{3})\left[z-(2-\sqrt{3})\right]\left[z^2+z+1\right] \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8z^2}(1+\sqrt{3})[z^3+z^2(\sqrt{3})+z(-3+2\sqrt{2})+(-2+\sqrt{3})] \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{8z^2}[z^3(1+\sqrt{3})+z^2(3+\sqrt{3})+z(3-\sqrt{3})+(1-\sqrt{3})] \\
&= \underbrace{z\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1+\sqrt{3})}_{h_0}+\underbrace{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3+\sqrt{3})}_{h_1}+\underbrace{z^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3-\sqrt{3})}_{h_2}+\underbrace{z^{-2}\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3})}_{h_3}
\end{aligned}
$$

✍

Example 6.5. The **Daubechies-3 wavelet system** yields the results illustrated in Figure 6.3 (page 111).

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Q}(z)\mathrm{Q}(z^{-1}) &= P(y)\big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}\binom{2+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \frac{2!}{0!(2-0)!}y^0 + \frac{3!}{1!(3-1)!}y^1 + \frac{4!}{2!(4-2)!}y^2\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \left[1+3y+6y^2\right]_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= 1+3\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)+6\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)^2 \\
&= 1+3\left(\frac{z^2-2z+1}{-4z}\right)+6\left(\frac{z^2-2z+1}{-4z}\right)^2 \\
&= 1+\left(\frac{-3z^2+6z-3}{4z}\right)+6\left(\frac{z^4-4z^3+6z^2-4z+1}{16z^2}\right) \\
&= \frac{16z^2}{16z^2}+\left(\frac{-12z^3+24z^2-12z}{16z^2}\right)+\left(\frac{6z^4-24z^3+36z^2-24z+6}{16z^2}\right) \\
&= \frac{6z^4-36z^3+76z^2-36z+6}{16z^2} \\
&= \frac{3}{8z^2}\left(z^4-6z^3+\frac{38}{3}z^2-6z+1\right) \\
&= \frac{3}{8z^2}\left(z^4-6z^3+\frac{38}{3}z^2-6z+1\right) \\
&= \frac{3}{8z^2}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(z-r_2)(z-r_2^*) \\
&= \frac{3}{8}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(1-z^{-1}r_2)(1-z^{-1}r_2^*) \\
&= \frac{3r_2r_2^*}{8}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(r_2^{-1}-z^{-1})(r_2^{*-1}-z^{-1}) \\
&= \frac{3r_2r_2^*}{8}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(\frac{1}{r_2}-z^{-1})(\frac{1}{r_2^*}-z^{-1}) \\
&= \frac{3|r_2|^2}{8}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(r_1^*-z^{-1})(r_1-z^{-1}) \\
&= \frac{3|r_2|^2}{8}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)(z^{-1}-r_1^*)(z^{-1}-r_1) \\
&= \underbrace{\sqrt{\frac{3|r_2|^2}{8}}(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)}_{\mathrm{Q}(z)}\underbrace{\sqrt{\frac{3|r_2|^2}{8}}(z^{-1}-r_1^*)(z^{-1}-r_1)}_{\mathrm{Q}(z^{-1})}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_1 &= 0.287251 + i0.152892 = \frac{1}{r_2^*} \\
r_2 &= 2.712749 + i1.443887 = \frac{1}{r_1^*}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\check{\mathrm{h}}(z) = \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathrm{Q}(z)
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX

n	h_n	g_n
0	0.2303778133	−0.0105974018
1	0.7148465706	−0.0328830117
2	0.6308807679	0.0308413818
3	−0.0279837694	0.1870348117
4	−0.1870348117	−0.0279837694
5	0.0308413818	−0.6308807679
6	0.0328830117	0.7148465706
7	−0.0105974018	−0.2303778133

Figure 6.4: *Daubechies*-4 *wavelet system* (Example 6.6 page 113)

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{z+1}{2z}\right)^3 \mathrm{Q}(z) \\
&= \sqrt{2}\sqrt{\frac{3|r_2|^2}{8}}\left(\frac{z+1}{2z}\right)^3 (z-r_1)(z-r_1^*) \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{3|r_2|^2}}{16}\right)\frac{(z+1)^3(z-r_1)(z-r_1^*)}{z^3} \\
&= \left(\frac{\sqrt{3|r_2|^2}}{16}\right)\frac{(z^3+3z^2+3z+1)(z^2-2z\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{e}}\left[r_1\right]+|r_1|^2)}{z^3} \\
&= \frac{h_0z^5+h_1z^4+h_2z^3+h_3z^2+h_4z+h_5}{z^3}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_0 &= +0.3326705529500830 \\
h_1 &= +0.8068915093110932 \\
h_2 &= +0.4598775021184915 \\
h_3 &= -0.1350110200102552 \\
h_4 &= -0.0854412738820268 \\
h_5 &= +0.0352262918857096
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Example 6.6. The **Daubechies-4 wavelet system** yields the results illustrated in Figure 6.4 (page 113).

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(y)\big|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} &= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{3}\binom{3+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{3!}{0!(3-0)!}y^0 + \frac{4!}{1!(4-1)!}y^1 + \frac{5!}{2!(5-2)!}y^2 + \frac{6!}{3!(6-3)!}y^3\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \left[1 + 4y + 10y^2 + 20y^3\right]_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= 1 + 4\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) + 10\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)^2 + 20\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)^3
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_1 &= +0.3288759177860292 \\
r_2 &= +0.2840962981918215 + 0.2432282259103822i \\
r_3 &= +0.2840962981918215 - 0.2432282259103822i && = r_2^* \\
r_4 &= +3.0406604616474535 && = \frac{1}{r_1} \\
r_5 &= +2.0311355120914394 - 1.7389508076448230i && = \frac{1}{r_2} \\
r_6 &= +2.0311355120914394 + 1.7389508076448230i && = r_5^*
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathsf{Q}(z) \\
&= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{z+1}{2z}\right)^4 \mathsf{Q}(z) \\
&= A_0\left[\frac{z+1}{2}\right]^4 \frac{(z-r_1)(z-r_2)(z-r_2^*)}{z^4} \\
&= \frac{h_0z^7 + h_1^6 + h_2z^5 + h_3z^4 + h_4z^3 + h_5z^2 + h_6z + h_7}{z^4}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_0 &= +0.2303778133088954 \\
h_1 &= +0.7148465705529126 \\
h_2 &= +0.6308807679298577 \\
h_3 &= -0.0279837694168571 \\
h_4 &= -0.1870348117190903 \\
h_5 &= +0.0308413818355609 \\
h_6 &= +0.0328830116668849 \\
h_7 &= -0.0105974017850690
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Example 6.7. The **Daubechies-8 wavelet system** yields the results illustrated in Figure 6.5 (page 115).

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{Q}(z)\mathsf{f}(Q^{-1}) &= P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{7}\binom{7+k}{k}y^k\Bigg|_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}} \\
&= \left[1 + 8y + 36y^2 + 120y^3 + 330y^4 + 792y^5 + 1716y^6 + 3432y^7\right]_{y=\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}}
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX

n	h_n	g_n
0	0.0544158422	−0.0001174768
1	0.3128715909	−0.0006754494
2	0.6756307363	−0.0003917404
3	0.5853546837	0.0048703530
4	−0.0158291053	0.0087460940
5	−0.2840155430	−0.0139810279
6	0.0004724846	−0.0440882539
7	0.1287474266	0.0173693010
8	−0.0173693010	0.1287474266
9	−0.0440882539	−0.0004724846
10	0.0139810279	−0.2840155430
11	0.0087460940	0.0158291053
12	−0.0048703530	0.5853546837
13	−0.0003917404	−0.6756307363
14	0.0006754494	0.3128715909
15	−0.0001174768	−0.0544158422

Figure 6.5: *Daubechies-8 wavelet system* (Example 6.7 page 114)

r_1	=	+0.3654035130742002		r_8	=	+2.7367005631344137	
r_2	=	+0.3577427639711839	+0.1159310245530727i	r_9	=	+1.0379714430713773	+1.7304352168829922i
r_3	=	+0.3577427639711839	−0.1159310245530727i	r_{10}	=	+1.0379714430713773	−1.7304352168829922i
r_4	=	+0.3298169959381100	+0.2476497421117944i	r_{11}	=	+1.9388494686323963	+1.4558242201373777i
r_5	=	+0.3298169959381100	−0.2476497421117944i	r_{12}	=	+1.9388494686323963	−1.4558242201373777i
r_6	=	+0.2549176775413241	+0.4249813706999120i	r_{13}	=	+2.5296496127413031	+0.8197646490830808i
r_7	=	+0.2549176775413241	−0.4249813706999120i	r_{14}	=	+2.5296496127413031	−0.8197646490830808i

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p \mathsf{Q}(z) \\
&= \sqrt{2}\left(\frac{z+1}{2z}\right)^8 \mathsf{Q}(z) \\
&= A_0\,\frac{(z+1)^8(z-r_1)(z-r_2)(z-r_2^*)(z-r_4)(z-r_4^*)(z-r_6)(z-r_6^*)}{z^8} \\
&= \frac{h_0 z^{15} + h_1 z^{14} + h_2 z^{13} + \cdots + h_{13} z^2 + h_{14} z + h_{15}}{z^8}
\end{aligned}
$$

h_0	=	+0.0544158422430650	h_6	=	+0.0004724845739543	h_{11}	=	+0.0087460940474007
h_1	=	+0.3128715909140905	h_7	=	+0.1287474266204180	h_{12}	=	−0.0048703529934458
h_2	=	+0.6756307362969000	h_8	=	−0.0173693010017349	h_{13}	=	−0.0003917403733767
h_3	=	+0.5853546836540295	h_9	=	−0.0440882539307343	h_{14}	=	+0.0006754494064499
h_4	=	−0.0158291052560285	h_{10}	=	+0.0139810279173888	h_{15}	=	−0.0001174767841246
h_5	=	−0.2840155429611567						

CC BY-NC-ND

EX

p	n	h_n
5	0	0.1601023980
	1	0.6038292698
	2	0.7243085284
	3	0.1384281459
	4	−0.2422948871
	5	−0.0322448696
	6	0.0775714938
	7	−0.0062414902
	8	−0.0125807520
	9	0.0033357253
6	0	0.1115407434
	1	0.4946238904
	2	0.7511339080
	3	0.3152503517
	4	−0.2262646940
	5	−0.1297668676
	6	0.0975016056
	7	0.0275228655
	8	−0.0315820393
	9	0.0005538422
	10	0.0047772575
	11	−0.0010773011
7	0	0.0778520541
	1	0.3965393195
	2	0.7291320908
	3	0.4697822874
	4	−0.1439060039
	5	−0.2240361850
	6	0.0713092193
	7	0.0806126092
	8	−0.0380299369
	9	−0.0165745416
	10	0.0125509986
	11	0.0004295780
	12	−0.0018016407
	13	0.0003537138

p	n	h_n
8	0	0.0544158422
	1	0.3128715909
	2	0.6756307363
	3	0.5853546837
	4	−0.0158291053
	5	−0.2840155430
	6	0.0004724846
	7	0.1287474266
	8	−0.0173693010
	9	−0.0440882539
	10	0.0139810279
	11	0.0087460940
	12	−0.0048703530
	13	−0.0003917404
	14	0.0006754494
	15	−0.0001174768
9	0	0.0380779474
	1	0.2438346746
	2	0.6048231237
	3	0.6572880781
	4	0.1331973858
	5	−0.2932737833
	6	−0.0968407832
	7	0.1485407493
	8	0.0307256815
	9	−0.0676328291
	10	0.0002509471
	11	0.0223616621
	12	−0.0047232048
	13	−0.0042815037
	14	0.0018476469
	15	0.0002303858
	16	−0.0002519632
	17	0.0000393473

p	n	h_n
10	0	0.0266700579
	1	0.1881768001
	2	0.5272011889
	3	0.6884590395
	4	0.2811723437
	5	−0.2498464243
	6	−0.1959462744
	7	0.1273693403
	8	0.0930573646
	9	−0.0713941472
	10	−0.0294575368
	11	0.0332126741
	12	0.0036065536
	13	−0.0107331755
	14	0.0013953517
	15	0.0019924053
	16	−0.0006858567
	17	−0.0001164669
	18	0.0000935887
	19	−0.0000132642
11	0	0.0186942978
	1	0.1440670212
	2	0.4498997644
	3	0.6856867749
	4	0.4119643689
	5	−0.1622752450
	6	−0.2742308468
	7	0.0660435882
	8	0.1498120125
	9	−0.0464799551
	10	−0.0664387857
	11	0.0313350902
	12	0.0208409044
	13	−0.0153648209
	14	−0.0033408589
	15	0.0049284177
	16	−0.0003085929
	17	−0.0008930233
	18	0.0002491525
	19	0.0000544391
	20	−0.0000346350
	21	0.0000044943

p	n	h_n
12	0	0.0131122580
	1	0.1095662728
	2	0.3773551352
	3	0.6571987226
	4	0.5158864784
	5	−0.0447638857
	6	−0.3161784538
	7	−0.0237792573
	8	0.1824786059
	9	0.0053595697
	10	−0.0964321201
	11	0.0108491303
	12	0.0415462775
	13	−0.0122186491
	14	−0.0128408252
	15	0.0067114990
	16	0.0022486072
	17	−0.0021795036
	18	0.0000065451
	19	0.0003886531
	20	−0.0000885041
	21	−0.0000242415
	22	0.0000127770
	23	−0.0000015291

Table 6.1: Daubechies-p scaling coefficients (h_n)

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 5$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 5$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 6$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 6$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 7$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 7$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 8$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 8$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 9$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 9$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 10$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 10$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 11$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 11$
$\phi(t)$ and (h_n) for $p = 12$
$\psi(t)$ and (g_n) for $p = 12$

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure 6.6: *Daubechies-p wavelet system* pole zero plots

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

CHAPTER 7

QUASI-SYMMETRY CONSTRAINT

7.1 Design details

The Daubechies-p wavelets (CHAPTER 6 page 95) are in general *asymmetric* because they are constructed under a *minimum phase* constraint—all zeros for polynomial $Q(z)$ are selected to be inside the unit circle. Suppose we want to design filters such that the number of vanishing moments is the same, but we are willing to lift the minimum phase condition to gain more symmetry. That is, instead of choosing the zeros from $Q(z)Q(z^{-1})$ that are inside the unit circle only, we choose some that are inside and some that are outside to give better balance. However, for zeros that are complex, we still select them in conjugate pairs so that the coefficients of $Q(z)$ are real.

Definition 7.1. *Let $Q(z)$ be a polynomial with real coefficients and*

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(y) &\triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p-1+k}{k} y^k \\
\dot{Q} &\triangleq \left\{ Q(z) | Q(z)Q(z^{-1}) = P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right\}\right) && \textit{(Fejér-Riesz spectral factorizations of } P\textit{)} \\
\mathbf{R}Q &\triangleq (\!(r_n)\!)_{r_n \textit{ is a root of } Q(z)} && \textit{(roots of } Q(z)\textit{)} \\
[\mathbf{A}Q](\omega) &\triangleq \operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{\mathbf{I}_{\mathsf{m}}\left[Q(e^{i\omega})\right]}{\mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}}\left[Q(e^{i\omega})\right]}\right) && \textit{(phase of } Q(e^{i\omega})\textit{)} \\
\mathbf{E}Q &\triangleq \inf_{m,c\in\mathbb{R}} \|[\mathbf{A}Q](\omega) - [m\omega + c]\|^2 && \textit{(linear phase estimation error of } Q(z)\textit{)} \\
\mathbf{M}Q &\triangleq \sum_{r_n \in \mathbf{R}Q} |r_n|^2 && \textit{(magnitude of roots of } Q(z)\textit{)} \\
\dot{E} &\triangleq \left\{\varepsilon = \mathbf{E}Q | Q \in \dot{Q}\right\} && \textit{(set of all phase errors)} \\
\dot{M} &\triangleq \left\{m = \mathbf{M}Q | Q \in \dot{Q}\right\} && \textit{(set of all root magnitudes)}
\end{aligned}
$$

*Then the **Symlet-p scaling function** is the sequence $(\!(h_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ with z-transform $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \sum_n h_n z^{-n}$ that satisfies*

DEF

1. $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p Q(z)$
2. $Q(z) = \arg\min_{Q(z)\in\dot{Q}} \left\{\mathbf{M}Q \in \dot{M} \,|\, \mathbf{E}Q = \min \dot{E}\right\}$

The Symlets of Definition 7.1 page 119 can be implemented [1] by the following steps: [2]

1. Compute the polynomial $P(y)$. This polynomial has $p-1$ roots in y.

$$P(y) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} \binom{p-1+k}{k} y^k \qquad \text{where } \binom{n}{k} \triangleq \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$$

2. Compute $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$. This polynomial has $2p-2$ roots in z.

(a) Because the coefficients of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ are real, all of its roots occur in *complex conjugate pairs*:

$$\text{root at } z_1 = re^{i\theta} \iff \text{root at } z_1^* = \left(re^{i\theta}\right)^* = re^{-i\theta}$$

(b) All of the roots of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ occur in *conjugate reciprocal pairs*:

$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) \text{ has a root at } z = re^{i\theta} \iff$$
$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) \text{ has a root at } z = \left(re^{i\theta}\right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{r}e^{-i\theta}$$

[1] For an actual implementation using *Octave*, see Section V.1 (page 397).
[2] Daubechies (1992), pages 254–257

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

3. By the *Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization* theorem (Theorem I.5 page 240) $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ can be factored in the form
$$P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right) = Q(z)Q(z^{-1}).$$
Find all such factors of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$ under the following constraints:
   (a) The selected $p-1$ roots for $Q(z)$ occur in complex conjugate pairs (so $Q(z)$ will have real coefficients).
   (b) $Q(z)$ contains exactly one root from each conjugate reciprocal pair of $P\left(\frac{2-z-z^{-1}}{4}\right)$.

   The above two constraints imply that there are $2^{\lfloor p/2 \rfloor}$ choices of roots for $Q(z)$.

4. Find the two choices that result in a phase that is the closest (in the least square sense) to a straight line. There are two minimum error choices because for each choice, selecting the complementary choice (selecting the zeros that were discarded and discarding the zeros that were selected) will result in the exact same amount of phase error.

5. Of these two choices, select the one where the sum of the magnitude of the $p-1$ roots is least. [3]

6. The scaling coefficients $(\!(h_n)\!)$ are the coefficients of the polynomial
$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \underbrace{\underbrace{\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{2}\right)^p}_{\text{order } p}\underbrace{Q(z)}_{\text{order } p-1}}_{\text{order } 2p-1 \ (2p \text{ coefficients})}$$

Theorem 7.1.

THM

Symlet-p wavelets have the following properties:

1. *Symlet-p wavelets have optimum linear phase (in the least squares sense) among all the Bezout polynomial factorization solutions.*
2. *$(\!(h_n)\!)$ has support size $2p-1$ ($(\!(h_n)\!)$ has $2p$ non-zero elements).*
3. *The support size of $(\!(h_n)\!)$ is the smallest possible for wavelets with p vanishing moments.*

[3] This step is arbitrary and not required by Daubechies' definition of Symlets.

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure 7.1: Daubechies-4 and Symlet-4 wavelet systems (Example 7.1 page 122)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\tilde{\mathfrak{h}}(\omega)$ has optimum **linear phase**: The optimization is performed exhaustively (all the phases are computed and linear error is measured). This is not a rigorous proof.
2. Proof that $\langle h_n \rangle$ has support size $2p-1$: See Theorem 6.1 page 104.
3. Proof that the support size of $\langle h_n \rangle$ is the smallest possible for wavelets with p vanishing moments. See Theorem 6.1 page 104.

✏

7.2 Examples

Example 7.1. Figure 7.1 (page 122) compares the Daubechies-4 and Symlet-4 wavelet structures:

Example 7.2. Figure 7.2 (page 124) compares the Daubechies-8 and Symlet-8 wavelet structures.

Example 7.3. Figure 7.3 (page 124) compares the Daubechies-12 and Symlet-12 wavelet structures.

Example 7.4. Figure 7.4 (page 125) compares the Daubechies-16 and Symlet-16 wavelet structures.

Example 7.5. Figure 7.5 (page 125) and Figure 7.6 (page 126) show the pole-zero plots for Symlet-4, Symlet-5,..., Symlet-17 structures.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX

p	n	h_n
1	0	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
	1	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
2	0	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1+\sqrt{3})$
	1	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3+\sqrt{3})$
	2	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(3-\sqrt{3})$
	3	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{8}(1-\sqrt{3})$
3	0	0.3326705530
	1	0.8068915093
	2	0.4598775021
	3	−0.1350110200
	4	−0.0854412739
	5	0.0352262919
4	0	−0.0757657148
	1	−0.0296355276
	2	0.4976186676
	3	0.8037387518
	4	0.2978577956
	5	−0.0992195436
	6	−0.0126039673
	7	0.0322231006
5	0	0.0273330683
	1	0.0295194909
	2	−0.0391342493
	3	0.1993975340
	4	0.7234076904
	5	0.6339789635
	6	0.0166021058
	7	−0.1753280899
	8	−0.0211018340
	9	0.0195388827
6	0	0.0154041093
	1	0.0034907121
	2	−0.1179901111
	3	−0.0483117426
	4	0.4910559419
	5	0.7876411410
	6	0.3379294217
	7	−0.0726375228
	8	−0.0210602925
	9	0.0447249018
	10	0.0017677119
	11	−0.0078007083
7	0	0.0120154193
	1	0.0172133763
	2	−0.0649080035
	3	−0.0641312898
	4	0.3602184609
	5	0.7819215933
	6	0.4836109157
	7	−0.0568044769
	8	−0.1010109209
	9	0.0447423495
	10	0.0204642076
	11	−0.0181266051
	12	−0.0032832978
	13	0.0022918340
8	0	−0.0033824160
	1	−0.0005421323
	2	0.0316950878
	3	0.0076074873
	4	−0.1432942384
	5	−0.0612733591
	6	0.4813596513
	7	0.7771857517
	8	0.3644418948
	9	−0.0519458381
	10	−0.0272190299
	11	0.0491371797
	12	0.0038087520
	13	−0.0149522583
	14	−0.0003029205
	15	0.0018899503
9	0	0.0014009155
	1	0.0006197809
	2	−0.0132719678
	3	−0.0115282102
	4	0.0302248789
	5	0.0005834627
	6	−0.0545689584
	7	0.2387609146
	8	0.7178970828
	9	0.6173384491
	10	0.0352724880
	11	−0.1915508313
	12	−0.0182337708
	13	0.0620777893
	14	0.0088592675
	15	−0.0102640640
	16	−0.0004731545
	17	0.0010694900
10	0	0.0008625782
	1	0.0007154205
	2	−0.0070567641
	3	0.0005956828
	4	0.0496861266
	5	0.0262403651
	6	−0.1215521056
	7	−0.0150192388
	8	0.5137098734
	9	0.7669548366
	10	0.3402160130
	11	−0.0878787115
	12	−0.0670899078
	13	0.0338423547
	14	−0.0008687521
	15	−0.0230054614
	16	−0.0011404298
	17	0.0050716492
	18	0.0003401493
	19	−0.0004101159
11	0	0.0006871194
	1	0.0013826742
	2	−0.0039185532
	3	−0.0027931771
	4	0.0372023572
	5	0.0509417072
	6	−0.0540827111
	7	−0.0286938383
	8	0.4078687490
	9	0.7685266798
	10	0.4520007834
	11	−0.0815151575
	12	−0.1499464788
	13	0.0182541524
	14	0.0237215478
	15	−0.0273470351
	16	−0.0085852863
	17	0.0098741222
	18	0.0024053043
	19	−0.0016456213
	20	−0.0002460505
	21	0.0001222747

Table 7.1: Symlet-p scaling coefficients $(\!(h_n)\!)$

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure 7.2: Daubechies-8 and Symlet-8 wavelet systems (Example 7.2 page 122)

Figure 7.3: Daubechies-12 and Symlet-12 wavelet systems (Example 7.3 page 122)

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Figure 7.4: Daubechies-16 and Symlet-16 wavelet systems (Example 7.4 page 122)

Figure 7.5: Pole-zero plots for Symlet-4, Symlet-5, Symlet-6, and Symlet-7 structures (Example 7.5 page 122)

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure 7.6: Pole-zero plots for Symlet-8, Symlet-9,..., Symlet-17 structures (Example 7.5 page 122)

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Part I

Appendices

APPENDIX A

ALGEBRAIC STRUCTURES

❝ In this book, learned reader, you have the rules of algebra... It unties the knot not only where one term is equal to another or two to one but also where two are equal to two or three to one.... this most abstruse and unsurpassed treasury of the entire arithmetic being brought to light and, as in a theater, exposed to the sight of all...❞

Gerolamo Cardano (1501–1576), Italian mathematician, physician, and astrologer [1]

A set together with one or more operations forms several standard mathematical structures:

$$\textit{group} \supseteq \textit{ring} \supseteq \textit{commutative ring} \supseteq \textit{integral domain} \supseteq \textit{field}$$

Definition A.1. [2] *Let X be a set and $\diamond : X \times X \to X$ be an operation on X.*

DEF

*The pair $(X, \diamond)$ is a **group** if*

1. $\exists e \in X$ such that $e \diamond x = x \diamond e = x$ $\forall x \in X$ (IDENTITY *element*) *and*
2. $\exists (-x) \in X$ such that $(-x) \diamond x = x \diamond (-x) = e$ $\forall x \in X$ (INVERSE *element*) *and*
3. $x \diamond (y \diamond z) = (x \diamond y) \diamond z$ $\forall x,y,z \in X$ (ASSOCIATIVE)

Definition A.2. [3] *Let $+ : X \times X \to X$ and $* : X \times X \to X$ be operations on a set X. Furthermore, let the operation $*$ also be represented by juxtapostion as in $a * b \equiv ab$.*

DEF

*The triple $(X, +, *)$ is a **ring** if*

1. $(X, +)$ *is a group.* *(additive group)* *and*
2. $x(yz) = (xy)z$ $\forall x,y,z \in X$ *(associative with respect to $*$)* *and*
3. $x(y+z) = (xy) + (xz)$ $\forall x,y,z \in X$ *($*$ is left distributive over $+$)* *and*
4. $(x+y)z = (xz) + (yz)$ $\forall x,y,z \in X$ *($*$ is right distributive over $+$).*

Definition A.3. [4]

---

[1] quote: Cardano (1545), page 1
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Cardano.jpg

[2] Durbin (2000), page 29

[3] Durbin (2000), pages 114–115

[4] Durbin (2000), page 118

DEF

A triple $(X,+,*)$ *is a* ***commutative ring*** *if*

1. $(X,+,*)$ *is a ring* *(ring)* *and*
2. $xy = yx$ $\forall x,y \in X$ *(commutative).*

Definition A.4. [5] *Let* R *be a* COMMUTATIVE RING *(Definition A.3 page 129).*

DEF

A function $|\cdot|$ *in* $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ *is an* ***absolute value*** *(or* ***modulus****) if*

1. $|x| \geq 0$ $x \in \mathbb{R}$ (NON-NEGATIVE) *and*
2. $|x| = 0 \iff x = 0$ $x \in \mathbb{R}$ (NONDEGENERATE) *and*
3. $|xy| = |x| \cdot |y|$ $x,y \in \mathbb{R}$ (HOMOGENEOUS / SUBMULTIPLICATIVE) *and*
4. $|x+y| \leq |x| + |y|$ $x,y \in \mathbb{R}$ (SUBADDITIVE / TRIANGLE INEQUALITY)

Definition A.5. [6]

DEF

The structure $F \triangleq (X,+,\cdot,0,1)$ *is a* ***field*** *if*

1. $(X,+,*)$ *is a ring* *(ring)* *and*
2. $xy = yx$ $\forall x,y \in X$ *(commutative with respect to* $*$*)* *and*
3. $(X \setminus \{0\},*)$ *is a group* *(group with respect to* $*$*).*

Definition A.6. [7] *Let* $\boldsymbol{V} = (F,+,\cdot)$ *be a vector space and* $\otimes : \boldsymbol{V} \times \boldsymbol{V} \to \boldsymbol{V}$ *be a vector-vector multiplication operator.*
An ***algebra*** *is any pair* $(\boldsymbol{V},\otimes)$ *that satisfies* ($\otimes$ *is represented by juxtaposition*)

DEF

1. $(\boldsymbol{ux})\boldsymbol{y} = \boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{xy})$ $\forall \boldsymbol{u},\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{V}$ (ASSOCIATIVE) *and*
2. $\boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}) = (\boldsymbol{ux}) + (\boldsymbol{uy})$ $\forall \boldsymbol{u},\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{V}$ (LEFT DISTRIBUTIVE) *and*
3. $(\boldsymbol{u}+\boldsymbol{x})\boldsymbol{y} = (\boldsymbol{uy}) + (\boldsymbol{xy})$ $\forall \boldsymbol{u},\boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{V}$ (RIGHT DISTRIBUTIVE) *and*
4. $\alpha(\boldsymbol{xy}) = (\alpha\boldsymbol{x})\boldsymbol{y} = \boldsymbol{x}(\alpha\boldsymbol{y})$ $\forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{V}$ *and* $\alpha \in F$ (SCALAR COMMUTATIVE) .

[5] Cohn (2002) page 312
[6] Durbin (2000), page 123, Weber (1893)
[7] Abramovich and Aliprantis (2002), page 3, Michel and Herget (1993), page 56

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX B

BINOMIAL RELATIONS

B.1 Factorials

Definition B.1 (factorial)**.**

DEF

*The **factorial** $n!$ is defined as*

$$n! \triangleq \begin{cases} n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 1 & \text{for } n \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 1 \\ 1 & \text{for } n \in \mathbb{Z},\ n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \leq -1 \end{cases}$$

Definition B.2. [1] *The quantities "x **to the** m **falling**", "x **to the** m **rising**", "x **to the** m **central**" are defined as follows:*

DEF

$$x^{\underline{m}} \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \underbrace{x(x-1)(x-2)\cdots(x-m+1)}_{m \text{ factors}} & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m \in \mathbb{N} \\ 1 & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{"}x \textbf{ to the } m \textbf{ falling"})$$

$$x^{\overline{m}} \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \underbrace{x(x+1)(x+2)\cdots(x+m-1)}_{m \text{ factors}} & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m \in \mathbb{N} \\ 1 & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{"}x \textbf{ to the } m \textbf{ rising"})$$

$$x^{\underline{\overline{m}}} \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \underbrace{x\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1\right)\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-2\right)\cdots\left(x-\frac{m}{2}+1\right)}_{m \text{ factors}} & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m \in \mathbb{N} \\ 1 & \forall x \in \mathbb{C}, m = 0 \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{"}x \textbf{ to the } m \textbf{ central"})$$

The rising and central expressions may be expressed in terms of the falling expression (next).

Proposition B.1. [2]

PRP

$$x^{\overline{m}} = (-1)^m x^{\underline{m}} \qquad x^{\underline{\overline{m}}} = x\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1\right)^{\underline{(m-1)}}$$

[1] Graham et al. (1994) pages 47–48 ⟨equations (2.43), (2.44)⟩, Knuth (1992b), page 414 ⟨(2.11), (2.12)⟩, Aigner (2007) page 10, Steffensen (1950), page 8 ⟨descending, ascending, and central factorials⟩, Steffensen (1927), page 8 ⟨descending, ascending, and central factorials⟩

[2] Steffensen (1950), page 8 ⟨(3)⟩

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
(-1)^m(-x)^{\underline{m}} &= (-1)^m[(-x)(-x-1)(-x-2)\cdots(-x-m+1)] && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= (-1)^m(-1)^m[(x)(x+1)(x+2)\cdots(x+m-1)]\\
&= x^{\overline{m}} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
x\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1\right)^{\underline{(m-1)}} &= x\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1\right)\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1-1\right)\cdots\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1-(m-1)+1\right) && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= x\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-1\right)\left(x+\frac{m}{2}-2\right)\cdots\left(x-\frac{m}{2}+1)\right)\\
&= x^{\overline{m}}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

B.2 Binomial identities

Definition B.3 (Binomial coefficient). [3] *Let $\mathbb{C}$ be the set of complex numbers and $\mathbb{Z}$ the set of integers. Let $x^{\underline{m}}$ represent "x to the m falling" (Definition B.2). Let $n!$ represent "n factorial" (Definition B.1).*

DEF

*The **binomial coefficient** $\binom{x}{k}$ is defined as*

$$\binom{x}{k} \triangleq \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^{\underline{k}}}{k!} & \forall x\in\mathbb{C} \quad k\in\mathbb{W} \quad (k=0,1,2,3,\ldots)\\ 0 & \forall x\in\mathbb{C} \quad k\in\mathbb{Z}^- \quad (k=-1,-2,-3,\ldots)\end{cases}$$

*The value x is called the **upper index** and the value k is called the **lower index**.*

Proposition B.2. *Let $\binom{n}{k}$ be the* BINOMIAL COEFFICIENT *(Definition B.3 page 132).*

PRP

1. $\binom{x}{0} = 1 \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{C}$	2. $\binom{n}{n} = 1 \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}$
3. $\binom{x}{1} = x \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{C}$	4. $\binom{x}{k} = 0 \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{C},\ x<k$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\binom{x}{0} = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{0} &= \frac{x^{\underline{0}}}{0!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{x^{\underline{0}}}{1} && \text{by Definition B.1 page 131}\\
&= 1 && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Graham et al. (1994) page 154 ⟨equation (5.1)⟩, Aigner (2007) page 10 ⟨(1)⟩, Coolidge (1949) pages 149–150, Stifel (1544)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that $\binom{n}{n} = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{n} &= \frac{n^{\underline{n}}}{n!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-n+1)}{n!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(1)}{n(n-1)\cdots(1)} && \text{by Definition B.1 page 131}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\binom{x}{1} = x$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{1} &= \frac{x^{\underline{1}}}{1!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{x^{\underline{1}}}{1} && \text{by Definition B.1 page 131}\\
&= x && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\binom{x}{k} = 0$, $\forall x < k$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{k} &= \frac{x^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{x(x-1)\cdots(0)\cdots(x-k+1)}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem B.1. [4] *Let* $\binom{n}{k}$ *be the* BINOMIAL COEFFICIENT *(Definition B.3 page 132).*

THM				
1.	$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$	$\forall n,k\in\mathbb{Z}, n\geq k\geq 0$	(FACTORIAL EXPANSION)
2.	$\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$	$\forall n,k\in\mathbb{Z}, n\geq 0$	(SYMMETRY)
3.	$\binom{n+x+1}{n} = \binom{n+x}{n} + \binom{n+x}{n-1}$	$\forall n\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(PASCAL'S RULE)
4.	$\binom{x+1}{k+1} = \binom{x}{k+1} + \binom{x}{k}$	$\forall k\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(PASCAL'S IDENTITY / STIFEL FORMULA)
5.	$\binom{x}{m}\binom{m}{k} = \binom{x}{k}\binom{x-k}{m-k}$	$\forall k,m\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(TRINOMIAL REVISION)
6.	$\binom{x}{k} = \frac{x}{k}\binom{x-1}{k-1}$	$\forall k\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(ABSORPTION IDENTITY)
7.	$\binom{x}{k} = (-1)^k\binom{k-x-1}{k}$	$\forall k\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(UPPER NEGATION)
8.	$\binom{x}{k} = \binom{x-2}{k-2} + 2\binom{x-2}{k-1} + \binom{x-2}{k}$	$\forall k\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(SECOND-ORDER PASCAL'S IDENTITY)
9.	$\binom{x-1}{k-1}\binom{x}{k+1}\binom{x+1}{k} = \binom{x-1}{k}\binom{x}{k-1}\binom{x+1}{k+1}$	$\forall k\in\mathbb{Z}, x\in\mathbb{C}$	(HEXAGON IDENTITY)

✎PROOF:

[4] Graham et al. (1994) page 174 ⟨Table 174⟩, Gallier (2010) page 221, Gross (2008) page 227 ⟨Table 4.1.2⟩, Coolidge (1949), pages 149–150, Stifel (1544), Balakrishnan (1996) page 43 ⟨Pascal's Rule⟩, Harris et al. (2008) page 143 ⟨*hexagon identity*, (2.15)⟩, Ferland (2009) page 216 ⟨*second-order pascal identity*⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

1. Proof for *factorial expansion*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{k} &\triangleq \frac{n^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.3}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\cdot(n-k+1)}{k!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.2}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\cdot(n-k+1)(n-k)(n-k-1)\cdots 1}{k!(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.2}\\
&= \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.1}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for *symmetry* property:

   (a) Proof for $n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0$: (use item (1) page 134)

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{n-k} &= \frac{n!}{(n-k)!(n-(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by item (1) page 134}\\
&= \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \\
&= \binom{n}{k} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq k \geq 0 && \text{by item (1) page 134}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Proof for $n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 0 > k$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{n-k} &= \frac{n^{\underline{n-k}}}{(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 0 > k && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 0 \cdots (n-n+k+1)}{(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 0 > k && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= 0 && && \\
&= \binom{n}{k} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 0 > k && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

   (c) Proof for $n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ n \geq 0 > k$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{k} &= \frac{n^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ k > n \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots 0 \cdots (n-k+1)}{(n-k)!} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ k > n \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131}\\
&= 0 && && \\
&= \binom{n}{n-k} && \forall n,k \in \mathbb{Z},\ k > n \geq 0 && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for *Pascal's Rule*:

   (a) Proof for $n < 0,\ x \in \mathbb{C}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n+x}{n} + \binom{n+x}{n-1} &= 0 + 0 && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \binom{n+x+1}{n} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Proof for $n = 0,\ x \in \mathbb{C}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n+x}{n} + \binom{n+x}{n-1} &= \binom{n+x}{0} + \binom{n+x}{-1} && \text{by } n = 0 \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= 1 + 0 && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \binom{n+x+1}{0} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}\\
&= \binom{n+x+1}{n} && \text{by } n = 0 \text{ hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

(c) Proof for $n > 0$, $x \in \mathbb{C}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\binom{n+x}{n} + \binom{n+x}{n-1} \\
&\triangleq \frac{n+x^{\underline{n}}}{n!} + \frac{n+x^{\underline{n-1}}}{(n-1)!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&\triangleq \frac{(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(n+x-n+1)}{n!} \\
&\quad + \frac{(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(n+x-n+1+1)}{(n-1)!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131} \\
&= \frac{[(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(x+1)] + [(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(x+2)n]}{n!} \\
&= \frac{[(x+1)+n][(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(x+2)]}{n!} \\
&= \frac{(n+x+1)(n+x)(n+x-1)\cdots(x+2)}{n!} \\
&\triangleq \frac{(n+x+1)^{\underline{n}}}{n!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131} \\
&\triangleq \binom{n+x+1}{n} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof for *Pascal's Identity*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x+1}{k+1} &= \binom{k+y+1}{k+1} && \text{where } y \triangleq x-k \implies x = y+k \\
&= \binom{y+k}{k+1} + \binom{y+k}{k} && \text{by Pascal's Rule (item (3))} \\
&= \binom{x}{k+1} + \binom{x}{k} && \text{by definition of } m
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof for *Trinomial revision*:

(a) Proof for $k < 0$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{m}\binom{m}{k} &= \binom{x}{m}0 && \text{by } k<0 \text{ hypothesis and Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&= \cancelto{0}{\binom{x}{k}}\binom{x-k}{m-k} && \text{by } k<0 \text{ hypothesis and Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Proof for $k \geq 0$, $m < 0$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{m}\binom{m}{k} &= 0\binom{m}{k} && \text{by } m<0 \text{ hypothesis and Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&= \binom{x}{k}\cancelto{0}{\binom{x-k}{m-k}} && \text{by } k\geq 0, m<0 \text{ hypothesis and Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof for $m < k$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{x}{m}\binom{m}{k} &= \binom{x}{m}0 && \text{by Proposition B.2 page 132} \\
&= \binom{x}{k}\cancelto{0}{\binom{x-k}{m-k}} && \text{by } m<k \text{ hypothesis and Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

BY-NC-ND

(d) Proof for remaining cases:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\binom{x}{m}\binom{m}{k} \\
&= \frac{x^{\underline{m}}}{m!}\frac{m^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&= \frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-m+1)}{m!}\frac{m(m-1)\cdots(m-k+1)}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131} \\
&= \frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-m+1)}{(m-k)!}\frac{1}{k!} \\
&= \frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)}{k!}\frac{(x-k)(x-k-1)\cdots(x-m+1)}{(m-k)!} \\
&= \frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)}{k!}\frac{(x-k)(x-k-1)\cdots((x-k)-(m-k)+1)}{(m-k)!} \\
&\triangleq \frac{x^{\underline{k}}}{k!}\frac{(x-k)^{\underline{m-k}}}{(m-k)!} && \text{by Definition B.2 page 131} \\
&\triangleq \binom{x}{k}\binom{x-k}{m-k} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132}
\end{aligned}
$$

6. Proof for *Absorption identity*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{x}{k}\binom{x-1}{k-1} &= \frac{1}{k}\binom{x}{1}\binom{n-1}{k-1} && \text{by Proposition B.2 page 132} \\
&= \frac{1}{k}\binom{x}{k}\binom{k}{1} && \text{by Trinomial revision (item (5))} \\
&= \frac{1}{k}\binom{x}{k}k && \text{by Proposition B.2 page 132} \\
&= \binom{x}{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

7. Proof for *Upper Negation*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
(-1)^k\binom{k-x-1}{k} &\triangleq (-1)^k\frac{(k-x-1)^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.3} \\
&\triangleq (-1)^k\frac{(k-x-1)(k-x-2)(k-x-3)\cdots(k-x-1-k+1)}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.2} \\
&= (-1)^k\frac{(k-x-1)(k-x-2)(k-x-3)\cdots(-x)}{k!} \\
&= (-1)^k(-1)^k\frac{(x)(x-1)\cdots(x(x-k+3)(x-k+2)(x-k+1)}{k!} \\
&\triangleq \frac{x^{\underline{k}}}{k!} && \text{by Definition B.2} \\
&\triangleq \binom{x}{k} && \text{by Definition B.3}
\end{aligned}
$$

8. Proof for *2nd Order Pascal's Identity*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\binom{n-2}{k-2}+2\binom{n-2}{k-1}+\binom{n-2}{k} \\
&\triangleq \frac{(x-2)^{\underline{(k-2)}}}{(k-2)!}+\frac{(x-2)^{\underline{(k-1)}}}{(k-1)!}+\frac{(x-2)^{\underline{k}}}{k!} \\
&\triangleq \frac{(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+2+1)}{(k-2)!}+2\frac{(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1+1)}{(k-1)!}+\frac{(x-2)\cdots(x-k+1)}{k!} \\
&= \frac{(x-2)\cdots(x-2-k+2+1)k(k-1)+2(x-2)\cdots(x-2-k+1+1)k+(x-2)\cdots(x-k-1)}{k!} \\
&= \frac{(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)k(k-1)+2(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k)k+(n-2)(n-1)\cdots(x-k-1)}{k!}
\end{aligned}
$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{[(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)][k(k-1)+2(x-k)k+(x-k)(x-k-1)]}{k!}\\
&= \frac{[(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)][k(k-1)+2(x-k)k-(x-k)k+(x-k)(x-1)]}{k!}\\
&= \frac{[(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)][k(k-1)+(x-k)k+(x-k)(x-1)]}{k!}\\
&= \frac{[(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)]\left[k^2-k+kx-k^2+x^2-x-kx+k\right]}{k!}\\
&= \frac{[(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)]\left[x^2-x\right]}{k!}\\
&= \frac{x(x-1)(x-2)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+1)}{k!}\\
&\triangleq \frac{n^{\underline{k}}}{k!}\\
&\triangleq \binom{n}{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

9. Proof for *Hexagon Identity*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\binom{x-1}{k-1}\binom{x}{k+1}\binom{x+1}{k}\\
&\triangleq \left[\frac{(x-1)^{\underline{(k-1)}}}{(k-1)!}\right]\left[\frac{x^{\underline{(k+1)}}}{(k+1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x+1)^{\underline{k}}}{k!}\right]\\
&\triangleq \left[\frac{(x-1)\cdots(x-1-k+1+1)}{(k-1)!}\right]\left[\frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-k-1+1)}{(k+1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x+1)(x)\cdots(x+1-k+1)}{k!}\right]\\
&= \left[\frac{(x-1)\cdots(x-k+2)(x-k+1)}{(k-1)!}\right]\left[\frac{x(x-1)\cdots(x-k)}{(k+1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x+1)(x)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+2)}{k!}\right]\\
&= \left[\frac{(x)(x-1)\cdots(x-k+2)}{(k-1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x+1)x(x-1)\cdots(x-k)(x-k+1)}{(k+1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x-1)\cdots(x-k)}{k!}\right]\\
&\triangleq \left[\frac{x^{\underline{(k-1)}}}{(k-1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x+1)^{\underline{(k+1)}}}{(k+1)!}\right]\left[\frac{(x-1)^{\underline{k}}}{k!}\right]\\
&\triangleq \binom{x}{k-1}\binom{x+1}{k+1}\binom{x-1}{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

From Pascal's Recursion we can construct *Pascal's Triangle*:[5]

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & \binom{0}{0} & & & & \\
 & & & \binom{1}{0} & & \binom{1}{1} & & & \\
 & & \binom{2}{0} & & \binom{2}{1} & & \binom{2}{2} & & \\
 & \binom{3}{0} & & \binom{3}{1} & & \binom{3}{2} & & \binom{3}{3} & \\
\binom{4}{0} & & \binom{4}{1} & & \binom{4}{2} & & \binom{4}{3} & & \binom{4}{4} \\
 & & & & \vdots & & & &
\end{array}
=
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & 1 & & 1 & & & \\
 & & 1 & & 2 & & 1 & & \\
 & 1 & & 3 & & 3 & & 1 & \\
1 & & 4 & & 6 & & 4 & & 1 \\
 & & & & \vdots & & & &
\end{array}
$$

[5] Pascal (1655), Granville (1992), Granville (1997), Edwards (2002), Hall and Knight (1894), pages 320–321 ⟨article 393⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

B.3 Binomial summations

Theorem B.2. [6] *Let* $\binom{n}{k}$ *be the* BINOMIAL COEFFICIENT *(Definition B.3 page 132).*

THM

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k} = 2^n \qquad \textit{(row sum)}$$

$$\sum_{k=m}^{n}\binom{k}{m} = \binom{n+1}{m+1} \qquad \textit{(upper sum / column sum)}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k} = \binom{n+m+1}{n} \qquad \textit{(parallel summation formula / southeast diagonal)}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{m}\binom{n-k}{m-k} = \binom{n+1}{m} \qquad \textit{(northwest diagonal)}$$

$$\sum_{j=0}^{k}\binom{m}{j}\binom{n}{k-j} = \binom{m+n}{k} \qquad \textit{(Vandermonde's convolution)}$$

$$\sum_{i=-j}^{n-j}\binom{m}{j+i}\binom{n}{k-i} = \binom{m+n}{j+k} \qquad \textit{(alternate Vandermonde's convolution)}$$

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}^2 = \binom{2n}{n}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for *row sum* relation:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}x^k &= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}x^k\Bigg|_{x=1}\\ &= (1+x)^n|_{x=1} && \text{by } \textit{Binomial Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem C.14 page 153)}\\ &= (1+1)^n\\ &= 2^n\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for *upper sum* relation (proof by induction):

   (a) Proof for $(n,m) = (0,0)$ case:

$$\sum_{0}^{0}\binom{k}{m} = \binom{0}{0} = 1 = \binom{0+1}{0+1}$$

   (b) Proof for $(n,m) = (1,0)$ case:

$$\sum_{0}^{1}\binom{k}{m} = \binom{1}{0} + \binom{1}{1} = 2 = \binom{1+1}{0+1}$$

   (c) Proof for $(n,m) = (1,1)$ case:

$$\sum_{0}^{1}\binom{k}{m} = \binom{1}{1} = 1 = \binom{1+1}{1+1}$$

[6] Graham et al. (1994) page 169 ⟨Table 169⟩, Gallier (2010) pages 218–223, Gross (2008) page 227 ⟨Table 4.1.2⟩, Harris et al. (2008) pages 137–142, Knuth (1992a), Vandermonde (1772), Zhū (1303)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(d) Proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=m}^{n+1}\binom{k}{m} &= \binom{n+1}{m} + \sum_{k=m}^{n} \\
&= \binom{n+1}{m} + \binom{n+1}{m+1} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \binom{n+2}{m+1} && \text{by Pascal's recursion (Theorem B.1 page 133)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for *Parallel summation formula* (Proof by induction):

(a) Proof that $\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k} = \binom{n+m+1}{n}$ is true for $n=0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k}\bigg|_{n=0} &= \binom{m+0}{0} \\
&= \frac{(m+0)!}{(m-0)!\;0!} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&= \frac{(m+1)!}{(m+1-0)!\;0!} \\
&= \binom{m+1}{0} && \text{by Definition B.3 page 132} \\
&= \binom{n+m+1}{n}\bigg|_{n=0}
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Proof that $\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k} = \binom{n+m+1}{n}$ is true for $n=1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k}\bigg|_{n=1} &= \binom{m+0}{0} + \binom{m+1}{1} \\
&= \binom{m+1}{0} + \binom{m+1}{1} \\
&= \binom{m+1+1}{1} && \text{by Pascal's Rule page 133} \\
&= \binom{n+m+1}{n}\bigg|_{n=1}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof that $\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k} = \binom{n+m+1}{n} \implies \sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{m+k}{k} = \binom{(n+1)+m+1}{n+1}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{m+k}{k} &= \binom{m}{0} + \sum_{k=1}^{n+1}\binom{m+k}{k} \\
&= \binom{m}{0} + \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k+1}{k+1} \\
&= \binom{m}{0} + \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{m+k}{k} - \binom{m}{0} + \binom{m+n+1}{n+1} \\
&= \binom{n+m+1}{n} + \binom{m+n+1}{n+1} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \binom{n+m+2}{n+1} && \text{by Pascal's Rule page 133} \\
&= \binom{(n+1)+m+1}{(n+1)}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

4. Proof for *Vandermonde's convolution*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{m+n}\binom{m+n}{k}x^k &= \sum_{k=0}^{m+n}\binom{m+n}{k}(1)^{m+n-k}x^k \\
&= (1+x)^{m+n} && \text{by } \textit{Binomial Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem C.14 page 153)} \\
&= (1+x)^m(1+x)^n \\
&= \underbrace{\left[\sum_{k=0}^{m}\binom{m}{k}x^k\right]}_{(1+x)^m}\underbrace{\left[\sum_{j=0}^{n}\binom{n}{j}x^j\right]}_{(1+x)^n} && \text{by } \textit{Binomial Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem C.14 page 153)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{m+n}\left[\sum_{j=0}^{k}\binom{m}{j}\binom{n}{k-j}\right]x^k && \text{by Theorem G.3 page 205}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \binom{m+n}{k} = \sum_{j=0}^{k}\binom{m}{j}\binom{n}{k-j}$$

5. Proof for *alternate Vandermonde's convolution*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{m+n}{j+k} &= \binom{m+n}{u} && \text{where } u \triangleq j+k \implies k = u-j \\
&= \sum_{v=0}^{n}\binom{m}{v}\binom{n}{u-v} \\
&= \sum_{v=0}^{n}\binom{m}{v}\binom{n}{j+k-v} \\
&= \sum_{i+j=0}^{i+j=n}\binom{m}{j+i}\binom{n}{k-i} && \text{where } i \triangleq v-j \implies v = i+j \\
&= \sum_{i=-j}^{i=n-j}\binom{m}{j+i}\binom{n}{k-i}
\end{aligned}$$

6. Proof that $\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}^2 = \binom{2n}{n}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{2n}{n} &= \binom{n+n}{n} \\
&= \sum_{k=0} n\binom{n}{k}\binom{n}{n-k} && \text{by Vandermonde's convolution (item (4) page 140)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0} n\binom{n}{k}\binom{n}{k} && \text{by item (2)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}^2
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem B.3. [7]

THM $$\sum_{k=1}^{n}\frac{1}{k+1} < \ln(n+1) < \sum_{k=1}^{n}\frac{1}{k}$$

[7] Rivlin (1969), page 60

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Figure B.1: $\ln(n+1)$

✎PROOF: The summations are simply lower and upper bounds of the integral of $\frac{1}{x}$ in the range $[1,\ n+1]$. This is illustrated in Figure B.1.

1. Proof that $\ln(n+1) < \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k} &> \int_1^{n+1} \frac{1}{x}\,\mathrm{d}x \\ &= \ln x\Big|_1^{n+1} \\ &= \ln(n+1) - \cancelto{0}{\ln(1)} \\ &= \ln(n+1)\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k+1} < \ln(n+1)$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{k+1} &< \int_1^{n+1} \frac{1}{x}\,\mathrm{d}x \\ &= \ln(n+1) - \cancelto{0}{\ln(1)} \\ &= \ln(n+1)\end{aligned}$$

✏

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX C

POLYNOMIALS

C.1 Definitions

Definition C.1. [1] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *be a* FIELD.

DEF

A function p *in* $\mathbb{F}^{\mathbb{F}}$ *is a* ***polynomial*** *over* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *if it is of the form*

$$\mathsf{p}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n \qquad \alpha_n \in \mathbb{F},\ \alpha_N \neq 0.$$

The ***degree*** *of* p *is* N. *A* ***coefficient*** *of* p *is any element of* $(\!|\alpha_n|\!)_1^N$.
The ***leading coefficient*** *of* p *is* α_N.

Definition C.2. [2] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *be a* FIELD.

DEF

A polynomial p *of degree* N *over the field* $\mathbb{F}$ *and*
a polynomial q *of degree* M *over the field* $\mathbb{F}$ *are* ***equal*** *if*

1. $N = M$ *and*
2. $\alpha_n = \beta_n$ *for* $n = 0, 1, \ldots, N$.

The expression $\mathsf{p}(x) = \mathsf{q}(x)$ *(or* $\mathsf{p} = \mathsf{q}$*) denotes that* p *and* q *are* EQUAL.

[1] Barbeau (1989) page 1, Fuhrmann (2012) page 11, Borwein and Erdélyi (1995) page 2
[2] Fuhrmann (2012) page 11

C.2 Ring properties

C.2.1 Polynomial Arithmetic

Theorem C.1 (polynomial addition). [3] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *be a* FIELD.

THM

$$\underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n\right)}_{\mathsf{p}(x)} + \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=0}^{M} \beta_n x^n\right)}_{\mathsf{q}(x)} = \underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\max(N,M)} \gamma_n x^n}_{\mathsf{p}(x)+\mathsf{q}(x)} \quad \textit{where} \quad \gamma_n \triangleq \begin{cases} \alpha_n + \beta_n & \textit{for } n \le \min(N,M) \\ \alpha_n & \textit{for } n > M \\ \beta_n & \textit{for } n > N \end{cases}$$

$$\textit{for all} \quad x,\ \alpha_n,\ \beta_n \in \mathbb{F}$$

Polynomial multiplication is equivalent to convolution (Definition O.3 page 339) of the coefficients (Definition C.1 page 143). [4]

Theorem C.2 (polynomial multiplication). [5] *Let* $(\!(\alpha_n \in \mathbb{C})\!)$, $(\!(b_n \in \mathbb{C})\!)$, *and* $x \in \mathbb{C}$.

THM

$$\left(\sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n\right)\left(\sum_{n=0}^{M} \beta_n x^n\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{N+M} \underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=\max(0,n-M)}^{\min(n,N)} \alpha_n \beta_{k-n}\right)}_{\textit{Cauchy product}} x^n$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{M} \beta_m x^m\right) &= \sum_{n=0}^{N}\sum_{m=0}^{M} \alpha_n \beta_m x^{n+m} \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N}\sum_{k=n}^{M+n} \alpha_n \beta_{k-n} x^k \qquad\qquad k \triangleq n+m \iff m = k-n \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N+M}\left(\sum_{k=\max(0,n-M)}^{\min(n,N)} \alpha_n \beta_{k-n}\right) x^n
\end{aligned}$$

Perhaps the easiest way to see the relationship is by illustration with a matrix of product terms:

	β_0	β_1	β_2	β_3	$\cdots$	β_M
α_0	$\alpha_0\beta_0$	$\alpha_0\beta_1 x$	$\alpha_0\beta_2 x^2$	$\alpha_0\beta_3 x^3$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_0\beta_M x^M$
α_1	$\alpha_1\beta_0 x$	$\alpha_1\beta_1 x^2$	$\alpha_1\beta_2 x^3$	$\alpha_1\beta_3 x^4$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_1\beta_M x^{1+M}$
α_2	$\alpha_2\beta_0 x^2$	$\alpha_2\beta_1 x^3$	$\alpha_2\beta_2 x^4$	$\alpha_2\beta_3 x^5$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_2\beta_M x^{2+M}$
α_3	$\alpha_3\beta_0 x^3$	$\alpha_3\beta_1 x^4$	$\alpha_3\beta_2 x^5$	$\alpha_3\beta_3 x^6$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_3\beta_M x^{3+M}$
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\ddots$	$\vdots$
α_N	$\alpha_N\beta_0 x^N$	$\alpha_N\beta_1 x^{N+1}$	$\alpha_N\beta_2 x^{N+2}$	$\alpha_N\beta_3 x^{N+3}$	$\cdots$	$\alpha_N\beta_M x^{N+M}$

1. The expression $\sum_{n=0}^{N}\sum_{m=0}^{M} \alpha_n\beta_m x^{n+m}$ is equivalent to adding *horizontally* from left to right, from the first row to the last.

[3] Fuhrmann (2012) page 11

[4] *Convolution*: In fact, using *GNU Octave*™ or *MatLab*™, polynomial multiplication can be performed using convolution. For example, the operation $(x^3 + 5x^2 + 7x + 9)(4x^2 + 11)$ can be calculated in *GNU Octave*™ or *MatLab*™ with conv([1 5 7 9],[4 0 11])

[5] Apostol (1975), page 237

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. If we switched the order of summation to $\sum_{m=0}^{M}\sum_{n=0}^{N}\alpha_n\beta_m x^{n+m}$, then it would be equivalent to adding *vertically* from top to bottom, from the first column to the last.

3. For $N = M = \infty$, the expression $\sum_{n=0}^{N+M}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n}\alpha_k\beta_{n-k}\right)x^n$ is equivalent to adding *diagonally* starting from the upper left corner and proceeding towards the lower right.

4. For finite N and M...

   (a) The upper limit on the inner summation puts two constraints on k:
   $$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} k & \leq & n \quad \text{and} \\ k & \leq & N \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow k \leq \min(n, N)$$

   (b) The lower limit on the inner summation also puts two constraints on k:
   $$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} k & \geq & 0 \quad \text{and} \\ k & \geq & n - M \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow k \geq \max(0, n - M)$$

✍

Polynomial division can be performed in a manner very similar to integer division (both integers and polynomials are *rings*).

Definition C.3 (Polynomial division)**.** *The quantities of polynomial division are defined as follows:*

DEF

$$\frac{\mathsf{d}(x)}{\mathsf{p}(x)} = \mathsf{q}(x) + \frac{\mathsf{r}(x)}{\mathsf{p}(x)} \qquad \textit{where} \qquad \left\{\begin{array}{lll} \mathsf{d}(x) & \textit{is the } \textbf{\textit{dividend}} & \textit{and} \\ \mathsf{p}(x) & \textit{is the } \textbf{\textit{divisor}} & \textit{and} \\ \mathsf{q}(x) & \textit{is the } \textbf{\textit{quotient}} & \textit{and} \\ \mathsf{r}(x) & \textit{is the } \textbf{\textit{remainder}}. & \end{array}\right\}$$

C.2.2 Greatest common divisor

Theorem C.3 (Extended Euclidean Algorithm)**.** [6]

Let $\mathsf{r}_1(x)$ *and* $\mathsf{r}_2(x)$ *be polynomials. The following algorithm computes their greatest common divisor* $\gcd(\mathsf{r}_1(x), \mathsf{r}_2(x))$*, and factors* $\mathsf{a}(x)$ *and* $\mathsf{b}(x)$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{r}_1(x)\mathsf{a}(x) + \mathsf{r}_2(x)\mathsf{b}(x) = \gcd(\mathsf{r}_1, \mathsf{r}_2)$$

THM

n	*remainder* $\mathsf{r}_n = \mathsf{r}_{n-2} - \mathsf{q}_n\mathsf{r}_{n-1}$	*quotient* q_n	*factor* $\alpha_n = a_{n-2} - \mathsf{q}_n\alpha_{n-1}$	*factor* $\beta_n = b_{n-2} - \mathsf{q}_n\beta_{n-1}$
1	$\mathsf{r}_1(x)$	–	1	0
2	$\mathsf{r}_2(x)$	–	0	1
3	$\mathsf{r}_1 - q_3\mathsf{r}_2$	q_3	1	$-q_3$
4	$\mathsf{r}_2 - q_4 r_3$	q_4	$-\mathsf{q}_4$	$1 + \mathsf{q}_4\mathsf{q}_1$
5	$\mathsf{r}_1 - \mathsf{q}_5\mathsf{r}_2$	q_5	$1 + \mathsf{q}_5\mathsf{q}_4$	$-q_3 - \mathsf{q}_5(1 + \mathsf{q}_4\mathsf{q}_3)$
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$
n	$\gcd(\mathsf{r}_1(x), \mathsf{r}_2(x))$	q_n	$\mathsf{a}(x) = a_{n-2} - q_n\alpha_{n-1}$	$\mathsf{b}(x) = b_{n-2} - q_n\beta_{n-1}$
$n+1$	0	q_{n+1}		

[6] Wicker (1995), page 53, Fuhrmann (2012) page 11

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{r}_1 &= \mathsf{q}_3\mathsf{r}_2 + \mathsf{r}_3 \\ &= \mathsf{q}_3\mathsf{r}_2 + \mathsf{r}_3 \end{aligned}$$

✏

Example C.1. Let

$$\mathsf{u}(x) \triangleq (1-x)^2 \qquad \mathsf{v}(x) \triangleq x^2.$$

The greatest common divisor and factors of u and v are such that

$$\underbrace{(1-x)^2}_{\mathsf{u}(x)}\underbrace{(1+2x)}_{\mathsf{a}(x)} + \underbrace{(x^2)}_{\mathsf{v}(x)}\underbrace{(3-2x)}_{\mathsf{b}(x)} = \underbrace{1}_{\text{gcd}}$$

Because $\gcd(\mathsf{u},\mathsf{v}) = 1$, $\mathsf{u}(x)$ and $\mathsf{v}(x)$ are said to be *relatively prime*.

✎PROOF:

n	$\mathsf{r}_n = r_{n-2} - r_{n-1}q_n$	q_n	$\alpha_n = a_{n-2} - q_n\alpha_{n-1}$	$\beta_n = b_{n-2} - q_n\beta_{n-1}$
-1	$(1-x)^2 = 1-2x+x^2 = \mathsf{u}(x)$	–	1	0
0	$x^2 = \mathsf{v}(x)$	–	0	1
1	$1-2x$	1	1	-1
2	$\frac{1}{2}x$	$-\frac{1}{2}x$	$\frac{1}{2}x$	$1-\frac{1}{2}x$
3	$1 = \gcd(\,(1-x)^2,\ x^2\,)$	-4	$1+2x = \mathsf{a}(x)$	$3-2x = \mathsf{b}(x)$
4	0	$\frac{1}{2}x$	–	–

✏

Example C.2. Let

$$\mathsf{u}(x) \triangleq (1-x)^3 \qquad \mathsf{v}(x) \triangleq x^3.$$

The greatest common divisor and factors of u and v are such that

$$\underbrace{(1-x)^3}_{\mathsf{u}(x)}\underbrace{(1+3x+6x^2)}_{\mathsf{a}(x)} + \underbrace{(x^3)}_{\mathsf{v}(x)}\underbrace{(10-15x+6x^2)}_{\mathsf{b}(x)} = \underbrace{1}_{\text{gcd}}$$

Because $\gcd(\mathsf{u},\mathsf{v}) = 1$, $\mathsf{u}(x)$ and $\mathsf{v}(x)$ are said to be *relatively prime*.

✎PROOF:

n	$\mathsf{r}_n = r_{n-2} - r_{n-1}q_n$	q_n	$\alpha_n = a_{n-2} - q_n\alpha_{n-1}$	$\beta_n = b_{n-2} - q_n\beta_{n-1}$
-1	$(1-x)^3 = 1-3x+3x^2-x^3$	–	1	0
0	x^3	–	0	1
1	$1-3x+3x^2$	-1	1	1
2	$-\frac{1}{3}x+x^2$	$\frac{1}{3}x$	$-\frac{1}{3}x$	$1-\frac{1}{3}x$
3	$1-2x$	3	$1+x$	$-2+x$
4	$\frac{1}{6}x$	$-\frac{1}{2}x$	$\frac{1}{6}x+\frac{1}{2}x^2$	$1-\frac{4}{3}y+\frac{1}{2}x^2$
5	$1 = \gcd((1-x)^3, x^3)$	-12	$1+3x+6x^2 = \mathsf{a}(x)$	$10-15x+6x^2 = \mathsf{b}(x)$
6	0	$\frac{1}{6}x$		

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Example C.3. Let

$$\mathsf{u}(x) \triangleq (1-x)^4 \qquad \mathsf{v}(x) \triangleq x^4.$$

The greatest common divisor and factors of u and v are such that

$$\underbrace{(1-x)^4}_{\mathsf{u}(x)}\underbrace{(1+4x+10x^2+20x^3)}_{\mathsf{a}(x)} + \underbrace{(x^4)}_{\mathsf{v}(x)}\underbrace{(35-84x+70x^2-20x^3)}_{\mathsf{b}(x)} = \underbrace{1}_{\text{gcd}}$$

Because $\gcd(\mathsf{u},\mathsf{v}) = 1$, $\mathsf{u}(x)$ and $\mathsf{v}(x)$ are said to be *relatively prime*.

✎PROOF:

n	$\mathsf{r}_n = r_{n-2} - r_{n-1}q_n$	q_n	$\alpha_n = a_{n-2} - q_n\alpha_{n-1}$	$\beta_n = b_{n-2} - q_n\beta_{n-1}$
-1	$(1-x)^4 = 1-4x+6^2-4x^3+x^4$	–	1	0
0	x^4	–	0	1
1	$1-4x+6x^2-4x^3$	1	1	-1
2	$\frac{1}{4}x - x^2 + \frac{3}{2}x^3$	$-\frac{1}{4}x$	$\frac{1}{4}x$	$1-\frac{1}{4}x$
3	$1-\frac{10}{3}x+\frac{10}{3}x^2$	$-\frac{8}{3}$	$1+\frac{2}{3}x$	$\frac{5}{3}-\frac{2}{3}x$
4	$-\frac{1}{5}x+\frac{1}{2}x^2$	$\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{3}{10}x$	$-\frac{1}{5}x-\frac{3}{10}x^2$	$1-x+\frac{3}{10}x^2$
5	$1-2x$	$\frac{20}{3}$	$1+2x+2x^2$	$-5+6x-2x^2$
6	$\frac{1}{20}x$	$-\frac{1}{4}x$	$\frac{1}{20}x+\frac{1}{5}x^2+\frac{1}{2}x^3$	$1-\frac{9}{4}x+\frac{18}{10}x^2-\frac{1}{2}x^3$
7	$1 = \gcd((1-x)^4, x^4)$	-40	$1+4x+10x^2+20x^3$	$35-84x+70x^2-20x^3$
8	0	$\frac{1}{20}x$	–	–

✏

❝ *Infinitesimal analysis was considered so attractive and important because of its numerous and useful applications; as such, it attracted upon itself all research attention and efforts. Concurrently, algebraic analysis appeared to be a field where nothing remained to be done, or where whatever remained to be done would have only been worthless speculation. ...Nevertheless, the major contributors to infinitesimal analysis are well aware of the need to improve algebraic analysis: Their own progress depends upon it.*❞
Étienne Bézout, 1779 [7]

Theorem C.4 (Bézout's Identity). [8] [9] *Let* $\mathsf{p}_1(x)$ *be a polynomial of degree* n_1 *and* $\mathsf{p}_2(x)$ *be a polynomial of degree* n_2.

THM

$$\underbrace{\gcd(\mathsf{p}_1(x),\ \mathsf{p}_2(x)) = 1}_{\mathsf{p}_1(x)\text{ and }\mathsf{p}_2(x)\text{ are relatively prime}} \implies \begin{cases} 1.\ \exists \mathsf{q}_1(x), \mathsf{q}_2(x) \quad \text{such that} \\ \quad \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \text{degree } n_1}}{\underset{\substack{\downarrow \\ \text{degree } n_2 - 1}}{\mathsf{p}_1(x)\mathsf{q}_1(x)}} + \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \text{degree } n_2}}{\underset{\substack{\downarrow \\ \text{degree } n_1 - 1}}{\mathsf{p}_2(x)\mathsf{q}_2(x)}} = 1 \\ 2.\ \text{order of } \mathsf{q}_1(x) = n_2 - 1 \\ 3.\ \text{order of } \mathsf{q}_2(x) = n_1 - 1 \end{cases}$$

[7] quote: Bézout (1779a)
translation: Bézout (1779b), page xv
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Etienne_Bezout2.jpg, public domain

[8] Bourbaki (2003b) page 2 ⟨Theorem 1 Chapter VII⟩, Fuhrmann (2012) pages 15–17 ⟨Corollary 1.31, Corollary 1.38⟩, Adhikari and Adhikari (2003) page 182, Warner (1990) page 381, Daubechies (1992), page 169, Mallat (1999), page 250

[9] Historical information: Bézout (1779a) ⟨???⟩, Bézout (1779b) ⟨???⟩, Bachet (1621) ⟨???⟩, Childs (2009) pages 37–46 ⟨some history on page 46⟩, http://serge.mehl.free.fr/chrono/Bachet.html, http://serge.mehl.free.fr/chrono/Bezout.html

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF: No proof at this time. ✏

C.3 Roots

❝*Neither the true nor the false roots are always real; sometimes they are imaginary; that is, while we can always conceive of as many roots for each equation as I have already assigned, yet there is not always a definite quantity corresponding to each root so conceived of. Thus, while we may conceive of the equation* $x^3 - 6x^2 + 13x - 10 = 0$ *as having three roots, yet there is only one real root, 2, while the other two, however we may increase, diminish, or multiply them in accordance with the rules just laid down, remain always imaginary.*❞

René Descartes (1596–1650), French philosopher and mathematician[10]

Theorem C.5 (Fundamental Theorem of Algebra). [11] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x)$ *be a polynomial over a field* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$.

THM

$$\{\text{degree of } \mathsf{p}(x) \text{ is } N\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underbrace{\exists \,(\!|x_n|\!)_1^N \text{ such that } \mathsf{p}(x_n) = 0 \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \ldots, N}_{\mathsf{p}(x) \text{ has } N \text{ zeros}} \\ \text{where } x_n \text{ and } x_m \text{ are not necessarily distinct for } n \neq m. \end{array} \right\}$$

Corollary C.1. *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n$ *be a polynomial over a field* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$.

COR

$$\left\{ \underbrace{\begin{array}{l} \text{There exists } (\!|x_n|\!)_1^N \\ \text{such that } \mathsf{p}(x_n) = 0 \text{ for } n = 0, 1, \ldots, N \\ \text{and where } x_n \text{ and } x_m \text{ are} \\ \text{not necessarily distinct for } n \neq m. \end{array}}_{N \text{ zeros of } \mathsf{p}(x)} \right\} \implies \left\{ \mathsf{p}(x) = \left(\frac{\alpha_0}{\prod_{n=1}^{N}(-x_n)} \right) \underbrace{\prod_{n=1}^{N}(x - x_n)}_{N \text{ factors}} \right\}$$

Figure C.1: Roots of $x^n + 1 = 0$

Lemma C.1.

LEM

$$x^N + 1 = 0 \implies x \in \left\{ e^{i\theta_n} | \theta_n = \frac{\pi}{N}(2n+1), n = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1 \right\}$$

[10] quote: Descartes (1637a)
English: Descartes (1954), page 175
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Frans_Hals_-_Portret_van_Ren%C3%A9_Descartes.jpg, public domain

[11] Prasolov (2004) pages 1–2 ⟨Section 1.1.1⟩, Borwein and Erdélyi (1995) page 11 ⟨Theorem 1.2.1⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^{iN\theta_n - i2\pi n} &= -1 && n \in \mathbb{Z}\\
N\theta_n - 2\pi n &= \pi && n = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1\\
N\theta_n &= 2\pi n + \pi\\
\theta_n &= \frac{\pi}{N}(2n+1)
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem C.6. *Let* $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $I = \{n \in \mathbb{Z} | -N \le n \le N\}$ *and* $\mathsf{p}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n x^n \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{C}$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\alpha_n = \alpha_{-n}^* \quad \forall n \in I}_{(\alpha_n) \text{ is Hermitian symmetric}} \qquad \Longleftrightarrow \qquad \mathsf{p}(x) = \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{C}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\alpha_n = \alpha_{-n}^* \implies \mathsf{p}(x) = \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{p}(x) &\triangleq \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n x^n && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{p}(x)\\
&= \alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_{-n} x^{-n}\\
&= \alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n^* x^{-n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n^* x^{-n} + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n x^n\\
&= \alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n^* \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^n + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^{-n}\\
&= \left[\alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^n + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n^* \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^{-n}\right]^*\\
&= \left[\alpha_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^n + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_{-n} \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^{-n}\right]^* && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \left[\sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^n\right]^*\\
&= \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{p}(x)
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure C.2: Recipricol conjugate zero pairs

2. Proof that $\alpha_n = \alpha_{-n}^* \Longleftarrow \mathsf{p}(x) = \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n x^n &\triangleq \mathsf{p}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{p}(x)\\
&= \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&\triangleq \left[\sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n \left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right)^n\right]^* && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{p}(x)\\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n^* \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^n\\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_{-n}^* x^n && \text{by symmetry of summation indices}\\
\Longrightarrow \quad \alpha_n &= \alpha_{-n}^* && \text{by matching of polynomial coefficients}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem C.7. *Let $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $I = \{n \in \mathbb{Z} | -N \le n \le N\}$ and*

$$\mathsf{p}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \alpha_n x^n \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{C}$$

THM

$$\underbrace{\alpha_n = \alpha_{-n}^* \quad \forall n \in I}_{(\alpha_n) \text{ is Hermitian symmetric}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\left[\sigma \text{ is a root of } \mathsf{p}(x) \iff \frac{1}{\sigma^*} \text{ is a root of } \mathsf{p}(x)\right]}_{\text{roots occur in conjugate recipricol pairs}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\alpha_n = \alpha_{-n}^* \quad \forall n \in I & && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
\Longrightarrow \mathsf{p}(x) = \mathsf{p}^*\left(\frac{1}{x^*}\right) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{C} & && \text{by Theorem C.6 page 149}\\
\Longrightarrow \left[\sigma \text{ is a root of } \mathsf{p}(x) \iff \frac{1}{\sigma^*} \text{ is a root of } \mathsf{p}(x)\right] & &&
\end{aligned}$$

If σ is a zero of $\mathsf{p}(x)$, then so is $\frac{1}{\sigma^*}$ because

$$\mathsf{p}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma^*}\right) = \mathsf{p}^*(\sigma) = 0^* = 0.$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure C.3: Conjugate pairs of roots

Theorem C.8 page 151 (next) states that the roots of real polynomials occur in complex conjugate pairs. This is illustrated in Figure C.3.

Theorem C.8. [12] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n$ *be a* N*th order polynomial.*

THM

$$\left[\underbrace{(\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R})_{n=0,1,\ldots,N}}_{\text{coefficients are real}}\right] \Longrightarrow \left[\underbrace{\mathsf{p}(x_0) = 0 \iff \mathsf{p}(x_0^*) = 0}_{\text{zeros occur in conjugate pairs}}\right]$$

Theorem C.9 (Routh-Hurwitz Criterion)**.** [13] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n$ *be a* N*th order polynomial with* $\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R}$ *and*

$$d_0 \triangleq \alpha_0 \qquad d_1 \triangleq \alpha_1 \qquad d_2 \triangleq \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_3 & \alpha_2 \end{vmatrix} \qquad d_3 \triangleq \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_0 & 0 \\ \alpha_3 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_5 & \alpha_4 & \alpha_3 \end{vmatrix} \qquad d_4 \triangleq \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_0 & 0 & 0 \\ \alpha_3 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_1 & \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_5 & \alpha_4 & \alpha_3 & \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_7 & \alpha_6 & \alpha_5 & \alpha_4 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$d_n \triangleq \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_1 & \alpha_0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \alpha_3 & \alpha_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \alpha_{2n-3} & \alpha_{2n-4} & \cdots & \alpha_{n-2} \\ \alpha_{2n-1} & \alpha_{2n-2} & \cdots & \alpha_n \end{vmatrix}$$

Let $\mathbf{S}(\!(x_n)\!)$ *be the number of sign changes of some sequence* $(\!(x_n)\!)$ *after eliminating all zero elements* $(x_n = 0)$*.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\left|\left\{x_n \middle| \mathsf{p}(x_n) = 0,\ \Re[x_n] > 0\right\}\right|}_{\text{number of roots in right half plane}} = \underbrace{\mathbf{S}\left(\!\left(d_0,\ d_1,\ d_1 d_2,\ d_2 d_3,\ \ldots,\ d_{p-2} d_{p-1},\ \alpha_p\right)\!\right)}_{\text{number of sign changes}}$$

$$= \underbrace{\mathbf{S}\left(\!\left(d_0,\ d_1,\ \frac{d_2}{d_1},\ \frac{d_3}{d_2},\ \ldots,\ \frac{d_p}{d_{p-1}}\right)\!\right)}_{\text{number of sign changes}}$$

Theorem C.10 (Descartes rule of signs)**.** [14] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{N} \alpha_n x^n$ *be a* N*th order polynomial with* $\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R}$*.*

[12] Korn and Korn (1968), page 17
[13] Korn and Korn (1968), page 17
[14] Korn and Korn (1968), page 17

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

THM

$$\underbrace{\left|\left\{x_n \middle| \mathsf{p}(x_n)=0,\ \Re[x_n]>0\right\},\ \Im[x_n]=0\right|}_{\text{number of roots on right real axis}} = \underbrace{\mathbf{S}(\alpha_n)-2m}_{\text{number of sign changes – even integer}} \qquad \text{where } m \in \mathbb{W}$$

Theorem C.11. [15] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x)=\sum_{n=0}^{N}\alpha_n x^n$ *be a* N*th order polynomial with* $\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R}$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\alpha_0,\ \alpha_1,\ \ldots,\ \alpha_{k-1}\ \geq 0}_{\text{first } k \text{ coefficients are nonnegative}} \implies \begin{cases} \underbrace{\left|\left\{x_n \middle| \mathsf{p}(x_n)=0,\ \Im[x_n]=0\right\}\right|}_{\text{number of real roots}} < \underbrace{1+\left(\frac{q}{\alpha_0}\right)^{\frac{1}{k}}}_{\text{upper bound}} \\ \text{where } q \triangleq \underbrace{\max\left\{\ |\alpha_n|\ \middle|\alpha_n<0\right\}}_{\text{largest negative coefficient}} \end{cases}$$

Theorem C.12 (Rolle's Theorem). [16] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(x)=\sum_{n=0}^{N}\alpha_n x^n$ *be a* N*th order polynomial with* $\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R}$. *The number of real zeros of* $\mathsf{p}'(x)$ *between any two real consecutive real zeros of* $\mathsf{p}(x)$ *is* ***odd***.

Definition C.4. [17] *Let* $(\mathbb{F},+,\cdot,0,1)$ *be a* FIELD.

DEF

$\frac{\mathsf{p}(x)}{\mathsf{q}(x)}$ *is a* ***rational function***
if $\mathsf{p}(x)$ *and* $\mathsf{q}(x)$ *are* POLYNOMIALS *over* $(\mathbb{F},+,\cdot,0,1)$.

Example C.4.

EX

An example of a rational function using polynomials in x^{-1} is

$$A(x) = \frac{b_0+\beta_1 x^{-1}+\beta_2 x^{-2}+\beta_3 x^{-3}}{1+\alpha_1 x^{-1}+\alpha_2 x^{-2}+\alpha_3 x^{-3}}$$

This can be expressed as a rational function using polynomials in x by multiplying numerator and denominator by x^3:

$$A(x) = \frac{x^3}{x^3}A(x) = \frac{b_0 x^3+\beta_1 x^2+\beta_2 x+\beta_3}{x^3+\alpha_1 x^2+\alpha_2 x+\alpha_3}$$

Definition C.5.

DEF

The ***zeros*** *of a rational function* $H(x)=\frac{B(x)}{A(x)}$ *are the roots of* $B(x)$.
The ***poles*** *of a rational function* $H(x)=\frac{B(x)}{A(x)}$ *are the roots of* $A(x)$.

C.4 Polynomial expansions

"Thus, if a straight-line is cut at random, then the square on the whole (straight-line) is equal to the (sum of the) squares on the pieces (of the straight-line), and twice the rectangle contained by the pieces."
Euclid (~300BC), Greek mathematician, demonstrating the *Binomial theorem* for exponent $n=2$ as in $(x+y)^2=x^2+2xy+y^2$. [18]

[15] Korn and Korn (1968), page 18
[16] Korn and Korn (1968), page 18
[17] Fuhrmann (2012) page 22
[18] quote: Euclid (circa 300BC) ⟨Book II, Proposition 4⟩, Coolidge (1949), page 147
image: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Euklid-von-Alexandria_1.jpg, public domain

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem C.13 (Taylor Series). [19] *Let $\mathbf{C}$ be the space of all continuously differentiable real functions and $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}$ in $\mathbf{C}^{\mathbf{C}}$ the differentiation operator.*

THM

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}^n \mathsf{f}\right](a)}{n!}(x-a)^n \qquad \forall a\in\mathbb{R}, \mathsf{f}\in\mathbf{C} \qquad \text{(TAYLOR SERIES about the point } a\text{)}$$

*A **Maclaurin series** is a* TAYLOR SERIES *about the point $a = 0$.*

Theorem C.14 (Binomial Theorem). [20]

THM

$$(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k \qquad \text{where} \qquad \binom{n}{k} \triangleq \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!}$$

✎PROOF: This theorem is proven using two different techniques. Either is sufficient. The first requires the Maclaurin series resulting in a more compact proof, but requires the additional (here unproven) Maclaurin series. The second proof uses induction resulting in a longer proof, but does not require any external theorem.

1. Proof using Maclaurin series:

$$\begin{aligned}
(x+y)^n &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}\Big[(x+y)^n\Big]_{y=0} y^k \qquad \text{by Maclaurin series (Theorem C.13 page 153)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\Big[n(n-1)(n-2)\cdots(n-k+1)(x+y)^{n-k}\Big]_{y=0} y^k\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\frac{n!}{(n-k)!} x^{n-k} y^k\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k \qquad \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k + \cancelto{0}{\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k \qquad \text{because } (x+y)^n \text{ has order } n
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof using induction:

   (a) Proof that $(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}$ is true for $n = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}\Bigg|_{n=0} &= \binom{0}{0} x^0 y^{0-0}\\
&= 1\\
&= (x+y)^n\big|_{n=0}
\end{aligned}$$

[19] Flanigan (1983) page 221 ⟨Theorem 15⟩, Strichartz (1995) page 281, Sohrab (2003) page 317 ⟨Theorem 8.4.9⟩, Taylor (1715), Maclaurin (1742)

[20] Graham et al. (1994) page 162 ⟨(5.12)⟩, Rotman (2010) page 84 ⟨Proposition 2.5⟩, Bourbaki (2003a) page 99 ⟨Corollary 1⟩, Warner (1990) pages 189–190 ⟨Theorem 21.1⟩, Metzler et al. (1908), page 169 ⟨any real exponent⟩, Coolidge (1949)

CC BY-NC-ND

(b) Proof that $(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k}$ is true for $n = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \Bigg|_{n=1} &= \binom{1}{0} x^0 y^{1-0} + \binom{1}{1} x^1 y^{1-1} \\
&= y + x \\
&= (x+y)^n \big|_{n=1}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof that $(x+y)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \implies (x+y)^{n+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \binom{n+1}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \\
&= x^{n+1} + y^{n+1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \binom{n+1}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \\
&= x^{n+1} + y^{n+1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \left[\binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k} \right] x^k y^{n+1-k} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Pascal's Rule} \text{ (Theorem B.1 page 133)} \\
&= x^{n+1} + y^{n+1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \binom{n}{k-1} x^k y^{n+1-k} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} \\
&= x^{n+1} + y^{n+1} + \left[\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{k+1} y^{n+1-(k+1)} - x^{n+1} \right] + \left[\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n+1-k} - y^{n+1} \right] \\
&= x \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} + y \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^k y^{n-k} \\
&= x(x+y)^n + y(x+y)^n \qquad \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= (x+y)(x+y)^n \\
&= (x+y)^{n+1}
\end{aligned}$$

✍

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX D

OPERATORS ON LINEAR SPACES

❝And I am not afraid to say that there is a way to advance algebra as far beyond what Vieta and Descartes have left us as Vieta and Descartes carried it beyond the ancients.... we need still another analysis which is distinctly geometrical or linear, and which will express situation directly as algebra expresses magnitude directly.❞

Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716), German mathematician, in a September 8, 1679 letter to Christian Huygens. [1]

D.1 Operators on linear spaces

D.1.1 Operator Algebra

An operator is simply a function that maps from a linear space to another linear space (or to the same linear space).

Definition D.1. [2] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *be a* FIELD *(Definition A.5 page 130). Let* X *be a set, let* $+$ *be an* OPERATOR *(Definition D.2 page 156) in* X^{X^2}*, and let* $\otimes$ *be an operator in* $X^{\mathbb{F}\times X}$.

[1] quote: Leibniz (1679) pages 248–249
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gottfried_Wilhelm_von_Leibniz.jpg, public domain

[2] Kubrusly (2001) pages 40–41 ⟨Definition 2.1 and following remarks⟩, Haaser and Sullivan (1991), page 41, Halmos (1948), pages 1–2, Peano (1888a) ⟨Chapter IX⟩, Peano (1888b), pages 119–120, Banach (1922) pages 134–135

Figure D.1: Some operator types

DEF

The structure $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\big)$ *is a* ***linear space*** *over* $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ *if*

1.	$\exists \mathbb{0} \in X$	such that	$\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbb{0}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(+ IDENTITY)
2.	$\exists \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	such that	$\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}$	$=$	$\mathbb{0}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(+ INVERSE)
3.			$(\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}) + \boldsymbol{z}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x} + (\boldsymbol{y} + \boldsymbol{z})$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z} \in X$	(+ *is* ASSOCIATIVE)
4.			$\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{y} + \boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	(+ *is* COMMUTATIVE)
5.			$1 \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$=$	$\boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ IDENTITY)
6.			$\alpha \cdot (\beta \cdot \boldsymbol{x})$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \beta) \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$\forall \alpha, \beta \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ ASSOCIATES *with* $\cdot$)
7.			$\alpha \cdot (\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y})$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{x}) + (\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{y})$	$\forall \alpha \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	($\cdot$ DISTRIBUTES *over* +)
8.			$(\alpha + \beta) \cdot \boldsymbol{x}$	$=$	$(\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{x}) + (\beta \cdot \boldsymbol{x})$	$\forall \alpha, \beta \in S$ *and* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$	($\cdot$ PSEUDO-DISTRIBUTES *over* +)

The set X *is called the* ***underlying set****. The elements of* X *are called* ***vectors****. The elements of* $\mathbb{F}$ *are called* ***scalars****. A linear space is also called a* ***vector space****. If* $\mathbb{F} \triangleq \mathbb{R}$*, then* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *is a* ***real linear space****. If* $\mathbb{F} \triangleq \mathbb{C}$*, then* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *is a* ***complex linear space****.*

Definition D.2. [3]

DEF

A function $\mathbf{A}$ *in* $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *is an* ***operator*** *in* $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *if* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y}$ *are both* LINEAR SPACES *(Definition D.1 page 155).*

Two operators $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ are **equal** if $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}$ for all $\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$. The inverse relation of an operator $\mathbf{A}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ always exists as a *relation* in $2^{\boldsymbol{X}\boldsymbol{Y}}$, but may not always be a *function* (may not always be an operator) in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.

The operator $\mathbf{I} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ is the *identity* operator if $\mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{I}$ for all $\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$.

Definition D.3. [4] *Let* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *be the set of all operators with from a* LINEAR SPACE $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to* $\boldsymbol{X}$*. Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be an operator in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$*. Let* $①(\boldsymbol{X})$ *be the* IDENTITY ELEMENT *in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$*.*

DEF

$\mathbf{I}$ *is the* ***identity operator*** *in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *if* $\quad \mathbf{I} = ①(\boldsymbol{X})$.

[3] Heil (2011) page 42
[4] Michel and Herget (1993) page 411

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

D.1.2 Linear operators

Definition D.4. [5] *Let* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\big)$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\big)$ *be linear spaces.*

DEF

An operator $\mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *is* ***linear*** *if*

1. $\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{X}$ (ADDITIVE) *and*
2. $\mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) = \alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}, \ \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{F}$ (HOMOGENEOUS).

The set of all linear operators from $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to* $\boldsymbol{Y}$ *is denoted* $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ *such that*

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}) \triangleq \big\{\mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}} \,|\, \mathbf{L} \text{ is linear}\big\} \quad .$$

Theorem D.1. [6] *Let* $\mathbf{L}$ *be an operator from a linear space* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *to a linear space* $\boldsymbol{Y}$*, both over a field* $\mathbb{F}$.

THM

$$\mathbf{L} \text{ is LINEAR} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \begin{cases} 1. \ \mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} = \mathbb{0} & \text{and} \\ 2. \ \mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) = -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X} & \text{and} \\ 3. \ \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{X} & \text{and} \\ 4. \ \mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \big(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big) \quad \boldsymbol{x}_n \in \boldsymbol{X}, \alpha_n \in \mathbb{F} & \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} = \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}\mathbb{0} &= \mathbf{L}(0 \cdot \mathbb{0}) && \text{by additive identity property} \\ &= 0 \cdot (\mathbf{L}\mathbb{0}) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \text{ (Definition D.4 page 157)} \\ &= \mathbb{0} && \text{by additive identity property} \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) = -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathbf{L}(-1 \cdot \boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by additive inverse property} \\ &= -1 \cdot (\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \text{ (Definition D.4 page 157)} \\ &= -(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by additive inverse property} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}) &= \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} + (-\boldsymbol{y})) && \text{by additive inverse property} \\ &= \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}) + \mathbf{L}(-\boldsymbol{y}) && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ property of } \mathbf{L} \text{ (Definition D.4 page 157)} \\ &= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} && \text{by 2.} \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \big(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big)$:

   (a) Proof for $N = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) &= \mathbf{L}\big(\alpha_1 \boldsymbol{x}_1\big) && \text{by } N = 1 \text{ hypothesis} \\ &= \alpha_1 \big(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_1\big) && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of Definition D.4 page 157} \end{aligned}$$

[5] Kubrusly (2001) page 55, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 224, Hilbert et al. (1927) page 6, Stone (1932) page 33

[6] Berberian (1961) page 79 ⟨Theorem IV.1.1⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

(b) Proof that N case $\implies N+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N+1}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) &= \mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_{N+1}\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1}+\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)\\
&= \mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_{N+1}\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1}\right)+\mathbf{L}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ property of Definition D.4 page 157}\\
&= \alpha_{N+1}\mathbf{L}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{N+1}\right)+\sum_{n=1}^{N}\mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) && \text{by left } N+1 \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N+1}\mathbf{L}\left(\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.2. [7] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the set of all linear operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.*

THM			
	$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	*is a linear space*	*(space of linear transforms)*
	$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$	*is a linear subspace of* $\boldsymbol{X}$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$
	$\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$	*is a linear subspace of* $\boldsymbol{Y}$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{X}$:
   (a) $\mathbb{0}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})\neq\varnothing$
   (b) $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})\triangleq\{\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X}|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbb{0}\}\subseteq\boldsymbol{X}$
   (c) $\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y})=\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
   (d) $\alpha\in\mathbb{F},\ \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X} \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \mathbb{0}=\alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \mathbb{0}=\mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
2. Proof that $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ is a linear subspace of $\boldsymbol{Y}$:
   (a) $\mathbb{0}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})\neq\varnothing$
   (b) $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})\triangleq\{\boldsymbol{y}\in\boldsymbol{Y}|\exists\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X}\ \text{ such that }\ \boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\}\subseteq\boldsymbol{Y}$
   (c) $\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \exists\boldsymbol{v}\in\boldsymbol{X}\ \text{ such that }\ \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{v}=\boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{y}=\boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x} \implies \boldsymbol{y}+\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$
   (d) $\alpha\in\mathbb{F},\ \boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) \implies \exists\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{X}\ \text{ such that }\ \boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{y}=\alpha\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{L}(\alpha\boldsymbol{x}) \implies \alpha\boldsymbol{x}\in\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$

✏

Example D.1. [8] Let $C([a:b],\mathbb{R})$ be the set of all *continuous* functions from the closed real interval $[a:b]$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

EX	
	$C([a:b],\mathbb{R})$ is a linear space.

Theorem D.3. [9] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the set of linear operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of a linear operator $\mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$.*

THM			
	$\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}$	$\iff$	$\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}\in\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$
	$\mathbf{L}$ *is* INJECTIVE	$\iff$	$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})=\{\mathbb{0}\}$

[7] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 98–104, Berberian (1961) pages 80–85 ⟨Theorem IV.1.4 and Theorem IV.3.1⟩
[8] Eidelman et al. (2004) page 3
[9] Berberian (1961) page 88 ⟨Theorem IV.1.4⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \implies \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y} \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}) &= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} && \text{by Theorem D.1 page 157}\\
&= \mathbb{0} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&\implies \quad \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y} \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{null space}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \impliedby \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y} \in \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} &= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} + \mathbb{0} && \text{by definition of linear space (Definition D.1 page 155)}\\
&= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} + \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}) && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} + (\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}) && \text{by Theorem D.1 page 157}\\
&= (\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}) + \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by } \textit{associative} \text{ and } \textit{commutative} \text{ properties (Definition D.1 page 155)}\\
&= \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{L}$ is *injective* $\iff \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \{\mathbb{0}\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{L} \text{ is } \textit{injective} &\iff \{(\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \quad \iff \quad \boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{y}) \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X\}\\
&\iff \left\{\left[\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} = \mathbb{0} \quad \iff \quad (\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbb{0}\right] \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X\right\}\\
&\iff \left\{\left[\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbb{0} \quad \iff \quad (\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}) = \mathbb{0}\right] \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X\right\}\\
&\iff \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \{\mathbb{0}\}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.4. [10] *Let $\boldsymbol{W}$, $\boldsymbol{X}$, $\boldsymbol{Y}$, and $\boldsymbol{Z}$ be linear spaces over a field $\mathbb{F}$.*

THM					
	1.	$\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{MN})$	$= (\mathbf{LM})\mathbf{N}$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Z},\boldsymbol{W}), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Y},\boldsymbol{Z}), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(ASSOCIATIVE)
	2.	$\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dot{+} \mathbf{N}\right)$	$= (\mathbf{LM}) \dot{+} (\mathbf{LN})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Y},\boldsymbol{Z}), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(LEFT DISTRIBUTIVE)
	3.	$\left(\mathbf{L} \dot{+} \mathbf{M}\right)\mathbf{N}$	$= (\mathbf{LN}) \dot{+} (\mathbf{MN})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Y},\boldsymbol{Z}), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Y},\boldsymbol{Z}), \mathbf{N}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(RIGHT DISTRIBUTIVE)
	4.	$\alpha(\mathbf{LM})$	$= (\alpha\mathbf{L})\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})$	$\forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{Y},\boldsymbol{Z}), \mathbf{M}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), \alpha\in\mathbb{F}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{MN}) = (\mathbf{LM})\mathbf{N}$: Follows directly from property of *associative* operators.

2. Proof that $\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dot{+} \mathbf{N}\right) = (\mathbf{LM}) \dot{+} (\mathbf{LN})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{L}\left(\mathbf{M} \dot{+} \mathbf{N}\right)\right]\boldsymbol{x} &= \mathbf{L}\left[\left(\mathbf{M} \dot{+} \mathbf{N}\right)\boldsymbol{x}\right]\\
&= \mathbf{L}\left[(\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}) \dot{+} (\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x})\right]\\
&= [\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x})] \dot{+} [\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x})] && \text{by } \textit{additive} \text{ property Definition D.4 page 157}\\
&= [(\mathbf{LM})\boldsymbol{x}] \dot{+} [(\mathbf{LN})\boldsymbol{x}]
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\left(\mathbf{L} \dot{+} \mathbf{M}\right)\mathbf{N} = (\mathbf{LN}) \dot{+} (\mathbf{MN})$: Follows directly from property of *associative* operators.

4. Proof that $\alpha(\mathbf{LM}) = (\alpha\mathbf{L})\mathbf{M}$: Follows directly from *associative* property of linear operators.

5. Proof that $\alpha(\mathbf{LM}) = \mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\alpha(\mathbf{LM})]\boldsymbol{x} &= \alpha[(\mathbf{LM})\boldsymbol{x}]\\
&= \mathbf{L}[\alpha(\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x})] && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property Definition D.4 page 157}\\
&= \mathbf{L}[(\alpha\mathbf{M})\boldsymbol{x}]\\
&= [\mathbf{L}(\alpha\mathbf{M})]\boldsymbol{x}
\end{aligned}$$

[10] Berberian (1961) page 88 ⟨Theorem IV.5.1⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

Theorem D.5 (Fundamental theorem of linear equations). *Michel and Herget (1993) page 99 Let $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be the set of all operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ (Definition ?? page ??).*

THM

$$\dim \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) + \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L}) = \dim \boldsymbol{X} \qquad \forall \mathbf{L} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$$

✎PROOF: Let $\{\psi_k | k = 1, 2, \dots, p\}$ be a basis for $\boldsymbol{X}$ constructed such that $\{\psi_{p-n+1}, \psi_{p-n+2}, \dots, \psi_p\}$ is a basis for $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$.

Let $p \triangleq \dim \boldsymbol{X}$.
Let $n \triangleq \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\dim \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L}) &= \dim \{\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X} \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \mathbf{L} \sum_{k=1}^{p} \alpha_k \psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p} \alpha_k \mathbf{L}\psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p-n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L}\psi_k + \sum_{k=1}^{n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L}\psi_k \right\} \\
&= \dim \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} | \exists (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_p) \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{p-n} \alpha_k \mathbf{L}\psi_k + \mathbb{0} \right\} \\
&= p - n \\
&= \dim \boldsymbol{X} - \dim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})
\end{aligned}$$

Note: This "proof" may be missing some necessary detail. ✏

D.2 Operators on Normed linear spaces

D.2.1 Operator norm

Definition D.5. [11] *Let $\boldsymbol{V} = (X, \mathbb{F}, \hat{+}, \cdot)$ be a linear space and $\mathbb{F}$ be a field with absolute value function $|\cdot| \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{F}}$ (Definition A.4 page 130).*

DEF

*A **norm** is any functional $\|\cdot\|$ in $\mathbb{R}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ that satisfies*

1.	$\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \geq 0$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(STRICTLY POSITIVE)	*and*
2.	$\|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 0 \iff \boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	(NONDEGENERATE)	*and*
3.	$\|a\boldsymbol{x}\| = \lvert a\rvert \, \|\boldsymbol{x}\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X, a \in \mathbb{C}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)	*and*
4.	$\|\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}\| \leq \|\boldsymbol{x}\| + \|\boldsymbol{y}\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	(SUBADDITIVE/*triangle inquality*).	

*A **normed linear space** is the pair $(\boldsymbol{V}, \|\cdot\|)$.*

[11] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) pages 217–218, Banach (1932a) page 53, Banach (1932b) page 33, Banach (1922) page 135

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Definition D.6. [12] *Let $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of linear operators over normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$.* [13]

DEF

*The **operator norm** $|||\cdot|||$ is defined as*

$$|||\mathbf{A}||| \triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} \qquad \forall \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$$

*The pair $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ is the **normed space of linear operators** on $(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

Proposition D.1 (next) shows that the functional defined in Definition D.6 (previous) is a *norm*.

Proposition D.1. [14] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be the normed space of linear operators over the normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$ and $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$.*

PRP

*The functional $|||\cdot|||$ is a **norm** on $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$. In particular,*

1.	$|||\mathbf{A}|||$	≥ 0	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(NON-NEGATIVE)	*and*
2.	$|||\mathbf{A}|||$	$= 0 \iff \mathbf{A} \mathrel{\dot{=}} \mathbb{0}$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(NONDEGENERATE)	*and*
3.	$|||\alpha\mathbf{A}|||$	$= \lvert\alpha\rvert \, |||\mathbf{A}|||$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), \alpha\in\mathbb{F}$	(HOMOGENEOUS)	*and*
4.	$\big\lvert\!\big\lvert\!\big\lvert \mathbf{A} \mathbin{\dot{+}} \mathbf{B} \big\rvert\!\big\rvert\!\big\rvert$	$\le |||\mathbf{A}||| + |||\mathbf{B}|||$	$\forall \mathbf{A}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$	(SUBADDITIVE).	

*Moreover, $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ is a **normed linear space**.*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $|||\mathbf{A}||| > 0$ for $\mathbf{A} \ne \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} |||\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &> 0 \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $|||\mathbf{A}||| = 0$ for $\mathbf{A} \mathrel{\dot{=}} \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} |||\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbb{0}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $|||\alpha\mathbf{A}||| = |\alpha| \, |||\mathbf{A}|||$:

$$\begin{aligned} |||\alpha\mathbf{A}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\alpha\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{|\alpha| \, \|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &= |\alpha| \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of sup} \\ &= |\alpha| \; |||\mathbf{A}||| && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\big\lvert\!\big\lvert\!\big\lvert \mathbf{A} \mathbin{\dot{+}} \mathbf{B} \big\rvert\!\big\rvert\!\big\rvert \le |||\mathbf{A}||| + |||\mathbf{B}|||$:

$$\begin{aligned} \big\lvert\!\big\lvert\!\big\lvert \mathbf{A} \mathbin{\dot{+}} \mathbf{B} \big\rvert\!\big\rvert\!\big\rvert &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \big\{\big\|(\mathbf{A} \mathbin{\dot{+}} \mathbf{B})x\big\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\big\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x + \mathbf{B}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} \\ &\le \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| + \|\mathbf{B}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \\ &\le \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{A}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} + \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}} \{\|\mathbf{B}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} \\ &\triangleq |||\mathbf{A}||| + |||\mathbf{B}||| && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)} \end{aligned}$$

[12] Rudin (1991) page 92, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 225

[13] The operator norm notation $|||\cdot|||$ is introduced (as a Matrix norm) in Horn and Johnson (1990), page 290

[14] Rudin (1991) page 93

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

Lemma D.1. *Let* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ *be the normed space of linear operators over normed linear spaces* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$.

LEM

$$|||\mathbf{L}||| = \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$$

✎PROOF: [15]

1. Proof that $\sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} \ge \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\}$:

$$\sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} \ge \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} \qquad \text{because } A \subseteq B \implies \sup A \le \sup B$$

2. Let the subset $Y \subsetneq X$ be defined as

$$Y \triangleq \left\{ \boldsymbol{y} \in X \,\middle|\, \begin{array}{ll} 1. & \|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} \text{ and} \\ 2. & 0 < \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \le 1 \end{array} \right\}$$

3. Proof that $\sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} \le \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} &= \|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by definition of set } Y \\
&= \frac{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}\| \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \left\| \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y} \right\| && \text{by homogeneous property (page 160)} \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \left\| \mathbf{L} \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| && \text{by homogeneous property (page 157)} \\
&\le \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \sup_{\boldsymbol{y}\in Y} \left\{ \left\| \mathbf{L} \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| \right\} && \text{by definition of supremum} \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \sup_{\boldsymbol{y}\in Y} \left\{ \left\| \mathbf{L} \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| \,\middle|\, \left\| \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| = 1 \right\} && \text{because } \left\| \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| = 1 \text{ for all } \boldsymbol{y} \in Y \\
&\le \sup_{\boldsymbol{y}\in Y} \left\{ \left\| \mathbf{L} \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| \,\middle|\, \left\| \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \right\| = 1 \right\} && \text{because } 0 < \|\boldsymbol{y}\| \le 1 \\
&\le \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} && \text{because } \frac{\boldsymbol{y}}{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|} \in X \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{y} \in Y
\end{aligned}$$

4. By (1) and (3),

$$\sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} = \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X} \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\}$$

✏

Proposition D.2. [16] *Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be the identity operator in the normed space of linear operators* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X}), |||\cdot|||)$.

PRP

$$|||\mathbf{I}||| = 1$$

[15] email

Many many thanks to former NCTU Ph.D. student Chien Yao (Chinese: 姚建; PinYin: Yáo Jiàn) for his brilliant help with this proof. (If you are viewing this text as a pdf file, zoom in on the figure to the left to see text from Chien Yao's 2007 April 16 email.)

[16] Michel and Herget (1993) page 410

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{I}||| &\triangleq \sup\{\|\mathbf{I}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } |||\cdot||| \text{ (Definition D.6 page 161)}\\
&= \sup\{\|x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition D.3 page 156)}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.6. [17] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be the normed space of linear operators over normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$.*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{L}x\| &\le |||\mathbf{L}|||\ \|x\| && \forall \mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}),\ x \in \boldsymbol{X}\\
|||\mathbf{KL}||| &\le |||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}||| && \forall \mathbf{K},\mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\|\mathbf{L}x\| \le |||\mathbf{L}|||\ \|x\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{L}x\| &= \frac{\|x\|}{\|x\|}\|\mathbf{L}x\|\\
&= \|x\|\left\|\frac{1}{\|x\|}\mathbf{L}x\right\| && \text{by property of norms}\\
&= \|x\|\left\|\mathbf{L}\frac{x}{\|x\|}\right\| && \text{by property of linear operators}\\
&\triangleq \|x\|\ \|\mathbf{L}y\| && \text{where } y \triangleq \frac{x}{\|x\|}\\
&\le \|x\| \sup_y \|\mathbf{L}y\| && \text{by definition of supremum}\\
&= \|x\| \sup_y \{\|\mathbf{L}y\| \mid \|y\| = 1\} && \text{because } \|y\| = \left\|\frac{x}{\|x\|}\right\| = \frac{\|x\|}{\|x\|} = 1\\
&\triangleq \|x\|\ \|\mathbf{L}\| && \text{by definition of operator norm}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $|||\mathbf{KL}||| \le |||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{KL}||| &\triangleq \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}}\{\|(\mathbf{KL})x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by Definition D.6 page 161 } (|||\cdot|||)\\
&= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}}\{\|\mathbf{K}(\mathbf{L}x)\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ \|\mathbf{L}x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by 1.}\\
&\le \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||\ \|x\| \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by 1.}\\
&= \sup_{x\in\boldsymbol{X}}\{|||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}|||\ 1 \mid \|x\| \le 1\} && \text{by definition of sup}\\
&= |||\mathbf{K}|||\ |||\mathbf{L}||| && \text{by definition of sup}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

D.2.2 Bounded linear operators

Definition D.7. [18] *Let $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ be a normed space of linear operators.*

DEF

*An operator $\mathbf{B}$ is **bounded** if $|||\mathbf{B}||| < \infty$.*
*The quantity $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ is the set of all **bounded linear operators** on $(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ such that*

$$\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \triangleq \{\mathbf{L} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \mid |||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty\}.$$

[17] Rudin (1991) page 103, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 225
[18] Rudin (1991) pages 92–93

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem D.7. [19] *Let* $(\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), |||\cdot|||)$ *be the set of linear operators over normed linear spaces* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$ *and* $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$.

THM

The following conditions are all EQUIVALENT*:*

1. $\mathbf{L}$ *is continuous at* A SINGLE POINT $\boldsymbol{x}_0 \in X$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \quad \Longleftrightarrow$
2. $\mathbf{L}$ *is* CONTINUOUS *(at every point* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$*)* $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \quad \Longleftrightarrow$
3. $|||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty$ *(*$\mathbf{L}$ *is* BOUNDED*)* $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \quad \Longleftrightarrow$
4. $\exists M \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \le M\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\|$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{L}\in\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}), \boldsymbol{x}\in X$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that 1 $\Longrightarrow$ 2:

$$\begin{aligned}
\epsilon &> \big\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_0\big\| && \text{by hypothesis 1}\\
&= \big\|\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x}_0)\big\| && \text{by linearity (Definition D.4 page 157)}\\
&= \big\|\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y} - \boldsymbol{x}_0 - \boldsymbol{y})\big\| && \\
&= \big\|\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}) - \mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x}_0 + \boldsymbol{y})\big\| && \text{by linearity (Definition D.4 page 157)}\\
&\Longrightarrow \mathbf{L} \text{ is continuous at point } \boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y} && \\
&\Longrightarrow \mathbf{L} \text{ is continuous at every point in } X && \text{(hypothesis 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that 2 $\Longrightarrow$ 1: obvious:

3. Proof that 4 $\Longrightarrow$ 2:[20]

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}||| \le M\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\| &\Longrightarrow |||\mathbf{L}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y})||| \le M\,\|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by hypothesis 4}\\
&\Longrightarrow |||\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}||| \le M\,\|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by linearity of } \mathbf{L} \text{ (Definition D.4 page 157)}\\
&\Longrightarrow |||\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}||| \le \epsilon \text{ whenever } M\,\|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| < \epsilon && \\
&\Longrightarrow |||\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{y}||| \le \epsilon \text{ whenever } \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| < \frac{\epsilon}{M} && \text{(hypothesis 2)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that 3 $\Longrightarrow$ 4:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| &\le \underbrace{|||\mathbf{L}|||}_{M}\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by Theorem D.6 page 163}\\
&= M\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{where } M \triangleq |||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty \text{ (by hypothesis 1)}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that 1 $\Longrightarrow$ 3:[21]

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{L}||| = \infty &\Longrightarrow \{\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} = \infty\\
&\Longrightarrow \exists (\boldsymbol{x}_n) \quad \text{such that} \quad \big\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| = 1 \text{ and } |||\mathbf{L}||| = \big\{\big\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| \mid \big\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| \le 1\big\} = \infty\\
&\Longrightarrow \big\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| = 1 \text{ and } \infty = |||\mathbf{L}||| = \big\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\|\\
&\Longrightarrow \big\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| = 1 \text{ and } \big\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| \ge n\\
&\Longrightarrow \frac{1}{n}\big\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| = \frac{1}{n} \text{ and } \frac{1}{n}\big\|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\| \ge 1\\
&\Longrightarrow \left\|\frac{\boldsymbol{x}_n}{n}\right\| = \frac{1}{n} \text{ and } \left\|\mathbf{L}\frac{\boldsymbol{x}_n}{n}\right\| \ge 1\\
&\Longrightarrow \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\frac{\boldsymbol{x}_n}{n}\right\| = 0 \text{ and } \lim_{n\to\infty}\left\|\mathbf{L}\frac{\boldsymbol{x}_n}{n}\right\| \ge 1\\
&\Longrightarrow \mathbf{L} \text{ is not continuous at } 0
\end{aligned}$$

But by hypothesis, $\mathbf{L}$ *is* continuous. So the statement $|||\mathbf{L}||| = \infty$ must be *false* and thus $|||\mathbf{L}||| < \infty$ ($\mathbf{L}$ is *bounded*).

[19] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 227
[20] Bollobás (1999), page 29
[21] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 227

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✏

D.2.3 Adjoints on normed linear spaces

Definition D.8. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\boldsymbol{X}^*$ be the* TOPOLOGICAL DUAL SPACE *of $\boldsymbol{X}$.*

DEF

$\mathbf{B}^*$ *is the* ***adjoint*** *of an operator* $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ *if*

$$\mathsf{f}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) = \left[\mathbf{B}^*\mathsf{f}\right](\boldsymbol{x}) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{X}^*,\ \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}$$

Theorem D.8. [22] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$.*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{A} \mathbin{\mathring{+}} \mathbf{B})^* &= \mathbf{A}^* \mathbin{\mathring{+}} \mathbf{B}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \\
(\lambda\mathbf{A})^* &= \lambda\mathbf{A}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y}) \\
(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B})^* &= \mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^* && \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{A} \mathbin{\mathring{+}} \mathbf{B}\right]^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}\left(\left[\mathbf{A} \mathbin{\mathring{+}} \mathbf{B}\right]\boldsymbol{x}\right) && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of linear operators} && \text{(Definition D.4 page 157)} \\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) + \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{linear functional} \\
&= \mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) + \mathbf{B}^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \left[\mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{linear functional}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\lambda\mathbf{A}]^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}([\lambda\mathbf{A}]\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \lambda\mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{linear functional} \\
&= \left[\lambda\mathbf{A}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B}]^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) &= \mathsf{f}([\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B}]\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{A}[\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}]) && \text{by definition of } \textit{linear operators} && \text{(Definition D.4 page 157)} \\
&= \left[\mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}\right](\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \mathbf{B}^*\left[\mathbf{A}^*\mathsf{f}\right](\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)} \\
&= \left[\mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^*\right]\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by definition of } \textit{adjoint} && \text{(Definition D.8 page 165)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.9. [23] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{B}^*$ be the adjoint of an operator $\mathbf{B}$.*

THM

$$|||\mathbf{B}||| = \left|\left|\left|\mathbf{B}^*\right|\right|\right| \qquad \forall \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$$

[22] Bollobás (1999), page 156
[23] Rudin (1991) page 98

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{B}||| &\triangleq \sup\{\|\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1\} && \text{by Definition D.6 page 161}\\
&\stackrel{?}{=} \sup\left\{|g(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x};\boldsymbol{y}^*)| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&= \sup\left\{|f(\boldsymbol{x};\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*)| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&\triangleq \sup\left\{\left\|\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \le 1,\ \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&= \sup\left\{\left\|\mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \mid \left\|\boldsymbol{y}^*\right\| \le 1\right\}\\
&\triangleq |||\mathbf{B}^*||| && \text{by Definition D.6 page 161}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

D.2.4 More properties

❝*Beginning with the third year of studies, most of my mathematical work was really started in conversations with Mazur and Banach. And according to Banach some of my own contributions were characterized by a certain "strangeness" in the formulation of problems and in the outline of possible proofs. As he told me once some years later, he was surprised how often these "strange" approaches really worked.*❞

Stanislaus M. Ulam (1909–1984), Polish mathematician [24]

Theorem D.10 (Mazur-Ulam theorem). [25] *Let $\phi \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be a function on normed linear spaces $(\boldsymbol{X},\|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{X}})$ and $(\boldsymbol{Y},\|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{Y}})$. Let $\mathbf{I} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$ be the identity operator on $(\boldsymbol{X},\|\cdot\|_{\boldsymbol{X}})$.*

THM

$$
\left.\begin{array}{ll}
1. & \underbrace{\phi^{-1}\phi = \phi\phi^{-1} = \mathbf{I}}_{\textit{bijective}} \quad \textit{and}\\
2. & \underbrace{\|\phi\boldsymbol{x} - \phi\boldsymbol{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{Y}} = \|\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{X}} \quad \forall x,y\in\boldsymbol{X}}_{\textit{isometric}}
\end{array}\right\} \implies \underbrace{\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\boldsymbol{y}) = [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y}\forall\lambda\in\mathbb{R}}_{\textit{affine}}
$$

✎PROOF: Proof not yet complete.

1. Let ψ be the *reflection* of $\boldsymbol{z}$ in $\boldsymbol{X}$ such that $\psi\boldsymbol{x} = 2\boldsymbol{z} - \boldsymbol{x}$
   (a) $\|\psi\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{z}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{z}\|$
2. Let $\lambda \triangleq \sup_{g}\{\|g\boldsymbol{z} - \boldsymbol{z}\|\}$
3. Proof that $g \in W \implies g^{-1} \in W$:

   Let $\hat{\boldsymbol{x}} \triangleq g^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\hat{\boldsymbol{y}} \triangleq g^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|g^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} - g^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}\right\| &= \|\hat{\boldsymbol{x}} - \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}\| && \text{by definition of } \hat{\boldsymbol{x}} \text{ and } \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}\\
&= \|g\hat{\boldsymbol{x}} - g\hat{\boldsymbol{y}}\| && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \left\|gg^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} - gg^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}\right\| && \text{by definition of } \hat{\boldsymbol{x}} \text{ and } \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by definition of } g^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

[24] quote: Ulam (1991), page 33
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/Biographies/Ulam.html

[25] Oikhberg and Rosenthal (2007), page 598, Väisälä (2003), page 634, Giles (2000), page 11, Dunford and Schwartz (1957), page 91, Mazur and Ulam (1932)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

4. Proof that $\mathrm{g}z = z$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
2\lambda &= 2\sup\{\|\mathrm{g}z - z\|\} && \text{by definition of } \lambda \text{ item (2)}\\
&\le 2\|\mathrm{g}z - z\| && \text{by definition of sup}\\
&= \|2z - 2\mathrm{g}z\| \\
&= \|\psi\mathrm{g}z - \mathrm{g}z\| && \text{by definition of } \psi \text{ item (1)}\\
&= \left\|\mathrm{g}^{-1}\psi\mathrm{g}z - \mathrm{g}^{-1}\mathrm{g}z\right\| && \text{by item (3)}\\
&= \left\|\mathrm{g}^{-1}\psi\mathrm{g}z - z\right\| && \text{by definition of } \mathrm{g}^{-1}\\
&= \left\|\psi\mathrm{g}^{-1}\psi\mathrm{g}z - z\right\| \\
&= \left\|\mathrm{g}^{*}z - z\right\| \\
&\le \lambda && \text{by definition of } \lambda \text{ item (2)}\\
&\implies 2\lambda \le \lambda \\
&\implies \lambda = 0 \\
&\implies \mathrm{g}z = z
\end{aligned}
$$

5. Proof that $\phi\left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{y}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\phi\left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{y}\right) &= \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \frac{1}{2}\phi\boldsymbol{y}
\end{aligned}
$$

6. Proof that $\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\boldsymbol{y}) = [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y}$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\phi([1-\lambda]\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\boldsymbol{y}) &= \\
&= [1-\lambda]\phi\boldsymbol{x} + \lambda\phi\boldsymbol{y}
\end{aligned}
$$

✍

Theorem D.11 (Neumann Expansion Theorem). [26] *Let* $\mathbf{A} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *be an operator on a linear space* $\boldsymbol{X}$. *Let* $\mathbf{A}^0 \triangleq \mathbf{I}$.

THM

$$
\left.\begin{array}{ll}
1. & \mathbf{A} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X}) \quad \textit{(A is bounded)}\\
2. & |||\mathbf{A}||| < 1
\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{lll}
1. & (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} & \textit{exists}\\
2. & \left|\left|\left|(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\right|\right|\right| & \le \dfrac{1}{1 - |||\mathbf{A}|||}\\
3. & (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} & = \displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{A}^n\\
 & \textit{with uniform convergence} &
\end{array}\right.
$$

[26] Michel and Herget (1993) page 415

CC BY-NC-ND

D.3 Operators on Inner product spaces

D.3.1 General Results

Definition D.9. [27] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\big)$ *be a linear space.*

DEF

A function $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \in \mathbb{F}^{X \times X}$ *is an* ***inner product*** *on* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *if*

1.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \geq 0$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	*(non-negative)*	*and*
2.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \iff \boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$	*(nondegenerate)*	*and*
3.	$\langle \alpha \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle = \alpha \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X, \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{C}$	*(homogeneous)*	*and*
4.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{u} \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{u} \rangle + \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{u} \rangle$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{u} \in X$	*(additive)*	*and*
5.	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle^*$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X$	*(conjugate symmetric).*	

An inner product is also called a ***scalar product****.*
An ***inner product space*** *is the pair* $(\boldsymbol{\Omega}, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle)$.

Theorem D.12. [28] *Let* $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{X})$ *be bounded linear operators on an inner product space* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\big)$.

THM

$$\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X \quad \iff \quad \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0} \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$$
$$\langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X \quad \iff \quad \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{B}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \implies \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathbf{B}(\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \mid (\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \rangle + i \langle \mathbf{B}(\boldsymbol{x} + i\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \mid (\boldsymbol{x} + i\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \big\{ \big\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x}) \mid \boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} + i \big\{ \big\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} + i\mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x}) \mid \boldsymbol{x} + i\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} && \text{by Definition D.4 page 157} \\
&= \big\{ \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle + \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle + \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} && \text{by Definition D.9 page 168} \\
&\quad + i \big\{ \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle - i \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle + i \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle - i^2 \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} \\
&= \big\{ 0 + \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle + \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle + 0 \big\} + i \big\{ 0 - i \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle + i \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle - i^2 0 \big\} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \big\{ \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle + \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} + \big\{ \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle - \big\langle \mathbf{B}^2\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \big\rangle \big\} \\
&= 2 \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle \\
&= 2 \|\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \\
&\implies \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0} && \text{by Definition D.5 page 160}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \impliedby \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}$: by property of inner products.

3. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \implies \mathbf{A} \mathrel{\hat{=}} \mathbf{B}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle - \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by } \textit{additivity} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \text{ (Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \langle (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition} \\
\implies (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})\boldsymbol{x} &= \mathbb{0} && \text{by item 1} \\
\implies \mathbf{A} &= \mathbf{B} && \text{by definition of operator subtraction}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \impliedby \mathbf{A} \mathrel{\hat{=}} \mathbf{B}$:

$$\langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \qquad \text{by } \mathbf{A} \mathrel{\hat{=}} \mathbf{B} \text{ hypothesis}$$

✏

[27] Haaser and Sullivan (1991), page 277, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 276, Peano (1888b) page 72
[28] Rudin (1991) page 310 ⟨Theorem 12.7, Corollary⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

D.3.2 Operator adjoint

A fundamental concept of operators on inner product spaces is the *operator adjoint* (Proposition D.3 page 169). The adjoint of an operator is a kind of generalization of the conjugate of a complex number in that

- Both are *star-algebras* (Theorem D.13 page 169).
- Both support decomposition into "real" and "imaginary" parts.

Structurally, the operator adjoint provides a convenient symmetric relationship between the *range space* and *null space* of an operator (Theorem D.14 page 170).

Proposition D.3. [29] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$.*[30]

PRP

An operator $\mathbf{B}^*$ is the ADJOINT *of $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ if*

$$\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}\rangle \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{H}.$$

✎PROOF:

1. For fixed y, $\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) \triangleq \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$ is a *functional* in $\mathbb{F}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.
2. $\mathbf{B}^*$ is the *adjoint* of $\mathbf{B}$ because

$$\begin{aligned}\langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle &\triangleq \mathsf{f}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \\ &\triangleq \mathbf{B}^*\mathsf{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) && \text{by Definition D.8 (page 165)} \\ &= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y}\rangle\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example D.2 (Matrix algebra: $\mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{A}^H$). In matrix algebra,

EX

- The inner product operation $\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$ is represented by $\boldsymbol{y}^H\boldsymbol{x}$.
- The linear operator is represented as a matrix $\boldsymbol{A}$.
- The operation of $\boldsymbol{A}$ on vector $\boldsymbol{x}$ is represented as $\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x}$.
- The adjoint of matrix $\boldsymbol{A}$ is the Hermitian matrix $\boldsymbol{A}^H$.

✎PROOF:

$$\langle \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle \triangleq \boldsymbol{y}^H\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x} = [(\boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x})^H\boldsymbol{y}]^H = [\boldsymbol{x}^H\boldsymbol{A}^H\boldsymbol{y}]^H = (\boldsymbol{A}^H\boldsymbol{y})^H\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \left\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{A}^H\boldsymbol{y}\right\rangle$$

✏

Structures that satisfy the four conditions of the next theorem are known as **-algebras* ("*star-algebras*"). Other structures which are *-algebras include the *field of complex numbers* $\mathbb{C}$ and any *ring of complex square $n \times n$ matrices*.[31]

Theorem D.13 (operator star-algebra)**.** [32] *Let $\boldsymbol{H}$ be a Hilbert space with operators $\mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ and with adjoints $\mathbf{A}^*,\mathbf{B}^* \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$. Let $\bar{\alpha}$ be the complex conjugate of some $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$.*

[29] Michel and Herget (1993) page 220, Rudin (1991) page 311, Giles (2000), page 182, von Neumann (1929) page 49, Stone (1932) page 41

[30] *bounded operator*: Definition D.7 (page 163); *adjoint*: Definition D.8 (page 165)

[31] Sakai (1998) page 1

[32] Halmos (1998), pages 39–40, Rudin (1991) page 311

CC BY-NC-ND

THM *The pair $(\boldsymbol{H},*)$ is a $*$-ALGEBRA (STAR-ALGEBRA). In particular,*

1. $(\mathbf{A} \dot{+} \mathbf{B})^* = \mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \boldsymbol{H}$ (DISTRIBUTIVE) *and*
2. $(\alpha\mathbf{A})^* = \bar{\alpha}\mathbf{A}^*$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \boldsymbol{H}$ (CONJUGATE LINEAR) *and*
3. $(\mathbf{AB})^* = \mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^*$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \boldsymbol{H}$ (ANTIAUTOMORPHIC) *and*
4. $\mathbf{A}^{**} = \mathbf{A}$ $\quad \forall \mathbf{A},\mathbf{B} \in \boldsymbol{H}$ (INVOLUTARY)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, (\mathbf{A} \dot{+} \mathbf{B})^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle (\mathbf{A} \dot{+} \mathbf{B})\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle + \langle \mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle + \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition} && \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} + \mathbf{B}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, (\mathbf{A}^* + \mathbf{B}^*)\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator addition} &&
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, (\alpha\mathbf{A})^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle (\alpha\mathbf{A})\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \alpha(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}) \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of scalar multiplication} && \\
&= \alpha \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \alpha \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \alpha^*\mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, (\mathbf{AB})^* \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle (\mathbf{AB})\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of operator multiplication} && \\
&= \langle (\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{x}) \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{B}^*\mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^{**}\boldsymbol{y} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{x} \rangle^* && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle^* && \text{by definition of adjoint} && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{by definition of inner product} && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.14. [33] *Let $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be the set of all operators from a linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$ to a linear space $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{L})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{L})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{L}$ in $\boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$.*

THM
$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}) = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*)^\perp$$
$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}^*) = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A})^\perp$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*)^\perp &= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{u} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall u \in \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}^*) \right\} && && \\
&= \left\{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \right\} && && \\
&= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H} \} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{A}^* && \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)}\\
&= \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{y} = 0 \} && && \\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}) && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}) &&
\end{aligned}$$

$$\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A})^\perp = \{ y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{u} \rangle = 0 \quad \forall u \in \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{A}) \}$$

[33] Rudin (1991) page 312

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \{y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}\} && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{I} \\
&= \left\{y \in \boldsymbol{H} \,|\, \langle \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}\rangle = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{A}^* \qquad \text{(Proposition D.3 page 169)} \\
&= \left\{y \in \boldsymbol{H} | \mathbf{A}^*\boldsymbol{y} = 0\right\} \\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A}^*) && \text{by definition of } \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{A})
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

D.4 Special Classes of Operators

D.4.1 Projection operators

Definition D.10. [34] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

DEF $\mathbf{P}$ *is a* ***projection*** *operator if* $\quad \mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P}$.

Theorem D.15. [35] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ with* NULL SPACE $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P})$ *and* IMAGE SET $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P})$.

THM

$$
\left.\begin{array}{llll}
1. & \mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P} & (\mathbf{P} \text{ is a projection operator}) & \text{and} \\
2. & \boldsymbol{\Omega} = \boldsymbol{X} \hat{+} \boldsymbol{Y} & (\boldsymbol{Y} \text{ compliments } \boldsymbol{X} \text{ in } \boldsymbol{\Omega}) & \text{and} \\
3. & \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \boldsymbol{X} & (\mathbf{P} \text{ projects onto } \boldsymbol{X}) &
\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{llll}
1. & \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) = \boldsymbol{X} & & \text{and} \\
2. & \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) = \boldsymbol{Y} & & \text{and} \\
3. & \boldsymbol{\Omega} = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) \hat{+} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) & &
\end{array}\right.
$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{P}) &= \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega} \\
&= \mathbf{P}(\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2) \\
&= \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 \\
&= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \{\mathbb{0}\} \\
&= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{P}) &= \{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega} | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\} \\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in (\boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2) | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} \\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} + \left\{\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 | \mathbf{P}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbb{0}\right\} \\
&= \{\mathbb{0}\} + \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2 \\
&= \boldsymbol{\Omega}_2
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem D.16. [36] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

THM

$$
\underbrace{\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P}}_{\mathbf{P} \text{ is a projection operator}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P})}_{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{P}) \text{ is a projection operator}}
$$

[34] Rudin (1991) page 133 ⟨5.15 Projections⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 70, Bachman and Narici (1966) page 6, Halmos (1958) page 73 ⟨§41. Projections⟩

[35] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 120–121

[36] Michel and Herget (1993) page 121

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

Proof that $\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P} \implies (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^2 &= (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \\
&= \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) + (-\mathbf{P})(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) \\
&= \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}\mathbf{I}+\mathbf{P}^2 \\
&= \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}+\mathbf{P} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}
\end{aligned}$$

Proof that $\mathbf{P}^2 = \mathbf{P} \impliedby (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^2 = (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{P}^2 &= \underbrace{\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}+\mathbf{P}^2}_{(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^2} - (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}) \\
&= (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P})^2 - (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}) \\
&= (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}) - (\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{P}-\mathbf{P}) && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \mathbf{P}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

D.4.2 Self Adjoint Operators

Definition D.11. [37] *Let* $\mathbf{B} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ *be a bounded operator with adjoint* $\mathbf{B}^*$ *on a Hilbert space* $\boldsymbol{H}$.

DEF *The operator* $\mathbf{B}$ *is said to be* ***self-adjoint*** *or* ***hermitian*** *if* $\mathbf{B} \mathrel{\hat{=}} \mathbf{B}^*$.

Example D.3 (Autocorrelation operator). Let $\mathsf{x}(t)$ be a random process with autocorrelation

$$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) \triangleq \underbrace{\mathsf{E}[\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u)]}_{\text{expectation}}.$$

Let an autocorrelation operator $\mathbf{R}$ be defined as $[\mathbf{R}\mathsf{f}](t) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \underbrace{\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)}_{\text{kernel}}\mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathrm{d}u$.

EX $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^*$ (The autocorrelation operator $\mathbf{R}$ is *self-adjoint*)

✎PROOF:

1. First note that the *autocorrelation kernel* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)$ is *hermitian symmetric*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) &\triangleq \mathsf{E}\mathsf{x}(t)\mathsf{x}^*(u) = [\mathsf{E}\mathsf{x}^*(t)\mathsf{x}(u)]^* = [\mathsf{E}\mathsf{x}(u)\mathsf{x}^*(t)]^* \\
&= \mathsf{R}^*_{\mathsf{xx}}(u,t)
\end{aligned}$$

[37] Historical works regarding self-adjoint operators: von Neumann (1929) page 49, "linearer Operator R selbstadjungiert oder Hermitesch", Stone (1932) page 50 ("self-adjoint transformations")

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that the *autocorrelation operator* $\mathbf{R}$ is *self-adjoint*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{R}\mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{g}\rangle &= \left\langle \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathrm{d}u \mid \mathsf{g}(t)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R}\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\,\langle \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u) \mid \mathsf{g}(t)\rangle\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\int_t \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(t,u)\mathsf{g}^*(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\int_t \mathsf{R}^*_{\mathsf{xx}}(u,t)\mathsf{g}^*(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by 1.}\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\left[\int_t \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{xx}}(u,t)\mathsf{g}(t)\,\mathrm{d}t\right]^*\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\left[\mathbf{R}\mathsf{g}\right]^*\mathrm{d}u && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R}\\
&= \langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathbf{R}\mathsf{g}\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.17. [38] *Let* $\mathbf{S} : \boldsymbol{H} \to \boldsymbol{H}$ *be an operator over a Hilbert space* $\boldsymbol{H}$ *with eigenvalues* $\{\lambda_n\}$ *and eigenfunctions* $\{\psi_n\}$ *such that* $\mathbf{S}\psi_n = \lambda_n\psi_n$ *and let* $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^*}_{\mathbf{S}\ \textit{is}\ \text{SELF ADJOINT}} \implies \begin{cases} 1.\ \ \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle \in \mathbb{R} & \textit{(the hermitian quadratic form of } \mathbf{S} \textit{ is real)}\\ 2.\ \ \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R} & \textit{(eigenvalues of } \mathbf{S} \textit{ are real)}\\ 3.\ \ \lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle = 0 & \textit{(eigenfunctions associated with distinct eigenvalues are orthogonal)}\end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle \in \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle^* && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle \text{ Definition D.9 page 168}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies \lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda_n \|\psi_n\|^2 &= \lambda_n \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_n\rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \lambda_n\psi_n \mid \psi_n\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle \text{ Definition D.9 page 168}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{S}\psi_n \mid \psi_n\rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs}\\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \mathbf{S}\psi_n\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \lambda_n\psi_n\rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs}\\
&= \lambda_n^* \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_n\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle \text{ Definition D.9 page 168}\\
&= \lambda_n^* \|\psi_n\|^2 && \text{by definition}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^* \implies [\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \implies \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle = 0]$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda_n \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle &= \langle \lambda_n\psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle \text{ Definition D.9 page 168}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{S}\psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs}\\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \mathbf{S}\psi_m\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \langle \psi_n \mid \lambda_m\psi_m\rangle && \text{by definition of eigenpairs}\\
&= \lambda_m^* \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle \text{ Definition D.9 page 168}\\
&= \lambda_m \langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m\rangle && \text{because } \lambda_m \text{ is real}
\end{aligned}$$

[38] Lax (2002), pages 315–316, Keener (1988), pages 114–119

CC BY-NC-ND

This implies for $\lambda_n \neq \lambda_m \neq 0$, $\langle \psi_n \mid \psi_m \rangle = 0$.

✏

D.4.3 Normal Operators

Definition D.12. [39] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{N}^*$ be the adjoint of an operator $\mathbf{N} \in \mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.*

DEF $\mathbf{N}$ *is* ***normal*** *if* $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*$.

Theorem D.18. [40] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{N})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$.*

THM $$\underbrace{\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*}_{\mathbf{N}\text{ is normal}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\| \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \implies \left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis } (\mathbf{N} \text{ is normal})\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\|^2 && \text{by definition}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^* \impliedby \left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^{**}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by Theorem D.13 page 169 (property of adjoint)}\\
&= \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by definition}\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\|^2 && \text{by right hypothesis } (\left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\| = \|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\|)\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of } \mathbf{N}^*)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.19. [41] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$. Let $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})$ be the* NULL SPACE *of an operator $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{N})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{N}$ in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$.*

THM $$\underbrace{\mathbf{N}^*\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{N}\mathbf{N}^*}_{\mathbf{N}\text{ is normal}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^*) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N})}_{\mathbf{N}\text{ and }\mathbf{N}^*\text{ have the same null space}}$$

[39] Rudin (1991) page 312, Michel and Herget (1993) page 431, Dieudonné (1969), page 167, Frobenius (1878), Frobenius (1968) page 391

[40] Rudin (1991) pages 312–313

[41] Rudin (1991) pages 312–313

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}^*) &= \left\{\boldsymbol{x}|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x} = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\} && \text{(definition of } \mathcal{N}\text{)}\\
&= \left\{\boldsymbol{x}|\left\|\mathbf{N}^*\boldsymbol{x}\right\| = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \text{ (Definition D.5 page 160)}\\
&= \{\boldsymbol{x}|\,\|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x}\| = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\}\\
&= \{\boldsymbol{x}|\mathbf{N}\boldsymbol{x} = 0 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X}\} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \text{ (Definition D.5 page 160)}\\
&= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{N}) && \text{(definition of } \mathcal{N}\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

D.4.4 Isometric operators

An operator on a pair of normed linear spaces is *isometric* (next definition) if it is an *isometry*.

Definition D.13. *Let* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ *and* $\left(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ *be* NORMED LINEAR SPACES *(Definition D.5 page 160)*.

DEF *An operator* $\mathbf{M} \in \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$ *is* ***isometric*** *if*

$$\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X.$$

Theorem D.20. [42] *Let* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ *and* $\left(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ *be* NORMED LINEAR SPACES. *Let* $\mathbf{M}$ *be a linear operator in* $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{Y})$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X}_{\textit{isometric in length}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in X}_{\textit{isometric in distance}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \implies \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| &= \|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y})\| && \text{by definition of linear operators (Definition D.4 page 157)}\\
&= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{u}\| && \text{let } \boldsymbol{u} \triangleq \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \impliedby \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| &= \|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbb{0})\|\\
&= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\mathbb{0})\| && \text{by definition of linear operators (Definition D.4 page 157)}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbb{0}\| && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Isometric operators have already been defined (Definition D.13 page 175) in the more general normed linear spaces, while Theorem D.20 (page 175) demonstrated that in a normed linear space $\boldsymbol{X}$, $\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \iff \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|$ for all $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{X}$. Here in the more specialized inner product spaces, Theorem D.21 (next) demonstrates two additional equivalent properties.

[42] Kubrusly (2001) page 239 ⟨Proposition 4.37⟩, Berberian (1961) page 27 ⟨Theorem IV.7.5⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem D.21. [43] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a normed linear space $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$. Let $\mathbf{M}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$, and $\mathbf{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$. Let $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.*

THM

*The following conditions are all **equivalent**:*

1.	$\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}$	$=$	$\mathbf{I}$			$\Longleftrightarrow$
2.	$\langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle$	$=$	$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in X$	($\mathbf{M}$ *is surjective*)	$\Longleftrightarrow$
3.	$\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\|$	$=$	$\|x - y\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in X$	(*isometric in distance*)	$\Longleftrightarrow$
4.	$\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\|$	$=$	$\|\boldsymbol{x}\|$	$\forall \boldsymbol{x}\in X$	(*isometric in length*)	

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle &= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of adjoint)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle && \text{by (1)}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle && \text{by Definition D.3 page 156 (definition of } \mathbf{I}\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| &= \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|\\
&= \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle} && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (2) $\Longleftarrow$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
4\,\langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle &= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} + \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 + i\,\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} + i\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 - i\,\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} - i\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 && \text{by polarization id.}\\
&= \|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y})\|^2 - \|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y})\|^2 + i\,\|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} + i\boldsymbol{y})\|^2 - i\,\|\mathbf{M}(\boldsymbol{x} - i\boldsymbol{y})\|^2 && \text{by Definition D.4}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{y}\|^2 - \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|^2 + i\,\|\boldsymbol{x} + i\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 - i\,\|\boldsymbol{x} - i\boldsymbol{y}\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that (3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (4): by Theorem D.20 page 175

5. Proof that (4) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle &= \langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}^{**}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Proposition D.3 page 169 (definition of adjoint)}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Theorem D.13 page 169 (property of adjoint)}\\
&= \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by definition}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis with } y = 0\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition}\\
&= \langle \mathbf{I}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by Definition D.3 page 156 (definition of } \mathbf{I}\text{)}\\
\Longrightarrow \qquad \mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{I} && \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.22. [44] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{M}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$, and $\mathbf{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$. Let Λ be the set of eigenvalues of $\mathbf{M}$. Let $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I}}_{\mathbf{M}\ \textit{is isometric}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \begin{cases} |||\mathbf{M}||| = 1 & \text{(UNIT LENGTH) and}\\ |\lambda| = 1 & \forall \lambda\in\Lambda \end{cases}$$

[43] Michel and Herget (1993) page 432 ⟨Theorem 7.5.8⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 391 ⟨Proposition 5.72⟩
[44] Michel and Herget (1993) page 432

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{M}^*\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I} \implies |||\mathbf{M}||| = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|||\mathbf{M}||| &= \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X}\{\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} && \text{by Definition D.6 page 161}\\
&= \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X}\{\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \mid \|\boldsymbol{x}\| = 1\} && \text{by Theorem D.21 page 176}\\
&= \sup_{\boldsymbol{x}\in X}\{1\}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $|\lambda| = 1$: Let $(\boldsymbol{x}, \lambda)$ be an eigenvector-eigenvalue pair.

$$\begin{aligned}
1 &= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|}\ \|\boldsymbol{x}\|\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|}\ \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by Theorem D.21 page 176}\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|}\ \|\lambda\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by definition of } \lambda\\
&= \frac{1}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|}\ |\lambda|\ \|\boldsymbol{x}\| && \text{by homogeneous property of } \|\cdot\|\\
&= |\lambda|
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example D.4 (One sided shift operator). [45] Let $\boldsymbol{X}$ be the set of all sequences with range $\mathbb{W}$ $(0, 1, 2, \ldots)$ and shift operators defined as

$$\begin{aligned}
&1.\quad \mathbf{S}_r\,(\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \triangleq (\!(0, x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) && \text{(right shift operator)}\\
&2.\quad \mathbf{S}_l\,(\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \triangleq (\!(x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots)\!) && \text{(left shift operator)}
\end{aligned}$$

EX
1. $\mathbf{S}_r$ is an isometric operator.
2. $\mathbf{S}_r^* = \mathbf{S}_l$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{S}_r^* = \mathbf{S}_l$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{S}_r\,(\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \mid (\!(y_0, \boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \ldots)\!)\rangle &= \langle (\!(0, x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \mid (\!(y_0, \boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \ldots)\!)\rangle\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{x}_{n-1}\ \boldsymbol{y}_n^*\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{x}_n\ \boldsymbol{y}_{n+1}^*\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{x}_n\ \boldsymbol{y}_{n+1}^*\\
&= \langle (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \mid (\!(y_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \boldsymbol{y}_3, \ldots)\!)\rangle\\
&= \left\langle (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!) \mid \underbrace{\mathbf{S}_l}_{\mathbf{S}_r^*}\,(\!(y_0, \boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \ldots)\!) \right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{S}_r$ is isometric ($\mathbf{S}_r^*\mathbf{S}_r = \mathbf{I}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}_r^*\mathbf{S}_r &= \mathbf{S}_l\mathbf{S}_r && \text{by 1.}\\
&= \mathbf{I}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[45] Michel and Herget (1993) page 441

CC BY-NC-ND

D.4.5 Unitary operators

Definition D.14. [46] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$, and $\boldsymbol{I}$ the identity operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{X})$.*

DEF

*The operator $\mathbf{U}$ is **unitary** if* $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I}$.

Proposition D.4. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on normed linear spaces $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{V}$ be bounded linear operators in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{X},\boldsymbol{Y})$.*

PRP

$$\left.\begin{array}{l}\mathbf{U} \text{ is UNITARY and}\\ \mathbf{V} \text{ is UNITARY}\end{array}\right\} \implies (\mathbf{UV}) \text{ is UNITARY.}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{UV})(\mathbf{UV})^* &= (\mathbf{UV})\left(\mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{U}^*\right) && \text{by Theorem D.8 page 165}\\
&= \mathbf{U}\left(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{V}^*\right)\mathbf{U}^* && \text{by associative property}\\
&= \mathbf{U}\mathbf{I}\mathbf{U}^* && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition D.14 page 178}\\
&= \mathbf{I} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition D.14 page 178}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{UV})^*(\mathbf{UV}) &= \left(\mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{U}^*\right)(\mathbf{UV}) && \text{by Theorem D.8 page 165}\\
&= \mathbf{V}^*\left(\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U}\right)\mathbf{V} && \text{by associative property}\\
&= \mathbf{V}^*\mathbf{I}\mathbf{V} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition D.14 page 178}\\
&= \mathbf{I} && \text{by definition of unitary operators—Definition D.14 page 178}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.23. [47] *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H},\boldsymbol{H})$, and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{U}$.*

THM

*The following conditions are **equivalent**:*

1. $\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$ *(unitary)* $\iff$
2. $\langle \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ *(surjective)* $\iff$
3. $\|\mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \left\|\mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{y}\right\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\|$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ *(isometric in distance)* $\iff$
4. $\|\mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\|$ *and* $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$ *(isometric in length)*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (2):
   (a) $\langle \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{y}\rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle$ by Theorem D.21 (page 176).
   (b) Proof that $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = X$:

$$\begin{aligned}
X &\supseteq \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) && \text{because } \mathbf{U} \in X^X\\
&\supseteq \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^*)\\
&= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{I}) && \text{by left hypothesis } (\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I})\\
&= X && \text{by Definition D.3 page 156 (definition of } \mathbf{I})
\end{aligned}$$

[46] Rudin (1991) page 312, Michel and Herget (1993) page 431, Autonne (1901) page 209, Autonne (1902), Schur (1909), Steen (1973)

[47] Rudin (1991) pages 313–314 ⟨Theorem 12.13⟩, Knapp (2005a) page 45 ⟨Proposition 2.6⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that (2) $\iff$ (3) $\iff$ (4): by Theorem D.21 page 176.

3. Proof that (3) $\implies$ (1):

   (a) Proof that $\|\mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{U}\boldsymbol{y}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| \implies \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$: by Theorem D.21 page 176

   (b) Proof that $\left\|\mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{y}\right\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| \implies \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I}$:

$$\left\|\mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{x} - \mathbf{U}^*\boldsymbol{y}\right\| = \|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\| \implies \quad \begin{aligned} \mathbf{U}^{**}\mathbf{U}^* &= \mathbf{I} && \text{by Theorem D.21 page 176} \\ \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* &= \mathbf{I} && \text{by Theorem D.13 page 169} \end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem D.24. *Let $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$ be the space of bounded linear operators on a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$. Let $\mathbf{U}$ be a bounded linear operator in $\mathcal{B}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{H})$, $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U})$ the* NULL SPACE *of $\mathbf{U}$, and $\mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})$ the* IMAGE SET *of $\mathbf{U}$.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}}_{\mathbf{U}\text{ is unitary}} \implies \begin{cases} \mathbf{U}^{-1} = \mathbf{U}^* \\ \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}^*) = X \\ \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) = \{\mathbb{0}\} \\ |||\mathbf{U}||| = \left|||\mathbf{U}^*\right||| = 1 \quad \text{(UNIT LENGTH)} \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Note that $\mathbf{U}$, $\mathbf{U}^*$, and $\mathbf{U}^{-1}$ are all both **isometric** and **normal**:

$$\begin{array}{lllll} \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} & & = \mathbf{I} & \implies & \mathbf{U}\text{ is isometric} \\ \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} & & = \mathbf{I} & \implies & \mathbf{U}^*\text{ is isometric} \\ \mathbf{U}^{-1} = \mathbf{U}^* & & & \implies & \mathbf{U}^{-1}\text{ is isometric} \\ & & & & \\ \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* & = & & \implies & \mathbf{U}\text{ is normal} \\ \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} & = & & \implies & \mathbf{U}^*\text{ is normal} \\ \mathbf{U}^{-1} = \mathbf{U}^* & & & \implies & \mathbf{U}^{-1}\text{ is normal} \end{array}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U}^*) = \boldsymbol{H}$: by Theorem D.23 page 178.

3. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^{-1})$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}^*) &= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{U}) && \text{because } \mathbf{U} \text{ and } \mathbf{U}^* \text{ are both normal and by Theorem D.18 page 174} \\ &= \mathcal{I}(\mathbf{U})^\perp && \text{by Theorem D.14 page 170} \\ &= X^\perp && \text{by above result} \\ &= \{\mathbb{0}\} \end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathbf{U}^*\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^* = \mathbf{I} \implies \left\|\mathbf{U}^{-1}\right\| = \left\|\mathbf{U}^*\right\| = \|\mathbf{U}\| = 1$:
   Because $\mathbf{U}$, $\mathbf{U}^*$, and $\mathbf{U}^{-1}$ are all isometric and by Theorem D.22 page 176.

✏

Example D.5. Examples of *Fredholm integral operators* include

1. Fourier Transform $\quad [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}](f) = \int_t \mathsf{x}(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}t \quad \kappa(t,f) = e^{-i2\pi ft}$
2. Inverse Fourier Transform $\quad [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}](t) = \int_f \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \quad \kappa(f,t) = e^{i2\pi ft}$
3. Laplace operator $\quad [\mathbf{L}\mathsf{x}](s) = \int_t \mathsf{x}(t)e^{-st}\,\mathrm{d}t \quad \kappa(t,s) = e^{-st}$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

Example D.6 (Translation operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and $\mathbf{T} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x-1) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \text{(translation operator)}$$

EX

1.	$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)$	$=$	$\mathsf{f}(x+1)$	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(inverse translation operator)
2.	$\mathbf{T}^*$	$=$	$\mathbf{T}^{-1}$		($\mathbf{T}$ is invertible)
3.	$\mathbf{T}^*\mathbf{T}$	$=$	$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^* = \mathbf{I}$		($\mathbf{T}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(x+1)$:

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{I}$$
$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{T}$ is unitary:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle &= \langle \mathsf{f}(x-1) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \\
&= \int_x \mathsf{f}(x-1)\mathsf{g}^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \int_x \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}^*(x+1)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x+1)\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,\middle|\, \underbrace{\mathbf{T}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{T}^*}\mathsf{g}(x) \right\rangle && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example D.7 (Dilation operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ and $\mathbf{T} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \qquad \text{(dilation operator)}$$

EX

1.	$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)$	$=$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$	(inverse dilation operator)
2.	$\mathbf{D}^*$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}^{-1}$		($\mathbf{D}$ is invertible)
3.	$\mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D}$	$=$	$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{I}$		($\mathbf{D}$ is unitary)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{f}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$:

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{I}$$
$$\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that $\mathbf{D}$ is unitary:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{D}\mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{g}(x)\rangle &= \left\langle \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x) \mid \mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}\\
&= \int_x \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(2x)\mathsf{g}^*(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \sqrt{2}\mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{g}^*\left(\frac{1}{2}u\right)\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{let } u \triangleq 2x \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \mathrm{d}x = \frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(u)\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{g}\left(\frac{1}{2}u\right)\right]^*\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathsf{g}\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\right\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \underbrace{\mathbf{D}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{D}^*}\mathsf{g}(x)\right\rangle && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example D.8 (Delay operator). Let $\boldsymbol{X}$ be the set of all sequences and $\mathbf{D} \in \boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ be a delay operator.

EX The delay operator $\mathbf{D}\,(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \triangleq (\!(x_{n-1})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is unitary.

✎PROOF: The inverse $\mathbf{D}^{-1}$ of the delay operator $\mathbf{D}$ is

$$\mathbf{D}^{-1}\,(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \triangleq (\!(x_{n+1})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\,.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \mathbf{D}\,(\!(x_n)\!) \mid (\!(y_n)\!)\rangle &= \langle (\!(x_{n-1})\!) \mid (\!(y_n)\!)\rangle && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{D}\\
&= \sum_n \boldsymbol{x}_{n-1}\,\boldsymbol{y}_n^*\\
&= \sum_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\,\boldsymbol{y}_{n+1}^*\\
&= \langle (\!(x_n)\!) \mid (\!(y_{n+1})\!)\rangle\\
&= \left\langle (\!(x_n)\!) \mid \underbrace{\mathbf{D}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{D}^*}(\!(y_n)\!)\right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{D}^{-1}$. This implies that $\mathbf{D}\mathbf{D}^* = \mathbf{D}^*\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{I}$ which implies that $\mathbf{D}$ is unitary. ✏

Example D.9 (Fourier transform). Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the *Fourier Transform* and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ the *inverse Fourier Transform* operator (Theorem J.1 page 252)

$$[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}](f) \triangleq \int_t \mathsf{x}(t)\underbrace{e^{-i2\pi ft}}_{\kappa(t,f)}\,\mathrm{d}t \qquad \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}\right](t) \triangleq \int_f \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(f)\underbrace{e^{i2\pi ft}}_{\kappa^*(t,f)}\,\mathrm{d}f\,.$$

EX $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ (the Fourier Transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary)

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x} \mid \tilde{\mathsf{y}} \right\rangle &= \left\langle \int_t \mathsf{x}(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}t \mid \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f) \right\rangle \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \left\langle e^{-i2\pi ft} \mid \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f) \right\rangle \,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \int_f e^{-i2\pi ft}\tilde{\mathsf{y}}^*(f)\,\mathrm{d}f\,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_t \mathsf{x}(t) \left[\int_f e^{i2\pi ft}\tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f)\,\mathrm{d}f\right]^* \mathrm{d}t \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(t) \mid \int_f \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\,\mathrm{d}f \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x} \mid \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*}\tilde{\mathsf{y}} \right\rangle
\end{aligned}$$

This implies that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary ($\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$). ✏

Example D.10 (Rotation matrix). [48] Let the rotation matrix $\mathbf{R}_\theta : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be defined as

$$\mathbf{R}_\theta \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

EX

1. ${\mathbf{R}^{-1}}_\theta = \mathbf{R}_{-\theta}$
2. ${\mathbf{R}^*}_\theta = {\mathbf{R}^{-1}}_\theta$ (**R** is unitary)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{R}^* &= \mathbf{R}^H \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}^H && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix} && \text{by definition of Hermetian transpose operator } H \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(-\theta) & -\sin(-\theta) \\ \sin(-\theta) & \cos(-\theta) \end{bmatrix} && \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215} \\
&= \mathbf{R}_{-\theta} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} \\
&= \mathbf{R}^{-1} && \text{by 1.}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[48] Noble and Daniel (1988), page 311

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX E

CALCULUS

Definition E.1. *Let $\mathbb{R}$ be the set of real numbers, $\mathscr{B}$ the set of* BOREL SETS *on $\mathbb{R}$, and μ the standard* BOREL MEASURE *on $\mathscr{B}$. Let $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ be as in Definition 1.1 page 1.*

DEF

*The **space of Lebesgue square-integrable functions** $L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$ (or $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$) is defined as*

$$L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \triangleq L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)} \triangleq \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \middle| \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}} |\mathsf{f}|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathrm{d}\mu < \infty \right\}.$$

*The **standard inner product** $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$ on $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is defined as*

$$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{g}(x) \rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}^*(x)\, \mathrm{d}x.$$

*The **standard norm** $\|\cdot\|$ on $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is defined as $\|\mathsf{f}(x)\| \triangleq \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x) \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$*

Definition E.2. *Let $\mathsf{f}(x)$ be a* FUNCTION *in $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.*

DEF

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}'(x) \triangleq \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{\mathsf{f}(x+\varepsilon) - \mathsf{f}(x)}{\varepsilon}$$

Proposition E.1.

PRP

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} (1). & \mathsf{f}(x) \textit{ is } \text{CONTINUOUS} \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & \underbrace{\mathsf{f}(a+x) = \mathsf{f}(a-x)}_{\text{SYMMETRIC } \textit{about a point a}} \end{array} \right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{lrcll} (1). & \mathsf{f}'(a+x) & = & -\mathsf{f}'(a-x) & (\text{ANTI-SYMMETRIC } \textit{about a}) \\ (2). & \mathsf{f}'(a) & = & 0 & \end{array} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{f}'(a+x) &= \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}[\mathsf{f}(a+x+\varepsilon) - \mathsf{f}(a+x-\varepsilon)] \\ &= \lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}[\mathsf{f}(a-x-\varepsilon) - \mathsf{f}(a-x+\varepsilon)] && \text{by hpothesis (2)} \\ &= -\lim_{\varepsilon \to 0} \frac{1}{\varepsilon}[\mathsf{f}(a-x+\varepsilon) - \mathsf{f}(a-x-\varepsilon)] \\ &= -\mathsf{f}(a-x) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{f}'(a) &= \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{f}'(a+0) + \frac{1}{2}\mathsf{f}'(a-0) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[\mathsf{f}'(a+0) - \mathsf{f}'(a+0)\right] && \text{by previous result} \end{aligned}$$

$$= 0$$

✏

Lemma E.1.

LEM $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *is* INVERTIBLE $\Longrightarrow \left\{ \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}y}\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y) = \frac{1}{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{f}\left[\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)\right]} \right\}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}y}\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y) &\triangleq \lim_{\varepsilon\to 0}\frac{\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y+\varepsilon)-\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)}{\varepsilon} && \text{by definition of } \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}y} && \text{(Definition E.2 page 183)}\\
&= \lim_{\delta\to 0}\frac{1}{\left[\frac{\mathsf{f}(x+\delta)-\mathsf{f}(x)}{\delta}\right]}\Bigg|_{x\triangleq\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)} && \text{because in the limit, } \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \left(\frac{\Delta x}{\Delta y}\right)^{-1} \\
&\triangleq \frac{1}{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{f}(x)}\Bigg|_{x\triangleq\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)} && \text{by definition of } \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x} && \text{(Definition E.2 page 183)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{f}\left[\mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)\right]} && \text{because } x \triangleq \mathsf{f}^{-1}(y)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem E.1. [1] *Let* f *be a continuous function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}$ *the* n*th derivative of* f.

THM $\displaystyle\int_{[0:1)^n}\mathsf{f}^{(n)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n}x_k\right)\mathsf{d}x_1\,\mathsf{d}x_2\cdots\,\mathsf{d}x_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^{n-k}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k) \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{N}$

✎PROOF: Proof by induction:

1. Base case …proof for $n = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{[0:1)}\mathsf{f}^{(1)}(x)\,\mathsf{d}x &= \mathsf{f}(1)-\mathsf{f}(0) && \text{by } \textit{Fundamental theorem of calculus}\\
&= (-1)^{1+1}\binom{1}{1}\mathsf{f}(1)+(-1)^{1+0}\binom{1}{0}\mathsf{f}(0)\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^{n-k}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k)
\end{aligned}$$

[1] Chui (1992) page 86 ⟨item (ii)⟩, Prasad and Iyengar (1997) pages 145–146 ⟨Theorem 6.2 (b)⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Induction step …proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\int_{[0:1)^{n+1}} \mathsf{f}^{(n+1)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} x_k\right) \mathrm{d}x_1\ \mathrm{d}x_2 \cdots\ \mathrm{d}x_{n+1}$$

$$= \int_{[0:1)^{n}} \left[\int_0^1 \mathsf{f}^{(n+1)}\left(x_{n+1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k\right) \mathrm{d}x_{n+1}\right] \mathrm{d}x_1\ \mathrm{d}x_2 \cdots\ \mathrm{d}x_n$$

$$= \int_{[0:1)^{n}} \left[\mathsf{f}^{(n)}\left(x_{n+1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k\right)\Bigg|_{x_{n+1}=0}^{x_{n+1}=1}\right] \mathrm{d}x_1\ \mathrm{d}x_2 \cdots\ \mathrm{d}x_n \qquad \text{by } \textit{Fundamental theorem of calculus}$$

$$= \int_{[0:1)^{n}} \left[\mathsf{f}^{(n)}\left(1 + \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k\right) - \mathsf{f}^{(n)}\left(0 + \sum_{k=1}^{n} x_k\right)\right] \mathrm{d}x_1\ \mathrm{d}x_2 \cdots\ \mathrm{d}x_n$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^{n-k}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k+1) - \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^{n-k}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k) \qquad \text{by induction hypothesis}$$

$$= \sum_{m=1}^{m=n+1}(-1)^{n-m+1}\binom{n}{m-1}\mathsf{f}(m) + \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)(-1)^{n-k}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k) \qquad \text{where } m \triangleq k+1 \implies k = m-1$$

$$= \left[\mathsf{f}(n+1) + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n}{k-1}\mathsf{f}(k)\right] + \left[(-1)^{n+1}\mathsf{f}(0) + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}(k)\right]$$

$$= \mathsf{f}(n+1) + (-1)^{n+1}\mathsf{f}(0) + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{n-k+1}\underbrace{\left[\binom{n}{k-1} + \binom{n}{k}\right]}_{\text{use } \textit{Stifel formula}}\mathsf{f}(k)$$

$$= (-1)^0\binom{n+1}{n+1}\mathsf{f}(n+1) + (-1)^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{0}\mathsf{f}(0) + \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{f}(k) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Stifel formula}$$

(Theorem B.1 page 133)

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n+1}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{f}(k)$$

✏

Some proofs invoke differentiation multiple times. This is simplified thanks to the *Leibniz rule*, also called the *generalized product rule* (*GPR*, next lemma). The Leibniz rule is remarkably similar in form to the *binomial theorem*.

Lemma E.2 (Leibniz rule / generalized product rule). [2] *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x), \mathsf{g}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *with derivatives* $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}(x) \triangleq \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}\mathsf{f}(x)$ *and* $\mathsf{g}^{(n)}(x) \triangleq \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}\mathsf{g}(x)$ *for* $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, *and* $\binom{n}{k} \triangleq \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!}$ *(binomial coefficient). Then*

LEM
$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}x^n}[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)] = \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\mathsf{f}^{(k)}(x)\mathsf{g}^{(n-k)}(x)$$

Example E.1.

EX
$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^3}{\mathrm{d}x^3}\left[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)\right] = \mathsf{f}'''(x)\mathsf{g}(x) + 3\mathsf{f}''(x)\mathsf{g}'(x) + 3\mathsf{f}'(x)\mathsf{g}''(x) + \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}'''(x)$$

Theorem E.2 (Leibniz integration rule). [3]

THM
$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\int_{\mathsf{a}(x)}^{\mathsf{b}(x)} \mathsf{g}(t)\ \mathrm{d}t = \mathsf{g}[\mathsf{b}(x)]\mathsf{b}'(x) - \mathsf{g}[\mathsf{a}(x)]\mathsf{a}'(x)$$

[2] Ben-Israel and Gilbert (2002) page 154, Leibniz (1710)

[3] Flanders (1973) page 615 ⟨(1.1)⟩ Talvila (2001), Knapp (2005b) page 389 ⟨Chapter VII⟩, ? page 422 ⟨Leibniz Rule. Theorem 1.⟩, http://planetmath.org/encyclopedia/DifferentiationUnderIntegralSign.html

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX F

FINITE SUMS

❝ *I think that it was Harald Bohr who remarked to me that "all analysts spend half their time hunting through the literature for inequalities which they want to use and cannot prove."* ❞

G.H. Hardy (1877–1947) in his "Presidential Address" to the London Mathematical Society on November 8, 1928, about a remark that he suggested was from Harald Bohr (1887–1951), Danish mathematician pictured to the left. [1]

F.1 Summation

Definition F.1. [2] *Let $+$ be an addition operator on a tuple $(\!| x_n |\!)_m^N$.*

DEF

*The **summation** of $(\!| x_n |\!)$ from index m to index N with respect to $+$ is*

$$\sum_{n=m}^{N} x_n \triangleq \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } N < m \\ \left(\sum_{n=m}^{N-1} x_n\right) + x_N & \text{for } N \geq m \end{cases}$$

Theorem F.1 (Generalized associative property)**.** [3] *Let $+$ be an addition operator on a tuple $(\!| x_n |\!)_m^N$.*

THM

$+$ *is* ASSOCIATIVE $\Longrightarrow$

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \left(\sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n + \sum_{n=M+1}^{N} x_n\right) = \left(\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n\right) + \sum_{n=M+1}^{N} x_n}_{\sum_{n=m}^{N} \text{ is ASSOCIATIVE}} \qquad \text{for } m < L < M \leq N$$

✎PROOF:

---

[1] quote: Hardy (1929), page 64
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/PictDisplay/Bohr_Harald.html

[2] reference: Berberian (1961) page 8 ⟨Definition I.3.1⟩
"$\sum$" notation: Fourier (1820) page 280

[3] Berberian (1961) pages 9–10 ⟨Theorem I.3.1⟩

1. Proof for $N < m$ case: $\sum_{n=m}^{N} x_n = 0$.

2. Proof for $N = m$ case: $\sum_{n=m}^{m} x_n = \left(\sum_{n=m}^{m-1} x_n\right) + x_m = 0 + x_m = x_m$.

3. Proof for $N = m+1$ case: $\sum_{n=m}^{m+1} x_n = \left(\sum_{n=m}^{m} x_n\right) + x_{m+1} = x_m + x_{m+1}$

4. Proof for $N = m+2$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=m}^{m+2} x_n &= \left(\sum_{n=m}^{m+1} x_n\right) + x_{m+2} && \text{by Definition F.1 page 187}\\
&= \left(x_m + x_{m+1}\right) + x_{m+2} && \text{by item (3)}\\
&= x_m + \left(x_{m+1} + x_{m+2}\right) && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that N case $\implies$ $N+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=m}^{N+1} x_n &= \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=m}^{N} x_n\right)}_{associative} + x_{N+1} && \text{by Definition F.1 page 187}\\
&= \left(\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \left(\sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n + \sum_{n=M+1}^{N} x_n\right)\right) + x_{N+1}\\
&= \left(\left(\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n\right) + \sum_{n=M+1}^{N} x_n\right) + x_{N+1}\\
&= \left(\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n\right) + \left(\sum_{n=M+1}^{N} x_n + x_{N+1}\right)\\
&= \left(\sum_{n=m}^{L} x_n + \sum_{n=L+1}^{M} x_n\right) + \left(\sum_{n=M+1}^{N+1} x_n\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

F.2 Means

F.2.1 Weighted ϕ-means

Definition F.2. [4]

DEF

The $(\!|\lambda_n|\!)_1^N$ *weighted* ϕ-***mean*** *of a tuple* $(\!|x_n|\!)_1^N$ *is defined as*

$$\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) \triangleq \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \phi(x_n)\right)$$

where ϕ *is a* CONTINUOUS *and* STRICTLY MONOTONIC *function in* $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}^+}$

and $(\!|\lambda_n|\!)_{n=1}^N$ *is a sequence of weights for which* $\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n = 1$.

Lemma F.1. [5] *Let* $\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big)$ *be the* $(\!|\lambda_n|\!)_1^N$ *weighted* ϕ*-mean of a tuple* $(\!|x_n|\!)_1^N$.

LEM

$\phi\psi^{-1}$ *is* CONVEX	*and*	ϕ *is* INCREASING	$\Longrightarrow$	$\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) \geq \mathsf{M}_\psi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big)$
$\phi\psi^{-1}$ *is* CONVEX	*and*	ϕ *is* DECREASING	$\Longrightarrow$	$\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) \leq \mathsf{M}_\psi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big)$
$\phi\psi^{-1}$ *is* CONCAVE	*and*	ϕ *is* INCREASING	$\Longrightarrow$	$\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) \leq \mathsf{M}_\psi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big)$
$\phi\psi^{-1}$ *is* CONCAVE	*and*	ϕ *is* DECREASING	$\Longrightarrow$	$\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) \geq \mathsf{M}_\psi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big)$

✎PROOF:

1. Case where $\phi\psi^{-1}$ is *convex* and ϕ is *increasing*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) &\triangleq \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \phi(x_n)\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \text{ (Definition F.2 page 189)}\\
&= \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \phi\psi^{-1}\psi(x_n)\right) && \text{by definition of } \psi^{-1}\\
&\geq \phi^{-1}\left(\phi\psi^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \psi(x_n)\right) && \text{by } \textit{Jensen's Inequality}\\
&= \left(\psi^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \psi(x_n)\right) && \text{by definition of } \psi^{-1}\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{M}_\psi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\psi \text{ (Definition F.2 page 189)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Case where $\phi\psi^{-1}$ is *convex* and ϕ is *decreasing*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!|x_n|\!)\big) &\triangleq \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \phi(x_n)\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \text{ (Definition F.2 page 189)}\\
&= \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \phi\psi^{-1}\psi(x_n)\right) && \text{by definition of } \psi^{-1}\\
&\leq \phi^{-1}\left(\phi\psi^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \psi(x_n)\right) && \text{by } \textit{Jensen's Inequality} \text{ and because } \phi^{-1} \text{ is } \textit{decreasing}
\end{aligned}$$

[4] Bollobás (1999) page 5

[5] Pečarić et al. (1992) page 107, Bollobás (1999) page 5, Hardy et al. (1952) page 75

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \left(\psi^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\psi(x_n)\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \psi^{-1}$$

$$\triangleq \mathsf{M}_\psi(\langle x_n\rangle) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\psi \text{ (Definition F.2 page 189)}$$

✏

One of the most well known inequalities in mathematics is *Minkowski's Inequality* (1910, Theorem F.5 page 196). In 1946, H.P. Mulholland submitted a result[6] that generalizes Minkowski's Inequality to an equal weighted ϕ-mean. And Milovanović and Milovanovć (1979) generalized this even further to a *weighted* ϕ-mean (Theorem F.2, next).

Theorem F.2. [7]

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \phi \text{ is CONVEX} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \phi \text{ is STRICTLY MONOTONIC} \quad \text{and} \\ 3. & \phi(0)=0 \quad \text{and} \\ 4. & \log\circ\phi\circ\exp \text{ is CONVEX} \end{array}\right\} \implies$$

$$\phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\phi(x_n+y_n)\right) \le \phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\phi(x_n)\right)+\phi^{-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\phi(y_n)\right)$$

F.2.2 Power means

Definition F.3. [8] *Let* $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle)$ *be the* $\langle\lambda_n\rangle_1^N$ *weighted* ϕ*-mean of a* NON-NEGATIVE *tuple* $\langle x_n\rangle_1^N$ *(Definition F.2 page 189).*

DEF

A mean $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle)$ *is a* ***power mean*** *with parameter* r *if* $\phi(x)\triangleq x^r$. *That is,*

$$\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle) = \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n(x_n)^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}}$$

Theorem F.3. [9] *Let* $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle)$ *be* POWER MEAN *with parameter* r *of an* N*-tuple* $\langle x_n\rangle_1^N$. *Let* $\mathbb{R}^*$ *be the set of extended real numbers* $\left(\mathbb{R}^*\triangleq\mathbb{R}\cup\{-\infty,\infty\}\right)$.[10]

THM

$$\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle) \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n(x_n)^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} \text{ is CONTINUOUS and STRICTLY INCREASING in } \mathbb{R}^*.$$

$$\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}(\langle x_n\rangle) = \begin{cases} \min\limits_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\langle x_n\rangle & \text{for } r=-\infty \\ \prod\limits_{n=1}^{N}x_n^{\lambda_n} & \text{for } r=0 \\ \max\limits_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\langle x_n\rangle & \text{for } r=+\infty \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

[6] Mulholland (1950)
[7] Milovanović and Milovanović (1979), Bullen (2003) page 306 ⟨Theorem 9⟩
[8] Bullen (2003) page 175, Bollobás (1999) page 6
[9] Bullen (2003) pages 175–177 ⟨see also page 203⟩, Bollobás (1999) pages 6–8, Besso (1879), Bienaymé (1840) page 68
[10] Rana (2002) pages 385–388 ⟨Appendix A⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that $M_{\phi(x;r)}$ is *strictly increasing* in r:

   (a) Let r and s be such that $-\infty < r < s < \infty$.

   (b) Let $\phi_r \triangleq x^r$ and $\phi_s \triangleq x^s$. Then $\phi_r\phi_s^{-1} = x^{\frac{r}{s}}$.

   (c) The composite function $\phi_r\phi_s^{-1}$ is *convex* or *concave* depending on the values of r and s:

	$r < 0$ (ϕ_r decreasing)	$r > 0$ (ϕ_r increasing)
$s < 0$	*convex*	(not possible)
$s > 0$	*convex*	*concave*

   (d) Therefore by Lemma F.1 (page 189),
$$-\infty < r < s < \infty \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big) < \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;s)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big).$$

2. Proof that $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}$ is continuous in r for $r \in \mathbb{R}\backslash 0$: The sum of continuous functions is continuous. For the cases of $r \in \{-\infty, 0, \infty\}$, see the items that follow.

3. Lemma: $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;-r)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big) = \big\{\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n^{-1} \rrparenthesis\big)\big\}^{-1}$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\big\{\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n^{-1} \rrparenthesis\big)\big\}^{-1} &= \left\{\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \big(x_n^{-1}\big)^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}}\right\}^{-1} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \\
&= \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \big(x_n\big)^{-r}\right)^{\frac{1}{-r}} \\
&= \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;-r)}\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\lim\limits_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big) = \max\limits_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis$:

   (a) Let $x_m \triangleq \max\limits_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis$

   (b) Note that $\lim\limits_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi \le \max\limits_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis$ because

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big(\llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis\big) &= \lim_{r\to\infty} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \\
&\le \lim_{r\to\infty} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_m^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} && \text{by definition of } x_m \text{ in item (4a) and because} \\
& && \phi(x) \triangleq x^r \text{ and } \phi^{-1} \text{ are both increasing or both} \\
& && \text{decreasing} \\
&= \lim_{r\to\infty} \left(x_m^r \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n}_{1}\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} && \text{because } x_m \text{ is a constant} \\
&= \lim_{r\to\infty} \big(x_m^r \cdot 1\big)^{\frac{1}{r}} \\
&= x_m \\
&= \max_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \llparenthesis x_n \rrparenthesis && \text{by definition of } x_m \text{ in item (4a)}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

(c) But also note that $\lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi \geq \max_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!)$ because

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) &= \lim_{r\to\infty} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \\
&\geq \lim_{r\to\infty} \left(w_m x_m^r\right)^{\frac{1}{r}} && \text{by definition of } x_m \text{ in item (4a) and because } \phi(x) \triangleq x^r \text{ and } \phi^{-1} \text{ are both increasing or both decreasing} \\
&= \lim_{r\to\infty} w_m^{\frac{1}{r}} x_m^{\frac{r}{r}} \\
&= x_m \\
&= \max_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!) && \text{by definition of } x_m \text{ in item (4a)}
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Combining items (b) and (c) we have $\lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi = \max_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!)$.

5. Proof that $\lim_{r\to-\infty} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) = \min_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{r\to-\infty} \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) &= \lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;-r)}\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) && \text{by change of variable } r \\
&= \lim_{r\to\infty} \left\{\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big((\!| x_n^{-1} |\!)\big)\right\}^{-1} && \text{by Lemma in item (3) page 191} \\
&= \lim_{r\to\infty} \frac{1}{\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big((\!| x_n^{-1} |\!)\big)} \\
&= \frac{\lim_{r\to\infty} 1}{\lim_{r\to\infty} \mathsf{M}_{\phi(x;r)}\big((\!| x_n^{-1} |\!)\big)} && \text{by property of lim [11]} \\
&= \frac{1}{\max_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n^{-1} |\!)} && \text{by item (4)} \\
&= \frac{1}{\left(\min_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!)\right)^{-1}} \\
&= \min_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (\!| x_n |\!)
\end{aligned}$$

6. Proof that $\lim_{r\to 0} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) = \prod_{n=1}^{N} x_n^{\lambda_n}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{r\to 0} \mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big) &= \lim_{r\to 0} \exp\left\{\ln\left\{\mathsf{M}_\phi\big((\!| x_n |\!)\big)\right\}\right\} \\
&= \lim_{r\to 0} \exp\left\{\ln\left\{\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \left(x_n^r\right)\right)^{\frac{1}{r}}\right\}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_\phi \\
&= \exp\left\{\frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial r} \ln\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \left(x_n^r\right)\right)}{\frac{\partial}{\partial r} r}\right\}_{r=0} && \text{by l'Hôpital's rule[12]}
\end{aligned}$$

[11] Rudin (1976) page 85 ⟨4.4 Theorem⟩

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$$= \exp\left\{\frac{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(x_n^r\right)}{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\left(x_n^r\right)}\right\}_{r=0}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\frac{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\exp\left(\ln\left(x_n^r\right)\right)}{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n}\right\}_{r=0}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\frac{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\exp\left(r\ln\left(x_n\right)\right)}{1}\right\}_{r=0}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\frac{\partial}{\partial r}\exp\left(r\ln\left(x_n\right)\right)\right\}_{r=0}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\exp\left\{r\ln x_n\right\}\ln\left(x_n\right)\right\}_{r=0}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n\ln\left(x_n\right)\right\}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N}\ln\left(x_n^{\lambda_n}\right)\right\}$$

$$= \exp\left\{\ln\prod_{n=1}^{N}x_n^{\lambda_n}\right\}$$

$$= \prod_{n=1}^{N}x_n^{\lambda_n}$$

✍

Definition F.4. *Let* $(\!|x_n|\!)_1^N$ *be a tuple. Let* $(\!|\lambda_n|\!)_1^N$ *be a tuple of weighting values such that* $\sum_{n=1}^{N}\lambda_n = 1$.

[12] Rudin (1976) page 109 ⟨5.13 Theorem⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

DEF

*The **harmonic mean** of* $(\!| x_n |\!)$ *is defined as* $\mu_h \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \frac{1}{x_n}\right)^{-1}$

*The **geometric mean** of* $(\!| x_n |\!)$ *is defined as* $\mu_g \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n^{\lambda_n}$

*The **arithmetic mean** of* $(\!| x_n |\!)$ *is defined as* $\mu_a \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n$

*The **average** of* $(\!| x_n |\!)$ *is defined as* $\mu_a \triangleq \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n$

Corollary F.1. [13] *Let* $(\!| x_n |\!)_1^N$ *be a tuple. Let* $(\!| \lambda_n |\!)_1^N$ *be a tuple of weighting values such that* $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n = 1$.

COR

$$\min (\!| x_n |\!) \le \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \frac{1}{x_n}\right)^{-1}}_{\text{harmonic mean}} \le \underbrace{\prod_{n=1}^{N} x_n^{\lambda_n}}_{\text{geometric mean}} \le \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n}_{\text{arithmetic mean}} \le \max (\!| x_n |\!)$$

✎PROOF:

1. These five means are all special cases of the *power mean* $\mathsf{M}_{\phi(x:r)}$ (Definition F.3 page 190):
   $r = \infty$: $\max (\!| x_n |\!)$
   $r = 1$: arithmetic mean
   $r = 0$: geometric mean
   $r = -1$: harmonic mean
   $r = -\infty$: $\min (\!| x_n |\!)$
2. The inequalities follow directly from Theorem F.3 (page 190).
3. Generalized AM-GM inequality: If one is only concerned with the arithmetic mean and geometric mean, their relationship can be established directly using *Jensen's Inequality*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n &= b^{\log_b\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n x_n\right)} \\
&\ge b^{\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \log_b x_n\right)} && \text{by } \textit{Jensen's Inequality} \\
&= \prod_{n=1}^{N} b^{(\lambda_n \log_b x_n)} \\
&= \prod_{n=1}^{N} b^{(\log_b x_n)\lambda_n} \\
&= \prod_{n=1}^{N} x_n^{\lambda_n}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[13] Bullen (2003) page 71, Bollobás (1999) page 5, Cauchy (1821) pages 457–459 ⟨Note II, theorem 17⟩, Jensen (1906) page 183

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Lemma F.2 (Young's Inequality). [14]

LEM

$$xy < \frac{x^p}{p} + \frac{y^q}{q} \quad \text{with } \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1 \quad \forall 1 < p < \infty,\ x, y \geq 0, \quad \text{but } y \neq x^{p-1}$$

$$xy = \frac{x^p}{p} + \frac{y^q}{q} \quad \text{with } \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1 \quad \forall 1 < p < \infty,\ x, y \geq 0, \quad \text{and } y = x^{p-1}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\frac{1}{p-1} = q - 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1 &\iff \frac{q}{q} + \frac{q}{p} = q \\
&\iff q\left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right) = 1 \\
&\iff q = \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{p}} \\
&\iff q = \frac{p}{p-1} \\
&\iff q - 1 = \frac{p}{p-1} - \frac{p-1}{p-1} \\
&\iff q - 1 = \frac{p - (p-1)}{p-1} \\
&\iff q - 1 = \frac{1}{p-1}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $v = u^{p-1} \iff u = v^{q-1}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
u &= v^{\frac{1}{p-1}} && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= v^{q-1} && \text{by item (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $v = u^{p-1}$ is monotonically increasing in u and $u = v^{q-1}$ is monotonically increasing in v:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}v}{\mathrm{d}u} &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}u} u^{p-1} \\
&= (p-1)u^{p-2} \\
&> 0 \\
\frac{\mathrm{d}u}{\mathrm{d}v} &= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}v} v^{q-1} \\
&= (q-1)v^{q-2} \\
&> 0
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $xy \leq \frac{x^p}{p} + \frac{y^q}{q}$:

[14] Carothers (2000), page 43, Tolsted (1964), page 5, Maligranda (1995), page 257, Hardy et al. (1952) ⟨Theorem 24⟩, Young (1912) page 226

CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
xy &\le \int_0^x u^{p-1}\,\mathrm{d}u + \int_0^y v^{q-1}\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= \frac{u^p}{p}\bigg|_0^x + \frac{v^q}{q}\bigg|_0^y \\
&= \frac{x^p}{p} + \frac{y^q}{q}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem F.4 (Hölder's Inequality). [15] *Let* $(\!| x_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *and* $(\!| y_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *be complex* N*-tuples.*

THM

$$
\underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^N |x_n y_n|}_{\|\boldsymbol{x}\cdot\boldsymbol{y}\|_1} \le \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=1}^N |x_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}}_{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|_p}\underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=1}^N |y_n|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}}_{\|\boldsymbol{y}\|_q} \qquad \textit{with} \qquad \frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1 \qquad \forall\, 1<p<\infty
$$

✎PROOF: Let $\|x_n\|_p \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=1}^N |x_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^N |x_n y_n| &= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{|x_n y_n|}{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q} \\
&= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{|x_n|}{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p}\frac{|y_n|}{\|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q} \\
&\le \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \sum_{n=1}^N \left(\frac{1}{p}\frac{|x_n|^p}{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p^p} + \frac{1}{q}\frac{|y_n|^q}{\|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q^q}\right) && \text{by } \textit{Young's Inequality} \text{ (Lemma F.2 page 195)} \\
&= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \left(\frac{1}{p}\cdot\frac{\sum |x_n|^p}{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p^p} + \frac{1}{q}\cdot\frac{\sum |y_n|^q}{\|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q^q}\right) \\
&= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \left(\frac{1}{p}\frac{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p^p}{\|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p^p} + \frac{1}{q}\frac{\|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q^q}{\|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q^q}\right) && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \\
&= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}\right)}_{1} \\
&= \|(\!| x_n |\!)\|_p \, \|(\!| y_n |\!)\|_q && \text{by } \frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1 \text{ constraint}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem F.5 (Minkowski's Inequality for sequences). [16] *Let* $(\!| x_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *and* $(\!| y_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *be complex* N*-tuples.*

[15] Bullen (2003) page 178 ⟨2.1⟩, Carothers (2000), page 44, Tolsted (1964), page 6, Maligranda (1995), page 257, Hardy et al. (1952) ⟨Theorem 11⟩, Hölder (1889)

[16] Bullen (2003) page 179, Carothers (2000), page 44, Tolsted (1964), page 7, Maligranda (1995), page 258, Hardy et al. (1952) ⟨Theorem 24⟩, Minkowski (1910) page 115

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

THM

$$\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n+y_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \le \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} + \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|y_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \qquad \forall\ 1<p<\infty$$

✎PROOF:

1. Define q in terms of p such that $\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1$
2. Proof that $\frac{1}{q}=\frac{p-1}{p}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1 &\iff \frac{1}{q}=1-\frac{1}{p}\\ &\iff \frac{1}{q}=\frac{p-1}{p}\end{aligned}$$

3. Define $\|\cdot\|$ as follows:

$$\|\boldsymbol{x}\|_p \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

4. Proof that $\|x_n+y_n\|_p \le \|x_n\|_p + \|y_n\|_p$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|x_n+y_n\|_p^p &= \sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n+y_n|^p && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|_p\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n+y_n||x_n+y_n|^{p-1} && \text{by homogeneous property of } |\cdot|\\
&\le \sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n||x_n+y_n|^{p-1} + \sum_{n=1}^{N}|y_n||x_n+y_n|^{p-1} && \text{by subadditive property of } |\cdot|\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N}|x_n(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}| + \sum_{n=1}^{N}|y_n(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}| && \text{by homogeneous property of } |\cdot|\\
&\le \|x_n\|_p\,\|(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}\|_q + \|y_n\|_p\,\|(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}\|_q && \text{by Hölder's Inequality page 196}\\
&= \left(\|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p\right)\|(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}\|_q\\
&= \left(\|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p\right)\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|_p\\
&= \left(\|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p\right)\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|(x_n+y_n)^{p-1}|^{\frac{p}{p-1}}\right)^{\frac{p-1}{p}} && \text{by item (2)}\\
&= \left(\|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p\right)\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}|(x_n+y_n)|^{p}\right)^{\frac{p-1}{p}}\\
&= \left(\|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p\right)\|x_n+y_n\|^{p-1}\\
&\implies \|x_n+y_n\|_p \le \|x_n\|_p+\|y_n\|_p
\end{aligned}$$

✎

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

❝Cauchy is the only one occupied with pure mathematics: Poisson, Fourier, Ampere, etc., busy themselves exclusively with magnetism and other physical subjects.❞
in an 1826 letter written by Niels Henrik Abel [17]

Theorem F.6 (Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality). [18] *Let* $(\!| x_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *and* $(\!| y_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)_1^N$ *be complex* N*-tuples.*

THM

$$\left|\sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n y_n^*\right|^2 \leq \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} |x_n|^2\right)\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} |y_n|^2\right) \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in \boldsymbol{X}$$

$$\left|\sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n y_n^*\right|^2 = \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} |x_n|^2\right)\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} |y_n|^2\right) \iff \exists a \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{such that} \quad \boldsymbol{y} = a\boldsymbol{x} \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x},\boldsymbol{y}\in \boldsymbol{X}$$

✎PROOF:

1. The Cauchy-Schwarz inequality for sequences is a special case of the Hölder inequality (Theorem F.4) for $p = q = 2$.
2. Alternatively, the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality for sequences is a special case of the *Cauchy-Schwarz inequality* in inner-product spaces:
   (a) $\langle x_n \mid y_n \rangle \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n y_n$ is an inner-product and $\left((\!| x_n |\!), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ is an inner-product space.
   (b) By the *Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality for inner-product spaces*,
   $$|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle|^2 \leq \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle \ \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle$$
3. Not only does the Hölder inequality imply the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, but somewhat surprisingly, the converse is also true: The Cauchy-Schwarz inequality implies the Hölder inequality.[19]

✏

Proposition F.1. [20]

PRP

$$(x+y)^p \leq 2^p(x^p + y^p) \qquad \forall x, y \geq 0,\ 1 < p < \infty$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}(x+y)^p &\leq (2\max\{x,y\})^p \\ &= 2^p(\max\{x,y\})^p \\ &= 2^p(\max\{x^p, y^p\}) \\ &\leq 2^p(x^p + y^p)\end{aligned}$$

✏

[17] quote: Boyer and Merzbach (2011) page 462
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Augustin-Louis_Cauchy_1901.jpg, public domain
[18] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), page 278, Scharz (1885), Bouniakowsky (1859), Hardy et al. (1952) page 25 ⟨Theorem 11⟩, Cauchy (1821) page 455 ⟨???⟩
[19] Bullen (2003) pages 183–185 ⟨Theorem 5⟩
[20] Carothers (2000), page 43

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

F.3 Power Sums

Theorem F.7 (Geometric Series). [21]

THM
$$\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k = \frac{1-r^n}{1-r} \qquad \forall r \in \mathbb{C}\backslash 0$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k &= \left(\frac{1}{1-r}\right)\left[(1-r)\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k\right] \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{1-r}\right)\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k - r\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k\right] \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{1-r}\right)\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k - \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} r^k - 1 + r^n\right)\right] \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{1-r}\right)\left[1-r^n\right] \\
&= \frac{1-r^n}{1-r}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma F.3. *Let* $\mathsf{f}(t)$ *be a function.*

LEM
$$\mathsf{S}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+n\tau) = \mathsf{S}(x+\tau) \qquad (\mathsf{S}(x) \textit{ is } \textsc{periodic} \textit{ with period } \tau)$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{S}(x+\tau) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+\tau+n\tau) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+(n+1)\tau) \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x+m\tau) && \text{where } m \triangleq n+1 \\
&\triangleq \mathsf{S}(x)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition F.2 (Power Sums). [22]

PRP
$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k &= \frac{n(n+1)}{2} && \forall n\in\mathbb{N} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} && \forall n\in\mathbb{N} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^3 &= \frac{n^2(n+1)^2}{4} && \forall n\in\mathbb{N} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^4 &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)(3n^2+3n-1)}{30} && \forall n\in\mathbb{N}
\end{aligned}$$

[21] Hall and Knight (1894), page 39 ⟨article 55⟩
[22] Amann and Escher (2008) pages 51–57, Menini and Oystaeyen (2004) page 91 ⟨Exercises 5.36–5.39⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} k = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$: (proof by induction)

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{n=1} k &= 1 \\
&= \frac{1(1+1)}{2} \\
&= \left.\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right|_{n=1} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} k &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} k\right) + \left(n+1\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right) + \left(n+1\right) && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{n}{2}+1\right) \\
&= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{n+2}{2}\right) \\
&= \frac{(n+1)(n+2)}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$: (proof by induction)

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{n=1} k^2 &= 1 \\
&= \frac{1(1+1)(2+1)}{6} \\
&= \left.\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right|_{n=1} \\
\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} k^2 &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} k^2\right) + \left(n+1\right)^2 \\
&= \left(\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right) + \left(n+1\right)^2 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{n(2n+1)+6(n+1)}{6}\right) \\
&= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{2n^2+7n+6}{6}\right) \\
&= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{(n+2)(2n+3)}{6}\right) \\
&= \frac{(n+1)[(n+1)+1][2(n+1)+1]}{6}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX G

INFINITE SUMS

❝*The divergent series are the invention of the devil, and it is a shame to base on them any demonstration whatsoever. By using them, one may draw any conclusion he pleases and that is why these series have produced so many fallacies and so many paradoxes...*❞

Niels Henrik Abel, in a January 16, 1826 letter to Holmboé [1]

❝*The series is divergent; therefore we may be able to do something with it.*❞
Oliver Heaviside (1850–1925) [2]

❝*Some modern appraisals of the cavalier style of 18th-century mathematicians in handling infinite series conveys the impression that these poor men set their brains aside when confronted by them.*❞

Ivor Grattan-Guinness (1990)[3]

G.1 Convergence

An infinite summation $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n$ is meaningless outside some topological space (e.g. metric space, normed space, etc.). The sum $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{x}_n$ is an abbreviation for $\lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{N} \boldsymbol{x}_n$ (next definition); and the concept of *limit* is also itself meaningless outside of a *topological space*.

[1] quote: Kline (1972) page 973 ⟨Chapter 47⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Niels_Henrik_Abel.jpg, public domain
[2] quote: Kline (1972) page 1096 ⟨Chapter 47⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Oliver_Heaviside2.jpg, public domain
[3] Grattan-Guinness (1990) page 163

Definition G.1. [4] *Let $(X,\boldsymbol{T})$ be a topological space and* lim *be the limit generated by the topology $\boldsymbol{T}$.*

DEF

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\left(\sum_{n=0}^{N} x_n\right)+\left(\lim_{N\to-\infty}\sum_{n=-1}^{N} x_n\right)$$

In general, the order of summation of an infinite series *does* matter.

Definition G.2. [5] *Let P be the set of all* PERMUTATIONS *in $\mathbb{N}^{\mathbb{N}}$.*

DEF

*A series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n$ is **absolutely convergent** if* $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_{\mathsf{p}(n)} \quad \forall \mathsf{p}\in P$

*A series is **conditionally convergent** if it is* CONVERGENT *but not* ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT.

Theorem G.1 (Riemann Series Theorem)**.** [6] *Let $\mathsf{p}(n)$ be a permutation on $\mathbb{N}$. Let $(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be a sequence of real numbers.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \text{ is}\\ \text{CONDITIONALLY CONVERGENT}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{For every } x\in\mathbb{R} \text{ there exists } \mathsf{p}\\ \text{such that } \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{\mathsf{p}(n)} = x\\ \text{or such that } \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{\mathsf{p}(n)} \text{ is DIVERGENT}\end{array}\right\}$$

Theorem G.2. [7]

THM

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |x_n| < \infty \Longrightarrow \left\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \text{ is ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT.}\right\}$$

Example G.1 (Logarithmic Series). [8] Consider the sum $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(n-1)}\frac{1}{n}$. To which value this sum converges, or whether it even converges at all, depends on the order in which the terms are summed. This is demonstrated by the following series:

[4] Klauder (2010) page 4, Kubrusly (2001) page 43, Bachman and Narici (1966) pages 3–4

[5] Kadets and Kadets (1997) page 5 ⟨THEOREM 1.1.1 (RIEMANN'S THEOREM)⟩, BROMWICH (1908), PAGE 64 ⟨IV. ABSOLUTE CONVERGENCE.⟩, SZÁSZ AND BARLAZ (1952), PAGE 2

[6] Kadets and Kadets (1997) page 5 ⟨THEOREM 1.1.1 (RIEMANN'S THEOREM)⟩, BROMWICH (1908), PAGE 68 ⟨ARTICLE 28. RIEMANN'S THEOREM⟩

[7] Kadets and Kadets (1997) page 5 ⟨THEOREM 1.1.1 (RIEMANN'S THEOREM)⟩

[8] Bromwich (1908), pages 51–52 ⟨Article 21 Example 1⟩, Hall and Knight (1894), page 191 ⟨article 223⟩, Jolley (1961) pages 14–15 ⟨item (71)⟩, Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A002939⟩⟨$2n(2n-1)$⟩, Graham et al. (1994) page 99 ⟨n.w. diagonal of *spiral function*⟩, Many many thanks to Po-Ning Chen (Chinese: ???, pinyin: Chén Bó Nǐng) for his consultation regarding this series.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX

If the series is added in the given order, the result is $\ln 2$:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(n-1)}\frac{1}{n} \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(-1)^{(n-1)}\frac{1}{n} = \ln 2$$

But if the order is changed, the sum can be any real value:

Let x be any real value (even an irrational one such as π or $\sqrt{2}$).

$$\text{Let} \quad \mathsf{p}(N) \triangleq \begin{cases} \text{next unused odd value} & \text{if } \sum_{n=1}^{N-1}(-1)^{(\mathsf{p}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(n)} \le x \\ \text{next unused even value} & \text{if } \sum_{n=1}^{N-1}(-1)^{(\mathsf{p}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(n)} > x \end{cases}$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(\mathsf{p}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(n)} \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}(-1)^{(\mathsf{p}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(n)} = x$$

The series can even be summed in such a way that it does not converge at all:

Let $\mathsf{q}(n)$ be a permutation that partitions the natural numbers into odd and even values such that $(\!(x_{\mathsf{q}(n)})\!) = (\!(1,3,5,\ldots,2,4,6,\ldots)\!)$.

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(\mathsf{q}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{q}(n)} = \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2n-1}}_{\infty} - \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2n}}_{\infty} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \text{diverges}$$

PROOF:

1. Proof that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(n-1)}\frac{1}{n} = \ln 2$ using polynomial expansion:[9]

   (a) Lemma: Proof that $\frac{1}{1+x} = \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k + \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}$:

$$\begin{aligned}(1+x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k + \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}\right) &= \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k + \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^{k+1} + x^{2n} \\ &= 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k - \sum_{k=1}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k + x^{2n} \\ &= 1 + x^{2n}\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Lemma: Proof that $\lim_{n\to\infty}\int_0^1 \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}\,\mathrm{d}x = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}0 &< \lim_{n\to\infty}\int_0^1 \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}\,\mathrm{d}x \\ &< \lim_{n\to\infty}\int_0^1 x^{2n}\,\mathrm{d}x \\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left.\frac{x^{2n+1}}{2n+1}\right|_0^1 \\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{1}{2n+1} \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

[9] Bromwich (1908), pages 51–52 ⟨Article 21 Example 1⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

(c) Proof that sum = ln 2:

$$\begin{aligned}
\ln 2 &= \ln 2 - \ln 1 \\
&= \int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{x+1}\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \int_0^1 \left\{ \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1} (-1)^k x^k + \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x} \right\} \mathrm{d}x && \text{by item (1a)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1} (-1)^k \int_0^1 x^k\,\mathrm{d}x + \lim_{n\to\infty} \int_0^1 \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1} (-1)^k \frac{1}{k} + 0 && \text{by item (1b)} \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{2n} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{1}{k} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{1}{n}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n-1)} \frac{1}{n} = \ln 2$ using Taylor expansion:[10]

(a) Lemma: Proof that $\ln(x+1) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n+1)} \frac{1}{n} x^n$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\ln(x+1) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\left[\mathbf{D}^n \ln(x+1)\right](0)}{n!} x^n && \text{by } \textit{Taylor series expansion} \text{ (Theorem C.13 page 153)} \\
&= \frac{\ln(1+0)}{0!} x^0 + \frac{\frac{1}{1+0}}{1!} x^1 - \frac{\frac{1}{(1+0)^2}}{2!} x^2 + \frac{\frac{2}{(1+0)^3}}{3!} x^3 - \frac{\frac{6}{(1+0)^4}}{4!} x^4 + \frac{\frac{24}{(1+0)^5}}{5!} x^5 - \frac{\frac{120}{(1+0)^6}}{6!} x^6 + \cdots \\
&= 0 + x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^4 + \frac{1}{5}x^5 - \frac{1}{6}x^6 + \cdots \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n+1)} \frac{1}{n} x^n
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Proof that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n-1)} \frac{1}{n} = \ln 2$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \underbrace{\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)}_{\frac{1}{2}} + \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{4}\right)}_{\frac{1}{12}} + \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6}\right)}_{\frac{1}{30}} + \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{7} - \frac{1}{8}\right)}_{\frac{1}{56}} + \ldots \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n+1)} \frac{1}{n} x^n \Bigg|_{x=1} \\
&= \ln 2 && \text{by Lemma in item 1} \\
&\approx 0.693147
\end{aligned}$$

10 Hall and Knight (1894), page 191 ⟨article 223⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

3. Proof that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(\mathsf{p}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{p}(n)} = x$: If the partial sum is less than x, positive values are added. If the partial sum is greater than x, negative values are added. The limit is x.

4. Proof that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(\mathsf{q}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{q}(n)} = \infty - \infty$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(\mathsf{q}(n)-1)}\frac{1}{\mathsf{q}(n)} &= \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(2n-1-1)}\frac{1}{2n-1}}_{\text{odd indices}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{(2n-1)}\frac{1}{2n}}_{\text{even indices}}\\ &= \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2n-1}}_{\infty} - \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2n}}_{\infty}\\ &\to \text{(diverges)}\end{aligned}$$

✏

Divergent series could even result in decisions that may be considered extremely irrational, as demonstrated by *St. Petersberg Paradox* (next).

Example G.2 (St. Petersburg Paradox). [11] There is a lottery with a prize pot of \$1. A coin is tossed. If the coin is a tail, the money in the lottery is doubled (\$2, \$4, \$8, \$16, ...). If the coin is a head, you win the money and the game is finished.

How much money would you be willing to play this game? The answer to this question for some people may depend on the expected value of how much money would be won. But the expected value of the amount of money you would win is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\times\$1 + \tfrac{1}{4}\times\$2 + \tfrac{1}{8}\times\$4 + \tfrac{1}{16}\times\$8 + \ldots = \tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{2}+\ldots = \infty$$

Since the expected value of the win is infinity, you should be willing to pay any finite amount of money to play this game (even trillions of dollars). But yet common sense would tell most people that this would be an unwise investment.

G.2 Multiplication

Theorem G.3. [12] *Let* $(\!|x_n|\!)_1^N$ *and* $(\!|y_n|\!)_1^N$ *be sequences over a ring* $(\mathbb{X},+,\times)$.

THM

$$\left(\sum_{n=0}^{p} x_n\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{q} y_m\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{p+q}\underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)} x_k y_{n-k}\right)}_{\textit{Cauchy product}}$$

✎PROOF:

[11] Székely (1986) pages 27–28, Bernoulli (1783) pages 31–32 ⟨§17⟩, de Montmort (1713) page 402 ⟨1713 letter from Nicolas Bernoulli⟩

[12] Apostol (1975) page 204 ⟨Definition 8.45⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

1.

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\sum_{n=0}^{p} x_n\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{q} y_m\right) &= \sum_{n=0}^{p}\sum_{m=0}^{q} x_n y_m z^{n+m} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{p}\sum_{k=n}^{q+n} x_n y_{k-n} \qquad k=n+m \qquad m=k-n \\ &\vdots \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{p+q}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)\end{aligned}$$

2. Perhaps the easiest way to see the relationship is by illustration with a matrix of product terms:

	y_0	y_1	y_2	y_3	$\cdots$	y_q
x_0	x_0y_0	x_0y_1	x_0y_2	x_0y_3	$\cdots$	x_0y_q
x_1	x_1y_0	x_1y_1	x_1y_2	x_1y_3	$\cdots$	x_1y_q
x_2	x_2y_0	x_2y_1	x_2y_2	x_2y_3	$\cdots$	x_2y_q
x_3	x_3y_0	x_3y_1	x_3y_2	x_3y_3	$\cdots$	x_3y_q
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\ddots$	$\vdots$
x_p	x_py_0	x_py_1	x_py_2	x_py_3	$\cdots$	x_py_q

(a) The expression $\sum_{n=0}^{p}\sum_{m=0}^{q} x_n y_m z^{n+m}$ is equivalent to adding *horizontally* from left to right, from the first row to the last.

(b) If we switched the order of summation to $\sum_{m=0}^{q}\sum_{n=0}^{p} x_n y_m z^{n+m}$, then it would be equivalent to adding *vertically* from top to bottom, from the first column to the last.

(c) However the final result expression $\sum_{n=0}^{p+q}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)$ is equivalent to adding *diagonally* starting from the upper left corner and proceding to the lower right.

(d) Upper limit on inner summation: Looking at the x_k terms, we see that there are two constraints on k:

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} k & \le & n \\ k & \le & p \end{array}\right\} \implies k \le \min(n,p)$$

(e) Lower limit on inner summation: Looking at the x_k terms, we see that there are two constraints on k:

$$\left.\begin{array}{rcl} k & \ge & 0 \\ k & \ge & n-q \end{array}\right\} \implies k \ge \max(0,n-q)$$

✏

Corollary G.1. *Let* $(\!| x_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)$ *and* $(\!| y_n \in \mathbb{C} |\!)$.

COR

$$\left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} y_m\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)}_{\textit{Cauchy product}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\sum_{n=0}^{p=\infty} x_n\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{q=\infty} y_m\right) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\sum_{k=\max(0,n-\infty)}^{\min(n,\infty)} x_k y_{n-k}\right) \qquad \text{by Theorem G.3 page 205} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)\right)\end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem G.4. [13] *Let* $X \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n$, $Y \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y_n$, *and* $Z \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)$.

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} X \text{ is ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ Y \text{ is ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT} & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} Z \text{ is ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ Z = XY. & \end{array}\right\}$$

Theorem G.5. [14] *Let* $X \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n$, $Y \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y_n$, *and* $Z \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)$.

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & X \text{ is ABSOLUTELY CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ 2. & Y \text{ is CONVERGENT} & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & Z \text{ is CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ 2. & Z = XY & \end{array}\right\}$$

Theorem G.6. [15] *Let* $X \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n$, $Y \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} y_n$, *and* $Z \triangleq \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k}\right)$.

THM
$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & X \text{ is CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ 2. & Y \text{ is CONVERGENT} & \text{and} \\ 3. & Z \text{ is CONVERGENT} & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \{Z = XY\}$$

G.3 Summability

Cauchy and Abel, the 19th century champions of rigour in analysis, firmly rejected any and all divergent sums. However in more recent times, certain classes of divergent sums have been found to be extremely useful. Often such sums are ones that are said to be *summable*.

Definition G.3. [16]

DEF

The series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n$ *is* ***summable by the*** k***-th arithmetic mean of Cesàro to limit*** x, *or* ***summable*** (C,k) ***to the limit*** x, *if*

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{S_n^k}{A_n^k} = x \quad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{W} \text{ and where}$$

$$S_n^k \triangleq \begin{cases} \sum_{m=0}^{n} x_m & \text{for } k = 0 \\ \sum_{m=0}^{n} S_m^{k-1} & \text{for } k = 1,2,3,\ldots \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad A_n^k \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } k = 0 \\ \sum_{m=0}^{n} A_m^{k-1} & \text{for } k = 1,2,3,\ldots \end{cases}$$

Proposition G.1. [17]

[13] Hardy (1949), pages 227–228 ⟨Theorem 160⟩, Bromwich (1908), page 66 ⟨Article 27.⟩, Cauchy (1821) pages 147–148 ⟨6.e Théorème⟩

[14] Hardy (1949), page 228 ⟨Theorem 161⟩, Bromwich (1908), pages 85–86 ⟨Article 35.⟩, Mertens (1875)

[15] Hardy (1949), page 228 ⟨Theorem 162⟩, Abel (1826)

[16] Zygmund (2002a) pages 75–76, Hardy (1949), page 96 ⟨5.4 Cesàro means⟩, Whittaker and Watson (1920), pages 155–156 ⟨8.43, 8.431⟩, Cesàro (1890)

[17] Zygmund (2002a) pages 75–76, Thomson et al. (2008) page 129 ⟨Definition 3.54⟩, Szász and Barlaz (1952), page 13

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

PRP

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \quad \textit{is summable } (C,0) \textit{ to the limit } x \textit{ if} \quad \lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n=0}^{N} x_n = x \qquad \textit{(normal convergence)}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \quad \textit{is summable } (C,1) \textit{ to the limit } x \textit{ if} \quad \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{N+1} \sum_{n=0}^{N} s_n = x \qquad \textit{(arthimetic mean)}$$

$$\textit{where } s_n \triangleq \sum_{m=0}^{n} x_m$$

Definition G.4. [18]

DEF

The series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n$ *is* ***summable by Euler's method to limit*** a *if*

$$\lim_{x\to 1-0} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = a$$

Example G.3. [19]

EX

The series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n = 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + \cdots$ is *divergent*
(it is *not* summable $(C,0)$),
but yet it *is* summable $(C,1)$ to the limit $\frac{1}{2}$.
It is also summable by Euler's method to the limit $\frac{1}{2}$.

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for Cesàro summability:

   (a) Note that the sequence of partial sums s_n is $s_0 = 1$, $s_1 = 0$, $s_2 = 1$, $s_3 = 0$, $s_4 = 1$, ... That is
   $$s_n = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \text{ even} \\ 0 & \text{for } n \text{ odd} \end{cases}$$

   (b) Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{n+1} \sum_{k=0}^{n} s_k &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{2n+1} \sum_{k=0}^{2n} s_k \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{2n+1} \left(\underbrace{\sum_{k=0}^{n} s_{2k}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} s_{2k+1}}_{\text{odd terms}} \right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{2n+1} \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} 1 + \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 0 \right) \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{n+1}{2n+1} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

[18] Whittaker and Watson (1920), page 155 ⟨8.42⟩
[19] Thomson et al. (2008) page 130 ⟨Example 3.56⟩, Whittaker and Watson (1920), page 155 ⟨8.42⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof for Euler summability:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to 1-0}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n &= \lim_{x\to 1-0}\lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{1}{1+x} = \sum_{k=0}^{2n-1}(-1)^k x^k + \frac{x^{2n}}{1+x}\right)\\ &= \lim_{x\to 1-0}\frac{1}{1+x} && \text{by item (1a) (page 203) of Example G.1}\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

✍

G.4 Convergence in Banach spaces

The properties of *strong convergence* and *weak convergence* are defined on *sequences*. An infinite sum $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\boldsymbol{x}_n$ in a Banach space is the limit of a sequence of partial sums $\left(\!\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)\!\right)$, so the properties of strong and weak convergence apply to infinite sums as well. Definition G.5 (next) assigns special equality symbols for these sums.

Definition G.5. *Let* $\boldsymbol{B} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\right)$ *be a Banach space.*

DEF

The expression $\boldsymbol{x} \overset{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\boldsymbol{x}_n$ *denotes that the sum* ***converges strongly*** *to* $\boldsymbol{x}$.

The expression $\boldsymbol{x} \doteq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\boldsymbol{x}_n$ *denotes that the sum* ***converges weakly*** *to* $\boldsymbol{x}$.

G.5 Convergence tests for real sequences

Theorem G.7 (*comparison test*). [20]

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(\!(y_n)\!) \text{ CONVERGES} & \textit{and}\\ 2. & x_n \le y_n \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{N} & \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(\!(x_n)\!) \text{ CONVERGES}$$

[20] Bonar et al. (2006) page 26 ⟨Theorem 1.53 (Limit Comparison Test Strengthened)⟩, Heinbockel (2010) page 152 ⟨Comparison Tests⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX H

TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

H.1 Definition Candidates

Definition H.1 (Hermitian components). [1] *Let* $(\mathbb{F}, *)$ *be a* $*$*-algebra a* (STAR ALGEBRA).

DEF	*The* ***real part*** *of* x *is defined as*	$\Re x$	$\triangleq \frac{1}{2}\left(x + x^*\right)$	$\forall x \in \mathbb{F}$
	The ***imaginary part*** *of* x *is defined as*	$\Im x$	$\triangleq \frac{1}{2i}\left(x - x^*\right)$	$\forall x \in \mathbb{F}$

There are several ways of defining the sine and cosine functions, including the following:[2]

1. **Planar geometry:** Trigonometric functions are traditionally introduced as they have come to us historically—that is, as related to the parameters of triangles.[3]

$$\cos x \triangleq \frac{x}{r} \qquad \sin x \triangleq \frac{y}{r}$$

2. **Complex exponential:** The cosine and sine functions are the real and imaginary parts of the complex exponential such that[4]

$$\cos x \triangleq \mathbf{R}_{\mathsf{e}} e^{ix} \qquad \sin x \triangleq \mathbf{I}_{\mathsf{m}}\left(e^{ix}\right)$$

3. **Polynomial:** Let $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \sum_{n=0}^{N} x_n$ in some topological space (Definition G.1 page 202). The sine

[1] Michel and Herget (1993) page 430, Rickart (1960) page 179, Gelfand and Naimark (1964) page 242

[2] The term *sine* originally came from the Hindu word *jiva* and later adapted to the Arabic word *jiba*. Abrabic-Latin translator Robert of Chester apparently confused this word with the Arabic word *jaib*, which means "bay" or "inlet"—thus resulting in the Latin translation *sinus*, which also means "bay" or "inlet". Reference: Boyer and Merzbach (1991) page 252

[3] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 78

[4] Euler (1748)

and cosine functions can be defined in terms of *Taylor expansions* such that[5]

$$\cos(x) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n)!} x^{2n} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots$$

$$\sin(x) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)!} x^{2n+1} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots$$

4. **Product of factors:** Let $\prod_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \prod_{n=0}^{N} x_n$ in some topological space (Definition G.1 page 202). The sine and cosine functions can be defined in terms of a product of factors such that[6]

$$\cos(x) \triangleq \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[1 - \left(\frac{x}{(2n-1)\frac{\pi}{2}}\right)^2\right] \qquad \sin(x) \triangleq x \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[1 - \left(\frac{x}{n\pi}\right)^2\right]$$

5. **Partial fraction expansion:** The sine function can be defined in terms of a partial fraction expansion such that[7]

$$\sin(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{\frac{1}{x} + 2x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{x^2 - (n\pi)^2}} \qquad \cos(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{x} + 2x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{x^2 - (n\pi)^2}\right)}_{\cot(x)} \sin(x)$$

6. **Differential operator:** The sine and cosine functions can be defined as solutions to differential equations expressed in terms of the differential operator $\frac{d}{dx}$ such that

$$\cos(x) \triangleq f(x) \quad \text{where} \quad \underbrace{\frac{d^2}{dx^2} f + f = 0}_{\text{differential equation}} \quad \underbrace{f(0) = 1}_{\text{1st initial condition}} \quad \underbrace{\left[\frac{d}{dx} f\right](0) = 0}_{\text{2nd initial condition}}$$

$$\sin(x) \triangleq g(x) \quad \text{where} \quad \underbrace{\frac{d^2}{dx^2} g + g = 0}_{\text{differential equation}} \quad \underbrace{g(0) = 0}_{\text{1st initial condition}} \quad \underbrace{\left[\frac{d}{dx} g\right](0) = 1}_{\text{2nd initial condition}}$$

7. **Integral operator:** The sine and cosine functions can be defined as inverses of integrals of square roots of rational functions such that[8]

$$\cos(x) \triangleq f^{-1}(x) \quad \text{where} \quad f(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\int_x^1 \sqrt{\frac{1}{1-y^2}}\, dy}_{\arccos(x)}$$

$$\sin(x) \triangleq g^{-1}(x) \quad \text{where} \quad g(x) \triangleq \underbrace{\int_0^x \sqrt{\frac{1}{1-y^2}}\, dy}_{\arcsin(x)}$$

For purposes of analysis, it can be argued that the more natural approach for defining harmonic functions is in terms of the differentiation operator $\frac{d}{dx}$ (Definition H.2 page 213). Support for such an approach includes the following:

[5] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157, Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 74
[6] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 75
[7] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 75
[8] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 79

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

- Both sine and cosine are very easily represented analytically as polynomials with coefficients involving the operator $\frac{d}{dx}$ (Theorem H.1 page 215).
- All solutions of homogeneous second order differential equations are linear combinations of sine and cosine (Theorem H.3 page 216).
- Sine and cosine themselves are related to each other in terms of the differentiation operator (Theorem H.4 page 217).
- The complex exponential function is a solution of a second order homogeneous differential equation (Definition H.5 page 218).
- Sine and cosine are orthogonal with respect to an innerproduct generated by an integral operator—which is a kind of inverse differential operator (Section H.6 page 226).

H.2 Definitions

Definition H.2. [9] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the* SPACE OF ALL CONTINUOUSLY DIFFERENTIABLE REAL FUNCTIONS *and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator.*

DEF *The function $f \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ is the **cosine** function $\cos(x) \triangleq f(x)$ if*

1. $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f = 0$ *(second order homogeneous differential equation)* *and*
2. $f(0) = 1$ *(first initial condition)* *and*
3. $\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0) = 0$ *(second initial condition).*

Definition H.3. [10] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ be defined as in definition of $\cos(x)$ (Definition H.2 page 213).*

DEF *The function $f \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ is the **sine** function $\sin(x) \triangleq f(x)$ if*

1. $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f = 0$ *(second order homogeneous differential equation)* *and*
2. $f(0) = 0$ *(first initial condition)* *and*
3. $\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0) = 1$ *(second initial condition).*

Definition H.4. [11]

DEF *Let π ("pi") be defined as the element in $\mathbb{R}$ such that*

(1). $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$ *and*

(2). $\pi > 0$ *and*

(3). *π is the **smallest** of all elements in $\mathbb{R}$ that satisfies (1) and (2).*

H.3 Basic properties

Lemma H.1. [12] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the* SPACE OF ALL CONTINUOUSLY DIFFERENTIABLE REAL FUNCTIONS *and $\frac{d}{dx} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator.*

[9] Rosenlicht (1968) page 157, Flanigan (1983) pages 228–229
[10] Rosenlicht (1968) page 157, Flanigan (1983) pages 228–229
[11] Rosenlicht (1968) page 158
[12] Rosenlicht (1968), page 156, Liouville (1839)

CC BY-NC-ND

LEM

$$\left\{\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f = 0\right\} \quad \Longleftrightarrow$$

$$\left\{\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \underbrace{[f](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\text{odd terms}} \\ &= \left(f(0) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)x\right) - \left(\frac{f(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{3!}x^3\right) + \left(\frac{f(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{5!}x^5\right)\cdots \end{aligned}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: Let $f'(x) \triangleq \frac{d}{dx}f(x)$.

$$\begin{aligned} f'''(x) &= -\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](x) \\ f^{(4)}(x) &= -\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](x) \qquad = -\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) = f(x) \end{aligned}$$

1. Proof that $\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) + f(x) = 0 \implies f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n \qquad \text{by Taylor expansion (Theorem C.13 page 153)} \\ &= f(0) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)x - \frac{\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](0)}{2!}x^2 - \frac{f^3(0)}{3!}x^3 + \frac{f^4(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{f^5(0)}{5!}x^5 - \cdots \\ &= f(0) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)x - \frac{f(0)}{2!}x^2 - \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{3!}x^3 + \frac{f(0)}{4!}x^4 + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{5!}x^5 - \cdots \\ &= f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right] \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) + f(x) = 0 \impliedby f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right]$:

$$\begin{aligned} \left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] \\ &= \frac{d}{dx}\frac{d}{dx}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right] \qquad \text{by right hypothesis} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{(2n)(2n-1)f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n-2} + \frac{(2n+1)(2n)\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n-1}\right] \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n-2)!}x^{2n-2} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n-1)!}x^{2n-1}\right] \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}\left[\frac{f(0)}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \frac{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1}\right] \\ &= -f(x) \qquad \text{by right hypothesis} \end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem H.1 (Taylor series for cosine/sine). [13]

THM

$$\cos(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

$$\sin(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\cos(x) = \underbrace{f(0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\text{odd terms}} \qquad \text{by Lemma H.1 page 213}$$

$$= 1\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + 0\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \qquad \text{by cos initial conditions (Definition H.2 page 213)}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

$$\sin(x) = \underbrace{f(0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\text{odd terms}} \qquad \text{by Lemma H.1 page 213}$$

$$= 0\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + 1\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \qquad \text{by sin initial conditions (Definition H.3 page 213)}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}$$

✏

Theorem H.2. [14]

THM

$\cos(0)$	$=$	1	$\cos(-x)$	$=$	$\cos(x)$ $\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$
$\sin(0)$	$=$	0	$\sin(-x)$	$=$	$-\sin(x)$ $\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\cos(0) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=0} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= 1$$

$$\sin(0) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=0} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for sine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= 0$$

$$\cos(-x) = 1 - \frac{(-x)^2}{2} + \frac{(-x)^4}{4!} - \frac{(-x)^6}{6!} + \cdots \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots$$

$$= \cos(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$\sin(-x) = (-x) - \frac{(-x)^3}{3!} + \frac{(-x)^5}{5!} - \frac{(-x)^7}{7!} + \cdots \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for sine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

[13] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157
[14] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= -\left[x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots\right]$$

$$= \sin(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for sine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

✏

Lemma H.2. [15]

LEM		
$\cos(1) > 0$	$x \in (0:2) \implies \sin(x) > 0$	
$\cos(2) < 0$		

✎PROOF:

$$\cos(1) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=1} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4!} - \frac{1}{6!} + \cdots$$

$$> 0$$

$$\cos(2) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots\Big|_{x=2} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series for cosine} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= 1 - \frac{4}{2} + \frac{16}{24} - \frac{64}{720} + \cdots$$

$$< 0$$

$$x \in (0:2) \implies \text{each term in the sequence } \left(\left(x - \frac{x^3}{3!}\right), \left(\frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!}\right), \left(\frac{x^9}{9!} - \frac{x^{11}}{11!}\right), \ldots\right) \text{ is } > 0$$

$$\implies \sin(x) > 0$$

✏

Proposition H.1. *Let π be defined as in Definition H.4 (page 213).*

PRP	
(A).	*The value π **exists** in $\mathbb{R}$.*
(B).	$2 < \pi < 4$.

✎PROOF:

$$\cos(1) > 0 \qquad \text{by Lemma H.2 page 216}$$

$$\cos(2) < 0 \qquad \text{by Lemma H.2 page 216}$$

$$\implies 1 < \frac{\pi}{2} < 2$$

$$\implies 2 < \pi < 4$$

✏

Theorem H.3. [16] *Let $\boldsymbol{C}$ be the space of all continuously differentiable real functions and $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x} \in \boldsymbol{C}^{\boldsymbol{C}}$ the differentiation operator. Let $\mathsf{f}'(0) \triangleq \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}x}\mathsf{f}\right](0)$.*

THM	
$\left\{\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f} + \mathsf{f} = 0\right\} \iff \left\{\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{f}(0)\cos(x) + \mathsf{f}'(0)\sin(x)\right\}$	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{C}, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

[15] Rosenlicht (1968), page 158

[16] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157. The general solution for the *non-homogeneous* equation $\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}x^2}\mathsf{f}(x) + \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{g}(x)$ with initial conditions $\mathsf{f}(a) = 1$ and $\mathsf{f}'(a) = \rho$ is $\mathsf{f}(x) = \cos(x) + \rho\sin(x) + \int_a^x \mathsf{g}(y)\sin(x-y)\,\mathrm{d}y$. This type of equation is called a *Volterra integral equation of the second type*. References: Folland (1992), page 371, Liouville (1839). Volterra equation references: Pedersen (2000), page 99, Lalescu (1908), Lalescu (1911)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\left[\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f\right](x) = -f(x) \implies f(x) = f(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin(x)$:

$$f(x) = f(0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)} \qquad \text{by left hypothesis and Lemma H.1 page 213}$$

$$= f(0)\cos x + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin x \qquad \text{by definitions of cos and sin (Definition H.2 page 213, Definition H.3 page 213)}$$

2. Proof that $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}f = -f \impliedby f(x) = f(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin(x)$:

$$f(x) = f(0)\cos x + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\sin x \qquad \text{by right hypothesis}$$

$$= f(0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + \left[\frac{d}{dx}f\right](0)\underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)}$$

$$\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f + f = 0 \qquad \text{by Lemma H.1 page 213}$$

✏

Theorem H.4. [17] *Let $\frac{d}{dx} \in C^C$ be the differentiation operator.*

THM

$$\frac{d}{dx}\cos(x) = -\sin(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \;\Big|\; \frac{d}{dx}\sin(x) = \cos(x) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \;\Big|\; \cos^2(x)+\sin^2(x) = 1 \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\cos(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \quad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{2nx^{2n-1}}{(2n)!} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^{n+1}\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

$$= -\sin(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \quad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sin(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \quad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{(2n+1)x^{2n}}{(2n+1)!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(-1)^n\frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

$$= \cos(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \quad \text{(Theorem H.1 page 215)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left[\cos^2(x)+\sin^2(x)\right] &= -2\cos(x)\sin(x) + 2\sin(x)\cos(x)\\
&= 0\\
&\implies \cos^2(x)+\sin^2(x) \text{ is } \textit{constant}\\
&\implies \cos^2(x)+\sin^2(x)\\
&= \cos^2(0)+\sin^2(0)\\
&= 1+0 = 1 \qquad \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[17] Rosenlicht (1968), page 157

CC BY-NC-ND

Proposition H.2.

PRP $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(\pi/2) &= \pm\sqrt{\sin^2(\pi/2) + 0} \\
&= \pm\sqrt{\sin^2(\pi/2) + \cos^2(\pi/2)} && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)} \\
&= \pm\sqrt{1} && \text{by Theorem H.4 page 217} \\
&= \pm 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by Lemma H.2 page 216}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

H.4 The complex exponential

Definition H.5.

DEF *The function* $\mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *is the* ***exponential function*** $\exp(ix) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x)$ *if*

1. $\frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f} + \mathsf{f} = 0$ *(second order homogeneous differential equation)* *and*
2. $\mathsf{f}(0) = 1$ *(first initial condition)* *and*
3. $\left[\frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}\right](0) = i$ *(second initial condition).*

Theorem H.5 (Euler's identity). [18]

THM $e^{ix} = \cos(x) + i\sin(x) \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\exp(ix) &= \mathsf{f}(0)\cos(x) + \left[\frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}\right](0)\sin(x) && \text{by Theorem H.3 page 216} \\
&= \cos(x) + i\sin(x) && \text{by Definition H.5 page 218}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition H.3.

PRP $e^{-i\pi/2} = -i \;\Big|\; e^{i\pi/2} = i$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{i\pi/2} &= \cos(\pi/2) + i\sin(\pi/2) && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \text{ (Theorem H.5 page 218)} \\
&= 0 + i && \text{by Theorem H.2 (page 215) and Proposition H.2 (page 218)} \\
e^{-i\pi/2} &= \cos(-\pi/2) + i\sin(-\pi/2) && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \text{ (Theorem H.5 page 218)} \\
&= \cos(\pi/2) - i\sin(\pi/2) && \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215} \\
&= 0 - i && \text{by Theorem H.2 (page 215) and Proposition H.2 (page 218)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[18] Euler (1748), Bottazzini (1986), page 12

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Corollary H.1.

COR $$e^{ix} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\boxed{e^{ix}} = \cos(x) + i\sin(x) \qquad \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \qquad \text{(The}$$

$$= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!}}_{\cos(x)} + i \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}}_{\sin(x)} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Taylor series} \qquad \text{(The}$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(i^2)^n x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{i(i^2)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \qquad = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}\cap\mathbb{Z}_e} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}\cap\mathbb{Z}_o} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!} = \boxed{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(ix)^n}{n!}}$$

✏

Corollary H.2 (Euler formulas). [19]

COR $$\cos(x) = \mathbf{R}_e\left(e^{ix}\right) = \frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2} \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R} \;\Big|\; \sin(x) = \mathbf{I}_m\left(e^{ix}\right) = \frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i} \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\boxed{\mathbf{R}_e\left(e^{ix}\right)} \triangleq \frac{e^{ix}+\left(e^{ix}\right)^*}{2} = \frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2} \qquad \text{by definition of } \Re$$

$$= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(-x)+i\sin(-x)}{2} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.5 page 218)}$$

$$= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(x)-i\sin(x)}{2} \qquad = \frac{\cos(x)}{2} + \frac{\cos(x)}{2} \qquad = \boxed{\cos(x)}$$

$$\boxed{\mathbf{I}_m\left(e^{ix}\right)} \triangleq \frac{e^{ix}-\left(e^{ix}\right)^*}{2i} = \frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i} \qquad \text{by definition of } \Im$$

$$= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2i} - \frac{\cos(-x)+i\sin(-x)}{2i} \qquad \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.5 page 218)}$$

$$= \frac{\cos(x)+i\sin(x)}{2i} - \frac{\cos(x)-i\sin(x)}{2i} \qquad = \frac{i\sin(x)}{2i} + \frac{i\sin(x)}{2i} \qquad = \boxed{\sin(x)}$$

✏

Theorem H.6. [20]

THM $$e^{(\alpha+\beta)} = e^{\alpha}\, e^{\beta} \qquad \forall \alpha,\beta\in\mathbb{C}$$

[19] Euler (1748), Bottazzini (1986), page 12
[20] Rudin (1987) page 1

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^{\alpha}\, e^{\beta} &= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{\alpha^n}{n!}\right)\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{\beta^m}{m!}\right) && \text{by Corollary H.1 page 219}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{\alpha^k}{k!}\,\frac{\beta^{n-k}}{(n-k)!} && \text{by Corollary G.1 page 206}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{n!}{n!}\frac{\alpha^k}{k!}\,\frac{\beta^{n-k}}{(n-k)!}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{n!}{k!\,(n-k)!}\,\alpha^k\,\beta^{n-k}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}\alpha^k\,\beta^{n-k}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{W}} \frac{(\alpha+\beta)^n}{n!} && \text{by the } \textit{Binomial Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem C.14 page 153)}\\
&= e^{\alpha+\beta} && \text{by Corollary H.1 page 219}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

H.5 Trigonometric Identities

Theorem H.7 (shift identities)**.**

THM								
	$\cos\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$-\sin x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$\cos x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$
	$\cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$\sin x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	$\sin\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$	$=$	$-\cos x$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \frac{e^{i\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}}{2} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}} + e^{-ix}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}}}{2} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} \quad \text{(Theorem H.6 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}(i) + e^{-ix}(-i)}{2} && \text{by Proposition H.3 page 218}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{-2i}\\
&= -\sin x && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
\cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \frac{e^{i\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)} + e^{-i\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}}{2} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}} + e^{-ix}e^{+i\frac{\pi}{2}}}{2} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} \quad \text{(Theorem H.6 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix}(-i) + e^{-ix}(i)}{2} && \text{by Proposition H.3 page 218}\\
&= \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{2i}\\
&= \sin x && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin\left(x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \cos\left(\left[x+\frac{\pi}{2}\right]-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \cos(x)\\
\sin\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= -\cos\left(\left[x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right]+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= -\cos(x)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem H.8 (product identities).

THM							
	(A).	$\cos x\cos y$	$=$	$\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)$	$+$	$\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(B).	$\cos x\sin y$	$=$	$-\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)$	$+$	$\frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(C).	$\sin x\cos y$	$=$	$\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)$	$+$	$\frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
	(D).	$\sin x\sin y$	$=$	$\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)$	$-$	$\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A) using *Euler formulas* (Corollary H.2 page 219)
   (algebraic method requiring *complex number system* $\mathbb{C}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos x\cos y &= \left(\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right)\left(\frac{e^{iy}+e^{-iy}}{2}\right) && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{i(x-y)}+e^{i(-x+y)}+e^{i(-x-y)}}{4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}}{4}+\frac{e^{i(x-y)}+e^{-i(x-y)}}{4}\\
&= \frac{2\cos(x+y)}{4}+\frac{2\cos(x-y)}{4} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)+\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (A) using *Volterra integral equation* (Theorem H.3 page 216)
   (differential equation method requiring only *real number system* $\mathbb{R}$):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\\
&\implies \frac{d}{dx}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x+y) && \text{by Theorem H.4 page 217}\\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f}(x) = -\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) && \text{by Theorem H.4 page 217}\\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}\mathsf{f}(x)+\mathsf{f}(x) = 0 && \text{by } \textit{additive inverse} \text{ property}\\
&\implies \underbrace{\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)}_{\mathsf{f}(x)} = \underbrace{[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(0-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(0+y)]}_{\mathsf{f}''(0)}\cos(x)+\underbrace{[-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(0-y)-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(0+y)]}_{\mathsf{f}'(0)}\sin(x)\\
&\implies \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) = \cos y\cos x+0\sin(x)\\
&\implies \cos x\cos y = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

3. Proof for (B) using *Euler formulas* (Corollary H.2 page 219):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin x \sin y &= \left(\frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i}\right)\left(\frac{e^{iy}-e^{-iy}}{2i}\right) && \text{by Corollary H.2 page 219}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}-e^{i(x-y)}-e^{i(-x+y)}+e^{i(-x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}-e^{i(x-y)}-e^{-i(x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{e^{i(x+y)}+e^{-i(x+y)}}{-4}-\frac{e^{i(x-y)}+e^{-i(x-y)}}{-4}\\
&= \frac{2\cos(x-y)}{4}-\frac{2\cos(x+y)}{4} && \text{by Corollary H.2 page 219}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)-\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proofs for (C) and (D) using (A) and (B):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos x \sin y &= \cos(x)\cos\left(y-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} && \text{(Theorem H.7 page 220)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\cos\left(x+y-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\cos\left(x-y+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)-\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} && \text{(Theorem H.7 page 220)}\\
\sin x \cos y &= \cos y \sin x\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(y+x)-\frac{1}{2}\sin(y-x) && \text{by (B)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)+\frac{1}{2}\sin(x-y) && \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition H.4.

PRP												
	(A).	$\cos(\pi)$	$=$	-1	(C).	$\cos(2\pi)$	$=$	1	(E).	$e^{i\pi}$	$=$	-1
	(B).	$\sin(\pi)$	$=$	0	(D).	$\sin(2\pi)$	$=$	0	(F).	$e^{i2\pi}$	$=$	0

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(\pi) &= -1+1+\cos(\pi)\\
&= -1+2[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}-\tfrac{\pi}{2})+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}+\tfrac{\pi}{2})] && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)}\\
&= -1+2\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2})\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}\\
&= -1+2(0)(0) && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)}\\
&= -1\\
\sin(\pi) &= 0+\sin(\pi)\\
&= 2[-\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}-\tfrac{\pi}{2})+\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}+\tfrac{\pi}{2})] && \text{by } \sin(0)=0 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)}\\
&= 2\cos(\tfrac{\pi}{2})\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}\\
&= 2(0)\sin(\tfrac{\pi}{2}) && \text{by definition of } \pi && \text{(Definition H.4 page 213)}\\
&= 0\\
\cos(2\pi) &= 1+\cos(2\pi)-1\\
&= 2[\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\pi-\pi)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\pi+\pi)]-1 && \text{by } \cos(0)=1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)}\\
&= 2\cos(\pi)\cos(\pi)-1 && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}\\
&= 2(-1)(-1)-1 && \text{by (A)}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sin(2\pi) &= 0 + \sin(2\pi) \\
&= 2[\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\pi-\pi) + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin(\pi+\pi)] && \text{by } \sin(0)=0 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)} \\
&= 2\sin(\pi)\cos(\pi) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)} \\
&= 2(0)(-1) && \text{by (A) and (B)} \\
&= 0 \\
e^{i\pi} &= \cos(\pi) + i\sin(\pi) && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} && \text{(Theorem H.5 page 218)} \\
&= -1 + 0 && \text{by (A) and (B)} \\
&= -1 \\
e^{i2\pi} &= \cos(2\pi) + i\sin(2\pi) && \text{by } \textit{Euler's identity} && \text{(Theorem H.5 page 218)} \\
&= 1 + 0 && \text{by (C) and (D)} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem H.9 (double angle formulas). [21]

THM

(A).	$\cos(x+y)$	$=$	$\cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
(B).	$\sin(x+y)$	$=$	$\sin x\cos y + \cos x\sin y$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$
(C).	$\tan(x+y)$	$=$	$\dfrac{\tan x + \tan y}{1 - \tan x\tan y}$	$\forall x,y\in\mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A) using *product identities* (Theorem H.8 page 221).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+y) &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)}_{\cos(x+y)} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)}_{0} \\
&= \left[\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\right] - \left[\frac{1}{2}\cos(x-y) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)\right] \\
&= \cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y && \text{by Theorem H.8 page 221}
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof for (A) using *Volterra integral equation* (Theorem H.3 page 216):

$$
\begin{aligned}
f(x) \triangleq \cos(x+y) &\implies \frac{d}{dx}f(x) = -\sin(x+y) && \text{by Theorem H.4 page 217} \\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f(x) = -\cos(x+y) && \text{by Theorem H.4 page 217} \\
&\implies \frac{d^2}{dx^2}f(x) + f(x) = 0 && \text{by } \textit{additive inverse} \text{ property} \\
&\implies \cos(x+y) = \cos y\cos x - \sin y\sin x && \text{by Theorem H.3 page 216} \\
&\implies \cos(x+y) = \cos x\cos y - \sin x\sin y && \text{by } \textit{commutative} \text{ property}
\end{aligned}
$$

[21] Expressions for $\cos(\alpha+\beta)$, $\sin(\alpha+\beta)$, and $\sin^2 x$ appear in works as early as Ptolemy (circa 100AD). Reference: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_trigonometric_functions

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

3. Proof for (B) and (C) using (A):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+y) &= \cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}+y\right) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} \text{ (Theorem H.7 page 220)}\\
&= \cos\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\cos(y)-\sin\left(x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\sin(y) && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \sin(x)\cos(y)+\cos(x)\sin(y) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} \text{ (Theorem H.7 page 220)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tan(x+y) &= \frac{\sin(x+y)}{\cos(x+y)}\\
&= \frac{\sin x\cos y+\cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y-\sin x\sin y} && \text{by (A)}\\
&= \left(\frac{\sin x\cos y+\cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y-\sin x\sin y}\right)\left(\frac{\cos x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y}\right)\\
&= \frac{\frac{\sin x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y}+\frac{\cos x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y}}{\frac{\cos x\cos y}{\cos x\cos y}-\frac{\sin x\sin y}{\cos x\cos y}} = \frac{\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}+\frac{\sin y}{\cos y}}{1-\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}\frac{\sin y}{\cos y}} = \frac{\tan x+\tan y}{1-\tan x\tan y}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem H.10 (trigonometric periodicity)**.**

THM											
	(A).	$\cos(x+M\pi)$	$=$	$(-1)^M\cos(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$	$M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(D).	$\cos(x+2M\pi)$	$=$	$\cos(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$ $M\in\mathbb{Z}$
	(B).	$\sin(x+M\pi)$	$=$	$(-1)^M\sin(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$	$M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(E).	$\sin(x+2M\pi)$	$=$	$\sin(x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$ $M\in\mathbb{Z}$
	(C).	$e^{i(x+M\pi)}$	$=$	$(-1)^M e^{ix}$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$	$M\in\mathbb{Z}$	(F).	$e^{i(x+2M\pi)}$	$=$	e^{ix}	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R},$ $M\in\mathbb{Z}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (A):

   (a) $M=0$ case: $\cos(x+0\pi) = \cos(x) = (-1)^0\cos(x)$

   (b) Proof for $M>0$ cases (by induction):

      i. Base case $M=1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+\pi) &= \cos x\cos\pi-\sin x\sin\pi && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} && \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)}\\
&= \cos x(-1)-\sin x(0) && \text{by } \cos\pi=-1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition H.4 page 222)}\\
&= (-1)^1\cos x
\end{aligned}$$

      ii. Inductive step…Proof that M case $\implies$ $M+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+[M+1]\pi) &= \cos([x+\pi]+M\pi)\\
&= (-1)^M\cos(x+\pi) && \text{by induction hypothesis } (M \text{ case})\\
&= (-1)^M(-1)\cos(x) && \text{by base case (item (1(b)i) page 224)}\\
&= (-1)^{M+1}\cos(x)\\
&\implies M+1 \text{ case}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(c) Proof for $M < 0$ cases: Let $N \triangleq -M \ldots \implies N > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+M\pi) &\triangleq \cos(x-N\pi) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(-N\pi) - \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)} \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) && \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215} \\
&= \cos(x)\cos(0+N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) \\
&= \cos(x)(-1)^N\cos(0) + \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) && \text{by } M \geq 0 \text{ results} \quad \text{(item (1b) page 224)} \\
&= (-1)^N\cos(x) && \text{by } \cos(0)=1,\ \sin(0)=0 \text{ results} \quad \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)} \\
&\triangleq (-1)^{-M}\cos(x) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= (-1)^M\cos(x)
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Proof using complex exponential:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(x+M\pi) &= \frac{e^{i(x+M\pi)} + e^{-i(x+M\pi)}}{2} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)} \\
&= e^{iM\pi}\left[\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right] && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} \quad \text{(Theorem H.6 page 219)} \\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^M\cos x && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)} \\
&= (-1)^M\cos x && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} \quad \text{(Proposition H.4 page 222)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (B):

(a) $M = 0$ case: $\sin(x+0\pi) = \sin(x) = (-1)^0\sin(x)$

(b) Proof for $M > 0$ cases (by induction):

i. Base case $M = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+\pi) &= \sin x\cos\pi + \cos x\sin\pi && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)} \\
&= \sin x(-1) - \cos x(0) && \text{by } \sin\pi = 0 \text{ results} \quad \text{(Proposition H.4 page 222)} \\
&= (-1)^1\sin x
\end{aligned}$$

ii. Inductive step…Proof that M case $\implies M+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+[M+1]\pi) &= \sin([x+\pi]+M\pi) \\
&= (-1)^M\sin(x+\pi) && \text{by induction hypothesis } (M \text{ case}) \\
&= (-1)^M(-1)\sin(x) && \text{by base case (item (2(b)i) page 225)} \\
&= (-1)^{M+1}\sin(x) \\
&\implies M+1 \text{ case}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Proof for $M < 0$ cases: Let $N \triangleq -M \ldots \implies N > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+M\pi) &\triangleq \sin(x-N\pi) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) - \sin(x)\sin(-N\pi) && \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)} \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(N\pi) && \text{by Theorem H.2 page 215} \\
&= \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) + \sin(x)\sin(0+N\pi) \\
&= \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) + \sin(x)(-1)^N\sin(0) && \text{by } M \geq 0 \text{ results} \quad \text{(item (2b) page 225)} \\
&= (-1)^N\sin(x) && \text{by } \sin(0)=1,\ \sin(0)=0 \text{ results} \quad \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)} \\
&\triangleq (-1)^{-M}\sin(x) && \text{by definition of } N \\
&= (-1)^M\sin(x)
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

(d) Proof using complex exponential:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(x+M\pi) &= \frac{e^{i(x+M\pi)} - e^{-i(x+M\pi)}}{2i} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} && \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= e^{iM\pi}\left[\frac{e^{ix}-e^{-ix}}{2i}\right] && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.6 page 219)}\\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^{M}\sin x && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} && \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= (-1)^{M}\sin x && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition H.4 page 222)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (C):

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{i(x+M\pi)} &= e^{iM\pi}e^{ix} && \text{by } e^{\alpha\beta} = e^{\alpha}e^{\beta} \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.6 page 219)}\\
&= \left(e^{i\pi}\right)^{M}\left(e^{ix}\right)\\
&= (-1)^{M}e^{ix} && \text{by } e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ result} && \text{(Proposition H.4 page 222)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proofs for (D), (E), and (F):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(i(x+2M\pi)) &= (-1)^{2M}\cos(ix) &= \cos(ix) && \text{by (A)}\\
\sin(i(x+2M\pi)) &= (-1)^{2M}\sin(ix) &= \sin(ix) && \text{by (B)}\\
e^{i(x+2M\pi)} &= (-1)^{2M}e^{ix} &= e^{ix} && \text{by (C)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem H.11 (half-angle formulas/squared identities)**.**

THM								
	(A).	$\cos^2 x$	$=$	$\frac{1}{2}(1+\cos 2x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$	*(C).*	$\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x$	$= 1$ $\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$
	(B).	$\sin^2 x$	$=$	$\frac{1}{2}(1-\cos 2x)$	$\forall x\in\mathbb{R}$			

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos^2 x &\triangleq (\cos x)(\cos x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-x) + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+x) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}[1+\cos(2x)] && \text{by } \cos(0) = 1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)}\\
\sin^2 x &= (\sin x)(\sin x) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-x) - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+x) && \text{by } \textit{product identities} && \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}\\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}[1-\cos(2x)] && \text{by } \cos(0) = 1 \text{ result} && \text{(Theorem H.2 page 215)}\\
\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x &= \tfrac{1}{2}[1+\cos(2x)] + \tfrac{1}{2}[1-\cos(2x)] = 1 && \text{by (A) and (B)}\\
& && \text{note: see also} && \text{Theorem H.4 page 217}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

H.6 Planar Geometry

The harmonic functions $\cos(x)$ and $\sin(x)$ are *orthogonal* to each other in the sense

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \cos(x) \,|\, \sin(x)\rangle &= \int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \cos(x)\sin(x)\,dx\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(x-x)\,dx + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(x+x)\,dx && \text{by Theorem H.8 page 221}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(0)\,dx}_{0} + \frac{1}{2}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \sin(2x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= -\frac{1}{2}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\cos(2x)\Big|_{-\pi}^{+\pi}\cos(2x)\\
&= -\frac{1}{4}[\cos(2\pi)-\cos(-2\pi)]\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Because $\cos(x)$ are $\sin(x)$ are orthogonal, they can be conveniently represented by the x and y axes in a plane— because perpendicular axes in a plane are also orthogonal. Vectors in the plane can be represented by linear combinations of $\cos x$ and $\sin x$. Let $\tan x$ be defined as

$$\tan x \triangleq \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}.$$

We can also define a value θ to represent the angle between such a vector and the x-axis such that

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}\right)$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos\theta &\triangleq \frac{x}{r} & \sec\theta &\triangleq \frac{r}{x}\\
\sin\theta &\triangleq \frac{y}{r} & \csc\theta &\triangleq \frac{r}{y}\\
\tan\theta &\triangleq \frac{y}{x} & \cot\theta &\triangleq \frac{x}{y}
\end{aligned}
$$

H.7 The power of the exponential

❝ *Gentlemen, that is surely true, it is absolutely paradoxical; we cannot understand it, and we don't know what it means. But we have proved it, and therefore we know it must be the truth.*❞
Benjamin Peirce (1809–1880), American Harvard University mathematician after proving $e^{i\pi} = -1$ in a lecture. [22]

❝ *Young man, in mathematics you don't understand things. You just get used to them.*❞
John von Neumann (1903–1957), Hungarian-American mathematician, as allegedly told to Gary Zukav by Felix T. Smith, Head of Molecular Physics at Stanford Research Institute, about a "physicist friend". [23]

[22] quote: Kasner and Newman (1940), page 104
image: http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/history/PictDisplay/Peirce_Benjamin.html

[23] quote: Zukav (1980), page 208
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_von_Neumann

The quote appears in a footnote in Zukav (1980) that reads like this: Dr. Felix Smith, Head of Molecular Physics, Stanford Research Institute, once related to me the true story of a physicist friend who worked at Los Alamos after World War II. Seeking help on a difficult problem, he went to the great Hungarian mathematician, John von Neumann, who was at Los Alamos as a consultant. "Simple," said von Neumann. "This can be solved by using the method of characteristics." After the explanation the physicist said, "I'm afraid I don't understand the method of characteristics." "Young man," said von Neumann, "in mathematics you don't understand things, you just get used to them."

CC BY-NC-ND

The following corollary presents one of the most amazing relations in all of mathematics. It shows a simple and compact relationship between the transcendental numbers π and e, the imaginary number i, and the additive and multiplicative identity elements 0 and 1. The fact that there is any relationship at all is somewhat amazing; but for there to be such an elegant one is truly one of the wonders of the world of numbers.

Corollary H.3. [24]

COR $e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned} e^{ix}\big|_{x=\pi} &= [\cos x + i\sin x]_{x=\pi} && \text{by Euler's identity (Theorem H.5 page 218)} \\ &= -1 + i \cdot 0 && \text{by Proposition H.4 page 222} \\ &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

✏

There are many transforms available, several of them integral transforms $[\mathbf{A}\mathsf{f}](s) \triangleq \int_t \mathsf{f}(s)\kappa(t,s)\,\mathrm{d}s$ using different kernels $\kappa(t,s)$. But of all of them, two of the most often used themselves use an exponential kernel:

① The *Laplace Transform* with kernel $\kappa(t,\ s) \triangleq e^{st}$
② The *Fourier Transform* with kernel $\kappa(t,\ \omega) \triangleq e^{i\omega t}$.

Of course, the Fourier kernel is just a special case of the Laplace kernel with $s = i\omega$ ($i\omega$ is a unit circle in s if s is depicted as a plane with real and imaginary axes). What is so special about exponential kernels? Is it just that they were discovered sooner than other kernels with other transforms? The answer in general is "no". The exponential has two properties that makes it extremely special:

- The exponential is an eigenvalue of any *linear time invariant* (LTI) operator (Theorem H.12 page 228).
- The exponential generates a *continuous point spectrum* for the *differential operator*.

Theorem H.12. [25] *Let* $\mathbf{L}$ *be an operator with kernel* $\mathsf{h}(t,\omega)$ *and*
$\check{\mathsf{h}}(s) \triangleq \left\langle \mathsf{h}(t,\omega) \,\middle|\, e^{st} \right\rangle$ (LAPLACE TRANSFORM).

THM
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1. & \mathbf{L} \textit{ is } \text{LINEAR } \textit{and} \\ 2. & \mathbf{L} \textit{ is } \text{TIME-INVARIANT} \end{array} \right\} \implies \left\{ \mathbf{L}e^{st} = \underbrace{\check{\mathsf{h}}^*(-s)}_{\textit{eigenvalue}} \ \underbrace{e^{st}}_{\textit{eigenvector}} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

[24] Euler (1748), Euler (1988) ⟨chapter 8?⟩, http://www.daviddarling.info/encyclopedia/E/Eulers_formula.html
[25] Mallat (1999), page 2, ...page 2 online: http://www.cmap.polytechnique.fr/~mallat/WTintro.pdf

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left[\mathbf{L}e^{st}\right](s) &= \langle e^{su} \mid \mathsf{h}((t;u),s)\rangle && \text{by linear hypothesis}\\
&= \langle e^{su} \mid \mathsf{h}((t-u),s)\rangle && \text{by time-invariance hypothesis}\\
&= \left\langle e^{s(t-v)} \mid \mathsf{h}(v,s)\right\rangle && \text{let } v = t-u \implies u = t-v\\
&= e^{st}\ \langle e^{-sv} \mid \mathsf{h}(v,s)\rangle && \text{by additivity of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\\
&= \langle \mathsf{h}(v,s) \mid e^{-sv}\rangle^*\ e^{st} && \text{by conjugate symmetry of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{h}(v,s) \mid e^{(-s)v}\right\rangle^*\ e^{st}\\
&= \check{\mathsf{h}}^*(-s)\, e^{st} && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{h}}(s)
\end{aligned}
$$

BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX I

TRIGONOMETRIC POLYNOMIALS

❝ *I turn aside with a shudder of horror from this lamentable plague of functions which have no derivatives.*❞

Charles Hermite (1822 – 1901), French mathematician, in an 1893 letter to Stieltjes, in response to the "pathological" everywhere continuous but nowhere differentiable *Weierstrass functions* $\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n \cos(b^n \pi x)$.[1]

I.1 Trigonometric expansion

Theorem I.1 (DeMoivre's Theorem)**.**

THM $\left(re^{ix}\right)^n = r^n(\cos nx + i\sin nx) \qquad \forall r,x \in \mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(re^{ix}\right)^n &= r^n e^{inx} \\ &= r^n\left(\cos nx + i\sin nx\right) \qquad \text{by Euler's identity (Theorem H.5 page 218)}\end{aligned}$$

✏

The cosine with argument nx can be expanded as a polynomial in $\cos(x)$ (next).

Theorem I.2 (trigonometric expansion)**.** [2]

[1] quote: Hermite (1893)
translation: Lakatos (1976), page 19
image: http://www-groups.dcs.sx-and.ac.uk/~history/PictDisplay/Hermite.html

[2] Rivlin (1974) page 3 ⟨(1.8)⟩

THM

$$\cos(nx) = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{n-2(k-m)} \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{W} \text{ and } x \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$\sin(nx) = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\sin x)^{n-2(k-m)} \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{W} \text{ and } x \in \mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos(nx) &= \Re\left(\cos nx + i \sin nx\right) \\
&= \Re\left(e^{inx}\right) \\
&= \Re\left[\left(e^{ix}\right)^n\right] \\
&= \Re\left[(\cos x + i \sin x)^n\right] \\
&= \Re\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}^{n} \binom{n}{k} (\cos x)^{n-k} (i \sin x)^k\right] \\
&= \Re\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}^{n} i^k \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x\right] \\
&= \Re\Bigg[\sum_{k\in\{0,4,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x + i \sum_{k\in\{1,5,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x \\
&\quad - \sum_{k\in\{2,6,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x + -i \sum_{k\in\{3,7,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x\Bigg] \\
&= \sum_{k\in\{0,4,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x - \sum_{k\in\{2,6,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x \\
&= \sum_{k\in\{0,2,\ldots,n\}} \binom{n}{k} (-1)^{\frac{k}{2}} \cos^{n-k} x \sin^k x \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \binom{n}{2k} (-1)^k \cos^{n-2k} x \sin^{2k} x \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \binom{n}{2k} (-1)^k \cos^{n-2k} x (1 - \cos^2 x)^k \\
&= \left[\sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \binom{n}{2k} (-1)^k \cos^{n-2k} x\right] \left[\sum_{m=0}^{k} \binom{k}{m} (-1)^m \cos^{2m} x\right] \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} \cos^{n-2(k-m)} x
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sin(nx) &= \cos\left(nx - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \\
&= \cos\left(n\left[x - \frac{\pi}{2n}\right]\right) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} \cos^{n-2(k-m)} \left(n\left[x - \frac{\pi}{2n}\right]\right)
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} \cos^{n-2(k-m)} \left(nx - \frac{\pi}{2} \right)$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} \sin^{n-2(k-m)} (nx)$$

✏

Example I.1.

EX

$$\begin{aligned} \cos 5x &= 16\cos^5 x - 20\cos^3 x + 5\cos x \\ \sin 5x &= 16\sin^5 x - 20\sin^3 x + 5\sin x. \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof using *DeMoivre's Theorem* (Theorem I.1 page 231):

$$\begin{aligned}
&\cos 5x + i\sin 5x \\
&= e^{i5x} \\
&= \left(e^{ix}\right)^5 \\
&= (\cos x + i\sin x)^5 \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{5} \binom{5}{k} [\cos x]^{5-k} [i\sin x]^k \\
&= \binom{5}{0} [\cos x]^{5-0} [i\sin x]^0 + \binom{5}{1} [\cos x]^{5-1} [i\sin x]^1 + \binom{5}{2} [\cos x]^{5-2} [i\sin x]^2 + \\
&\binom{5}{3} [\cos x]^{5-3} [i\sin x]^3 + \binom{5}{4} [\cos x]^{5-4} [i\sin x]^4 + \binom{5}{5} [\cos x]^{5-5} [i\sin x]^5 \\
&= 1\cos^5 x + i5\cos^4 x\sin x - 10\cos^3 x\sin^2 x - i10\cos^2 x\sin^3 x + 5\cos x\sin^4 x + i1\sin^5 x \\
&= \left[\cos^5 x - 10\cos^3 x\sin^2 x + 5\cos x\sin^4 x\right] + i\left[5\cos^4 x\sin x - 10\cos^2 x\sin^3 x + \sin^5 x\right] \\
&= \left[\cos^5 x - 10\cos^3 x(1-\cos^2 x) + 5\cos x(1-\cos^2 x)(1-\cos^2 x)\right] + \\
&i\left[5(1-\sin^2 x)(1-\sin^2 x)\sin x - 10(1-\sin^2 x)\sin^3 x + \sin^5 x\right] \\
&= \left[\cos^5 x - 10(\cos^3 x - \cos^5 x) + 5\cos x(1 - 2\cos^2 x + \cos^4 x)\right] + \\
&i\left[5(1 - 2\sin^2 x + \sin^4 x)\sin x - 10(\sin^3 x - \sin^5 x) + \sin^5 x\right] \\
&= \left[\cos^5 x - 10(\cos^3 x - \cos^5 x) + 5(\cos x - 2\cos^3 x + \cos^5 x)\right] + \\
&i\left[5(\sin x - 2\sin^3 x + \sin^5 x) - 10(\sin^3 x - \sin^5 x) + \sin^5 x\right] \\
&= \underbrace{\left[16\cos^5 x - 20\cos^3 x + 5\cos x\right]}_{\cos 5x} + i\underbrace{\left[16\sin^5 x - 20\sin^3 x + 5\sin x\right]}_{\sin 5x}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof using trigonometric expansion (Theorem I.2 page 231):

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos 5x &= \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{5}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{n-2(k-m)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{n}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{5-2(k-m)} \\
&= (-1)^0 \binom{5}{0}\binom{0}{0} \cos^5 x + (-1)^1 \binom{5}{2}\binom{1}{0} \cos^3 x + (-1)^2 \binom{5}{2}\binom{1}{1} \cos^5 x + \\
&(-1)^2 \binom{5}{4}\binom{2}{0} \cos^1 x + (-1)^3 \binom{5}{4}\binom{2}{1} \cos^3 x + (-1)^4 \binom{5}{4}\binom{2}{2} \cos^5 x
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure I.1: Lattice of harmonic cosines $\{\cos(nx) | n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$

$$= +(1)(1)\cos^5 x - (10)(1)\cos^3 x + (10)(1)\cos^5 x + (5)(1)\cos x - (5)(2)\cos^3 x + (5)(1)\cos^5 x$$
$$= +(1 + 10 + 5)\cos^5 x + (-10 - 10)\cos^3 x + 5\cos x$$
$$= 16\cos^5 x - 20\cos^3 x + 5\cos x$$

✏

Example I.2. [3]

EX	n	$\cos nx$		polynomial in $\cos x$	n	$\cos nx$		polynomial in $\cos x$
	0	$\cos 0x$	$=$	1	4	$\cos 4x$	$=$	$8\cos^4 x - 8\cos^2 x + 1$
	1	$\cos 1x$	$=$	$\cos^1 x$	5	$\cos 5x$	$=$	$16\cos^5 x - 20\cos^3 x + 5\cos x$
	2	$\cos 2x$	$=$	$2\cos^2 x - 1$	6	$\cos 6x$	$=$	$32\cos^6 x - 48\cos^4 x + 18\cos^2 x - 1$
	3	$\cos 3x$	$=$	$4\cos^3 x - 3\cos x$	7	$\cos 7x$	$=$	$64\cos^7 x - 112\cos^5 x + 56\cos^3 x - 7\cos x$

✎PROOF:

$$\cos 2x = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{2}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{3}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{2-2(k-m)}$$
$$= (-1)^0 \binom{3}{0}\binom{0}{0} \cos^2 x + (-1)^1 \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{0} \cos^0 x + (-1)^2 \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{1} \cos^2 x$$
$$= +(1)(1)\cos^2 x - (1)(1) + (1)(1)\cos^2 x$$
$$= 2\cos^2 x - 1$$

$$\cos 3x = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{3}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{3}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{3-2(k-m)}$$
$$= (-1)^0 \binom{3}{0}\binom{0}{0} \cos^3 x + (-1)^1 \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{0} \cos^1 x + (-1)^2 \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{1} \cos^3 x$$
$$= +\binom{3}{0}\binom{0}{0} \cos^3 x - \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{0} \cos^1 x + \binom{3}{2}\binom{1}{1} \cos^3 x$$
$$= +(1)(1)\cos^3 x - (3)(1)\cos^1 x + (3)(1)\cos^3 x$$
$$= 4\cos^3 x - 3\cos x$$

$$\cos 4x = \sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor \frac{4}{2} \rfloor} \sum_{m=0}^{k} (-1)^{k+m} \binom{4}{2k} \binom{k}{m} (\cos x)^{4-2(k-m)}$$

[3] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 795, Guillemin (1957), page 593 ⟨(21)⟩, Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A039991⟩, Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A028297⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}\sum_{m=0}^{k}(-1)^{k+m}\binom{4}{2k}\binom{k}{m}(\cos x)^{4-2(k-m)}\\
&= (-1)^{0+0}\binom{4}{2\cdot 0}\binom{0}{0}(\cos x)^{4-2(0-0)} + (-1)^{1+0}\binom{4}{2\cdot 1}\binom{1}{0}(\cos x)^{4-2(1-0)}\\
&\quad + (-1)^{1+1}\binom{4}{2\cdot 1}\binom{1}{1}(\cos x)^{4-2(1-1)} + (-1)^{2+0}\binom{4}{2\cdot 2}\binom{2}{0}(\cos x)^{4-2(2-0)}\\
&\quad + (-1)^{2+1}\binom{4}{2\cdot 2}\binom{2}{1}(\cos x)^{4-2(2-1)} + (-1)^{2+2}\binom{4}{2\cdot 2}\binom{2}{2}(\cos x)^{4-2(2-2)}\\
&= (1)(1)\cos^4 x - (6)(1)\cos^2 x + (6)(1)\cos^4 x + (1)(1)\cos^0 x - (1)(2)\cos^2 x + (1)(1)\cos^4 x\\
&= 8\cos^4 x - 8\cos^2 x + 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$\cos 5x = 16\cos^5 x - 20\cos^3 x + 5\cos x$ see Example I.1 page 233

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos 6x &= \sum_{k=0}^{\left\lfloor\frac{6}{2}\right\rfloor}\sum_{m=0}^{k}(-1)^{k+m}\binom{6}{2k}\binom{k}{m}(\cos x)^{6-2(k-m)}\\
&= (-1)^0\binom{6}{0}\binom{0}{0}\cos^6 x + (-1)^1\binom{6}{2}\binom{1}{0}\cos^4 x + (-1)^2\binom{6}{2}\binom{1}{1}\cos^6 x + (-1)^2\binom{6}{4}\binom{2}{0}\cos^2 x +\\
&\quad (-1)^3\binom{6}{4}\binom{2}{1}\cos^4 x + (-1)^4\binom{6}{4}\binom{2}{2}\cos^6 x + (-1)^3\binom{6}{6}\binom{3}{0}\cos^0 x + (-1)^4\binom{6}{6}\binom{3}{1}\cos^2 x +\\
&\quad (-1)^5\binom{6}{6}\binom{3}{2}\cos^4 x + (-1)^6\binom{6}{6}\binom{3}{3}\cos^6 x\\
&= +(1)(1)\cos^6 x - (15)(1)\cos^4 x + (15)(1)\cos^6 x + (15)(1)\cos^2 x - (15)(2)\cos^4 x + (15)(1)\cos^6 x\\
&\quad - (1)(1)\cos^0 x + (1)(3)\cos^2 x - (1)(3)\cos^4 x + (1)(1)\cos^6 x\\
&= 32\cos^6 x - 48\cos^4 x + 18\cos^2 x - 1
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos 7x &= \sum_{k=0}^{\left\lfloor\frac{7}{2}\right\rfloor}\sum_{m=0}^{k}(-1)^{k+m}\binom{n}{2k}\binom{k}{m}(\cos x)^{n-2(k-m)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{3}\sum_{m=0}^{k}(-1)^{k+m}\binom{n}{2k}\binom{k}{m}(\cos x)^{7-2(k-m)}\\
&= (-1)^0\binom{7}{0}\binom{0}{0}\cos^7 x + (-1)^1\binom{7}{2}\binom{1}{0}\cos^5 x + (-1)^2\binom{7}{2}\binom{1}{1}\cos^7 x + (-1)^2\binom{7}{4}\binom{2}{0}\cos^3 x\\
&\quad + (-1)^3\binom{7}{4}\binom{2}{1}\cos^5 x + (-1)^4\binom{7}{4}\binom{2}{2}\cos^7 x + (-1)^3\binom{7}{6}\binom{3}{0}\cos^1 x + (-1)^4\binom{7}{6}\binom{3}{1}\cos^3 x\\
&\quad + (-1)^5\binom{7}{6}\binom{3}{2}\cos^5 x + (-1)^6\binom{7}{6}\binom{3}{3}\cos^7 x\\
&= (1)(1)\cos^7 x - (21)(1)\cos^5 x + (21)(1)\cos^7 x + (35)(1)\cos^3 x\\
&\quad - (35)(2)\cos^5 x + (35)(1)\cos^7 x - (7)(1)\cos^1 x + (7)(3)\cos^3 x\\
&\quad - (7)(3)\cos^5 x + (7)(1)\cos^7 x\\
&= (1+21+35+7)\cos^7 x - (21+70+21)\cos^5 x + (35+21)\cos^3 x - (7)\cos^1 x\\
&= 64\cos^7 x - 112\cos^5 x + 56\cos^3 x - 7\cos x
\end{aligned}
$$

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure I.2: Lattice of Chebyshev polynomials $\{T_n(x) | n = 0, 1, 2, 3\}$

Note: Trigonometric expansion of $\cos(nx)$ for particular values of n can also be performed with the free software package *Maxima*™ using the syntax illustrated to the right:[4]

```
trigexpand(cos(2*x));
trigexpand(cos(3*x));
trigexpand(cos(4*x));
trigexpand(cos(5*x));
trigexpand(cos(6*x));
trigexpand(cos(7*x));
```

✏

Definition I.1.

DEF

The nth ***Chebyshev polynomial of the first kind*** *is defined as*

$$T_n(x) \triangleq \cos nx \qquad \textit{where} \qquad \cos x \triangleq x$$

Theorem I.3. [5] *Let $T_n(x)$ be a* CHEBYSHEV POLYNOMIAL *with $n \in \mathbb{W}$.*

THM

$$\begin{array}{lll} n \textit{ is } \text{EVEN} & \Longrightarrow & T_n(x) \textit{ is } \text{EVEN}. \\ n \textit{ is } \text{ODD} & \Longrightarrow & T_n(x) \textit{ is } \text{ODD}. \end{array}$$

Example I.3. Let $T_n(x)$ be a *Chebyshev polynomial* with $n \in \mathbb{W}$.

EX

$$\begin{array}{lll|lll} T_0(x) & = & 1 & T_4(x) & = & 8x^4 - 8x^2 + 1 \\ T_1(x) & = & x & T_5(x) & = & 16x^5 - 20x^3 + 5x \\ T_2(x) & = & 2x^2 - 1 & T_6(x) & = & 32x^6 - 48x^4 + 18x^2 - 1 \\ T_3(x) & = & 4x^3 - 3x & & & \end{array}$$

✎PROOF: Proof of these equations follows directly from Example I.2 (page 234). ✏

I.2 Trigonometric reduction

Theorem I.2 (page 231) showed that $\cos nx$ can be expressed as a polynomial in $\cos x$. Conversely, Theorem I.4 (next) shows that a polynomial in $\cos x$ can be expressed as a linear combination of $(\!(\cos nx)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

Theorem I.4 (trigonometric reduction)**.**

[4] maxima, pages 157–158 ⟨10.5 Trigonometric Functions⟩

[5] Rivlin (1974) page 5 ⟨(1.13)⟩, Süli and Mayers (2003) page 242 ⟨Lemma 8.2⟩, Davidson and Donsig (2010) page 222 ⟨exercise 10.7.A(a)⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure I.3: Lattice of exponential cosines $\{\cos^n x | n = 0, 1, 2, 3\}$

THM

$$\cos^n x = \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x]$$

$$= \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2^n}\binom{n}{\frac{n}{2}} + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n}{2}-1}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x] & \textit{for } n \textit{ even} \\ \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor\frac{n}{2}\rfloor}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x] & \textit{for } n \textit{ odd} \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos^n x &= \left(\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right)^n \\
&= \mathbf{R}_e\left[\left(\frac{e^{ix}+e^{-ix}}{2}\right)^n\right] \\
&= \mathbf{R}_e\left[\frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}e^{i(n-k)x}e^{-ikx}\right] \\
&= \mathbf{R}_e\left[\frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}e^{i(n-2k)x}\right] \\
&= \mathbf{R}_e\left[\frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left(\cos[(n-2k)x]+i\sin[(n-2k)x]\right)\right] \\
&= \mathbf{R}_e\left[\frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x]+i\frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\sin[(n-2k)x]\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x] \\
&= \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2^n}\binom{n}{\frac{n}{2}} + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n}{2}-1}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x] & : \quad n \text{ even} \\ \frac{1}{2^{n-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor\frac{n}{2}\rfloor}\binom{n}{k}\cos[(n-2k)x] & : \quad n \text{ odd} \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example I.4. [6]

[6] Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), page 795, Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A100257⟩, Sloane (2014) ⟨http://oeis.org/A008314⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

EX

n	$\cos^n x$	trigonometric reduction	n	$\cos^n x$	trigonometric reduction
0	$\cos^0 x$	$= 1$	4	$\cos^4 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 4x + 4\cos 2x + 3}{2^3}$
1	$\cos^1 x$	$= \cos x$	5	$\cos^5 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 5x + 5\cos 3x + 10\cos x}{2^4}$
2	$\cos^2 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 2x + 1}{2}$	6	$\cos^6 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 6x + 6\cos 4x + 15\cos 2x + 10}{2^5}$
3	$\cos^3 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 3x + 3\cos x}{2^2}$	7	$\cos^7 x$	$= \dfrac{\cos 7x + 7\cos 5x + 21\cos 3x + 35\cos x}{2^6}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos^0 x &= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos([n-2k]x)\Bigg|_{n=0}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^0}\sum_{k=0}^{0}\binom{0}{k}\cos[(0-2k)x]\\
&= \binom{0}{0}\cos[(0-2\cdot 0)x]\\
&= 1\\
\cos^1 x &= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos([n-2k]x)\Bigg|_{n=1}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^1}\sum_{k=0}^{1}\binom{1}{k}\cos[(1-2k)x]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[\binom{1}{0}\cos[(1-2\cdot 0)x] + \binom{1}{1}\cos[(1-2\cdot 1)x]\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}[1\cos x + 1\cos(-x)]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}(\cos x + \cos x)\\
&= \cos x\\
\cos^2 x &= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos([n-2k]x)\Bigg|_{n=2}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^2}\sum_{k=0}^{2}\binom{2}{k}\cos([2-2k]x)\\
&= \frac{1}{2^2}\left[\binom{2}{0}\cos([2-2\cdot 0]x) + \binom{2}{1}\cos([2-2\cdot 1]x) + \binom{2}{2}\cos([2-2\cdot 2]x) +\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2^2}[1\cos(2x) + 2\cos(0x) + 1\cos(-2x)]\\
&= \frac{1}{2^2}[\cos(2x) + 2 + \cos(2x)]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}[\cos(2x) + 1]\\
\cos^3 x &= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos([n-2k]x)\Bigg|_{n=3}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^3}\sum_{k=0}^{3}\binom{3}{k}\cos([3-2k]x)
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{1}{2^3}\left[1\cos(3x) + 3\cos(1x) + 3\cos(-1x) + 1\cos(-3x)\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^3}\left[\cos(3x) + 3\cos(x) + 3\cos(x) + \cos(3x)\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^2}\left[\cos(3x) + 3\cos(x)\right]$$

$$\cos^4 x = \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\cos([n-2k]x)\Bigg|_{n=4}$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^4}\sum_{k=0}^{4}\binom{4}{k}\cos([4-2k]x)$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^4}\left[1\cos(4x) + 4\cos(2x) + 6\cos(0x) + 4\cos(-2x) + 1\cos(-4x)\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^3}\left[\cos(4x) + 4\cos(2x) + 3\right]$$

$$\cos^5 x = \frac{1}{2^{5-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor\frac{5}{2}\rfloor}\binom{5}{k}\cos[(5-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{16}\sum_{k=0}^{2}\binom{5}{k}\cos[(5-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{16}\left[\binom{5}{0}\cos 5x + \binom{5}{1}\cos 3x + \binom{5}{2}\cos x\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{16}\left[\cos 5x + 5\cos 3x + 10\cos x\right]$$

$$\cos^6 x = \frac{1}{2^6}\binom{6}{\frac{6}{2}} + \frac{1}{2^{6-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\frac{6}{2}-1}\binom{6}{k}\cos[(6-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{2^6}\binom{6}{3} + \frac{1}{2^5}\sum_{k=0}^{2}\binom{6}{k}\cos[(6-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{64}20 + \frac{1}{32}\left[\binom{6}{0}\cos 6x + \binom{6}{1}\cos 4x\binom{6}{2}\cos 2x\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{32}\left[\cos 6x + 6\cos 4x + 15\cos 2x + 10\right]$$

$$\cos^7 x = \frac{1}{2^{7-1}}\sum_{k=0}^{\lfloor\frac{7}{2}\rfloor}\binom{7}{k}\cos[(7-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{64}\sum_{k=0}^{2}\binom{7}{k}\cos[(7-2k)x]$$
$$= \frac{1}{64}\left[\binom{7}{0}\cos 7x + \binom{7}{1}\cos 5x + \binom{7}{2}\cos 3x + \binom{7}{3}\cos x\right]$$
$$= \frac{1}{64}\left[\cos 7x + 7\cos 5x + 21\cos 3x + 35\cos x\right]$$

Note: Trigonometric reduction of $\cos^n(x)$ for particular values of n can also be performed with the free software package *Maxima*™ using the syntax illustrated to the right:[7]

```
trigreduce((cos(x))^2);
trigreduce((cos(x))^3);
trigreduce((cos(x))^4);
trigreduce((cos(x))^5);
trigreduce((cos(x))^6);
trigreduce((cos(x))^7);
```

[7] http://maxima.sourceforge.net/docs/manual/en/maxima_15.html
maxima, page 158 ⟨10.5 Trigonometric Functions⟩

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

✏

I.3 Spectral Factorization

Theorem I.5 (Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization). [8] *Let* $[0,\infty) \subsetneq \mathbb{R}$ *and*

$$\mathsf{p}\left(e^{ix}\right) \triangleq \sum_{n=-N}^{N} a_n e^{inx} \qquad \textit{(Laurent trigonometric polynomial order } 2N\textit{)}$$

$$\mathsf{q}\left(e^{ix}\right) \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{N} b_n e^{inx} \qquad \textit{(standard trigonometric polynomial order } N\textit{)}$$

THM

$$\mathsf{p}\left(e^{ix}\right) \in [0,\infty) \quad \forall x \in [0,2\pi] \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \begin{cases} \exists \left(\!\left(b_n\right)\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that} \\ \mathsf{p}\left(e^{ix}\right) = \mathsf{q}\left(e^{ix}\right)\mathsf{q}^*\left(e^{ix}\right) \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R} \end{cases}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $a_n = a_{-n}^*$ ($\left(\!\left(a_n\right)\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is *Hermitian symmetric*):
   Let $a_n \triangleq r_n e^{i\phi_n}$, $r_n, \phi_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{p}\left(e^{inx}\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n=-N}^{N} a_n e^{inx} \\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n e^{i\phi_n} e^{inx} \\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n e^{inx+\phi_n} \\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n \cos(nx+\phi_n) + i \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n \sin(nx+\phi_n) \\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n \cos(nx+\phi_n) + i \underbrace{\left[r_0 \sin(0x+\phi_0) + \sum_{n=1}^{N} r_n \sin(nx+\phi_n) + \sum_{n=1}^{N} r_{-n} \sin(-nx+\phi_{-n}) \right]}_{\text{imaginary part must equal 0 because } p(x)\in\mathbb{R}} \\
&= \sum_{n=-N}^{N} r_n \cos(nx+\phi_n) + i \underbrace{\left[r_0 \sin(\phi_0) + \sum_{n=1}^{N} r_n \sin(nx+\phi_n) - \sum_{n=1}^{N} r_{-n} \sin(nx-\phi_{-n}) \right]}_{\Longrightarrow\ r_n = r_{-n},\ \phi_n = -\phi_{-n} \ \Longrightarrow\ a_n = a_{-n}^*,\ a_0 \in \mathbb{R}}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Because the coefficients $\left(\!\left(c_n\right)\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ are *Hermitian symmetric* and by Theorem C.7 (page 150), the zeros of $P(z)$ occur in *conjugate recipricol pairs*. This means that if $\sigma \in \mathbb{C}$ is a zero of $P(z)$ ($P(\sigma) = 0$), then $\frac{1}{\sigma^*}$ is also a zero of $P(z)$ ($P\left(\frac{1}{\sigma^*}\right) = 0$). In the complex z plane, this relationship means zeros are reflected across the unit circle such that

$$\frac{1}{\sigma^*} = \frac{1}{(re^{i\phi})^*} = \frac{1}{r}\frac{1}{e^{-i\phi}} = \frac{1}{r}e^{i\phi}$$

[8] Pinsky (2002), pages 330–331

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

3. Because the zeros of $\mathsf{p}(z)$ occur in conjugate recipricol pairs, $\mathsf{p}\left(e^{ix}\right)$ can be factored:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{p}\left(e^{ix}\right) &= \mathsf{p}(z)|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= z^{-N} C \prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n) \prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(z - \frac{1}{\sigma_n^*}\right)\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= C \prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n) \prod_{n=1}^{N} z^{-1}\left(z - \frac{1}{\sigma_n^*}\right)\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= C \prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n) \prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(1 - \frac{1}{\sigma_n^*} z^{-1}\right)\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= C \prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n) \prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(z^{-1} - \sigma_n^*\right)\left(-\frac{1}{\sigma_n^*}\right)\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= \left[C \prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(-\frac{1}{\sigma_n^*}\right)\right]\left[\prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n)\right]\left[\prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(\frac{1}{z^*} - \sigma_n\right)\right]^*\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= \left[C_2 \prod_{n=1}^{N}(z-\sigma_n)\right]\left[C_2 \prod_{n=1}^{N}\left(\frac{1}{z^*} - \sigma_n\right)\right]^*\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= \mathsf{q}(z)\mathsf{q}^*\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right)\Bigg|_{z=e^{ix}} \\
&= \mathsf{q}\left(e^{ix}\right)\mathsf{q}^*\left(e^{ix}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

I.4 Dirichlet Kernel

❝Dirichlet alone, not I, nor Cauchy, nor Gauss knows what a completely rigorous proof is. Rather we learn it first from him. When Gauss says he has proved something it is clear; when Cauchy says it, one can wager as much pro as con; when Dirichlet says it, it is certain.❞

Carl Gustav Jacob Jacobi (1804–1851), Jewish-German mathematician [9]

[9] quote: Schubring (2005), page 558
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carl_Jacobi.jpg, public domain

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

The *Dirichlet Kernel* is critical in proving what is not immediately obvious in examining the Fourier Series—that for a broad class of periodic functions, a function can be recovered from (with uniform convergence) its Fourier Series analysis.

Definition I.2. [10]

DEF *The **Dirichlet Kernel** $\mathsf{D}_n \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{W}}$ with period τ is defined as*

$$\mathsf{D}_n(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}$$

Proposition I.1. [11] *Let D_n be the* DIRICHLET KERNEL *with period τ (Definition I.2 page 242).*

PRP
$$\mathsf{D}_n(x) = \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{\tau}[2n+1]x\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{\tau}x\right)}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\mathsf{D}_n(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{D}_n \qquad \text{(Definition I.2 page 242)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=0}^{2n} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(k-n)x} = \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n}{\tau}x}\sum_{k=0}^{2n} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx} = \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\sum_{k=0}^{2n}\left(e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}x}\right)^k$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n}{\tau}x}\frac{1-\left(e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}x}\right)^{2n+1}}{1-e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}x}} \qquad \text{by } \textit{geometric series} \qquad \text{(Theorem F.7 page 199)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\frac{1-e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x}}{1-e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}x}} = \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n}{\tau}x}\left(\frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x}}{e^{i\frac{\pi}{\tau}x}}\right)\frac{e^{-i\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x}-e^{i\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x}}{e^{-i\frac{\pi}{\tau}x}-e^{i\frac{\pi}{\tau}x}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}e^{-i\frac{2\pi n}{\tau}x}\left(e^{i\frac{2\pi n}{\tau}x}\right)\frac{-2i\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{-2i\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}x\right]} = \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}x\right]}$$

✏

Proposition I.2. [12] *Let D_n be the* DIRICHLET KERNEL *with period τ (Definition I.2 page 242).*

PRP
$$\int_0^\tau \mathsf{D}_n(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = 1$$

✎PROOF:

$$\int_0^\tau \mathsf{D}_n(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \triangleq \int_0^\tau \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\,\mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{D}_n \text{ (Definition I.2 page 242)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\int_{-\frac{\tau}{2}}^{\frac{\tau}{2}} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\,\mathrm{d}x$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\int_{-\frac{\tau}{2}}^{\frac{\tau}{2}} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx\right)\,\mathrm{d}x$$

[10] Katznelson (2004) page 14, Heil (2011) pages 443–444, Folland (1992), pages 33–34
[11] Katznelson (2004) page 14, Heil (2011) page 444, Folland (1992), page 34
[12] Bruckner et al. (1997) pages 620–621

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure I.4: D_n function for $N = 1, 5, 10, 20$. $\mathsf{D}_n \to$ comb. (See Proposition I.1 page 242).

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\int_{-\frac{\tau}{2}}^{\frac{\tau}{2}} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx\right)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\left.\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx\right)}{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}\right|_{-\frac{\tau}{2}}^{\frac{\tau}{2}} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\frac{\tau}{2}\right)}{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n} - \frac{\sin\left(-\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\frac{\tau}{2}\right)}{\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n}\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\tau}{2}\sum_{k=-n}^{n}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi n)}{\pi n} + \frac{\sin(\pi n)}{\pi n}\right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[2\frac{\sin(\pi n)}{\pi n}\right]_{k=0} \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Proposition I.3. *Let* D_n *be the* DIRICHLET KERNEL *with period* τ *(Definition I.2 page 242). Let* w_N *(the "*WIDTH*" of* $\mathsf{D}_n(x)$*) be the distance between the two points where the center pulse of* $\mathsf{D}_n(x)$ *intersects the* x *axis.*

PRP

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{D}_n(0) &= \frac{1}{\tau}(2n+1) \\
w_n &= \frac{2\tau}{2n+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{D}_n(0) &= \mathsf{D}_n(x)\big|_{t=0} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}t\right]}\Bigg|_{t=0} && \text{by Proposition I.1 page 242} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{dx}}\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{dx}}\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}t\right]}\Bigg|_{t=0} && \text{by } \textit{l'Hôpital's rule} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}}\frac{\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}t\right]}\Bigg|_{t=0} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}}\frac{1}{1} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}(2n+1)
\end{aligned}
$$

The center pulse of kernel $\mathsf{D}_n(x)$ intersects the x axis at

$$t = \pm\frac{\tau}{(2n+1)}$$

which implies

$$w_n = \frac{\tau}{2n+1} + \frac{\tau}{2n+1} = \frac{2\tau}{(2n+1)}.$$

✏

Proposition I.4. [13] *Let* D_n *be the* DIRICHLET KERNEL *with period* τ *(Definition I.2 page 242)*.

PRP	$\mathsf{D}_n(x) = \mathsf{D}_n(-x)$ (*D_n is an* EVEN *function*)

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{D}_n(x) &= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}t\right]} && \text{by Proposition I.1 page 242} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{-\sin\left[-\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)x\right]}{-\sin\left[-\frac{\pi}{\tau}t\right]} && \text{because } \sin x \text{ is an } \textit{odd} \text{ function} \\
&= \frac{1}{\tau}\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(2n+1)(-x)\right]}{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(-x)\right]} \\
&= \mathsf{D}_n(-x) && \text{by Proposition I.1 page 242}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

[13] Bruckner et al. (1997) pages 620–621

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

I.5 Trigonometric summations

Theorem I.6 (Lagrange trigonometric identities). [14]

THM

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx) = \frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} = \frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)+\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx) = \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)+\frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} = \frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)+\cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx) &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\Re e^{inx} = \Re\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}e^{inx} = \Re\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(e^{ix}\right)^n \\
&= \Re\left[\frac{1-e^{iNx}}{1-e^{ix}}\right] && \text{by } \textit{geometric series} \quad \text{(Theorem F.7 page 199)} \\
&= \Re\left[\left(\frac{e^{i\frac{1}{2}Nx}}{e^{i\frac{1}{2}x}}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i\frac{1}{2}Nx}-e^{i\frac{1}{2}Nx}}{e^{-i\frac{1}{2}x}-e^{i\frac{1}{2}x}}\right)\right] \\
&= \Re\left[\left(e^{i\frac{1}{2}(N-1)x}\right)\left(\frac{-i\frac{1}{2}\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}Nx\right)}{-i\frac{1}{2}\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right)\right] \\
&= \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}(N-1)x\right)\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}Nx\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right) \\
&= \frac{-\frac{1}{2}\sin\left(-\frac{1}{2}x\right)+\frac{1}{2}\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} && \text{by } \textit{product identities} \quad \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx) &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\Im e^{inx} = \Im\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}e^{inx} = \Im\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left(e^{ix}\right)^n \\
&= \Im\left[\frac{1-e^{iNx}}{1-e^{ix}}\right] && \text{by } \textit{geometric series} \quad \text{(Theorem F.7 page 199)} \\
&= \Im\left[\left(\frac{e^{i\frac{1}{2}Nx}}{e^{i\frac{1}{2}x}}\right)\left(\frac{e^{-i\frac{1}{2}Nx}-e^{i\frac{1}{2}Nx}}{e^{-ix/2}-e^{i\frac{1}{2}x}}\right)\right] \\
&= \Im\left[\left(e^{i(N-1)x/2}\right)\left(\frac{-\frac{1}{2}i\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}Nx\right)}{-\frac{1}{2}i\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

[14] Muniz (1953) page 140 ⟨"Lagrange's Trigonometric Identities"⟩, Jeffrey and Dai (2008) pages 128–130 ⟨2.4.1.6 Sines, Cosines, and Tagents of Multiple Angles; (14), (13)⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \sin\left(\frac{(N-1)x}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}Nx\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{2}\cos\left(-\frac{1}{2}x\right) - \frac{1}{2}\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \text{by } \textit{product identities} \qquad \text{(Theorem H.8 page 221)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) + \frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}$$

Note that these results (summed with indices from $n = 0$ to $n = N-1$) are compatible with Muniz (1953) page 140 (summed with indices from $n = 1$ to $n = N$) as demonstrated next:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx) = \sum_{n=1}^{N}\cos(nx) + [\cos(0x) - \cos(Nx)]$$

$$= \left[-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sin\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right] + [\cos(0x) - \cos(Nx)] \qquad \text{by Muniz (1953) page 140}$$

$$= \left(1-\frac{1}{2}\right) + \frac{\sin\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right) - 2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\cos(Nx)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sin\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right) - 2\left[\sin\left(\left[\frac{1}{2}-N\right]x\right) + \sin\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}+N\right)x\right]\right]}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \text{by Theorem H.8 page 221}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}[2N-1]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \Longrightarrow \text{above result}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx) = \sum_{n=1}^{N}\sin(nx) + [\sin(0x) - \sin(Nx)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) - \frac{\cos\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} + [0 - \sin(Nx)] \qquad \text{by Muniz (1953) page 140}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) - \frac{\cos\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right) - 2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\sin(Nx)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) - \frac{\cos\left(\left[N+\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right) - \left[\cos\left(\left[\frac{1}{2}-N\right]x\right) - \cos\left(\left[\frac{1}{2}+N\right]x\right)\right]}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) + \frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)} \qquad \Longrightarrow \text{above result}$$

✍

Theorem I.7. [15]

[15] Jeffrey and Dai (2008) pages 128–130 ⟨2.4.1.6 Sines, Cosines, and Tagents of Multiple Angles; (16) and (17)⟩

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

THM

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx+y) = \cos(y)\left[\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right]-\sin(y)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)+\frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right] \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx+y) = \cos(y)\left[\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right]+\sin(y)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)+\frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]x\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)}\right] \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx+y) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}[\cos(nx)\cos(y)-\sin(nx)\sin(y)] \qquad \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)}$$

$$= \cos(y)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx)-\sin(y)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx)$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx+y) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}[\cos(nx)\cos(y)+\sin(nx)\sin(y)] \qquad \text{by } \textit{double angle formulas} \quad \text{(Theorem H.9 page 223)}$$

$$= \cos(y)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos(nx)+\sin(y)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin(nx)$$

✏

Corollary I.1 (Summation around unit circle)**.**

THM

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)\sin\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)=0 \quad \forall\theta\in\mathbb{R},\ \forall M\in\mathbb{N}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos^2\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)=\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin^2\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)=\frac{N}{2} \quad \forall\theta\in\mathbb{R},\ \forall M\in\mathbb{N}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)$$

$$= \cos(\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)-\sin(\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) \qquad \text{by Theorem H.9 page 223}$$

$$= \cos(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)+\frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right] \qquad \text{by Theorem I.6 page 245}$$

$$= \cos(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sin\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}-2M\pi\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)-\frac{\cos\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}-2M\pi\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]$$

$$= \cos(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)-\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{M\pi}{N}\right)\right] \qquad \text{by } \textit{trigonometric periodicity} \quad \text{(Theorem H.10 page 224)}$$

$$= \cos(\theta)[0]-\sin(\theta)[0]$$

$$= 0$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\theta-\frac{\pi}{2}+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) && \text{by \textit{shift identities}} \quad \text{(Theorem H.7 page 220)}\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\phi+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) && \text{where } \phi \triangleq \theta-\frac{\pi}{2}\\
&= 0 && \text{by previous result}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)\sin\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right)\\
&= -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\left[\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right]-\left[\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right]\right)+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\left[\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right]+\left[\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right]\right) && \text{by Theorem H.8 page 221}\\
&= -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cancelto{0}{\sin(0)}+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(2\theta+\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sin(2\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\cos(2\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right) && \text{by Theorem H.9 page 223}\\
&= \cos(2\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sin\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]\frac{4M\pi}{N}\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(2\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{4M\pi}{N}\right)+\frac{\cos\left(\left[N-\frac{1}{2}\right]\frac{4M\pi}{N}\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\frac{4M\pi}{N}\right)}\right] && \text{by Theorem I.6 page 245}\\
&= \cos(2\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}-4M\pi\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(2\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)-\frac{\cos\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}-4M\pi\right)}{2\sin\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]\\
&= \cos(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\frac{\sin\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)}\right]-\sin(\theta)\left[\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)-\frac{1}{2}\cot\left(\frac{2M\pi}{N}\right)\right] && \text{by \textit{trigonometric periodicity}} \quad \text{(Theorem H.10 page 224)}\\
&= \cos(\theta)[0]-\sin(\theta)[0]\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos^2\left(\theta+\frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) &= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left[1+\cos\left(2\theta+\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)\right] && \text{by Theorem H.11 page 226}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\left[1+\cos(2\theta)\cos\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)-\sin(2\theta)\sin\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)\right] && \text{by Theorem H.9 page 223}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}1+\frac{1}{2}\cos(2\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\cos\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)-\frac{1}{2}\sin(2\theta)\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}\sin\left(\frac{4nM\pi}{N}\right)\\
&= \left[\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}1\right]+\frac{1}{2}\cos(2\theta)0-\frac{1}{2}\sin(2\theta)0 && \text{by previous results}\\
&= \frac{N}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \sin^2\left(\theta + \frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \cos^2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) && \text{by } \textit{shift identities} \text{ (Theorem H.7 page 220)} \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \cos^2\left(\phi + \frac{2nM\pi}{N}\right) && \text{where } \phi \triangleq \theta - \frac{\pi}{2} \\
&= \frac{N}{2} && \text{by previous result}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX J

FOURIER SERIES

❝ *...et la nouveauté de l'objet, jointe à son importance, a déterminé la classe à couronner cet ouvrage, en observant cependant que la manière dont l'auteur parvient à ses équations n'est pas exempte de difficultés, et que son analyse, pour les intégrer, laisse encore quelque chose à désirer, soit relativement à la généralité, soit même du coté de la rigueur.*❞

MÉMOIRE

PROPAGATION DE LA CHALEUR

DANS LES CORPS SOLIDES.

❝ *...and the innovation of the subject, together with its importance, convinced the committee to crown this work. By observing however that the way in which the author arrives at his equations is not free from difficulties, and the analysis of which, to integrate them, still leaves something to be desired, either relative to generality, or even on the side of rigour.*❞

A competition awards committee consisting of the mathematical giants Lagrange, Laplace, Legendre, and others, commenting on Fourier's 1807 landmark paper *Dissertation on the propagation of heat in solid bodies* that introduced the *Fourier Series.* [1]

J.1 Definition

The *Fourier Series* expansion of a periodic function is simply a complex trigonometric polynomial. In the special case that the periodic function is even, then the Fourier Series expansion is a cosine polynomial.

Definition J.1. [2]

DEF *The* ***Fourier Series operator*** $\hat{\mathbf{F}} : L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \to \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *is defined as*

$$\left[\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](n) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}} \int_0^{\tau} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\, \mathrm{d}x \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \left\{\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \middle| \mathsf{f} \text{ is periodic with period } \tau\right\}$$

---

[1] quote: Lagrange et al. (1812b), page 374, Lagrange et al. (1812a), page 112, Kahane (2008) page 199
translation: assisted by Google Translate, Castanedo (2005) ⟨chapter 2 footnote 5⟩
paper: Fourier (1807)

[2] Katznelson (2004) page 3

J.2 Inverse Fourier Series operator

Theorem J.1. *Let $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Series operator.*

THM

*The **inverse Fourier Series** operator $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ is given by*

$$\left[\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\!\!\left(\tilde{\mathsf{x}}_n\right)\!\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right](x) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}_n e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} \qquad \forall\left(\!\!\left(\tilde{\mathsf{x}}_n\right)\!\!\right)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF: The proof of the pointwise convergence of the Fourier Series is notoriously difficult. It was conjectured in 1913 by Nokolai Luzin that the Fourier Series for all square summable periodic functions are pointwise convergent: Luzin (1913)

Fifty-three years later (1966) at a conference in Moscow, Lennart Axel Edvard Carleson presented one of the most spectacular results ever in mathematics; he demonstrated that the Luzin conjecture is indeed correct. Carleson formally published his result that same year: Carleson (1966)

Carleson's proof is expounded upon in Reyna's (2002) 175 page book: de Reyna (2002)

Interestingly enough, Carleson started out trying to disprove Luzin's conjecture. Carleson said this in an interview published in 2001:[3]
"…the problem of course presents itself already when you are a student and I was thinking about the problem on and off, but the situation was more interesting than that. The great authority in those days was Zygmund and he was completely convinced that what one should produce was not a proof but a counter-example. When I was a young student in the United States, I met Zygmund and I had an idea how to produce some very complicated functions for a counter-example and Zygmund encouraged me very much to do so. I was thinking about it for about 15 years on and off, on how to make these counter-examples work and the interesting thing that happened was that I realised why there should be a counter-example and how you should produce it. I thought I really understood what was the background and then to my amazement I could prove that this "correct" counter-example couldn't exist and I suddenly realised that what you should try to do was the opposite, you should try to prove what was not fashionable, namely to prove convergence. The most important aspect in solving a mathematical problem is the conviction of what is the true result. Then it took 2 or 3 years using the techniques that had been developed during the past 20 years or so."

For now, if you just want some intuitive justification for the Fourier Series, and you can somehow imagine that the Dirichlet kernel generates a *comb function* of *Dirac delta* functions, then perhaps what follows may help (or not). It is certainly not mathematically rigorous and is by no means a real proof (but at least it is less than 175 pages).

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}\right](x) &= \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(x)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\,\mathrm{d}x\right]}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \text{ Definition J.1 page 251}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nu}\,\mathrm{d}u\right]e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(u)e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nu}e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(u)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n(x-u)}\,\mathrm{d}u
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Carleson and Engquist (2001), http://www.gap-system.org/~history/Biographies/Carleson.html

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(u) \underbrace{\frac{1}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}n(x-u)}}_{\lim_{N\to\infty}\mathsf{D}_n(x)} \,\mathsf{d}u$$

$$= \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(u)\left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\delta(x-u-n\tau)\right]\,\mathsf{d}u$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{u=0}^{u=\tau}\mathsf{x}(u)\delta(x-u-n\tau)\,\mathsf{d}u$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{v-n\tau=0}^{v-n\tau=\tau}\mathsf{x}(v-n\tau)\delta(x-v)\,\mathsf{d}v \qquad \text{where } v \triangleq u+n\tau$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{v=n\tau}^{v=(n+1)\tau}\mathsf{x}(v-n\tau)\delta(x-v)\,\mathsf{d}v \qquad \text{where } v \triangleq u+n\tau$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_{v=n\tau}^{v=(n+1)\tau}\mathsf{x}(v)\delta(x-v)\,\mathsf{d}v \qquad \text{because } \mathsf{x} \text{ is periodic with period } \tau$$

$$= \int_{\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{x}(v)\delta(x-v)\,\mathsf{d}v$$

$$= \mathsf{x}(x)$$

$$= \mathbf{I}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(n) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition D.3 page 156)}$$

$$\left[\hat{\mathbf{F}}\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}\right](n) = \hat{\mathbf{F}}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\right] \qquad \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\int_0^\tau\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}kx}\right]e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\,\mathsf{d}x \qquad \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \text{ (Definition J.1 page 251)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau}\int_0^\tau\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(k-n)x}\right]\,\mathsf{d}x$$

$$= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)\left[\frac{1}{\tau}\int_0^\tau e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(k-n)x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)\frac{1}{\tau}\left[\frac{1}{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(k-n)}e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}(k-n)x}\right]_0^\tau$$

$$= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)\frac{1}{i2\pi(k-n)}\left[e^{i2\pi(k-n)}-1\right]$$

$$= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(k)\,\bar{\delta}(k-n)\lim_{x\to 0}\left[\frac{e^{i2\pi x}-1}{i2\pi x}\right]$$

$$= \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(n)\left.\frac{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\left(e^{i2\pi x}-1\right)}{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}(i2\pi x)}\right|_{x=0} \qquad \text{by } \textit{l'Hôpital's rule}$$

$$= \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(n)\left.\frac{i2\pi e^{i2\pi x}}{i2\pi}\right|_{x=0}$$

$$= \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(n)$$

$$= \mathbf{I}\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(n) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{I} \text{ (Definition D.3 page 156)}$$

Theorem J.2.

CC BY-NC-ND

THM *The **Fourier Series adjoint** operator $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^*$ is given by*

$$\hat{\mathbf{F}}^* = \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \hat{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{x}(x) \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n) \right\rangle_{\mathbb{Z}} &= \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}} \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(x) e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx}\, \mathrm{d}x \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n) \right\rangle_{\mathbb{Z}} && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}} \text{ Definition J.1 page 251} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}} \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(x) \left\langle e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} \,|\, \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n) \right\rangle_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathrm{d}x && \text{by additivity property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \\
&= \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(x) \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}} \left\langle \tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n) \,|\, e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} \right\rangle_{\mathbb{Z}}^* \mathrm{d}x && \text{by property of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \\
&= \int_0^\tau \mathsf{x}(x) \left[\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n)\right]^* \mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \text{ page 252} \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{x}(x) \,|\, \underbrace{\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}}_{\hat{\mathbf{F}}^*}\tilde{\mathsf{y}}(n) \right\rangle_{\mathbb{R}}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

The Fourier Series operator has several nice properties:

- $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ is *unitary*[4] (Corollary J.1 page 254).
- Because $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary, it automatically has several other nice properties such as being *isometric*, and satisfying *Parseval's equation*, satisfying *Plancheral's formula*, and more (Corollary J.2 page 254).

Corollary J.1. *Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be the identity operator and let* $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier Series operator with adjoint* $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^*$.

COR $\hat{\mathbf{F}}\hat{\mathbf{F}}^* = \hat{\mathbf{F}}^*\hat{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}$ *($\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary…and thus also normal and isometric)*

✎PROOF: This follows directly from the fact that $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^* = \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ (Theorem J.2 (page 253)). ✏

Corollary J.2. *Let* $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier series operator,* $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^*$ *be its adjoint, and* $\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ *be its inverse.*

COR

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}(\hat{\mathbf{F}}) &= \mathcal{R}(\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}) &&= L^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \\
\left|\left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}\right|\right|\right| &= \left|\left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\right|\right|\right| &&= 1 && \text{(UNITARY)} \\
\left\langle \hat{\mathbf{F}}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \hat{\mathbf{F}}\boldsymbol{y} \right\rangle &= \left\langle \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{y} \right\rangle &&= \langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle && \text{(PARSEVAL'S EQUATION)} \\
\left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}\boldsymbol{x}\right|\right| &= \left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}\right|\right| &&= \left|\left|\boldsymbol{x}\right|\right| && \text{(PLANCHEREL'S FORMULA)} \\
\left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}\boldsymbol{x} - \hat{\mathbf{F}}\boldsymbol{y}\right|\right| &= \left|\left|\hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x} - \hat{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}\right|\right| &&= \left|\left|\boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{y}\right|\right| && \text{(ISOMETRIC)}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\hat{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary (Corollary J.1 page 254) and from the properties of unitary operators (Theorem D.24 page 179). ✏

J.3 Fourier series for compactly supported functions

Theorem J.3.

THM *The set*

$$\left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{\tau}} e^{i\frac{2\pi}{\tau}nx} \,\middle|\, n \in \mathbb{Z} \right\}$$

is an ORTHONORMAL BASIS *for all functions* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *with support in* $[0 : \tau]$.

[4] *unitary operators*: Definition D.14 page 178

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX K

FOURIER TRANSFORM

❝The analytical equations ... extend to all general phenomena. There cannot be a language more universal and more simple, more free from errors and from obscurities, ... mathematical analysis is as extensive as nature itself; ... it preserves every principle which it has once acquired; it grows and strengthens itself incessantly in the midst of the many variations and errors of the human mind. Its chief attribute is clearness; it has no marks to express confused notions. It brings together phenomena the most diverse, and discovers the hidden analogies which unite them.❞

Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) [1]

K.1 Definitions

This chapter deals with the *Fourier Transform* in the space of *Lebesgue square-integrable functions* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$, where $\mathbb{R}$ is the set of real numbers, $\mathscr{B}$ is the set of *Borel sets* on $\mathbb{R}$, μ is the standard *Borel measure* on , and

$$\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)} \triangleq \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}} \middle| \int_{\mathbb{R}} |\mathsf{f}|^2 \, \mathsf{d}\mu < \infty \right\}.$$

Furthermore, $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$ is the *inner product* induced by the operator $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{d}\mu$ such that

$$\langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{g} \rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}^*(x) \, \mathsf{d}x,$$

and $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle \right)$ is a *Hilbert space*.

Definition K.1. *Let κ be a* FUNCTION *in $\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{R}^2}$.*

DEF *The function κ is the* ***Fourier kernel*** *if* $\quad \kappa(x,\omega) \triangleq e^{i\omega x} \quad \forall_{x,\omega \in \mathbb{R}}$

Definition K.2. [2] *Let $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$ be the space of all* LEBESGUE SQUARE-INTEGRABLE FUNCTIONS.

---

[1] quote: Fourier (1878), pages 7–8 ⟨Preliminary Discourse⟩
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Fourier2.jpg, public domain

[2] Bachman et al. (2000) page 363, Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13, Loomis and Bolker (1965), page 144, Knapp (2005b) pages 374–375, Fourier (1822), Fourier (1878) page 336?

DEF *The **Fourier Transform** operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is defined as*

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x \qquad \forall \mathsf{f} \in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

*This definition of the Fourier Transform is also called the **unitary Fourier Transform**.*

Remark K.1 (**Fourier transform scaling factor**). [3] If the Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and inverse Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ are defined as

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{F}(\omega) \triangleq A \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \triangleq B \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{F}(\omega) e^{i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}\omega$$

then A and B can be any constants as long as $AB = \frac{1}{2\pi}$. The Fourier transform is often defined with the scaling factor A set equal to 1 such that $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x$. In this case, the inverse Fourier transform operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ is either defined as

- $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](f) \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{i2\pi f x}\ \mathrm{d}x$ (using oscillatory frequency free variable f) or
- $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x$ (using angular frequency free variable ω).

In short, the 2π has to show up somewhere, either in the argument of the exponential ($e^{-i2\pi f t}$) or in front of the integral ($\frac{1}{2\pi}\int \cdots$). One could argue that it is unnecessary to burden the exponential argument with the 2π factor ($e^{-i2\pi f t}$), and thus could further argue in favor of using the angular frequency variable ω thus giving the inverse operator definition $\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x$. But this causes a new problem. In this case, the Fourier operator $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is not *unitary* (see Theorem K.2 page 256)—in particular, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* \neq \mathbf{I}$, where $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ is the *adjoint* of $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$; but rather, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\right) = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\right)\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}$. But if we define the operators $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ to both have the scaling factor $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}$, then $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ are inverses *and* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is *unitary*—that is, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}$.

K.2 Operator properties

Theorem K.1 (Inverse Fourier transform). [4] *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator (Definition K.2 page 255). The inverse $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ of $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is*

THM

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\right](x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) e^{i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}\omega \qquad \forall \tilde{\mathsf{f}} \in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

Theorem K.2. *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator with inverse $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ and adjoint $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$.*

THM

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} \,\middle|\, \mathsf{g} \right\rangle &= \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\, e^{-i\omega x}\ \mathrm{d}x \,\middle|\, \mathsf{g}(\omega) \right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ page 255} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \left\langle e^{-i\omega x} \,\middle|\, \mathsf{g}(\omega) \right\rangle\ \mathrm{d}x && \text{by } \textit{additive property} \text{ of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left\langle \mathsf{g}(\omega) \,\middle|\, e^{-i\omega x} \right\rangle^*\ \mathrm{d}x && \text{by } \textit{conjugate symmetric property} \text{ of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13, Jeffrey and Dai (2008) pages xxxi–xxxii, Knapp (2005b) pages 374–375
[4] Chorin and Hald (2009) page 13

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,\middle|\, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left\langle \mathsf{g}(\omega) \,\middle|\, e^{-i\omega x} \right\rangle \right\rangle \qquad \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$$

$$= \left\langle \mathsf{f} \,\middle|\, \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*} \mathsf{g} \right\rangle \qquad \text{by Theorem K.1 page 256}$$

✏

The Fourier Transform operator has several nice properties:

- $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is *unitary*[5] (Corollary K.1—next corollary).
- Because $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary, it automatically has several other nice properties (Theorem K.3 page 257).

Corollary K.1. *Let* $\mathbf{I}$ *be the identity operator and let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier Transform operator with adjoint* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ *and inverse* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$.

COR

$$\underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \mathbf{I}}_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}} \qquad (\tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ is unitary})$$

✎PROOF: This follows directly from the fact that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^* = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}$ (Theorem K.2 page 256). ✏

Theorem K.3. *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier transform operator with adjoint* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^*$ *and inverse* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$. *Let* $|||\cdot|||$ *be the operator norm with respect to the vector norm* $\|\cdot\|$ *with respect to the Hilbert space* $\left(\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{R}}, \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$. *Let* $\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{A})$ *be the range of an operator* $\mathbf{A}$.

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{F}\tau) &= \mathcal{R}(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}) &&= L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \\
|||\tilde{\mathbf{F}}||| &= |||\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}||| &&= 1 && \text{(UNITARY)} \\
\left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} \,\middle|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g} \right\rangle &= \left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f} \,\middle|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{g} \right\rangle &&= \langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathsf{g} \rangle && \text{(PARSEVAL'S EQUATION)} \\
\left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right\| &= \left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f}\right\| &&= \|\mathsf{f}\| && \text{(PLANCHEREL'S FORMULA)} \\
\left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} - \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\right\| &= \left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{f} - \tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\mathsf{g}\right\| &&= \|\mathsf{f} - \mathsf{g}\| && \text{(ISOMETRIC)}
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF: These results follow directly from the fact that $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is unitary (Corollary K.1 page 257) and from the properties of unitary operators (Theorem D.24 page 179). ✏

Theorem K.4 (Shift relations)**.** *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the Fourier transform operator.*

THM

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x-u)](\omega) &= e^{-i\omega u}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) \\
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(e^{ivx}\mathsf{g}(x)\right)\right](\omega) &= \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega - v)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x-u)](\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x-u)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255))} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(v)e^{-i\omega(u+v)}\,\mathrm{d}v && \text{where } v \triangleq x-u \implies t = u+v \\
&= e^{-i\omega u}\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{v\in\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(v)e^{-i\omega v}\,\mathrm{d}v \\
&= e^{-i\omega u}\,\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by change of variable } t = v \\
&= e^{-i\omega u}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255))} \\
\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left(e^{ivx}\mathsf{g}(x)\right)\right](\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{ivx}\mathsf{g}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255))}
\end{aligned}$$

[5] *unitary operators*: Definition D.14 page 178

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} g(x) e^{-i(\omega - v)x} \, dx$$

$$= \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}} g(x)\right](\omega - v) \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255))}$$

✏

Theorem K.5 (Complex conjugate)**.** *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator and $*$ represent the complex conjugate operation on the set of complex numbers.*

THM

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}} f^*(-x) = -\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}} f(x)\right]^* \quad \forall f \in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

$$f \text{ is real} \implies \tilde{f}(-\omega) = \left[\tilde{f}(\omega)\right]^* \quad \forall \omega \in \mathbb{R} \qquad \text{REALITY CONDITION}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}} f^*(-x)\right](\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f^*(-x) e^{-i\omega x} \, dx \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f^*(u) e^{i\omega u} (-1) \, du \qquad \text{where } u \triangleq -x \implies dx = -\, du$$

$$= -\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f(u) e^{-i\omega u} \, du\right]^*$$

$$\triangleq -\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}} f(x)\right]^* \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}$$

$$\tilde{f}(-\omega) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f(x) e^{-i(-\omega)x} \, dx \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f^*(x) e^{-i\omega x} \, dx\right]^*$$

$$= \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int f(x) e^{-i\omega x} \, dx\right]^* \qquad \text{by } f \text{ is real hypothesis}$$

$$\triangleq \tilde{f}^*(\omega) \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}$$

✏

K.3 Convolution

Definition K.3. [6]

DEF

*The **convolution operation** is defined as*

$$[f \star g](x) \triangleq f(x) \star g(x) \triangleq \int_{u \in \mathbb{R}} f(u) g(x-u) \, du \qquad \forall f,g \in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

Theorem O.2 (next) demonstrates that multiplication in the "time domain" is equivalent to convolution in the "frequency domain" and vice-versa.

Theorem K.6 (convolution theorem)**.** [7] *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be the Fourier Transform operator and $\star$ the convolution operator.*

[6] Bachman (1964), page 6, Bracewell (1978) page 108 ⟨Convolution theorem⟩
[7] Bracewell (1978) page 110

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

THM

$$\underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big[\mathsf{f}(x)\star\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega)}_{\textit{convolution in "time domain"}} = \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\big](\omega)\,\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\big](\omega)}_{\textit{multiplication in "frequency domain"}} \qquad \forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}$$

$$\underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega)}_{\textit{multiplication in "time domain"}} = \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\big](\omega)\star\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\big](\omega)}_{\textit{convolution in "frequency domain"}} \qquad \forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in L^2_{(\mathbb{R},\mathscr{B},\mu)}.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big[\mathsf{f}(x)\star\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{g}(x-u)\,\mathrm{d}u\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \star \text{ (Definition K.3 page 258)}\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x-u)\big](\omega)\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\omega u}\,\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Theorem K.4 page 257}\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}\underbrace{\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{u\in\mathbb{R}}\mathsf{f}(u)e^{-i\omega u}\,\mathrm{d}u\right)}_{[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}](\omega)}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\big](\omega)\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\big](\omega)\,\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\big](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ (Definition K.2 page 255)}\\
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{g}(x)](\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big[\big(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\big)\,\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega) && \text{by definition of operator inverse (page 156)}\\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\big](v)e^{ivx}\,\mathrm{d}v\right)\mathsf{g}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by Theorem K.1 page 256}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\big](v)\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big(e^{ivx}\,\mathsf{g}(x)\big)\big](\omega,v)\,\mathrm{d}v\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{v\in\mathbb{R}}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x)\big](v)\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x)\big](\omega-v)\,\mathrm{d}v && \text{by Theorem K.4 page 257}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\big](\omega)\star\big[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}\big](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \star \text{ (Definition K.3 page 258)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

K.4 Real valued functions

Figure K.1: Fourier transform components of real-valued signal

Theorem K.7. *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be a function in* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\mathsf{f}(x)\ \textit{is}\ \text{REAL-VALUED}\\ (\mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}})\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{rcll}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &=& \tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(-\omega) & (\text{HERMITIAN SYMMETRIC})\\ \mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] &=& \mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & (\text{SYMMETRIC})\\ \mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right] &=& -\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)\right] & (\text{ANTI-SYMMETRIC})\\ |\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)| &=& |\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega)| & (\text{SYMMETRIC})\\ \angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &=& \angle\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(-\omega) & (\text{ANTI-SYMMETRIC}).\end{array}\right\}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{array}{lllllll}
\tilde{f}(\omega) & \triangleq & [\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f(x)](\omega) & \triangleq & \left\langle f(x) \,|\, e^{i\omega x}\right\rangle & = & \left\langle f(x) \,|\, e^{i(-\omega)x}\right\rangle^* \triangleq \tilde{f}^*(-\omega) \\
\mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{f}(\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{f}^*(-\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{R}_e\left[\tilde{f}(-\omega)\right] & & \\
\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{f}(\omega)\right] & = & \mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{f}^*(-\omega)\right] & = & -\mathbf{I}_m\left[\tilde{f}(-\omega)\right] & & \\
|\tilde{f}(\omega)| & = & |\tilde{f}^*(-\omega)| & = & |\tilde{f}(-\omega)| & & \\
\angle\tilde{f}(\omega) & = & \angle\tilde{f}^*(-\omega) & = & -\angle\tilde{f}(-\omega) & &
\end{array}$$

✏

K.5 Moment properties

Definition K.4. [8]

DEF *The quantity* M_n *is the* n***th moment*** *of a function* $f(x) \in \mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *if*

$$\mathsf{M}_n \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{W}.$$

Lemma K.1. [9] *Let* M_n *be the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition K.4 page 260) and* $\tilde{f}(\omega) \triangleq \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f\right](\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $f(x)$ *in* $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

LEM

$$\begin{array}{rcll}
\mathsf{M}_n & = & \sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\tilde{f}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} & \forall n\in\mathbb{W}, f\in\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \\
\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\tilde{f}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} & = & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n\mathsf{M}_n & \forall n\in\mathbb{W}, f\in\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}
\end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n\left[\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\tilde{f}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=0} &= \sqrt{2\pi}(i)^n\left[\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,dx\right]_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ (Definition K.2 page 255)} \\
&= (i)^n\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)\left[\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega x}\right]dx\Big|_{\omega=0} \\
&= (i)^n\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)\left[(-i)^n x^n e^{-i\omega x}\right]dx\Big|_{\omega=0} \\
&= (-i^2)^n\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)x^n\,dx \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)x^n\,dx \\
&\triangleq \mathsf{M}_n && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{M}_n \text{ (Definition K.4 page 260)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma K.2. [10] *Let* M_n *be the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition K.4 page 260) and* $\tilde{f}(\omega) \triangleq \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}f\right](\omega)$ *the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $f(x)$ *in* $\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

LEM

$$\mathsf{M}_n = 0 \quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n\tilde{f}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}$$

✎PROOF:

[8] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83

[9] Goswami and Chan (1999), pages 38–39

[10] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid x^n \rangle && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}(-i)^{-n}\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by Lemma K.1 page 260}\\
&\Longrightarrow \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\left[(-i)^n x^n e^{-i\omega x}\right]\,\mathsf{d}x\Big|_{\omega=0}\\
&= (-i)^n\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)x^n\,\mathsf{d}x\\
&= (-i)^n\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid x^n\rangle && \text{by definition of } \langle\cdot\mid\cdot\rangle \text{ in } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} \text{ (Definition E.1 page 183)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma K.3 (Strang-Fix condition). [11] *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be a function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* M_n *the* nTH MOMENT *(Definition K.4 page 260) of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$. *Let* $\mathbf{T}$ *be the* TRANSLATION OPERATOR *(Definition 1.3 page 2).*

LEM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^k x^n \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{M}_n}_{\text{STRANG-FIX CONDITION in “time”}} \quad\Longleftrightarrow\quad \underbrace{\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=2\pi k} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n\bar{\delta}_k\mathsf{M}_n}_{\text{STRANG-FIX CONDITION in “frequency”}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx}\bar{\delta}_k\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx}\bar{\delta}_k && \text{by Definition K.2 page 255}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)(-ix)^n e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx}\bar{\delta}_k\\
&= (-i)^n\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n\mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{i2\pi kx}\bar{\delta}_k\\
&= (-i)^n\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}(x-k)^n\mathsf{f}(x-k)\bar{\delta}_k && \text{by } PSF \text{ (Theorem 1.2 page 10)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n\bar{\delta}_k\mathsf{M}_n && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

[11] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), pages 16–17, Sweldens and Piessens (1993), page 2, Vidakovic (1999), page 83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–243, Fix and Strang (1969)

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}(-i)^n \mathsf{M}_n &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[(-i)^n \bar{\delta}_k \mathsf{M}_n\right] e^{-i2\pi kx} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx} && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\left[\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}\omega}\right]^n \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)(-ix)^n e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx}\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\int_{\mathbb{R}} x^n \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=2\pi k} e^{-i2\pi kx}\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (x-k)^n \mathsf{f}(x-k) && \text{by } PSF && \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

K.6 Examples

Example K.1 (rectangular pulse). Let $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier transform* of a function $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \begin{cases} c & \text{for } x \in [a : b)\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{cases} \qquad \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{c(b-a)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}\right]$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathsf{f}\left(x - \frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by } \textit{shift relation} && \text{(Theorem K.4 page 257)}\\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\mathbb{1}_{[a:b)}\left(x - \frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\mathbb{1}_{\left[-\frac{b-a}{2}:\frac{b-a}{2}\right)}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \int_{\mathbb{R}} c\mathbb{1}_{\left[-\frac{b-a}{2}:\frac{b-a}{2}\right)}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \int_{-\frac{b-a}{2}}^{\frac{b-a}{2}} c e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathsf{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}\\
&= \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \frac{1}{-i\omega} e^{-i\omega x}\Bigg|_{-\frac{b-a}{2}}^{\frac{b-a}{2}}\\
&= \frac{2c}{\sqrt{2\pi}\omega} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \left[\frac{e^{i\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)} - e^{-i\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}}{2i}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{c(b-a)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)} \right]$$ by *Euler formulas* (Corollary H.2 page 219)

✏

Example K.2 (triangle). Let $\tilde{f}(\omega)$ be the *Fourier transform* of a function $f(x) \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

EX

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} c\left[1 - \frac{|2x-b-a|}{b-a}\right] & \text{for } x \in [a : b) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \tilde{f}(\omega) = \frac{c(b-a)^2}{4\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)} \right]^2$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{f}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}[f(x)](\omega) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{f}(\omega) \\
&= e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\omega} \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[f\left(x - \frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right](\omega) && \text{by } \textit{shift relation} \quad \text{(Theorem K.4 page 257)} \\
&= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[c\left(1 - \frac{|2x-b-a|}{b-a}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[a:b)}(x)\right](\omega) && \text{by definition of } f(x) \\
&= c\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}(x) \star \mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}(x)\right](\omega) \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right]\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right] && \text{by } \textit{convolution theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem O.2 page 342)} \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\left(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{\left[\frac{a}{2}:\frac{b}{2}\right)}\right]\right)^2 \\
&= c\sqrt{2\pi}\left(\frac{\left(\frac{b}{2}-\frac{a}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{4}\omega\right)}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}\right]\right)^2 && \text{by } \textit{Rectangular pulse} \text{ ex.} \quad \text{Example K.1 page 262} \\
&= \frac{c(b-a)^2}{4\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{4}\omega\right)}\right]^2
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example K.3. Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition H.2 page 213) as follows:

EX

$$f(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } |x| \le 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \qquad \tilde{f}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\mathrm{sinc}(\omega)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega+\pi)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega-\pi)}\right]$$

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1) on a set A.

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &\triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \text{ (Definition K.2)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition 1.2)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} \left[\frac{e^{i\frac{\pi}{2}x}+e^{-i\frac{\pi}{2}x}}{2}\right]^2 e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by Corollary H.2 page 219}\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} \left[2+e^{i\pi x}+e^{-i\pi x}\right]e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{-1}^{1} 2e^{-i\omega x}+e^{-i(\omega+\pi)x}+e^{-i(\omega-\pi)x}\,\mathrm{d}x\\
&= \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[2\frac{e^{-i\omega x}}{-i\omega}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega+\pi)x}}{-i(\omega+\pi)}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega-\pi)x}}{-i(\omega-\pi)}\right]_{-1}^{1}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[2\frac{e^{-i\omega}-e^{+i\omega}}{-2i\omega}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega+\pi)}-e^{+i(\omega+\pi)}}{-2i(\omega+\pi)}+\frac{e^{-i(\omega-\pi)}-e^{+i(\omega-\pi)}}{-2i(\omega-\pi)}\right]_{-1}^{1}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\mathrm{sinc}(\omega)}+\underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega+\pi)}+\underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega-\pi)}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX L

LINEAR COMBINATIONS

L.1 Linear combinations in linear spaces

A *linear space* (Definition D.1 page 155) in general is not equipped with a *topology*. Without a topology, it is not possible to determine whether an *infinite sum* (Definition G.1 page 202) of vectors converges. Therefore in this section (dealing with linear spaces), all definitions related to sums of vectors will be valid for *finite* sums(Definition F.1 page 187) only (finite "N").

Definition L.1. [1] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* LINEAR SPACE $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$.

DEF

A vector $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$ *is a* ***linear combination*** *of the vectors in* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *if*

there exists $\left\{ \alpha_n \in \mathbb{F} \middle|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *such that* $\quad \boldsymbol{x} = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$.

Definition L.2. [2] *Let* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$ *be a linear space and* Y *be a subset of* X.

DEF

The ***linear span*** *of* Y *is defined as* $\quad \operatorname{span} Y \triangleq \left\{ \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \alpha_\gamma \boldsymbol{y}_\gamma \middle| \alpha_\gamma \in \mathbb{F},\ \boldsymbol{y}_\gamma \in Y \right\}$.

The set Y ***spans*** *a set* A *if* $\quad A \subseteq \operatorname{span} Y$.

Proposition L.1. [3] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* LINEAR SPACE $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$.

PRP

1. $\operatorname{span}\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is a* LINEAR SPACE *(Definition D.1 page 155) and*
2. $\operatorname{span}\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is a* LINEAR SUBSPACE *of* $\boldsymbol{L}$.

Definition L.3. [4] *Let* $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times})\right)$ *be a* LINEAR SPACE.

DEF

The set $Y \triangleq \left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *is* ***linearly independent*** *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$ *if*

$$\left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n = 0 \right\} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \left\{ \alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \cdots = \alpha_N = 0 \right\}.$$

The set Y *is* ***linearly dependent*** *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$ *if* Y *is not linearly independent in* $\boldsymbol{L}$.

[1] Berberian (1961) page 11 ⟨Definition I.4.1⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 46

[2] Michel and Herget (1993) page 86 ⟨3.3.7 Definition⟩, Kurdila and Zabarankin (2005) page 44, Searcóid (2002) page 71 ⟨Definition 3.2.5—more general definition⟩

[3] Kubrusly (2001) page 46

[4] Bachman and Narici (1966) pages 3–4, Christensen (2003) page 2, Heil (2011) page 156 ⟨Definition 5.7⟩

Figure L.1: Lattice of *linear combinations*

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Definition L.4. [5] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* LINEAR SPACE $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$.

DEF

The set $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is a* ***Hamel basis*** *for* $\boldsymbol{L}$ *if*

1. $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ SPANS $\boldsymbol{L}$ (Definition L.2 page 265) *and*
2. $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is* LINEARLY INDEPENDENT *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$ (Definition L.1 page 265) .

A HAMEL BASIS *is also called a* ***linear basis***.

Definition L.5. [6] *Let* $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$ *be a* LINEAR SPACE. *Let* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *be a* VECTOR *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$ *and* $Y \triangleq \{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ *be a set of vectors in* $\boldsymbol{L}$.

DEF

The expression $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$ *is the* ***expansion*** *of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *on* Y *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$ *if* $\quad \boldsymbol{x} = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$.

In this case, the sequence $(\!(\alpha_n)\!)_{n=1}^{N}$ *is the* ***coordinates*** *of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *with respect to* Y *in* $\boldsymbol{L}$.

If $\alpha_N \neq 0$, *then* N *is the* ***dimension*** $\dim \boldsymbol{L}$ *of* $\boldsymbol{L}$.

Theorem L.1. [7] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ *be a* HAMEL BASIS (Definition L.4 page 267) *for a* LINEAR SPACE $(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$.

THM

$$\left\{\boldsymbol{x} = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \beta_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right\} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\alpha_n = \beta_n \quad \forall n=1,2,\ldots,N}_{\text{coordinates of } \boldsymbol{x} \text{ are UNIQUE}} \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{0} &= \boldsymbol{x} - \boldsymbol{x} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \beta_n \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N} (\alpha_n - \beta_n) \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&\Longrightarrow \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is } \textit{linearly dependent} \text{ if } (\alpha_n - \beta_n) \neq 0 \qquad \forall n = 1, 2, \ldots, N \\
&\Longrightarrow (\alpha_n - \beta_n) = 0 \qquad \forall n = 1, 2, \ldots, N \qquad \text{(because } \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is a } \textit{basis} \text{ and therefore must be } \textit{linearly independent}) \\
&\Longrightarrow \alpha_n = \beta_n \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \ldots, N
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem L.2. [8] *Let* $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$ *be a* LINEAR SPACE.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\} \textit{ is a } \text{HAMEL BASIS} \textit{ for } \boldsymbol{L} \\ 2. & \{\boldsymbol{y}_n \in X \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\} \textit{ is a set of } \text{LINEARLY INDEPENDENT} \textit{ vectors in } \boldsymbol{L} \end{array}\right\} \text{ and}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & M \leq N \\ 2. & M = N \Longrightarrow \{\boldsymbol{y}_n \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\} \textit{ is a } \text{BASIS} \textit{ for } \boldsymbol{L} \\ 3. & M \neq N \Longrightarrow \{\boldsymbol{y}_n \mid_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\} \textit{ is } \text{NOT} \textit{ a basis for } \boldsymbol{L} \end{array}\right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{and} \\ \text{and} \\ \end{array}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}$:

[5] Hamel (1905), Bachman and Narici (1966) page 4, Kubrusly (2001) pages 48–49 ⟨Section 2.4⟩, Young (2001) page 1, Carothers (2005) page 25, Heil (2011) page 125 ⟨Definition 4.1⟩

[6] Hamel (1905), Bachman and Narici (1966) page 4, Kubrusly (2001) pages 48–49 ⟨Section 2.4⟩, Young (2001) page 1, Carothers (2005) page 25, Heil (2011) page 125 ⟨Definition 4.1⟩

[7] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 89–90 ⟨Theorem 3.3.25⟩

[8] Michel and Herget (1993) pages 90–91 ⟨Theorem 3.3.26⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

(a) Proof that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ *spans* $\boldsymbol{L}$:

i. Because $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ is a *basis* for $\boldsymbol{L}$, there exists $\beta \in \mathbb{F}$ and $\{\alpha_n \in \mathbb{F}|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ such that

$$\beta \boldsymbol{y}_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n = 0.$$

ii. Select an n such that $\alpha_n \neq 0$ and renumber (if necessary) the above indices such that

$$\boldsymbol{x}_n = -\frac{\beta}{\alpha_n}\boldsymbol{y}_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \frac{\alpha_n}{\alpha_n}\boldsymbol{x}_n.$$

iii. Then, for any $\boldsymbol{y} \in X$, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}
\boldsymbol{y} &= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \gamma_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \gamma_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) + \gamma_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left(-\frac{\beta}{\alpha_n}\boldsymbol{y}_1 - \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \frac{\alpha_n}{\alpha_n}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) \\
&= -\frac{\beta\gamma_n}{\alpha_n}\boldsymbol{y}_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{N-1}\left(\gamma_n - \frac{\alpha_n\gamma_n}{\alpha_n}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \delta \boldsymbol{y}_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \delta_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{x}_n
\end{aligned}$$

iv. This implies that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ *spans* $\boldsymbol{L}$:

(b) Proof that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ is *linearly independent*:

i. If $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ is *linearly dependent*, then there exists $\{\epsilon, \epsilon_1, \ldots, \epsilon_{N-1}\}$ such that

$$\epsilon \boldsymbol{y}_1 + \left(\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \epsilon_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{x}_n\right) + 0\boldsymbol{x}_n = 0.$$

ii. item (1(b)i) implies that the coordinate of $\boldsymbol{y}_1$ associated with $\boldsymbol{x}_n$ *is* 0.

$$\boldsymbol{y}_1 = -\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} \frac{\epsilon_n}{\epsilon}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right) + 0\boldsymbol{x}_n = 0.$$

iii. item (1(a)i) implies that the coordinate of $\boldsymbol{y}_1$ associated with $\boldsymbol{x}_n$ is *not* 0.

$$\boldsymbol{y}_1 = -\sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\alpha_n}{\beta}\boldsymbol{x}_n.$$

iv. This implies that item (1(b)i) (that the set is linearly dependent) is *false* because item (1(b)ii) and item (1(b)iii) *contradict* each other.

v. This implies $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1}\}$ is *linearly independent*.

2. Proof that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-2}\}$ is a *basis*: Repeat item (1).

3. Suppose $m = n$. Proof that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_1, \boldsymbol{y}_2, \ldots, \boldsymbol{y}_M\}$ is a *basis*: Repeat item (1) $M-1$ times.

4. Proof that $M \not> N$:

(a) Suppose that $M = N+1$.

(b) Then because $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ is a *basis*, there exists $\{\zeta_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N+1}\}$ such that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N+1} \zeta_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{y}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} = 0.$$

(c) This implies that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N+1}\}$ is *linearly dependent*.

(d) This implies that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N+1}\}$ is *not* a basis.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(e) This implies that $M \not> N$.

5. Proof that $M \neq N \implies \{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\}$ is *not* a basis for $\boldsymbol{L}$:

   (a) Proof that $M > N \implies \{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\}$ is *not* a basis for $\boldsymbol{L}$: same as in item (4).

   (b) Proof that $M < N \implies \{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\}$ is *not* a basis for $\boldsymbol{L}$:

      i. Suppose $m = N - 1$.

      ii. Then $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N-1}\}$ is a *basis* and there exists λ such that
      $$\sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \boldsymbol{y}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} = 0.$$

      iii. This implies that $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\}$ is *linearly dependent* and is *not* a basis.

      iv. But this contradicts item (3), therefore $M \neq N - 1$.

      v. Because $M = N$ yields a basis but $M = N - 1$ does not, $M < N - 1$ also does not yield a basis.

✏

Corollary L.1. [9] *Let* $\boldsymbol{L} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}))$ *be a linear space.*

COR
$$\underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\} \text{ is a HAMEL BASIS for } \boldsymbol{L} \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \{\boldsymbol{y}_n \in X|_{n=1,2,\ldots,M}\} \text{ is a HAMEL BASIS for } \boldsymbol{L} \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{(all Hamel bases for } \boldsymbol{L} \text{ have the same number of vectors)}} \implies \{N = M\}$$

✎PROOF: This follows from Theorem L.2 (page 267). ✏

L.2 Bases in topological linear spaces

A linear space supports the concept of the *span* of a set of vectors (Definition L.2 page 265). In a topological linear space $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \boldsymbol{T})$, a set A is said to be *total* in $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ if the span of A is *dense* in $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$. In this case, A is said to be a *total set* or a *complete set*. However, this use of "complete" in a "*complete set*" is not equivalent to the use of "complete" in a "*complete metric space*" .[10] In this text, except for these comments and Definition L.6, "complete" refers to the metric space definition only.

If a set is both *total* and *linearly independent* (Definition L.3 page 265) in $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$, then that set is a *Hamel basis* (Definition L.4 page 267) for $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$.

Definition L.6. [11] *Let* A^- *be the* CLOSURE *of a* A *in a* TOPOLOGICAL LINEAR SPACE $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \boldsymbol{T})$ *Let* $\operatorname{span} A$ *be the* SPAN *(Definition L.2 page 265) of a set* A.

DEF *A set of vectors* A *is* ***total*** *(or* ***complete*** *or* ***fundamental****) in* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *if*
$$(\operatorname{span} A)^- = \boldsymbol{\Omega} \qquad \text{(SPAN of } A \text{ is DENSE in } \boldsymbol{\Omega}\text{)}.$$

[9] Kubrusly (2001) page 52 ⟨Theorem 2.7⟩, Michel and Herget (1993) page 91 ⟨Theorem 3.3.31⟩

[10] Haaser and Sullivan (1991) pages 296–297 ⟨6·Orthogonal Bases⟩, Rynne and Youngson (2008) page 78 ⟨Remark 3.50⟩, Heil (2011) page 21 ⟨Remark 1.26⟩

[11] Young (2001) page 19 ⟨Definition 1.5.1⟩, Sohrab (2003) page 362 ⟨Definition 9.2.3⟩, Gupta (1998) page 134 ⟨Definition 2.4⟩, Bachman and Narici (1966) pages 149–153 ⟨Definition 9.3, Theorems 9.9 and 9.10⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

L.3 Schauder bases in Banach spaces

Definition L.7. [12] *Let* $\boldsymbol{B} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$ *be a* BANACH SPACE. *Let* $\stackrel{\star}{=}$ *represent* STRONG CONVERGENCE *(Definition G.5 page 209) in* $\boldsymbol{B}$.

DEF

The countable set $\big\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \big|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\big\}$ *is a* ***Schauder basis*** *for* $\boldsymbol{B}$ *if for each* $\boldsymbol{x} \in X$

1. $\exists\, (\!(\alpha_n \in \mathbb{F})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ such that $\boldsymbol{x} \stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$ *(STRONG CONVERGENCE in* $\boldsymbol{B}$*) and*
2. $\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n \stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \beta_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right\} \implies \big\{(\!(\alpha_n)\!) = (\!(\beta_n)\!)\big\}$ *(COEFFICIENT FUNCTIONALS are UNIQUE)*

In this case, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$ *is the* ***expansion*** *of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *on* $\big\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \big|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\big\}$ *and*
the elements of $(\!(\alpha_n)\!)$ *are the* ***coefficient functionals*** *associated with the basis* $\big\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\big\}$.
Coefficient functionals are also called ***coordinate functionals***.

In a Banach space, the existence of a Schauder basis implies that the space is *separable* (Theorem L.3 page 270). The question of whether the converse is also true was posed by Banach himself in 1932,[13] and became know as "*The basis problem*". This remained an open question for many years. The question was finally answered some 41 years later in 1973 by Per Enflo (University of California at Berkley), with the answer being "no". Enflo constructed a counterexample in which a separable Banach space does *not* have a Schauder basis.[14] Life is simpler in Hilbert spaces where the converse *is* true: a Hilbert space has a Schauder basis *if and only if* it is separable (Theorem L.11 page 283).

Theorem L.3. [15] *Let* $\boldsymbol{B} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \|\cdot\|\big)$ *be a* BANACH SPACE. *Let* $\mathbb{Q}$ *be the field of rational numbers.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \boldsymbol{B} \text{ has a SCHAUDER BASIS and} \\ 2. & \mathbb{Q} \text{ is DENSE in } \mathbb{F}. \end{array}\right\} \implies \big\{\, \boldsymbol{B} \text{ is SEPARABLE} \,\big\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma:

$$\left|\left\{\boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \exists\, (\!(\alpha_n \mathbb{Q})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \lim_{N\to\infty} \left\|\boldsymbol{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| = 0\right\}\right| = |\,\mathbb{Q}\times\mathbb{N}\,|$$
$$= |\,\mathbb{Z}\times\mathbb{Z}\,|$$
$$= |\,\mathbb{Z}\,|$$
$$= \textit{countably infinite}$$

[12] Carothers (2005) pages 24–25, Christensen (2003) pages 46–49 ⟨Definition 3.1.1 and page 49⟩, Young (2001) page 19 ⟨Section 6⟩, Singer (1970), page 17, Schauder (1927), Schauder (1928)
[13] Banach (1932a), page 111
[14] Enflo (1973), Lindenstrauss and Tzafriri (1977) pages 84–95 ⟨Section 2.d⟩
[15] Bachman et al. (2000) page 112 ⟨3.4.8⟩, Giles (2000) page 17, Heil (2011) page 21 ⟨Theorem 1.27⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. remainder of proof:

$\boldsymbol{B}$ has a *Schauder basis* $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$

$$\Longrightarrow \text{ for every } \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{B}\text{, there exists } (\!(\alpha_n\in\mathbb{F})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \boldsymbol{x} \doteq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n \qquad \text{by Definition L.7 page 270}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \text{ for every } \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{B}\text{, there exists } (\!(\alpha_n\in\mathbb{F})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \lim_{N\to\infty}\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| = 0 \qquad \text{by Definition G.5}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \text{ for every } \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{B}\text{, there exists } (\!(\alpha_n\in\mathbb{Q})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \lim_{N\to\infty}\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| = 0 \qquad \text{because } \mathbb{Q}^{-}=\mathbb{F}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \boldsymbol{B} = \left\{\boldsymbol{x}\,|\,\exists\,(\!(\alpha_n\mathbb{Q})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \lim_{N\to\infty}\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| = 0\right\}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \boldsymbol{B} = \left\{\boldsymbol{x}\,|\,\exists\,(\!(\alpha_n\mathbb{Q})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \text{ such that } \boldsymbol{x} = \lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\}^{-}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \boldsymbol{B} \text{ is } \textit{separable} \qquad \text{by (1) lemma page 270}$$

✏

Definition L.8. [16] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\}$ *and* $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\}$ *be* SCHAUDER BASES *of a* BANACH SPACE $\big(X,+,\cdot,(\mathbb{F},\dot{+},\dot{\times}),\|\cdot\|\big)$.

DEF

$\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is* ***equivalent*** *to* $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}$
if there exists a BOUNDED INVERTIBLE *operator* $\mathbf{R}$ *in* $\boldsymbol{X}^{\boldsymbol{X}}$ *such that* $\quad \mathbf{R}\boldsymbol{x}_n = \boldsymbol{y}_n \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}$

Theorem L.4. [17] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\}$ *and* $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n|_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\}$ *be* SCHAUDER BASES *of a* BANACH SPACE $\big(X,+,\cdot,(\mathbb{F},\dot{+},\dot{\times}),\|\cdot\|\big)$.

THM

$$\{\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is EQUIVALENT to } \{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}\}$$
$$\Longleftrightarrow \quad \left\{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n \text{ is CONVERGENT} \Longleftrightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{y}_n \text{ is CONVERGENT}\right\}$$

Lemma L.1. [18] *Let* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \big(X,+,\cdot,(\mathbb{F},\dot{+},\dot{\times}),\boldsymbol{T}\big)$ *be a topological linear space. Let* $\operatorname{span}A$ *be the* SPAN *of a set* A *(Definition L.2 page 265). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORMS *(Definition K.2 page 255) of the functions* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *and* $\mathsf{g}(x)$*, respectively, in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183). Let* $\breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\boldsymbol{\ell}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

LEM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll}(1). & \{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\} \text{ is a SCHAUDER BASIS for } \boldsymbol{\Omega} \quad \text{and}\\ (2). & \{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\} \text{ is a SCHAUDER BASIS for } \boldsymbol{\Omega}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\exists\,(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \text{such that}\\ \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: Let $\boldsymbol{V}_0'$ be the space spanned by $\{\mathbf{T}^n\phi|_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) &\triangleq \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \qquad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}\\ &= \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}a_n\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g} && \text{by (2)}\\ &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}a_n\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathbf{T}\mathsf{g}\end{aligned}$$

[16] Young (2001) page 25 ⟨Definition 1.8.1, Theorem 1.8.7⟩
[17] Young (2001) page 25 ⟨Definition 1.8.1, Theorem 1.8.7⟩
[18] Daubechies (1992), page 140

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}}_{\check{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)} \underbrace{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}}_{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)} \qquad \text{by Corollary 1.1 page 9}$$

$$= \check{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) \qquad \text{by definition of } \check{\mathbf{F}} \text{ and } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{by (Definition P.1 page 353, Definition K.2 page 255)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
V_0 &\triangleq \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{g}(x) \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) = \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{g}(x) \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega) \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \right\} \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathsf{c}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \right\} \qquad \text{where } \tilde{\mathsf{c}}(\omega) \triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)\check{\mathsf{a}}(\omega) \\
&= \left\{ \mathsf{f}(x) | \mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{c}_n \mathsf{f}(x-n) \right\} \\
&\triangleq V_0'
\end{aligned}$$

✏

L.4 Linear combinations in inner product spaces

Definition L.9. *Let* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle\right)$ *be an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)*.

DEF *Two vectors* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *and* $\boldsymbol{y}$ *in* X *are* ***orthogonal*** *if*

$$\langle \boldsymbol{x} \,|\, \boldsymbol{y} \rangle = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } \boldsymbol{x} \neq \boldsymbol{y} \\ c \in \mathbb{F}\backslash 0 & \text{for } \boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{y} \end{cases}$$

In an *inner product space*, *orthogonality* is a special case of *linear independence*; or alternatively, linear independence is a generalization of orthogonality (next theorem).

Theorem L.5. [19] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \,\middle|\, {\scriptstyle n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle\right)$.

THM

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is ORTHOGONAL} \\ \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)} \end{array} \right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is LINEARLY INDEPENDENT} \\ \text{(Definition L.1 page 265)} \end{array} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof using *Pythagorean theorem*:
   Let $(\alpha_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence with at least one nonzero element.

[19] Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 283 ⟨Corollary 32.8⟩, Kubrusly (2001) page 352 ⟨Proposition 5.34⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n x_n\right\|^2 &= \sum_{n=1}^{N}\|\alpha_n x_n\|^2 && \text{by left hypoth. and } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{N}|\alpha_n|^2\,\|x_n\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)} \\
&> 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n x_n &\neq 0 \\
\Longrightarrow (x_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} &\text{ is } \textit{linearly independent} && \text{by definition of } \textit{linear independence} && \text{(Definition L.3 page 265)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Alternative proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n x_n = \mathbb{0} &\Longrightarrow \left\langle \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n x_n \mid x_m\right\rangle = \langle \mathbb{0} \mid x_m\rangle \\
&\Longrightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\langle x_n \mid x_m\rangle = 0 \\
&\Longrightarrow \sum_{n=1}^{N}\alpha_n\bar{\delta}(k-m) = 0 \\
&\Longrightarrow \alpha_m = 0 \qquad \text{for } m = 1,2,\ldots,N
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem L.6 (Bessel's Equality). [20] *Let* $\left\{x_n \in X \,\middle|\, {}_{n=1,2,\ldots,N}\right\}$ *be a set of vectors in an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\right)$ *and with* $\|x\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle x \mid x\rangle}$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\{x_n\} \textit{ is } \text{ORTHONORMAL} \\ \textit{(Definition L.9 page 272)}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\underbrace{\left\|x - \sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\right\|^2}_{\textit{approximation error}} = \|x\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^{N}|\langle x \mid x_n\rangle|^2 \quad \forall x\in X\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left\|x - \sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\right\|^2 \\
&= \|x\|^2 + \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\right\|^2 - 2\Re\left\langle x \,\middle|\, \sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{polar identity} \\
&= \|x\|^2 + \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\right\|^2 - 2\Re\left[\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle\right)^*\langle x \mid x_n\rangle\right] && \text{by property of } \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \|x\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N}\|\langle x \mid x_n\rangle x_n\|^2 - 2\Re\left[\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle x \mid x_n\rangle\right)^*\langle x \mid x_n\rangle\right] && \text{by } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem}
\end{aligned}$$

[20] Bachman et al. (2000) page 103, Pedersen (2000) pages 38–39

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left\|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 - 2\Re\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^* \ \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right)$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \underbrace{\left\|\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2}_{1} - 2\Re\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^* \ \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right) \quad \text{by property of } \|\cdot\| \quad \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \cdot 1 - 2\Re\left(\sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^* \ \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right) \quad \text{by def. of } \textit{orthonormality} \quad \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)}$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 - 2\Re \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 - 2 \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \quad \text{because } |\cdot| \text{ is real}$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2$$

✏

Theorem L.7 (Bessel's inequality). [21] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \,\middle|\, {\scriptstyle n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ *and with* $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.

THM

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \textit{ is } \text{ORTHONORMAL} \\ \textit{(Definition L.9 page 272)} \end{array} \right\} \implies \left\{ \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \ \leq \ \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in X \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$0 \leq \left\| \boldsymbol{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 \quad \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \quad \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}$$

$$= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \quad \text{by } \textit{Bessel's Equality} \quad \text{(Theorem L.6 page 273)}$$

✏

The *Best Approximation Theorem* (next) shows that

- the best sequence for representing a vector is the sequence of projections of the vector onto the sequence of basis functions
- the error of the projection is orthogonal to the projection.

Theorem L.8 (Best Approximation Theorem). [22] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \,\middle|\, {\scriptstyle n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)* $\left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ *and with* $\|\boldsymbol{x}\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle}$.

[21] Giles (2000) pages 54–55 ⟨3.13 Bessel's inequality⟩, Bollobás (1999) page 147, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) page 284

[22] Walter and Shen (2001), pages 3–4, Pedersen (2000), page 39, Edwards (1995), pages 94–100, Weyl (1940)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}\ \textit{is}\\ \text{ORTHONORMAL}\\ \textit{(Definition L.9 page 272)}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{lll} 1. & \arg\min\limits_{(\!(\alpha_n)\!)_{n=1}^N} \left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum\limits_{n=1}^N \alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| = \underbrace{(\!(\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle)\!)_{n=1}^N}_{\textit{best } \alpha_n=\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle} & \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in X \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \underbrace{\left(\sum\limits_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)}_{\textit{approximation}} \perp \underbrace{\left(\boldsymbol{x}-\sum\limits_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right)}_{\textit{approximation error}} & \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in X \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(\!(\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle)\!)$ is the best sequence:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - 2\Re\left\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle + \left\|\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - 2\Re\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right) + \sum_{n=1}^N \|\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\|^2 \qquad \text{by } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - 2\Re\left(\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right) + \sum_{n=1}^N |\alpha_n|^2 + \underbrace{\left[\sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2\right]}_{0}\\
&= \left[\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2\right] + \sum_{n=1}^N \left[|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 - 2\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{e}}\left[\alpha_n^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right] + |\alpha_n|^2\right]\\
&= \left[\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2\right] + \sum_{n=1}^N \left[|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 - \alpha_n^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle - \alpha_n\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^* + |\alpha_n|^2\right]\\
&= \left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle - \alpha_n|^2 \qquad \text{by } \textit{Bessel's Equality} \qquad \text{(Theorem L.6 page 273)}\\
&\geq \left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that the approximation and approximation error are orthogonal:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n \,\middle|\, \boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n \,\middle|\, \boldsymbol{x}\right\rangle - \left\langle \sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n \,\middle|\, \sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle - \sum_{n=1}^N\sum_{m=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_m\rangle^*\langle\boldsymbol{x}_n\mid\boldsymbol{x}_m\rangle\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^N\sum_{m=1}^N \langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_m\rangle^*\,\bar{\delta}_{nm}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^N |\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

L.5 Orthonormal bases in Hilbert spaces

Definition L.10. *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n=1,2,\ldots,N} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)* $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$.

DEF

The set $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is an* ***orthogonal basis*** *for* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *if* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is* ORTHOGONAL *and is a* SCHAUDER BASIS *for* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$.

The set $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is an* ***orthonormal basis*** *for* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ *if* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\}$ *is* ORTHONORMAL *and is a* SCHAUDER BASIS *for* $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$.

Definition L.11. [23] *Let* $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ *be a Hilbert space.*

DEF

Suppose there exists a set $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \right\}$ *such that* $\boldsymbol{x} \stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n$.

Then the quantities $\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle$ *are called the* ***Fourier coefficients*** *of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *and the sum* $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n$ *is called the* ***Fourier expansion*** *of* $\boldsymbol{x}$ *or the* ***Fourier series*** *for* $\boldsymbol{x}$.

Definition L.12.

DEF

The ***Kronecker delta function*** $\bar{\delta}_n$ *is defined as*

$$\bar{\delta}_n \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 0 \quad \text{and} \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq 0. \end{cases} \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

Lemma L.2 (Perfect reconstruction)**.** *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$.

LEM

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} (1). & (\boldsymbol{x}_n) \text{ is a BASIS for } \boldsymbol{H} \quad \text{and} \\ (2). & (\boldsymbol{x}_n) \text{ is ORTHONORMAL} \end{array} \right\} \implies \boldsymbol{x} \stackrel{*}{=} \overbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \underbrace{\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle}_{\text{Fourier coefficient}} \boldsymbol{x}_n}^{\text{Fourier expansion}} \qquad \forall x \in X$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_m \boldsymbol{x}_m \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle && \text{by left hypothesis (1)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_m \langle \boldsymbol{x}_m \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_m \bar{\delta}_{n-m} && \text{by left hypothesis (2)} && \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)} \\
&= \alpha_n
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition L.2. [24] *Let* $\left\{ \boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \middle|_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$.

[23] Fabian et al. (2010) page 27 ⟨Theorem 1.55⟩, Young (2001) page 6, Young (1980) page 6
[24] Han et al. (2007) pages 93–94 ⟨Proposition 3.11⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

PRP

$$\underbrace{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2}_{\text{PARSEVAL FRAME}} \iff \underbrace{\boldsymbol{x} \stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n}_{\text{FOURIER EXPANSION (Definition L.11 page 276)}} \qquad \forall x \in X$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that *Parseval frame* $\Longleftarrow$ *Fourier expansion*

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &\triangleq \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\| \\
&= \left\langle \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&\stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle && \text{by property of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla\rangle \\
&\stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle^* && \text{by property of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla\rangle \\
&\stackrel{\star}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by property of } \mathbb{C}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that *Parseval frame* $\Longrightarrow$ *Fourier expansion*

   (a) Let $(\boldsymbol{e}_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be the *standard othornormal basis* such that the nth element of $\boldsymbol{e}_n$ is 1 and all other elements are 0.

   (b) Let $\mathbf{M}$ be an operator in $\boldsymbol{H}$ such that $\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{e}_n$.

   (c) lemma: $\mathbf{M}$ is *isometric*. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &= \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{e}_n \right\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{M} && \text{(item (2b) page 277)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left\|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{e}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \left\|\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \|\cdot\| && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \textit{orthonormal} && \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)} \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by Parseval frame hypothesis} \\
&\Longrightarrow \quad \mathbf{M} \text{ is } \textit{isometric} && \text{by definition of } \textit{isometric} && \text{(Definition D.13 page 175)}
\end{aligned}$$

   (d) Let $(\boldsymbol{u}_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be an *orthornormal basis* for $\boldsymbol{H}$.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

(e) Proof for *Fourier expansion*:

$$
\begin{aligned}
x &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid u_n \rangle u_n && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} \text{ (Proposition L.3 page 280)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \mathbf{M}x \mid \mathbf{M}u_n \rangle u_n && \text{by (2c) lemma page 277 and Theorem D.21 page 176} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left\langle \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle e_m \mid \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \langle u_n \mid x_k \rangle e_k \right\rangle u_n && \text{by item (2b) page 277} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \langle u_n \mid x_k \rangle^* \langle e_m \mid e_k \rangle u_n && \text{by Definition D.9 page 168} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle \langle u_n \mid x_m \rangle^* u_n && \text{by item (2a) page 277 and Definition L.9 page 272} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle \langle x_m \mid u_n \rangle u_n && \text{by Definition D.9 page 168} \\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle x_m \mid u_n \rangle u_n \\
&= \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_m \rangle x_m && \text{by item (2d) page 277}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

When is a set of orthonormal vectors in a Hilbert space $\boldsymbol{H}$ *total*? Theorem L.9 (next) offers some help.

Theorem L.9 (The Fourier Series Theorem). [25] *Let* $\left\{ x_n \in X \,\middle|\, {}_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ *and let* $\|x\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle x \mid x \rangle}$.

THM

(A) $\left\{x_n\right\}$ *is* ORTHONORMAL *in* $\boldsymbol{H}$ $\Longrightarrow$

$$
\left\{
\begin{array}{llrcll}
 & (1). & \left(\operatorname{span}\left\{x_n\right\}\right)^{-} & = & \boldsymbol{H} & & (\{x_n\} \text{ is TOTAL in } \boldsymbol{H}) \\
\Longleftrightarrow & (2). & \langle x \mid y \rangle & \stackrel{\star}{=} & \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_n \rangle \langle y \mid x_n \rangle^* & \forall x,y \in \boldsymbol{X} & \text{(GENERALIZED PARSEVAL'S IDENTITY)} \\
\Longleftrightarrow & (3). & \|x\|^2 & \stackrel{\star}{=} & \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle x \mid x_n \rangle\right|^2 & \forall x \in X & \text{(PARSEVAL'S IDENTITY)} \\
\Longleftrightarrow & (4). & x & \stackrel{\star}{=} & \displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle x \mid x_n \rangle x_n & \forall x \in X & \text{(FOURIER SERIES EXPANSION)}
\end{array}
\right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

[25] Bachman and Narici (1966) pages 149–155 ⟨Theorem 9.12⟩, Kubrusly (2001) pages 360–363 ⟨Theorem 5.48⟩, Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998) pages 298–299 ⟨Theorem 34.2⟩, Christensen (2003) page 57 ⟨Theorem 3.4.2⟩, Berberian (1961) pages 52–53 ⟨Theorem II§8.3⟩, Heil (2011) pages 34–35 ⟨Theorem 1.50⟩, Bracewell (1978) page 112 ⟨Rayleigh's theorem⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle &\stackrel{*}{=} \left\langle \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \,\middle|\, \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_m \right\rangle && \text{by (A) and (1)} \\
&\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \left\langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \,\middle|\, \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_m \right\rangle && \text{by property of } \langle \cdot \mid \cdot \rangle \quad \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle^* \langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \mid \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle && \text{by property of } \langle \cdot \mid \cdot \rangle \quad \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle^* \bar{\delta}_{mn} && \text{by (A)} \\
&\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle^* && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}_n \quad \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &\triangleq \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x} \rangle && \text{by definition of } \textit{induced norm} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle^* && \text{by (2)} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \right|^2
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (4) *not* using (A): by Proposition L.2 page 276

4. Proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1) (proof by contradiction):

   (a) Suppose $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ is *not total*.

   (b) Then there must exist a vector $\boldsymbol{y}$ in $\boldsymbol{H}$ such that the set $B \triangleq \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \cup \boldsymbol{y}$ is *orthonormal*.

   (c) Then $1 = \|y\|^2 \neq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \right|^2 = 0$.

   (d) But this contradicts (3), and so $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ must be *total* and (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1).

5. Extraneous proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (4) (this proof is not really necessary here):

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\| \boldsymbol{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 &= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Bessel's Equality} \quad \text{(Theorem L.6 page 273)} \\
&= 0 && \text{by (3)} \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \boldsymbol{x} &\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by definition of } \stackrel{*}{=} \quad \text{(Definition G.5 page 209)}
\end{aligned}$$

6. Extraneous proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (4) (this proof is not really necessary here)

   (a) The sequence $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left| \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \right|^2$ is *monotonically increasing* in n.

   (b) By Bessel's inequality (page 274), the sequence is upper bounded by $\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2$:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left| \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \right|^2 \leq \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

(c) Because this sequence is both monotonically increasing and bounded in n, it must equal its bound in the limit as n approaches infinity:

$$\lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}\left|\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 = \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \tag{L.1}$$

(d) If we combine this result with *Bessel's Equality* (Theorem L.6 page 273) we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{N\to\infty}\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{N}\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 &= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2-\lim_{N\to\infty}\sum_{n=1}^{N}|\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Bessel's Equality} \text{ (Theorem L.6 page 273)}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2-\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by equation (L.1) page 280}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition L.3 (Fourier expansion). *Let* $\left\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\in X\,\middle|\,{}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\left(X,+,\cdot,(\mathbb{F},\dot{+},\dot{\times}),\langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle\right)$.

PRP

$$\underbrace{\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}\ \textit{is an}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL BASIS}\ \textit{for}\ \boldsymbol{H}}_{(A)} \implies \left\{\underbrace{\boldsymbol{x}\overset{\star}{=}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n}_{(1)} \iff \underbrace{\alpha_n=\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle}_{(2)}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (2): by Lemma L.2 page 276
2. Proof that (1) $\impliedby$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\|^2 &= \left\|\boldsymbol{x}-\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\|^2 && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2-\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 && \text{by Bessel's equality} && \text{(Theorem L.6 page 273)}\\
&= 0 && \text{by } \textit{Parseval's Identity} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&\overset{\text{def}}{\iff} \quad \boldsymbol{x}\overset{\star}{=}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by definition of } \textit{strong convergence} && \text{(Definition G.5 page 209)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition L.4 (Riesz-Fischer Theorem). [26] *Let* $\left\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\in X\,\middle|\,{}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\right\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\left(X,+,\cdot,(\mathbb{F},\dot{+},\dot{\times}),\langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle\right)$.

PRP

$$\underbrace{\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}\ \textit{is an}\ \text{ORTHONORMAL BASIS}\ \textit{for}\ \boldsymbol{H}}_{(A)} \implies \left\{\underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha_n|^2<\infty}_{(1)} \iff \underbrace{\begin{matrix}\exists \boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{H}\ \text{ such that}\\ \alpha_n=\langle \boldsymbol{x}\mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\end{matrix}}_{(2)}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

[26] Young (2001) page 6

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

   (a) If (1) is true, then let $\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{x}_n$.

   (b) Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle &= \left\langle \sum_{m\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_m \boldsymbol{x}_m \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_m \langle \boldsymbol{x}_m \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_m \bar{\delta}_{mn} && \text{by (A)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{N}} \alpha_n && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} |\alpha_n|^2 &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} |\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle|^2 && \text{by (2)} \\
&\le \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Bessel's Inequality} && \text{(Theorem L.7 page 274)} \\
&\le \infty
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem L.10. [27]

THM

All SEPARABLE HILBERT SPACES *are* ISOMORPHIC. *That is,*

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l} \boldsymbol{X} \text{ is a separable} \\ \text{Hilbert space} \quad \textit{and} \\ \boldsymbol{Y} \text{ is a separable} \\ \text{Hilbert space} \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{llll} \textit{there is a BIJECTIVE operator } \mathbf{M} \in \boldsymbol{Y}^{\boldsymbol{X}} \textit{ such that} & & & \\ (1). \quad \boldsymbol{y} & = & \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} & \forall x\in\boldsymbol{X}, y\in\boldsymbol{Y} \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). \quad \|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| & = & \|\boldsymbol{x}\| & \forall x\in\boldsymbol{X} \quad \textit{and} \\ (3). \quad \langle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} \mid \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{y} \rangle & = & \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{y} \rangle & \forall x\in\boldsymbol{X}, y\in\boldsymbol{Y} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Let $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\big)$ be a *separable Hilbert space* with *orthonormal basis* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$.
   Let $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\big)$ be a *separable Hilbert space* with *orthonormal basis* $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$.

2. Proof that there exists *bijective* operator $\mathbf{M}$ and its inverse $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ between $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ and $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}$:

   (a) Let $\mathbf{M}$ be defined such that $\boldsymbol{y}_n \triangleq \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}_n$.

   (b) Thus $\mathbf{M}$ is a *bijection* between $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ and $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}$.

   (c) Because $\mathbf{M}$ is a *bijection* between $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ and $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}$, $\mathbf{M}$ has an inverse operator $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ between $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ and $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\}$ such that $\boldsymbol{x}_n = \mathbf{M}^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}_n$.

3. Proof that $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ are *bijective* operators between $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{Y}$:

[27] Young (2001) page 6

CC BY-NC-ND

(a) Proof that $\mathbf{M}$ maps $\boldsymbol{X}$ *into* $\boldsymbol{Y}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X} \iff \boldsymbol{x} &\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&\implies \exists \boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} \quad \text{such that} \quad \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle && \text{by } \textit{Riesz-Fischer Thm.} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&\implies\\
\boldsymbol{y} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{by } \textit{Riesz-Fischer Thm.} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{M} && \text{(item (2a) page 281)}\\
&= \mathbf{M} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by prop. of linear ops.} && \text{(Theorem D.1 page 157)}\\
&= \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x} && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x}
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Proof that $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$ maps $\boldsymbol{Y}$ *into* $\boldsymbol{X}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\boldsymbol{y} \in \boldsymbol{Y} \iff \boldsymbol{y} &\stackrel{*}{=} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&\implies \exists \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{X} \quad \text{such that} \quad \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle = \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle && \text{by } \textit{Riesz-Fischer Thm.} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&\implies\\
\boldsymbol{x} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by } \textit{Riesz-Fischer Thm.} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle \mathbf{M}^{-1}\boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{M}^{-1} && \text{(item (2c) page 281)}\\
&= \mathbf{M}^{-1} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{y}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{by prop. of } \textit{linear ops.} && \text{(Theorem D.1 page 157)}\\
&= \mathbf{M}^{-1}\boldsymbol{y} && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{y}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof for (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 &= \left\| \mathbf{M} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}\\
&= \left\| \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 && \text{by property of } \textit{linear operators} && \text{(Theorem D.1 page 157)}\\
&= \left\| \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{y}_n \right\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{M} && \text{(item (2a) page 281)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \left| \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Parseval's Identity} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&= \left\| \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Parseval's Identity} && \text{(Proposition L.4 page 280)}\\
&= \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Fourier expansion} && \text{(Theorem L.9 page 278)}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof for (3): by (2) and Theorem D.21 page 176

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem L.11. [28] *Let $\boldsymbol{H}$ be a* HILBERT SPACE.

THM: $\boldsymbol{H}$ *has a* SCHAUDER BASIS $\iff$ $\boldsymbol{H}$ *is* SEPARABLE

Theorem L.12. [29] *Let $\boldsymbol{H}$ be a* HILBERT SPACE.

THM: $\boldsymbol{H}$ *has an* ORTHONORMAL BASIS $\iff$ $\boldsymbol{H}$ *is* SEPARABLE

L.6 Riesz bases in Hilbert spaces

Definition L.13. [30] *Let $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ be a set of vectors in a* SEPARABLE HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}, \ldots$

DEF: $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is a* ***Riesz basis*** *for* $\boldsymbol{H}$ *if* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is* EQUIVALENT *(Definition L.8 page 271) to some* ORTHONORMAL BASIS *(Definition L.10 page 276) in* $\boldsymbol{H}$.

Definition L.14. [31] *Let $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of vectors in a* SEPARABLE HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\big)$.

DEF: *The sequence $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n)\!)$ is a* ***Riesz sequence*** *for* $\boldsymbol{H}$ *if*

$$\exists A, B \in \mathbb{R}^+ \quad \text{such that} \quad A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha_n|^2 \qquad \forall (\!(\alpha_n)\!)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}.$$

Definition L.15. *Let* $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\big)$ *be an* INNER PRODUCT SPACE *(Definition D.9 page 168)*.

DEF: *The sequences $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ and $(\!(\boldsymbol{y}_n \in X)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ are* ***biorthogonal*** *with respect to each other in* $\boldsymbol{X}$ *if* $\langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \mid \boldsymbol{y}_m\rangle = \bar{\delta}_{nm}$

Lemma L.3. [32] *Let $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ be a sequence in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \big(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\big)$. *Let $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ be a sequence in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{Y} \triangleq \big(Y, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\big)$. *Let*

LEM:

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
(i). & \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is TOTAL in } \boldsymbol{X} & \text{and} \\
(ii). & \text{There exists } A>0 \text{ such that } A\sum_{n\in C}|a_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n\in C}a_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 \quad \text{for finite } C & \text{and} \\
(iii). & \text{There exists } B>0 \text{ such that } \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}b_n\boldsymbol{y}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|b_n|^2 \quad \forall (\!(b_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}} &
\end{array}\right\} \implies$$

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
(1). & \mathbf{R}^\circ \text{ is a linear bounded operator that maps from } \operatorname{span}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ to } \operatorname{span}\{\boldsymbol{y}_n\} & \\
 & \text{where } \mathbf{R}^\circ\sum_{n\in C}c_n\boldsymbol{x}_n \triangleq \sum_{n\in C}c_n\boldsymbol{y}_n, \text{ for some sequence } (\!(c_n)\!) \text{ and finite set } C & \text{and} \\
(2). & \mathbf{R} \text{ has a unique extension to a bounded operator } \mathbf{R} \text{ that maps from } \boldsymbol{X} \text{ to } \boldsymbol{Y} & \text{and} \\
(3). & |||\mathbf{R}^\circ||| \le \frac{B}{A} & \text{and} \\
(4). & |||\mathbf{R}||| \le \frac{B}{A} &
\end{array}\right\}$$

[28] Bachman et al. (2000) page 112 ⟨3.4.8⟩, Berberian (1961) page 53 ⟨Theorem II§8.3⟩
[29] Kubrusly (2001) page 357 ⟨Proposition 5.43⟩
[30] Young (2001) page 27 ⟨Definition 1.8.2⟩, Christensen (2003) page 63 ⟨Definition 3.6.1⟩, Heil (2011) page 196 ⟨Definition 7.9⟩
[31] Christensen (2003) pages 66–68 ⟨page 68 and (3.24) on page 66⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 20 ⟨Definition 2.6⟩
[32] Christensen (2003) pages 65–66 ⟨Lemma 3.6.5⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

Theorem L.13. [33] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* SEPARABLE HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle)$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is a RIESZ BASIS} \\ \text{for } \boldsymbol{H}\end{array}\right\} \iff \left\{\begin{array}{ll}(1). & \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ is TOTAL in } \boldsymbol{H} \quad \text{and} \\ (2). & \exists A,B\in\mathbb{R}^+ \text{ such that } \forall(\alpha_n)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}, \\ & A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha_n|^2\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:
   (a) Proof that *Riesz basis* hypothesis $\Longrightarrow$ (1): all bases for $\boldsymbol{H}$ are *total* in $\boldsymbol{H}$.
   (b) Proof that *Riesz basis* hypothesis $\Longrightarrow$ (2):
      i. Let $(\boldsymbol{u}_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be an *orthonormal basis* for $\boldsymbol{H}$.
      ii. Let $\mathbf{R}$ be a *bounded bijective* operator such that $\boldsymbol{x}_n = \mathbf{R}\boldsymbol{u}_n$.
      iii. Proof for upper bound B:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 &= \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\mathbf{R}\boldsymbol{u}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} && \text{(item (1(b)ii))}\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{R}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{u}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by Theorem D.1 page 157} \\
&\le |||\mathbf{R}|||^2\left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{u}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by Theorem D.6 page 163} \\
&= |||\mathbf{R}|||^2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\|\alpha_n\boldsymbol{u}_n\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem} \\
&= |||\mathbf{R}|||^2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha|^2\|\boldsymbol{u}_n\|^2 && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of norms} && \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}\\
&= \underbrace{|||\mathbf{R}|||^2}_{B}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\alpha|^2 && \text{by definition of } \textit{orthonormality} && \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)}
\end{aligned}$$

      iv. Proof for lower bound A:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 &= \frac{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}\left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 && \text{because } |||\mathbf{R}^{-1}||| > 0 && \text{(Proposition D.1 page 161)}\\
&\ge \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}\left\|\mathbf{R}^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by Theorem D.6 page 163} \\
&= \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}\left\|\mathbf{R}^{-1}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\mathbf{R}\boldsymbol{u}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{R} && \text{(item (1(b)ii) page 284)}\\
&= \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}\left\|\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{R}\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{u}_n\right\|^2 && \text{by property of } \textit{linear operators} && \text{(Theorem D.1 page 157)}
\end{aligned}$$

[33] Young (2001) page 27 ⟨Theorem 1.8.9⟩, Christensen (2003) page 66 ⟨Theorem 3.6.6⟩, Heil (2011) pages 197–198 ⟨Theorem 7.13⟩, Christensen (2008) pages 61–62 ⟨Theorem 3.3.7⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2} \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \alpha_n \boldsymbol{u}_n \right\|^2 \qquad \text{by definition of inverse op.} \qquad \text{(Definition D.3 page 156)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|\alpha_n \boldsymbol{u}_n\|^2 \qquad \text{by } \textit{Pythagorean Theorem}$$

$$= \frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\alpha_n|^2 \|\boldsymbol{u}_n\|^2 \qquad \text{by } \|\cdot\| \textit{ homogeneous} \text{ prop.} \qquad \text{(Definition D.5 page 160)}$$

$$= \underbrace{\frac{1}{|||\mathbf{R}^{-1}|||^2}}_{A} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\alpha_n|^2 \qquad \text{by def. of } \textit{orthonormality} \qquad \text{(Definition L.9 page 272)}$$

2. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:
   (a) Let $\{\boldsymbol{u}_n |_{n\in\mathbb{N}}\}$ be an *orthonormal basis* for $\boldsymbol{H}$.
   (b) Using (2) and Lemma L.3 (page 283), construct an bounded extension operator $\mathbf{R}$ such that $\mathbf{R}\boldsymbol{u}_n = \boldsymbol{x}_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
   (c) Using (2) and Lemma L.3 (page 283), construct an bounded extension operator $\mathbf{S}$ such that $\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{x}_n = \boldsymbol{u}_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
   (d) Then, $\mathbf{RV}\boldsymbol{x} = \mathbf{VR}\boldsymbol{x} \implies \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{R}^{-1}$, and so $\mathbf{R}$ is a bounded invertible operator
   (e) and $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ is a *Riesz sequence*.

✏

Theorem L.14. [34] *Let* $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle)$ *be a* SEPARABLE HILBERT SPACE.

THM

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n \in \boldsymbol{H})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \textit{ is a} \\ \text{RIESZ BASIS } \textit{for } \boldsymbol{H} \end{array} \right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \multicolumn{2}{l}{\textit{There exists } (\!(\boldsymbol{y}_n \in \boldsymbol{H})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \textit{ such that}} \\ (1). & (\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n)\!) \textit{ and } (\!(\boldsymbol{y}_n)\!) \textit{ are } \text{BIORTHOGONAL} \quad \textit{and} \\ (2). & (\!(\boldsymbol{y}_n)\!) \textit{ is also a } \text{RIESZ BASIS } \textit{for } \boldsymbol{H} \quad \textit{and} \\ (3). & \exists B>A>0 \quad \text{such that} \\ & A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2 \le \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \boldsymbol{x}_n \right\|^2 = \left\| \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \boldsymbol{y}_n \right\|^2 \le B \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2 \\ & \forall (\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{N}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{F}} \end{array} \right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1):
   (a) Let $\boldsymbol{e}_n$ be the *unit vector* in $\boldsymbol{H}$ such that the nth element of $\boldsymbol{e}_n$ is 1 and all other elements are 0.
   (b) Let $\mathbf{M}$ be an operator on $\boldsymbol{H}$ such that $\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{e}_n = \boldsymbol{x}_n$.
   (c) Note that $\mathbf{M}$ is *isometric*, and as such $\|\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{x}\| = \|\boldsymbol{x}\| \quad \forall_{\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{H}}$.
   (d) Let $\boldsymbol{y}_n \triangleq (\mathbf{M}^{-1})^*$.
   (e) Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \boldsymbol{y}_n \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_m \rangle &= \left\langle (\mathbf{M}^{-1})^* \boldsymbol{e}_n \,|\, \mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{e}_m \right\rangle \\ &= \langle \boldsymbol{e}_n \,|\, \mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{e}_m \rangle \\ &= \langle \boldsymbol{e}_n \,|\, \boldsymbol{e}_m \rangle \\ &= \bar{\delta}_{nm} \\ &\implies \{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \text{ and } \{\boldsymbol{y}_n\} \text{ are } \textit{biorthogonal} \qquad \text{by Definition L.9 page 272} \end{aligned}$$

[34] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 20 ⟨Lemma 2.7(a)⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Proof for (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{y}_n\right\| &= \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\left(\mathbf{M}^{-1}\right)^*\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\| && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{y}_n && \text{(Proposition 1d page 285)}\\
&= \left\|\left(\mathbf{M}^{-1}\right)^*\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\| && \text{by property of } \textit{linear ops.} \\
&= \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\| && \text{because } \left(\mathbf{M}^{-1}\right)^* \text{ is } \textit{isometric} && \text{(Definition D.13 page 175)}\\
&= \left\|\mathbf{M}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\| && \text{because } \mathbf{M} \text{ is } \textit{isometric} && \text{(Definition D.13 page 175)}\\
&= \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\mathbf{M}\boldsymbol{e}_n\right\| && \text{by property of } \textit{linear operators} \\
&= \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\alpha_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\| && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{M} \\
&\Longrightarrow \{\boldsymbol{y}_n\} \text{ is a } \textit{Riesz basis} && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof for (2): by (3) and definition of *Riesz basis* (Definition L.13 page 283)

✏

Proposition L.5. [35] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq \left(X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle\right)$.

PRP

$$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \textit{ is a } \text{RIESZ BASIS} \textit{ for } \boldsymbol{H} \textit{ with} \\ A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}a_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 \\ \forall\{a_n\}\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}\end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{l}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\} \textit{ is a } \text{FRAME} \textit{ for } \boldsymbol{H} \textit{ with} \\ \underbrace{\frac{1}{B}\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \le \frac{1}{A}\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2}_{\text{STABILITY CONDITION}} \\ \forall\boldsymbol{x}\in\boldsymbol{H}\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Let $\{\boldsymbol{y}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ be a *Riesz basis* that is *biorthogonal* to $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ (Theorem L.14 page 285).

2. Let $\boldsymbol{x} \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n\boldsymbol{y}_n$.

3. lemma:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left|\left\langle\sum_{m=1}^{\infty}a_n\boldsymbol{y}_m \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x} && \text{(item (2) page 286)}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left|\sum_{m=1}^{\infty}a_n\langle\boldsymbol{y}_m\mid\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 && \text{by } \textit{homogeneous} \text{ property of } \langle\triangle\mid\triangledown\rangle && \text{(Definition D.9 page 168)}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left|\sum_{m=1}^{\infty}a_n\bar{\delta}_{mn}\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \textit{biorthogonal} && \text{(Definition L.15 page 283)}\\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

[35] Igari (1996) page 220 ⟨Lemma 9.8⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 20–21 ⟨Lemma 2.7(a)⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

4. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
& A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}a_n\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 && \text{by definition of } \{\boldsymbol{y}_n\} \text{ (item (1) page 286)}\\
\Longrightarrow\ & A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}a_n\boldsymbol{y}_n\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 && \text{by definition of } \{\boldsymbol{y}_n\} \text{ (item (1) page 286)}\\
\Longrightarrow\ & A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 \le \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|^2 && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x} \text{ (item (2) page 286)}\\
\Longrightarrow\ & A\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\,|\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 \le \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le B\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\,|\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 && \text{by (3) lemma}\\
\Longrightarrow\ & \frac{1}{B}\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|\langle\boldsymbol{x}\,|\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle|^2 \le \frac{1}{A}\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem L.15 (Battle-Lemarié orthogonalization). [36] *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f}\in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{g}\,|\,_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\} \text{ is a RIESZ BASIS for } L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \text{ and}\\[2ex] 2. & \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\triangleq\dfrac{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)}{\sqrt{2\pi\sum\limits_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2}}\end{array}\right\}\Longrightarrow\left\{\begin{array}{l}\{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}\,|\,_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}\\ \text{is an ORTHONORMAL BASIS for } L^2_{\mathbb{R}}\end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}\,|\,_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\}$ is orthonormal:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) &= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\frac{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi n)}{\sqrt{2\pi\sum\limits_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi(n-m))|^2}}\right|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\frac{\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi n)}{\sqrt{\sum\limits_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi m)|^2}}\right|^2\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{\sum\limits_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi m)|^2}}\right|^2|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2\\
&= \frac{1}{\sum\limits_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi m)|^2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2\\
&= 1\\
\Longrightarrow\ & \{\mathsf{f}_n\,|\,_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\} \text{ is orthonormal} && \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377}
\end{aligned}$$

[36] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 25 ⟨Remark 2.4⟩, Vidakovic (1999), page 71, Mallat (1989), page 72, Mallat (1999), page 225, Daubechies (1992) page 140 ⟨(5.3.3)⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Proof that $\{\mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} \mid n\in\mathbb{Z}\}$ is a basis for V_0: by Lemma L.1 page 271.

✏

L.7 Frames in Hilbert spaces

Definition L.16. [37] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle)$.

DEF

The set $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is a* ***frame*** *for* $\boldsymbol{H}$ *if* (STABILITY CONDITION)

$$\exists A, B \in \mathbb{R}^+ \quad \text{such that} \quad A\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \le B\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{x}\in X.$$

The quantities A *and* B *are* ***frame bounds***.
The quantity A' *is the* ***optimal lower frame bound*** *if*
$A' = \sup\{A \in \mathbb{R}^+ \mid A \text{ is a lower frame bound}\}$.
The quantity B' *is the* ***optimal upper frame bound*** *if*
$B' = \inf\{B \in \mathbb{R}^+ \mid B \text{ is an upper frame bound}\}$.
A frame is a ***tight frame*** *if* $A = B$.
A frame is a ***normalized tight frame*** *(or a* ***Parseval frame****) if* $A = B = 1$.
A frame $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}$ *is an* ***exact frame*** *if for some* $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \mid n\in\mathbb{N}\}\setminus\{\boldsymbol{x}_m\}$ *is* NOT *a frame.*

A frame is a *Parseval frame* (Definition L.16) if it satisfies *Parseval's Identity* (Theorem L.9 page 278). All orthonormal bases are Parseval frames (Theorem L.9 page 278); but not all Parseval frames are orthonormal bases.

Definition L.17. *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *be a* ***frame*** *(Definition L.16 page 288) for the* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle)$. *Let* $\mathbf{S}$ *be an* OPERATOR *on* $\boldsymbol{H}$.

DEF

$\mathbf{S}$ *is a* ***frame operator*** *for* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *if* $\quad \mathbf{S}\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \qquad \forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{H}.$

Theorem L.16. [38] *Let* $\mathbf{S}$ *be a* FRAME OPERATOR *(Definition L.17 page 288) of a* FRAME $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *(Definition L.16 page 288) for the* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle)$.

THM

(1). $\mathbf{S}$ *is* INVERTIBLE. *and*

(2). $\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\langle \mathsf{f} \mid \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n \quad \forall \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{H}$

Theorem L.17. [39] *Let* $\{\boldsymbol{x}_n \in X \mid n=1,2,\ldots,N\}$ *be a set of vectors in a* HILBERT SPACE $\boldsymbol{H} \triangleq (X, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{F}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle\triangle\,|\,\nabla\rangle)$.

THM

$\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$ *is a* FRAME *for* $\operatorname{span}\{\boldsymbol{x}_n\}$.

✎PROOF:

[37] Young (2001) pages 154–155, Christensen (2003) page 88 ⟨Definitions 5.1.1, 5.1.2⟩, Heil (2011) pages 204–205 ⟨Definition 8.2⟩, Jørgensen et al. (2008) page 267 ⟨Definition 12.22⟩, Duffin and Schaeffer (1952) page 343, Daubechies et al. (1986), page 1272

[38] Christensen (2008) pages 100–102 ⟨Theorem 5.1.7⟩

[39] Christensen (2003) page 3

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Upper bound: Proof that there exists B such that $\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \le B\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 &\le \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle && \text{by } \textit{Cauchy-Schwarz inequality}\\ &= \underbrace{\left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \|\boldsymbol{x}_n\|^2\right\}}_{B} \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2\end{aligned}$$

2. Lower bound: Proof that there exists A such that $A\,\|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2 \le \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 \quad \forall \boldsymbol{x} \in \boldsymbol{H}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 &= \sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\left\langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \mid \frac{\boldsymbol{x}}{\|\boldsymbol{x}\|}\right\rangle\right|^2 \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2\\ &\ge \underbrace{\left(\inf_{\boldsymbol{y}} \left\{\sum_{n=1}^{N} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{x}_n \mid \boldsymbol{y}\rangle\right|^2 \,\middle|\, \|\boldsymbol{y}\| = 1\right\}\right)}_{A} \|\boldsymbol{x}\|^2\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example L.1. Let $\left(\mathbb{R}^2, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{R}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown\rangle\right)$ be an inner product space with $\left\langle \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{bmatrix} \,\middle|\, \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} \right\rangle \triangleq x_1x_2 + y_1y_2$. Let $\mathbf{S}$ be the *frame operator* (Definition L.17 page 288) with *inverse* $\mathbf{S}^{-1}$.

EX

Let $N \in \{3, 4, 5, \dots\}$, $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$, and $r \in \mathbb{R}^+$ $(r > 0)$.

Let $\boldsymbol{x}_n \triangleq r\begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta + 2n\pi/N) \\ \sin(\theta + 2n\pi/N) \end{bmatrix} \quad \forall_{n\in\{0,1,\dots,N-1\}}$.

Then, $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_0, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \dots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1})\!)$ is a **tight frame** for $\mathbb{R}^2$ with *frame bound* $A = \frac{Nr^2}{2}$.

Moreover, $\mathbf{S} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{S}^{-1} = \frac{2}{Nr^2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\boldsymbol{v} = \dfrac{2}{Nr^2}\displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \langle \boldsymbol{v} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n \quad \forall_{\boldsymbol{v}\in\mathbb{R}^2}$.

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_0, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \dots, \boldsymbol{x}_{N-1})\!)$ is a *tight frame* with *frame bound* $A = \frac{Nr^2}{2}$: Let $\boldsymbol{v} \triangleq (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 &\triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \left|\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}} r\begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \\ \sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \end{bmatrix}\right|^2 && \text{by definitions of } \boldsymbol{v} \text{ of } \langle \boldsymbol{y} \mid \boldsymbol{x}\rangle\\ &\triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} r^2\left|x\cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) + y\sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right)\right|^2 && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{y}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x} \text{ operation}\\ &= r^2x^2\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \cos^2\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) + r^2y^2\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \sin^2\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) + r^2xy\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right)\sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right)\\ &= r^2x^2\frac{N}{2} + r^2y^2\frac{N}{2} + r^2xy0 && \text{by Corollary I.1 page 247}\\ &= (x^2 + y^2)\frac{Nr^2}{2} = \left(\frac{Nr^2}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{v} \triangleq \underbrace{\left(\frac{Nr^2}{2}\right)}_{A} \|\boldsymbol{v}\|^2 && \text{by definition of } \|\boldsymbol{v}\|\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{S} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$:

CC BY-NC-ND

(a) Let $\boldsymbol{e}_1 \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\boldsymbol{e}_2 \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

(b) lemma: $\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_1 = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_1$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_1 &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \langle \boldsymbol{e}_1 \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \, \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} r\cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) r \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \\ \sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \end{bmatrix} = r^2 \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \begin{bmatrix} \cos^2\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \\ \cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right)\sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= r^2 \begin{bmatrix} N/2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_1 \qquad \text{by } \textit{Summation around unit circle} \text{ (Corollary I.1 page 247)}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) lemma: $\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_2 = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_2$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_2 &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \langle \boldsymbol{e}_2 \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \, \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} r\sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) r \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \\ \sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \end{bmatrix} = r^2 \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \begin{bmatrix} \sin\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right)\cos\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \\ \sin^2\left(\theta + \frac{2n\pi}{N}\right) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= r^2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ N/2 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_2 \qquad \text{by } \textit{Summation around unit circle} \text{ (Corollary I.1 page 247)}
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Complete the proof of item (2) using *Eigendecomposition* $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{Q}\Lambda\mathbf{Q}^{-1}$:

$$\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_1 = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_1 \qquad \text{by (2c) lemma}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \boldsymbol{e}_1 \text{ is an } \textit{eigenvector} \text{ of } \mathbf{S} \text{ with } \textit{eigenvalue } \frac{Nr^2}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{e}_2 = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\boldsymbol{e}_2 \qquad \text{by (2c) lemma}$$

$$\Longrightarrow \boldsymbol{e}_2 \text{ is an } \textit{eigenvector} \text{ of } \mathbf{S} \text{ with } \textit{eigenvalue } \frac{Nr^2}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \overbrace{\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} | & | \\ \boldsymbol{e}_1 & \boldsymbol{e}_2 \\ | & | \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \frac{Nr^2}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{Nr^2}{2} \end{bmatrix}}_{\Lambda} \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} | & | \\ \boldsymbol{e}_1 & \boldsymbol{e}_2 \\ | & | \end{bmatrix}^{-1}}_{\mathbf{Q}^{-1}}}^{\textit{Eigendecomposition} \text{ of } \mathbf{S}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{Nr^2}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{Nr^2}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

3. Proof that $\mathbf{S}^{-1} = \frac{2}{Nr^2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$:

$$\mathbf{S}\mathbf{S}^{-1} = \frac{Nr^2}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \frac{2}{Nr^2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \triangleq \mathbf{I}_2 \qquad \text{by item (2)}$$

$$\mathbf{S}^{-1}\mathbf{S} = \frac{2}{Nr^2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \frac{Nr^2}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \triangleq \mathbf{I}_2 \qquad \text{by item (2)}$$

4. Proof that $\boldsymbol{v} = \frac{2}{Nr^2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1}(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_n)\boldsymbol{x}_n$:

$$\boldsymbol{v} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \, \boldsymbol{x}_n = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,\middle|\, \frac{2}{Nr^2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \qquad \text{by item (3)}$$

$$= \frac{2}{Nr^2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \, \boldsymbol{x}_n = \frac{2}{Nr^2}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_n)\boldsymbol{x}_n \qquad \text{by definition of } \langle \boldsymbol{y} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x} \rangle$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

✏

Example L.2 (Peace Frame/Mercedes Frame). [40] Let $\left(\mathbb{R}^2, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{R}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ be an inner product space with $\left\langle (x_1, y_1) \mid (x_2, y_2) \right\rangle \triangleq x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2$. Let $\mathbf{S}$ be the *frame operator* (Definition L.17 page 288) with *inverse* $\mathbf{S}^{-1}$.

EX

Let $\boldsymbol{x}_1 \triangleq \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $\boldsymbol{x}_2 \triangleq \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -\sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\boldsymbol{x}_3 \triangleq \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Then, $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_2, \boldsymbol{x}_3)\!)$ is a **tight frame** for $\mathbb{R}^2$ with *frame bound* $A = \frac{3}{2}$.

Moreover, $\mathbf{S} = \frac{3}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\quad \mathbf{S}^{-1} = \frac{2}{3}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$,

and $\quad \boldsymbol{v} = \frac{2}{3}\sum_{n=1}^{3} \langle \boldsymbol{v} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n \triangleq \frac{2}{3}\sum_{n=1}^{3} (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}} \boldsymbol{x}_n) \boldsymbol{x}_n \qquad \forall \boldsymbol{v} \in \mathbb{R}^2.$

✎PROOF:

1. This frame is simply a special case of the frame presented in Example L.1 (page 289) with $r = 1$, $N = 3$, and $\theta = \pi/2$.

2. Let's give it a try! Let $\boldsymbol{v} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{3} \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \mid \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n &= \frac{2}{3}\sum_{n=1}^{3} (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_n)\boldsymbol{x}_n && \text{by Example L.1 page 289} \\
&= (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_1)\boldsymbol{x}_1 + (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_2)\boldsymbol{x}_2 + (\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\boldsymbol{x}_3)\boldsymbol{x}_3 \\
&= \frac{2}{3}\left(\left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_1 + \left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -\sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_2 + \left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_3\right) \\
&= \frac{2}{3}\cdot\frac{1}{2}\left(\left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_1 + \left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\begin{bmatrix} -\sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_2 + \left(\boldsymbol{v}^{\mathbf{H}}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)\boldsymbol{x}_3\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{3}\left((2)\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} + \left(-\sqrt{3}-1\right)\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -\sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + \left(\sqrt{3}-1\right)\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{6}\begin{bmatrix} 2(0) & + & (-\sqrt{3}-1)(-\sqrt{3}) & + & (\sqrt{3}-1)(\sqrt{3}) \\ 2(2) & + & (-\sqrt{3}-1)(-1) & + & (\sqrt{3}-1)(-1) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{1}{6}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & + & (3+\sqrt{3}) & + & (3-\sqrt{3}) \\ 4 & + & (1+\sqrt{3}) & + & (1-\sqrt{3}) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \triangleq \boldsymbol{v}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

In Example L.1 (page 289) and Example L.2 (page 291), the frame operator $\mathbf{S}$ and its inverse $\mathbf{S}^{-1}$ were computed. In general however, it is not always necessary or even possible to compute these, as illustrated in Example L.3 (next).

Example L.3. [41] Let $\left(\mathbb{R}^2, +, \cdot, (\mathbb{R}, \dot{+}, \dot{\times}), \langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle\right)$ be an inner product space with $\left\langle (x_1, y_1) \mid (x_2, y_2) \right\rangle \triangleq x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2$. Let $\mathbf{S}$ be the *frame operator* (Definition L.17 page 288) with *inverse* $\mathbf{S}^{-1}$.

[40] Heil (2011) pages 204–205 ⟨$r = 1$ case⟩, Byrne (2005) page 80 ⟨$r = 1$ case⟩, Han et al. (2007) page 91 ⟨Example 3.9, $r = \sqrt{2/3}$ case⟩

[41] Christensen (2003) pages 7–8 ⟨?⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

EX

Let $\boldsymbol{p}$ and $\boldsymbol{q}$ be *orthonormal* vectors in $\boldsymbol{X} \triangleq \operatorname{span}\{\boldsymbol{p}, \boldsymbol{q}\}$.
Let $\boldsymbol{x}_1 \triangleq \boldsymbol{p}$, $\boldsymbol{x}_2 \triangleq \boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}$, and $\boldsymbol{x}_3 \triangleq \boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}$.
Then, $\{\boldsymbol{x}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_2, , \boldsymbol{x}_3\}$ is a **frame** for $\boldsymbol{X}$ with *frame bounds* $A = 0$ and $B = 5$.

Moreover,

$$\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_1 = \tfrac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} \quad \text{and}$$
$$\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_2 = \tfrac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} + \tfrac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q} \quad \text{and}$$
$$\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_3 = \tfrac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} - \tfrac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q} \quad .$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_2, \boldsymbol{x}_3)\!)$ is a *frame* with *frame bounds* $A = 0$ and $B = 5$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{3} \left|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\right|^2 &\triangleq |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 && \text{by definitions of } \boldsymbol{x}_1, \boldsymbol{x}_2, \text{ and } \boldsymbol{x}_3 \\
&= |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle + \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle - \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 && \text{by } \textit{additivity} \text{ of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown \rangle \text{ (Definition D.9 page 168)} \\
&= |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + \left(|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 + \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle^* + \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle^*\right) \\
&\quad + \left(|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + |\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 - \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle^* - \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle^*\right) \\
&= 3|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle|^2 + 2|\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q}\rangle|^2 \\
&\boxed{\le} 3\,\|\boldsymbol{v}\|\,\|\boldsymbol{p}\| + 2\,\|\boldsymbol{v}\|\,\|\boldsymbol{q}\| && \text{by } \textit{CS Inequality} \\
&= \|\boldsymbol{v}\|\,(3\,\|\boldsymbol{p}\| + 2\,\|\boldsymbol{q}\|) \\
&= \boxed{5}\,\|\boldsymbol{v}\| && \text{by } \textit{orthonormality} \text{ of } \boldsymbol{p} \text{ and } \boldsymbol{q}
\end{aligned}$$

2. lemma: $\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{p} = 3\boldsymbol{p}$, $\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{q} = 2\boldsymbol{q}$, $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{p} = \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p}$, and $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{q} = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q}$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{p} &\triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{3} \langle \boldsymbol{p} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{p} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle\, \boldsymbol{p} + \langle \boldsymbol{p} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}\rangle\,(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + \langle \boldsymbol{p} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}\rangle\,(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) \\
&= (1)\boldsymbol{p} + (1+0)(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + (1-0)(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) \\
&= 3\boldsymbol{p} \\
\implies \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{p} &= \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} \\
\mathbf{S}\boldsymbol{q} &\triangleq \sum_{n=1}^{3} \langle \boldsymbol{q} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{q} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}\rangle\, \boldsymbol{p} + \langle \boldsymbol{q} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}\rangle\,(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + \langle \boldsymbol{q} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}\rangle\,(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) \\
&= (0)\boldsymbol{q} + (0+1)(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + (0-1)(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) \\
&= 2\boldsymbol{q} \\
\implies \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{q} &= \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Remark: Without knowing $\boldsymbol{p}$ and $\boldsymbol{q}$, from (2) lemma it follows that it is not possible to compute $\mathbf{S}$ or $\mathbf{S}^{-1}$ explicitly.

4. Proof that $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_1 = \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p}$, $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_2 = \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q}$ and $\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_3 = \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_1 &\triangleq \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{p} && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x}_1 \\
&= \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} && \text{by (2) lemma} \\
\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_2 &\triangleq \mathbf{S}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x}_2 \\
&= \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q} && \text{by (2) lemma}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_3 &\triangleq \mathbf{S}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{x}_2\\
&= \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q} && \text{by (2) lemma}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Check that $\boldsymbol{v} = \sum_n \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{x}_n \rangle \, \boldsymbol{x}_n = \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{p} + \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{q}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\boldsymbol{v} &= \sum_{n=1}^{3} \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n \right\rangle \boldsymbol{x}_n\\
&= \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{p} \right\rangle \boldsymbol{p} + \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) \right\rangle (\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \mathbf{S}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q}) \right\rangle (\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q})\\
&= \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} \right\rangle \boldsymbol{p} + \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q} \right\rangle (\boldsymbol{p}+\boldsymbol{q}) + \left\langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \frac{1}{3}\boldsymbol{p} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{q}) \right\rangle (\boldsymbol{p}-\boldsymbol{q})\\
&= \left(\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{3}\right) \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{p} + \left(\frac{1}{3}-\frac{1}{3}\right) \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{q} + \left(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\right) \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{p} + \left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\right) \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{q}\\
&= \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{p} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{p} + \langle \boldsymbol{v} \,|\, \boldsymbol{q} \rangle \, \boldsymbol{q}
\end{aligned}$$

✍

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX M

B-SPLINES

M.1 Definitions

Definition M.1. *Let X be a set.*

DEF *The **step function** $\sigma \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ is defined as*

$$\sigma(x) \triangleq \mathbb{1}_{[0:\infty)}(x) \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Lemma M.1. *Let $\sigma(x)$ be the* STEP FUNCTION *(Definition M.1 page 295).*

LEM

$$\{g(x) > 0\} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \left\{\sigma\left[g(x)f(x)\right] = \sigma[f(x)]\right\} \qquad \forall f,g \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$\sigma\left[g(x)f(x)\right] \triangleq \mathbb{1}_{[0:\infty)}\left[g(x)f(x)\right]$	by definition of $\sigma(x)$	(Definition M.1 page 295)
$\triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } g(x)f(x) \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	by definition of $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$	(Definition 1.2 page 1)
$= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } f(x) \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$	by $g(x) > 0$ hypothesis	
$\triangleq \mathbb{1}_{[0:\infty)}[f(x)]$	by definition of $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$	(Definition 1.2 page 1)
$\triangleq \sigma[f(x)]$	by definition of $\sigma(x)$	(Definition M.1 page 295)

✏

Definition M.2. [1] *Let $\mathbb{1}$ be the* SET INDICATOR *function (Definition 1.2 page 1). Let $f(x) \star g(x)$ represent the* CONVOLUTION *operation (Definition K.3 page 258).*

DEF *The n**th order cardinal B-spline** $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ for $n \in \mathbb{W}$ is defined as*

$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) \triangleq \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) & \text{for } n = 0 \\ \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) \star \mathsf{N}_0(x) & \text{for } n \in \mathbb{W}\backslash 0 \end{array} \right\} \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

Lemma M.2. [2]

[1] Chui (1992) page 85 ⟨(4.2.1)⟩, Christensen (2008) page 140, Chui (1988) page 1

[2] Christensen (2008) page 140, Chui (1992) page 85 ⟨(4.2.1)⟩, Chui (1988) page 1, Prasad and Iyengar (1997) page 145

LEM

$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau \qquad \forall n \in \{1,2,3,\ldots\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_n(x) &\triangleq \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) \star \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_n(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)}\\
&\triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\mathsf{N}_0(\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by definition of convolution operation } \star && \text{(Definition K.3 page 258)}\\
&\triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)}\\
&= \int_{[0:1)} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_A(x) && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}\\
&= \int_{[0:1]} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau\\
&\triangleq \int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma M.3. *Let* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *be a* FUNCTION *in* $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\mathsf{F}(x)$ *be the* ANTI-DERIVATIVE *of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$. *Let* $\sigma(x)$ *be the* STEP FUNCTION *(Definition M.1 page 295)*.

LEM

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{y=a}^{y=b} \mathsf{f}(x-y)\sigma(x-y)\,\mathsf{d}y\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} -\displaystyle\int_{y=x-a}^{y=x-b} \mathsf{f}(y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \textit{for } x \ge b\\ -\displaystyle\int_{y=x-a}^{y=0} \mathsf{f}(y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \textit{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \textit{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\} = \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(x-b) & \textit{for } x \ge b\\ \mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0) & \textit{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \textit{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\}\\
&= [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0)]\sigma(x-a) + [\mathsf{F}(0)-\mathsf{F}(x-b)]\sigma(x-b)
\end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{y=a}^{y=b} \mathsf{f}(x-y)\sigma(x-y)\,\mathsf{d}y &= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \int_{y=a}^{y=b} \mathsf{f}(x-y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \text{for } x \ge b\\ \int_{y=a}^{y=x} \mathsf{f}(x-y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \text{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \text{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\} && \text{by definition of } \sigma \text{ (Definition M.1 page 295)}\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} -\int_{u=x-a}^{u=x-b} \mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u & \text{for } x \ge b\\ -\int_{u=x-a}^{u=0} \mathsf{f}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u & \text{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \text{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\} && \text{where } u \triangleq x-y \implies y = x-u\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} -\int_{y=x-a}^{y=x-b} \mathsf{f}(y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \text{for } x \ge b\\ -\int_{y=x-a}^{y=0} \mathsf{f}(y)\,\mathsf{d}y & \text{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \text{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\} && \text{by change of dummy variable } (u \to y)\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(x-b) & \text{for } x \ge b\\ \mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0) & \text{for } a \le x \le b\\ 0 & \text{for } x \le a \end{array}\right\} && \text{by } \textit{Fundamental Theorem of Calculus}\\
&= [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(x-b)]\sigma(x-b) + [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0)][\sigma(x-a)-\sigma(x-b)]\\
&= [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0)]\sigma(x-a) + [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(x-b)-\mathsf{F}(x-a)+\mathsf{F}(0)]\sigma(x-b)\\
&= [\mathsf{F}(x-a)-\mathsf{F}(0)]\sigma(x-a) + [\mathsf{F}(0)-\mathsf{F}(x-b)]\sigma(x-b)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure M.1: some low order B-splines (Example M.1 page 297)

Lemma M.4. *Let* $\sigma(x)$ *be the* STEP FUNCTION *(Definition M.1 page 295).*

LEM
$$\int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} (x-\tau-k)^n \sigma(x-\tau-k)\,d\tau = \frac{1}{n+1}\left[(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k) - (x-k-1)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right]$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} (x-\tau-k)^n \sigma(x-\tau-k)\,d\tau \\
&= \int_{y=k}^{y=k+1} (x-y)^n \sigma(x-y)\,dy && \text{where } y \triangleq \tau+k \implies \tau = y-k \\
&= [\mathsf{F}(x-k)-\mathsf{F}(0)]\sigma(x-k) + [\mathsf{F}(0)-\mathsf{F}(x-k-1)]\sigma(x-k-1) && \text{by Lemma M.3 (page 296), where } \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq x^n \\
&= \frac{\left[(x-k)^{n+1}-0\right]\sigma(x-k) + \left[0-(x-k-1)^{n+1}\right]\sigma(x-k-1)}{n+1} && \text{because } \mathsf{F}(x) \triangleq \int \mathsf{f}(x)\,dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}+c \\
&= \frac{1}{n+1}\left[(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k) - (x-k-1)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example M.1. [3] Let $\sigma(x)$ be the *step function* (Definition M.1 page 295). Let $\binom{n}{k}$ be the *binomial coefficient* (Definition B.3 page 132). The 0*th order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295) $\mathsf{N}_0(x)$ can be expressed as follows:

EX
$$\mathsf{N}_0(x) = \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1 & \text{for } x \in [0:1) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\} = \left\{\sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^k\binom{1}{k}(x-k)^0\sigma(x-k) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$$

The B-spline $\mathsf{N}_0(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

[3] Schumaker (2007) page 136 ⟨Table 1⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_0(x) &= \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)}\\
&= \sigma(x) - \sigma(x-1) && \text{by definition of } \sigma(x) && \text{(Definition M.1 page 295)}\\
&= \left[\binom{1}{0}\sigma(x) - \binom{1}{1}\sigma(x-1)\right] && \text{by definition of } \textit{binomial coefficient } \binom{n}{k} && \text{(Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^k\binom{1}{k}(x-k)^0\sigma(x-k) && \text{by definition of } \sum \text{ operator}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example M.2. [4] Let $\sigma(x)$ be the *step function*. Let $\binom{n}{k}$ be the *binomial coefficient*.
The 1*st order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$ can be expressed as follows:

EX
$$\mathsf{N}_1(x) = \left\{\begin{array}{rl} x & \text{for } x \in [0:1]\\ -x+2 & \text{for } x \in [1:2]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\} = \left\{\sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}(x-k)\sigma(x-k) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$$

The B-spline $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_1(x) &= \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_0(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^k\binom{1}{k}(x-\tau-k)^0\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Example M.1 page 297}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^k\binom{1}{k}\int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1}(x-\tau-k)^0\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \int \mathrm{d}\tau \text{ operator}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{1}(-1)^k\binom{1}{k}\frac{1}{0+1}\left[(x-k)^{0+1}\sigma(x-k) - (x-k-1)^{0+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right] && \text{by Lemma M.4 page 297}\\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 1\{(x-0)\sigma(x-0) - (x-1)\sigma(x-1)\}\\ -1\{(x-1)\sigma(x-1) - (x-2)\sigma(x-2)\}\end{pmatrix}\\
&= x\sigma(x) - 2(x-1)\sigma(x-1) + (x-2)\sigma(x-2)\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}(x-k)\sigma(x-k) && \text{by def. of } \binom{n}{k} \text{ (Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{ll} x & \text{for } x \in [0:1)\\ -x+2 & \text{for } x \in [1:2]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\} && \text{by def. of } \sigma(x) \text{ (Definition M.1 page 295)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example M.3. [5] Let $\sigma(x)$ be the *step function*. Let $\binom{n}{k}$ be the *binomial coefficient*.
The 2*nd order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$ can be expressed as follows:

EX
$$\mathsf{N}_2(x) = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^2 & \text{for } x \in [0:1)\\ -2x^2+6x-3 & \text{for } x \in [1:2]\\ x^2-6x+9 & \text{for } x \in [2:3]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\} = \left\{\frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=0}^{3}(-1)^k\binom{3}{k}(x-k)^2\sigma(x-k) \quad \forall x\in\mathbb{R}\right\}$$

The B-spline $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

[4] Christensen (2008) page 148 ⟨Exercise 6.2⟩, Christensen (2010) page 212 ⟨Exercise 10.2⟩, Heil (2011) pages 142–143 ⟨Definition 4.22 (The Schauder System)⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 136 ⟨Table 1⟩, Stoer and Bulirsch (2002) page 124

[5] Christensen (2008) page 148 ⟨Exercise 6.2⟩, Christensen (2010) page 212 ⟨Exercise 10.2⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 136 ⟨Table 1⟩, Stoer and Bulirsch (2002) page 124

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_2(x) &= \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_1(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}(x-\tau-k)\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Example M.2 page 298}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}\int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1}(x-\tau-k)\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by \textit{linearity} of } \int \mathrm{d}\tau \text{ operator}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}\frac{1}{1+1}\left[(x-k)^{1+1}\sigma(x-k)-(x-k-1)^{1+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right] && \text{by Lemma M.4 page 297}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left(\begin{array}{rl} 1 & \left\{(x-0)^2\sigma(x-0)-(x-1)^2\sigma(x-1)\right\}\\ -2 & \left\{(x-1)^2\sigma(x-1)-(x-2)^2\sigma(x-2)\right\}\\ +1 & \left\{(x-2)^2\sigma(x-2)-(x-3)^2\sigma(x-3)\right\}\end{array}\right)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[x^2\sigma(x)-3(x-1)^2\sigma(x-1)+3(x-2)^2\sigma(x-2)-(x-3)^2\sigma(x-3)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=0}^{3}(-1)^k\binom{3}{k}(x-k)^2\sigma(x-k) && \text{by def. of } \binom{n}{k} \text{ (Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^2 & \text{for } x\in[0:1)\\ -2x^2+6x-3 & \text{for } x\in[1:2]\\ x^2-6x+9 & \text{for } x\in[2:3]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\} && \text{by def. of } \sigma(x) \text{ (Definition M.1 page 295)}
\end{aligned}
$$

The final steps of this proof can be calculated "by hand" or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

M.2 Algebraic properties

Theorem M.1 (next) presents a closed form expression for an *nth order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ based on the definition of $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ given in Definition M.2 (page 295). Alternatively, Theorem M.1 could serve as the definition and Definition M.2 as a property.

Theorem M.1. [6] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295).*
Let $\sigma(x)$ *be the* STEP FUNCTION *(Definition M.1 page 295).*

THM

$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^n\sigma(x-k) \qquad \forall n\in\{0,1,2,\ldots\}=\mathbb{W}$$

✎PROOF: Proof follows by induction:

1. base case (choose one):
   - Proof for $n=0$ case: by Example M.1 (page 297).
   - Proof for $n=1$ case: by Example M.2 (page 298).
   - Proof for $n=2$ case: by Example M.3 (page 298).

[6] Christensen (2008) page 142 ⟨Theorem 6.1.3⟩, Chui (1992) page 84 ⟨(4.1.12)⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

2. inductive step—proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x)\\
&= \int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{n!}\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-\tau-k)^n\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by induction hypothesis}\\
&= \frac{1}{n!}\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}\int_0^1(x-\tau-k)^n\sigma(x-\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by \textit{linearity} of } \int \mathrm{d}\tau \text{ operator}\\
&= \frac{1}{n!}\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}\frac{1}{n+1}\left[(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)-(x-k-1)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right] && \text{by Lemma M.4 page 297}\\
&= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}\left[(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)-(x-k-1)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\left[\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)-\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k-1)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k-1)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\left[\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)-\sum_{m=1}^{m=n+2}(-1)^{m-1}\binom{n+1}{m-1}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m)\right]\\
&\quad \text{where } m \triangleq k+1 \implies k=m-1\\
&= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\left(\begin{array}{l}\displaystyle\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)\\ \displaystyle-\sum_{m=1}^{m=n+2}(-1)^{m-1}\left[\binom{n+2}{m}-\binom{n+1}{m}\right](x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m)\end{array}\right) && \begin{array}{l}\text{by \textit{Pascal's identity} /}\\ \text{\textit{Stifel formula}}\\ \text{(Theorem B.1 page 133)}\end{array}\\
&= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\left(\begin{array}{l}\displaystyle\sum_{m=1}^{m=n+2}(-1)^m\binom{n+2}{m}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m)\\ \displaystyle-\sum_{m=1}^{m=n+2}(-1)^m\binom{n+1}{m}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m)\\ \displaystyle+\sum_{k=0}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k)\end{array}\right) && \text{note } (-1)^{m-1}=-(-1)^m
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\left(\begin{array}{l|ll}
\displaystyle\sum_{m=0}^{m=n+2}(-1)^m\binom{n+2}{m}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m) & \text{(A)} & \text{desired } n+1 \text{ case}\\
\displaystyle-\quad(-1)^0\binom{n+2}{0}(x-0)^{n+1}\sigma(x-0) & \text{(B)} & \text{cancelled by (F)}\\
\displaystyle-\sum_{m=1}^{m=n+1}(-1)^m\binom{n+1}{m}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m) & \text{(C)} & \text{cancelled by (E)}\\
\displaystyle-\quad(-1)^{n+2}\binom{n+1}{n+2}(x-n-2)^{n+1}\sigma(x-n-2) & \text{(D)} & \binom{n+1}{n+2}=0 \text{ by Proposition B.2 page 132}\\
\displaystyle+\sum_{k=1}^{k=n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^{n+1}\sigma(x-k) & \text{(E)} & \text{cancelled by (C)}\\
\displaystyle+\quad(-1)^0\binom{n+1}{0}(x-0)^{n+1}\sigma(x-0) & \text{(F)} & \binom{n+2}{0}=\binom{n+1}{0}=1, \text{ so (F) is cancelled by (B)}
\end{array}\right)
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{(n+1)!}\sum_{m=0}^{m=n+2}(-1)^m\binom{n+2}{m}(x-m)^{n+1}\sigma(x-m) \qquad (n+1 \text{ case})
$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

✏

Example M.4. [7] Let $\mathsf{N}_3(x)$ be the 3*rd order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295).[8]

EX

$$\mathsf{N}_3(x) = \frac{1}{6}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^3 & \text{for } 0 \le x \le 1 \\ -3x^3+12x^2-12x+4 & \text{for } 1 \le x \le 2 \\ 3x^3-24x^2+60x-44 & \text{for } 2 \le x \le 3 \\ -x^3+12x^2-48x+64 & \text{for } 3 \le x \le 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: This expression can be calculated "by hand" using Theorem M.1 (page 299) or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

Example M.5. Let $\mathsf{N}_4(x)$ be the 4*th order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295).

EX

$$\mathsf{N}_4(x) = \frac{1}{24}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^4 & \text{for } 0 \le x \le= 1 \\ -4x^4+20x^3-30x^2+20x-5 & \text{for } 1 \le x \le= 2 \\ 6x^4-60x^3+210x^2-300x+155 & \text{for } 2 \le x \le= 3 \\ -4x^4+60x^3-330x^2+780x-655 & \text{for } 3 \le x \le= 4 \\ x^4-20x^3+150x^2-500x+625 & \text{for } 4 \le x \le= 5 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: This expression can be calculated "by hand" using Theorem M.1 (page 299) or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

Example M.6. Let $\mathsf{N}_5(x)$ be the 5*th order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295).

EX

$$\mathsf{N}_5(x) = \frac{1}{120}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^5 & \text{for } 0 \le x \le= 1 \\ -5x^5+30x^4-60x^3+60x^2-30x+6 & \text{for } 1 \le x \le= 2 \\ 10x^5-120x^4+540x^3-1140x^2+1170x-474 & \text{for } 2 \le x \le= 3 \\ -10x^5+180x^4-1260x^3+4260x^2-6930x+4386 & \text{for } 3 \le x \le= 4 \\ 5x^5-120x^4+1140x^3-5340x^2+12270x-10974 & \text{for } 4 \le x \le= 5 \\ -x^5+30x^4-360x^3+2160x^2-6480x+7776 & \text{for } 5 \le x \le= 6 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}$$

The 5*th order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_5(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

✎PROOF: This expression can be calculated "by hand" using Theorem M.1 (page 299) or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

Example M.7. Let $\mathsf{N}_6(x)$ be the 6*th order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295).

EX

$$\mathsf{N}_6(x) = \frac{1}{720}\left\{\begin{array}{rl} x^6 & \text{for } 0 \le x \le 1 \\ -6x^6+42x^5-105x^4+140x^3-105x^2+42x-7 & \text{for } 1 \le x \le 2 \\ 15x^6-210x^5+1155x^4-3220x^3+4935x^2-3990x+1337 & \text{for } 2 \le x \le 3 \\ -20x^6+420x^5-3570x^4+15680x^3-37590x^2+47040x-24178 & \text{for } 3 \le x \le 4 \\ 15x^6-420x^5+4830x^4-29120x^3+96810x^2-168000x+119182 & \text{for } 4 \le x \le 5 \\ -6x^6+210x^5-3045x^4+23380x^3-100065x^2+225750x-208943 & \text{for } 5 \le x \le 6 \\ x^6-42x^5+735x^4-6860x^3+36015x^2-100842x+117649 & \text{for } 6 \le x \le 7 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}$$

The 6*th order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_6(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

✎PROOF: This expression can be calculated "by hand" using Theorem M.1 (page 299) or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

[7] Schumaker (2007) page 136 ⟨Table 1⟩, Shizgal (2015) page 92 ⟨(2.199)⟩, Szabó and Horváth (2004) page 146 ⟨(4)⟩, Wei and Billings (2006) page 578 ⟨Table 1⟩, Maleknejad et al. (2013) ⟨(9)⟩

[8] For help with plotting *B-splines*, see APPENDIX V (page 397).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

BY-NC-ND

Example M.8. Let $\mathsf{N}_7(x)$ be the 7*th order B-spline* (Definition M.2 page 295).

EX

$$7!\mathsf{N}_7(x) = 5040\mathsf{N}_7(x) =$$
$$\left\{\begin{array}{rrrrrrrrrl}
x^7 & & & & & & & & & \text{for } 0 \le x \le 1 \\
-7x^7 & +56x^6 & -168x^5 & +280x^4 & -280x^3 & +168x^2 & -56x & +8 & & \text{for } 1 \le x \le 2 \\
21x^7 & -336x^6 & +2184x^5 & -7560x^4 & +15400x^3 & -18648x^2 & +12488x & -3576 & & \text{for } 2 \le x \le 3 \\
-35x^7 & +840x^6 & -8400x^5 & +45360x^4 & -143360x^3 & +267120x^2 & -273280x & +118896 & & \text{for } 3 \le x \le 4 \\
35x^7 & -1120x^6 & +15120x^5 & -111440x^4 & +483840x^3 & -1238160x^2 & +1733760x & -1027984 & & \text{for } 4 \le x \le 5 \\
-21x^7 & +840x^6 & -14280x^5 & +133560x^4 & -741160x^3 & +2436840x^2 & -4391240x & +3347016 & & \text{for } 5 \le x \le 6 \\
7x^7 & -336x^6 & +6888x^5 & -78120x^4 & +528920x^3 & -2135448x^2 & +4753336x & -4491192 & & \text{for } 6 \le x \le 7 \\
-x^7 & +56x^6 & -1344x^5 & +17920x^4 & -143360x^3 & +688128x^2 & -1835008x & +2097152 & & \text{for } 7 \le x \le 8 \\
 & & & & & & & & 0 & \text{otherwise}
\end{array}\right\}$$

The 7*th order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_7(x)$ is illustrated in Figure M.1 (page 297).

✎PROOF: This expression can be calculated "by hand" using Theorem M.1 (page 299) or by using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407). ✏

Example M.9. [9] The $(n+1)^2$ coefficients of the order $n, n-1, \ldots, 0$ monomials of each *B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ multiplied by $n!$ induce an *integer sequence*
$\mathbb{x} \triangleq (\!(1, 1, 0, -1, 2, 1, 0, 0, -2, 6, -3, 1, -6, 9, 1, 0, 0, 0, -3, 12, -12, 4, 3, -24, 60, -44, -1, 12, -48, 64, \ldots)\!)$
as more fully listed in Table M.1 (page 326). In this sequence $\mathbb{x} \triangleq (\!(x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)\!)$, the coefficients for the *order n B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ begin at the sequence index value

$$p \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{n} k^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1) \qquad \text{and end at index value } p + (n+1)^2 - 1.$$

For example, the coefficients for $\mathsf{N}_3(x)$ begin at index value $p \triangleq 0 + 1 + 4 + 9 = 14$ and end at index value $p + 4^2 - 1 = 29$. Using these coefficients gives the following expression for $\mathsf{N}_3(x)$:

$$\mathsf{N}_3(x) = \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|l}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \text{for } 0 \le x < 1 \\
-3 & 12 & -12 & 4 & \text{for } 1 \le x < 2 \\
3 & -24 & 60 & -44 & \text{for } 2 \le x < 3 \\
-1 & 12 & -48 & 64 & \text{for } 3 \le x < 4
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c} x^3 \\ x^2 \\ x \\ 1 \end{array}\right] = \left\{\begin{array}{rrrrl}
x^3 & & & & \text{for } 0 \le x < 1 \\
-3x^3 & +12x^2 & -12x & +4 & \text{for } 1 \le x < 2 \\
3x^3 & -24x^2 & +60x & -44 & \text{for } 2 \le x < 3 \\
-x^3 & +12x^2 & -48x & +64 & \text{for } 3 \le x < 4 \\
 & & & 0 & \text{otherwise}
\end{array}\right.$$

…which agrees with the result presented in Example M.4 (page 301).

✎PROOF:

1. The coefficients for the sequence $\mathbb{x}$ may be computed with assistance from *Maxima* together with the script file listed in Section V.2 (page 407).

2. Proof that $\sum_{k=0}^{n} k^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$: The summation is a *power sum*. The relation may be proved using *induction*.[10]

   (a) Base case: n=0 case …

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^{k=0} k^2 &= 0 \\
&= \frac{0(0+1)(2\cdot 0+1)}{6} \\
&= \left.\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right|_{n=0}
\end{aligned}$$

[9] Greenhoe (2017b)
[10] Greenhoe (2017a), pages 186–187 ⟨Proposition 11.2 (Power Sums)⟩

2019 JULY 26 (FRIDAY) 07:49PM UTC
COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(b) Base case: n=1 case …

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=0}^{k=1} k^2 &= 0+1\\ &= \frac{1(1+1)(2\cdot 1+1)}{6}\\ &= \left.\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right|_{n=1}\end{aligned}$$

(c) inductive step—proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1} k^2 &= \left(\sum_{k=0}^{n} k^2\right) + \left(n+1\right)^2\\ &= \left(\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}\right) + \left(n+1\right)^2 && \text{by } n \text{ case hypothesis}\\ &= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{n(2n+1)+6(n+1)}{6}\right)\\ &= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{2n^2+7n+6}{6}\right)\\ &= \left(n+1\right)\left(\frac{(n+2)(2n+3)}{6}\right)\\ &= \frac{(n+1)[(n+1)+1][2(n+1)+1]}{6}\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem M.2. [11]

THM $\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) - \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof using Lemma M.2 (page 295) and the *Fundamental Theorem of Calculus*:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_n(x) &= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\ &= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int_{x-u=0}^{x-u=1} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(u)(-1)\,\mathsf{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq x-\tau \implies \tau = x-u\\ &= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int_{u=x-1}^{u=x} \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u\\ &= \left\{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u\Big|_{u=x}\right\} - \left\{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(u)\,\mathsf{d}u\Big|_{u=x-1}\right\} && \text{by } \textit{Fundamental Theorem of Calculus}^{12}\\ &= \left\{\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x)\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}(x)\right\} - \left\{\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}(x-1)\right\} && \text{by } \textit{Chain Rule}^{13}\\ &= \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) - \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)\end{aligned}$$

[11] Höllig (2003) page 25 ⟨3.2⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 121 ⟨Theorem 4.16⟩
[12] Hijab (2011) page 163 ⟨Theorem 4.4.3⟩
[13] Hijab (2011) pages 73–74 ⟨Theorem 3.1.2⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Proof using Lemma M.2 (page 295) and *induction*:

   (a) Base case …proof for $n = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_0(x) - \mathsf{N}_0(x-1) &= \underbrace{\sigma(x) - \sigma(x-1)}_{\mathsf{N}_0(x)} - \underbrace{[\sigma(x-1) - \sigma(x-2)]}_{\mathsf{N}_0(x-1)} && \text{by Example M.1 page 297}\\
&= \sigma(x) - 2\sigma(x-1) + \sigma(x-2)\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}\sigma(x-k)\\
&= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\sum_{k=0}^{2}(-1)^k\binom{2}{k}(x-k)\sigma(x-k)\\
&= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_1(x) && \text{by Example M.2 page 298}
\end{aligned}$$

   (b) Base case …proof for $n = 2$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{N}_1(x) - \mathsf{N}_1(x-1)\\
&= \underbrace{x\sigma(x) - 2(x-1)\sigma(x-1) + (x-2)\sigma(x-2)}_{\mathsf{N}_1(x)}\\
&\quad - \underbrace{[(x-1)\sigma(x-1) - 2(x-2)\sigma(x-2) + (x-3)\sigma(x-3)]}_{\mathsf{N}_1(x-1)} && \text{by Example M.2 page 298}\\
&= x\sigma(x) + [-2x+2-x+1]\sigma(x-1) + [x-2+2x-4]\sigma(x-2) + [-x+3]\sigma(x-3)\\
&= x\sigma(x) + [-3x+3]\sigma(x-1) + [3x-6]\sigma(x-2) + [-x+3]\sigma(x-3)\\
&= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\left\{\begin{array}{l}\frac{1}{2}x^2\sigma(x) + \left[-\frac{3}{2}x^2 + 3x - \frac{1}{2}\right]\sigma(x-1) + \left[\frac{3}{2}x^2 - 6x + 3\right]\sigma(x-2)\\ \qquad + \left[-\frac{1}{2}x^2 + 3x - \frac{5}{2}\right]\sigma(x-3)\end{array}\right\}\\
&= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_2(x) && \text{by Example M.3 page 298}
\end{aligned}$$

   (c) Proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) &= \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_0^1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by \textit{Leibniz Integration Rule} (Theorem E.2 page 185)}\\
&= \int_0^1 \left[\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau) - \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1-\tau)\right]\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau - \int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau\\
&= \mathsf{N}_n(x) - \mathsf{N}_n(x-1) && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem M.3 (*B-spline recursion*). [14] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295)*.

THM

$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \frac{x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \frac{n+1-x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) \quad \forall n \in \{1,2,3,\ldots\},\ \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

[14] Christensen (2008) page 140 ⟨Theorem 6.1.1⟩, Höllig (2003) page 27 ⟨3.4⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 120 ⟨Theorem 4.15⟩, de Boor (2001) page 90 ⟨B-Spline Property (i)⟩, Chui (1988) page 2 ⟨Theorem 1.1⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 53 ⟨Theorem 3.7⟩, Cox (1972), de Boor (1972)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

1. Base case …proof for $n = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{x}{1}\mathsf{N}_0(x) + \frac{1+1-x}{1}\mathsf{N}_0(x-1) &= \frac{x}{1}\underbrace{[\sigma(x)-\sigma(x-1)]}_{\mathsf{N}_0(x)} + \frac{1+1-x}{1}\underbrace{[\sigma(x-1)-\sigma(x-2)]}_{\mathsf{N}_0(x-1)} \\
&= x\sigma(x) + [-x-x+2]\sigma(x-1) + [x-2]\sigma(x-2) \\
&= \mathsf{N}_1(x) \qquad \text{by Example M.2 page 298}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Induction step …proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x) + \frac{n+2-x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x-1) + c_1 \\
&= \int \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\left\{\frac{x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x) + \frac{n+2-x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x-1)\right\}\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \underbrace{\frac{1}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x) + \frac{x}{n+1}\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_n(x)}_{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\frac{x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x)} + \underbrace{\frac{-1}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x-1) + \frac{n+2-x}{n}\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_n(x-1)}_{\frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\frac{n+2-x}{n+1}\mathsf{N}_n(x-1)}\,\mathsf{d}x \\
&\qquad \text{by } \textit{product rule} \\
&= \int \frac{1}{n+1}\underbrace{\left[\frac{x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \frac{n+1-x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)\right]}_{\text{by } n \text{ hypothesis}} + \frac{x}{n+1}\underbrace{\left[\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) - \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)\right]}_{\text{by Theorem M.2 page 303}} \\
&\qquad - \underbrace{\left[\frac{x-1}{n^2+n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) + \frac{n-x+2}{n(n+1)}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)\right]}_{\text{by induction hypothesis}} \\
&\qquad + \frac{n+2-x}{n+1}\underbrace{\left[\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) - \mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)\right]}_{\text{by Theorem M.2 page 303}}\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \left[\frac{x}{n(n+1)} + \frac{x}{n+1}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \left[\frac{n-x+1}{n(n+1)} - \frac{x-1}{n(n+1)} + \frac{n+2-2x}{n+1}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) \\
&\qquad + \left[\frac{-n-2+x}{n(n+1)} + \frac{-n-2+x}{n+1}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)\,\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \left[\frac{x+nx}{n(n+1)}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \left[\frac{n+2-2x+n(n+2-2x)}{n(n+1)}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) \\
&\qquad + \left[\frac{-n-2+x+n(-n-2+x)}{n(n+1)}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)\,\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \left[\frac{x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \left[\frac{n+2-2x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) + \left[\frac{-n-2+x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)\,\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \underbrace{\left[\frac{x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x) + \left[\frac{n+1-x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)}_{\mathsf{N}_n(x)} \\
&\qquad - \underbrace{\left[\frac{x-1}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1) - \left[\frac{n+2-x}{n}\right]\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-2)}_{\mathsf{N}_{n-1}(x-1)}\,\mathsf{d}x \\
&= \int \mathsf{N}_n(x) - \mathsf{N}_n(x-1)\,\mathsf{d}x \qquad \text{by } n \text{ hypothesis} \\
&= \int \frac{\mathsf{d}}{\mathsf{d}x}\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x)\,\mathsf{d}x \qquad \text{by Theorem M.2 page 303} \\
&= \mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) + c_2
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

Proof that $c_1 = c_2$: By item (2) (page 306), $\mathsf{N}_n(x) = 0$ for $x < 0$. Therefore, $c_1 = c_2$.

✏

Theorem M.4 (*B-spline general form*). [15] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295). Let* $\mathsf{supp}\,\mathsf{f}$ *be the* SUPPORT *of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM						
	1.	$\mathsf{N}_n(x)$	$\geq$	0	$\forall n \in \mathbb{W}, \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$	(NON-NEGATIVE)
	2.	$\mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_n(x)$	$=$	$[0 : n+1]$	$\forall n \in \mathbb{W}$	(CLOSED SUPPORT)
	3.	$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x)\,\mathsf{d}x$	$=$	1	$\forall n \in \mathbb{W}$	(UNIT AREA)
	4.	$\mathsf{N}_n\left(\frac{n+1}{2} - x\right)$	$=$	$\mathsf{N}_n\left(\frac{n+1}{2} + x\right)$	$\forall n \in \mathbb{N} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$	(SYMMETRIC *about* $x = \frac{n+1}{2}$)

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\mathsf{N}_n(x) \geq 0$ (proof by induction):

   (a) base case…proof that $\mathsf{N}_0(x) \geq 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{N}_0(x) &\triangleq \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)} \\ &\geq 0 && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_A(x) && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \end{aligned}$$

   (b) inductive step—proof that $\{\mathsf{N}_n(x) \geq 0\} \implies \{\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) \geq 0\}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) &= \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295} \\ &\geq 0 && \text{by induction hypothesis } (\mathsf{N}_n(x) \geq 0) \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_n(x) = [0 : n+1]$ (proof by induction):

   (a) Base case …proof that $\mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_0 = [0 : 1]$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_0 &\triangleq \mathsf{supp}\,\mathbb{1}_{[0:1)} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)} \\ &= \{[0 : 1)\}^- && \text{by definition of } \textit{support} \text{ operator} \\ &= [0 : 1] && \text{by definition of } \textit{closure} \text{ operator} \end{aligned}$$

   (b) Induction step …proof that $\{\mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_n = [0 : n+1]\} \implies \{\mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_{n+1} = [0 : n+2]\}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{supp}\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) &= \mathsf{supp} \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295} \\ &= \mathsf{supp} \int_{[0:1]} \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathsf{d}\tau && \text{by def. of } \textit{Lebesgue integration} \\ &= \left\{x \in \mathbb{R} \middle| (x-\tau) \in [0 : n+1] \text{ for some } \tau \in [0 : 1]\right\}^- && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\ &= [0 : n+1] \cup [0+1 : n+1+1]^- \\ &= [0 : n+2]^- \\ &= [0 : n+2] && \text{by property of } \textit{closure} \text{ operator} \end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x)\,\mathsf{d}x = 1$ (proof by induction):

[15] Christensen (2008) page 140 ⟨Theorem 6.1.1⟩, Höllig (2003) page 27 ⟨3.4⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 120 ⟨Theorem 4.15⟩, de Boor (2001) page 90 ⟨B-Spline Property (i)⟩, Chui (1988) page 2 ⟨Theorem 1.1⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 53 ⟨Theorem 3.7⟩, Cox (1972), de Boor (1972), Prasad and Iyengar (1997) pages 145–146 ⟨Theorem 6.2⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(a) Base case …proof that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_0(x) = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_0(x)\,\mathrm{d}x &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)}\\
&= \int_{[0:1)} 1\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_A(x) && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}\\
&= \int_{[0:1]} 1\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by property of } \textit{Lebesgue integration}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Induction step …proof that $\left\{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x) = 1\right\} \implies \left\{\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_{n+1} = 1\right\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x &= \int_{\mathbb{R}}\int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_0^1\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}\tau\\
&= \int_0^1\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(u)\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{where } u \triangleq x-\tau \implies \tau = x-u\\
&= \int_0^1 1\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by induction hypothesis}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ is *symmetric* for $n \in \{1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$:

(a) Note that $\mathsf{N}_0(x)$ $(n = 0)$ is *not symmetric* (in particular it fails at $x = 1/2$) because
$\mathsf{N}_0\left(\frac{0+1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\right) = \mathsf{N}_0(0) = 1 \neq 0 = \mathsf{N}_1(1) = \mathsf{N}_0\left(\frac{0+1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\right)$

(b) Base case …proof for $n = 1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_1\left(\frac{1+1}{2} - x\right) &= \mathsf{N}_1(1-x)\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{rl} (1-x) & \text{for } 1-x \in [0:1]\\ -(1-x)+2 & \text{for } 1-x \in [1:2]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\} && \text{by Example M.2 page 298}\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{rl} -x+1 & \text{for } -x \in [-1:0]\\ x+1 & \text{for } -x \in [0:1]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\}\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{rl} x+1 & \text{for } x \in [-1:0]\\ -x+1 & \text{for } x \in [0:1]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\}\\
&= \left\{\begin{array}{rl} (1+x) & \text{for } 1+x \in [0:1]\\ -(1+x)+2 & \text{for } 1+x \in [1:2]\\ 0 & \text{otherwise}\end{array}\right\}\\
&= \mathsf{N}_1(1+x) && \text{by Example M.2 page 298}\\
&= \mathsf{N}_1\left(\frac{1+1}{2} + x\right)
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

BY-NC-ND

(c) Induction step …proof that $n-1$ case $\Longrightarrow$ n case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathsf{N}_n\left(\frac{n+1}{2}+x\right)\\
&=\frac{\frac{n+1}{2}+x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n+1}{2}+x\right)+\frac{n+1-\left(\frac{n+1}{2}+x\right)}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n+1}{2}+x-1\right) && \text{by Theorem M.3 page 304}\\
&=\frac{n+1-\left(\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right)}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n}{2}+\left[x+\frac{1}{2}\right]\right)+\frac{\frac{n+1}{2}-x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n}{2}+\left[x-\frac{1}{2}\right]\right)\\
&=\frac{n+1-\left(\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right)}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n}{2}-\left[x+\frac{1}{2}\right]\right)+\frac{\frac{n+1}{2}-x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n}{2}-\left[x-\frac{1}{2}\right]\right) && \text{by induction hypothesis}\\
&=\frac{n+1-\left(\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right)}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\left[\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right]-1\right)+\frac{\frac{n+1}{2}-x}{n}\mathsf{N}_{n-1}\left(\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right)\\
&=\mathsf{N}_n\left(\frac{n+1}{2}-x\right) && \text{by Theorem M.3 page 304}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

M.3 Projection properties

In the case where $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is to be used as a basis in some subspace of $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, one may want to *project* a function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ onto a basis function $\mathsf{N}_n(x-k)$. This is especially true when $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)$ is *orthogonal*; but in the case of *B-splines* this is only true when $n=0$ (Theorem M.8 page 318). Nevertheless, projection of a function onto $\mathsf{N}_n(x-k)$, or the projection of $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ onto another basis fucntion (such as the complex exponential in the case of *Fourier analysis* as in Lemma M.5 page 310), is still useful. Projection in an *inner product space* is typically performed using the *inner product* $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{N}_n(x-k)\rangle$; and in the space $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, this inner product is typically defined as an *integral* such that

$$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{N}_n(x-k)\rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{N}_n(x-k)\,\mathrm{d}x.$$

As it turns out, there is a way to compute this inner product that only involves the function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ and the order parameter n (next theorem).

Theorem M.5. [16] *Let* f *be a* CONTINUOUS *function in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}$ *the* nTH DERIVATIVE *of* $\mathsf{f}(x)$.

THM

(1). $$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{N}_n(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = \int_{[0:1)^{n+1}} \mathsf{f}(x_1+x_2+\cdots+x_{n+1})\,\mathrm{d}x_1\,\mathrm{d}x_2\cdots\mathrm{d}x_{n+1}$$

(2). $$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}^{(n)}(x)\mathsf{N}_n(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = \sum_{k=0}^{n+1}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{f}(k)$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof for (1) (proof by induction):

   (a) Base case …proof for $n=0$ case:

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{N}_0(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = \int_{[0:1)} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) \qquad \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)}$$

[16] Chui (1992) page 85 ⟨(4.2.2), (4.2.3)⟩, Christensen (2008) page 140 ⟨Theorem 6.1.1⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

(b) Inductive step—proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x \\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left[\int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau\right]\mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295} \\
&= \int_{[0:1)}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \int_{[0:1)}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(u)\mathsf{f}(u+\tau)\,\mathrm{d}u\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{where } u \triangleq x-\tau \implies x = u+\tau \\
&= \int_{[0:1)}\int_{[0:1)^{n+1}} \mathsf{f}(u_1+u_2+\cdots+u_{n+1}+\tau)\,\mathrm{d}u_1\,\mathrm{d}u_2\cdots\mathrm{d}u_{n+1}\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by induction hypothesis} \\
&= \int_{[0:1)^{n+2}} \mathsf{f}(u_1+u_2+\cdots+u_{n+1}+u_{n+2})\,\mathrm{d}u_1\,\mathrm{d}u_2\cdots\mathrm{d}u_{n+2}\,\mathrm{d}\tau \\
&= \int_{[0:1)^{n+2}} \mathsf{f}(x_1+x_2+\cdots+x_{n+1}+x_{n+2})\,\mathrm{d}x_1\,\mathrm{d}x_2\cdots\mathrm{d}x_{n+2} && \text{by change of variables } u_k \to x_k
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}^{(n)}(x)\mathsf{N}_n(x)\,\mathrm{d}x &= \int_{[0:1)^{n+1}} \mathsf{f}^{(n)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n+1} x_k\right)\mathrm{d}x_1\,\mathrm{d}x_2\cdots\mathrm{d}x_{n+1} && \text{by (1)} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n+1}(-1)^{n-k+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{f}(k) && \text{by Theorem E.1 page 184}
\end{aligned}$$

Figure M.2: Zero locations for B-cardinal spline $N_n(x)$ scaling coefficients

M.4 Fourier analysis

Simply put, no matter what new and fancy basis sequences are discovered, the *Fourier transform* never goes out of style. This is largely because the *kernel* of the Fourier transform—the *complex exponential* function—has two properties that makes it extremely special:

- The complex exponential is an eigenvalue of any *linear time invariant* (*LTI*) operator (Theorem H.12 page 228).
- The complex exponential generates a *continuous point spectrum* for the *differential operator*.

Thus, we might expect the projection of the *B-spline* function $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ onto the complex exponential (essentially the *Fourier transform* of $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$,…next lemma) to be useful. Such a hunch would be confirmed because it is useful for proving that

CC BY-NC-ND

- the sequence $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a *Riesz basis* (Lemma M.6 page 313, Theorem M.8 page 318) and
- the sequence $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a *multiresolution analysis* (Theorem M.10 page 321).

Lemma M.5. [17] *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *operator* (Definition K.2 page 255).

LEM

$$\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1-e^{-i\omega}}{i\omega}\right)^{n+1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}}\left(\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{\omega/2}\right)^{n+1} \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}}\left(\operatorname{sinc}\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^{n+1}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof using Theorem M.5 page 308:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{N}_n(x)e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \quad \text{(Definition K.2 page 255)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{[0:1)^{n+1}} e^{-i\omega(x_1+x_2+\cdots+x_{n+1})}\,\mathrm{d}x_1\,\mathrm{d}x_2\cdots,\,\mathrm{d}x_{n+1} && \text{by Theorem M.5}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\prod_{k=1}^{n+1}\left(\int_{[0:1)} e^{-i\omega x_k}\,\mathrm{d}x_k\right) && \text{because } e^{x+y}=e^xe^y\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\int_0^1 e^{-i\omega x}\,\mathrm{d}x\right)^{n+1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\left.\frac{e^{-i\omega x}}{-i\omega}\right|_0^1\right)^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1-e^{-i\omega}}{i\omega}\right)^{n+1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\left(\frac{e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}-e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}}{i\omega}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\left(\frac{2i\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\frac{2i\omega}{2}}\right)\right]^{n+1} && \text{by } \textit{Euler formulas} \quad \text{(Corollary H.2 page 219)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}}\left(\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{\omega/2}\right)^{n+1}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof using *rectangular pulse* example (Example K.1 page 262) and *Convolution Theorem* (Theorem O.2 page 342):

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega) &= \left[\sqrt{2\pi}\right]^n\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_0\right]^{n+1} && \text{by } \textit{Convolution Theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem O.2 page 342)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\sqrt{2\pi}\frac{c(b-a)}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\omega\right)}\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}{\left(\frac{b-a}{2}\omega\right)}\right)\right]^{n+1} && \text{by } \textit{rectangular pulse} \text{ example with } a=0,\ b=c=1 \quad \text{(Example K.1 page 262)}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\sqrt{2\pi}\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{(\omega/2)}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\left(\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}\right)}\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{(\omega/2)}\right)^{n+1}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example M.10. The *Fourier transform magnitude* $\left|\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_0\right](\omega)\right|$ of the *0 order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_0(x)$ is illustrated to the right.

[17] Christensen (2008) page 142 ⟨Corollary 6.1.2⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Example M.11. The *Fourier transform magnitude* $\left|\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_1\right](\omega)\right|$ of the *1st order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$ is illustrated to the right.

Example M.12. The *Fourier transform magnitude* $\left|\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_2\right](\omega)\right|$ of the *2nd order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$ is illustrated to the right.

M.5 Basis properties

M.5.1 Uniqueness properties

Coefficients of a *basis sequence* are not always *unique*. Take for example a very trivial sequence (α_1, α_2) in which the coefficients are summed. If $\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ and $\mathsf{g}(x) \triangleq \beta_1 + \beta_2$,

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{then} \quad \{(\alpha_1,\alpha_2) = (\beta_1,\beta_2)\} \quad &&\Longrightarrow \quad \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{g}(x) \\ &\text{but} \quad \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{g}(x) &&\not\Longrightarrow \quad \{(\alpha_1,\alpha_2) = (\beta_1,\beta_2)\}, \end{aligned}$$

because for example if $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = (1, 2)$ and $(\beta_1, \beta_2) = (-6, 9)$, then $\mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{g}(x)$, but $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \neq (\beta_1, \beta_2)$. This example demonstrates that the "if and only if" condition $\Longleftrightarrow$ does not hold and coefficients are not unique in all *basis sequences*. But arguably a minimal requirement for any practical basis sequence is that the coefficients are *unique* (the "if and only if" condition $\Longleftrightarrow$ holds). And indeed, in a *B-spline* basis sequence $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$, the coefficients $(\!(\alpha_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ are *unique*, as demonstrated by Theorem M.6 (next).

Theorem M.6. [18] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH-ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295). Let*

$$\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) \quad \textit{and} \quad \mathsf{g}(x) \triangleq \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \beta_k \mathsf{N}_n(x-k).$$

THM

$$\underbrace{\left\{\ \mathsf{f}(x) = \mathsf{g}(x) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}\ \right\} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \left\{(\!(\alpha_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} = (\!(\beta_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\right\}}_{\textit{coefficients are UNIQUE}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\Longleftarrow$ condition holds:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{f}(x) &\triangleq \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_k \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\ &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \beta_k \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) && \text{by right hypothesis} \\ &\triangleq \mathsf{g}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{g}(x) \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\Longrightarrow$ condition holds (proof by contradiction):

   (a) Suppose it does *not* hold.

[18] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 55 ⟨Theorem 3.11⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

(b) Then there exists sequences $(\!(\alpha_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ and $(\!(\beta_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ such that
$$(\!(\alpha_k)\!) - (\!(\beta_k)\!) \triangleq (\!(alpha_k - \beta_k)\!) \neq (\!(0,0,0,\cdots)\!)$$
but also such that $\mathsf{f}(x) - \mathsf{g}(x) = 0\ \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$.

(c) If this were possible, then

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \mathsf{f}(x) - \mathsf{g}(x) \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \alpha_m \mathsf{N}_n(x-m) - \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \beta_m \mathsf{N}_n(x-m) \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (\alpha_m - \beta_m)\mathsf{N}_n(x-m) \\
&= \sum_{m=0}^{m=n} (\alpha_m - \beta_m)\frac{1}{n!}\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}(-1)^k\binom{n+1}{k}(x-k)^n\sigma(x-k)\right] && \text{by Theorem M.1 page 299}
\end{aligned}$$

(d) But this is *impossible* because $\mathsf{N}(x)$ is *non-negative* (Theorem M.4 page 306).

(e) Therefore, there is a contradiction, and the $\Longrightarrow$ condition *does* hold.

✏

M.5.2 Partition of unity properties

In the case in which a sequence of *B-splines* $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is to be used as a *basis* for some subspace of $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, arguably one of the most important properties for the sequence to have is the *partition of unity* property such that $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) = 1$. This allows for convenient representation of the most basic functions, such as constants.[19] As it turns out, B-splines *do* have this property (next theorem).

Theorem M.7 (*B-spline partition of unity*). [20] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295)*.

THM
$$\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) = 1 \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{W} \qquad \text{(PARTITION OF UNITY)}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_0(x-k) = 1$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_0(x-k) &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x-k) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{N}_0(x) && \text{(Definition M.2 page 295)} \\
&= 1 && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_A(x) && \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for this theorem follows from the $n = 0$ case ((1) lemma page 312), the definition of $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ (Definition M.2 page 295), and Corollary Q.1 (page 365).

3. Alternatively, this theorem can be proved by *induction*:

   (a) Base case ($n = 0$ case): by (1) lemma.

[19] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

[20] Christensen (2008) page 140 ⟨Theorem 6.1.1⟩, Höllig (2003) page 27 ⟨3.4⟩, Schumaker (2007) page 120 ⟨Theorem 4.15⟩, de Boor (2001) page 90 ⟨B-Spline Property (i)⟩, Chui (1988) page 2 ⟨Theorem 1.1⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 53 ⟨Theorem 3.7⟩, Cox (1972), de Boor (1972)

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure M.3: *auto-power spectrum* $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ plots of *B-splines* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ (Lemma M.6 page 313) For C and LaTeX source code to generate such a plot, see Section V.3 (page 410).

(b) Inductive step—proof that $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_n(x-k) = 1 \implies \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x-k) = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x-k) &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1} \mathsf{N}_n(x-k-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{x-u=0}^{x-u=1} \mathsf{N}_n(u-k)(-1)\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq x-\tau \implies \tau = x-u\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{u=x-1}^{u=x} \mathsf{N}_n(u-k)\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u=x-1}^{u=x} \left(\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{N}_n(u-k)\right)\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \int_{u=x-1}^{u=x} 1\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by induction hypothesis}\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example M.13. The *partition of unity* property for the 0 *order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_0(x)$ (Example M.1 page 297) is illustrated to the right.

Example M.14. The *partition of unity* property for the 1*st order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$ (Example M.2 page 298) is illustrated to the right.

Example M.15. The *partition of unity* property for the 2*nd order B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$ (Example M.3 page 298) is illustrated to the right.

M.5.3 Riesz basis properties

Lemma M.6. *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295).*
Let $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) \triangleq 2\pi \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega - 2\pi k)\right|^2$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *(Definition R.3 page 371) of* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$.

CC BY-NC-ND

LEM				
	(1). $0 < \tilde{S}_n(\omega) \le 1 \quad \forall \omega \in \mathbb{R} \quad , \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{W}$		(3). $\tilde{S}_n(0) = 1 \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{W}$	
	(2). $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) = 1 \quad \forall \omega \in \mathbb{R} \quad , \quad \text{for } n = 0$		(4). $\tilde{S}_n(\pi) \le \frac{1}{3} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{W}\setminus\{0\}$	

(*Note: see illustration in Figure M.3 page 313.*)

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi - \frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)}$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(\omega) &\triangleq 2\pi \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega - 2\pi k)\right|^2 && \text{by Definition R.3 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i\frac{(n+1)(\omega-2\pi k)}{2}} \left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega-2\pi k}{2}\right)}{\frac{\omega-2\pi k}{2}}\right)^{n+1}\right|^2 && \text{by Lemma M.5 page 310}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega-2\pi k}{2}\right)}{\frac{\omega-2\pi k}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2} - k\pi\right)}{k\pi - \frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{(-1)^k \sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi - \frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi - \frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. lemma (one sided series form):

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(\omega) &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi - \frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)} && \text{by (1) lemma}\\
&= \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\omega/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} \left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{2k - \frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{2k + \frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\right)
\end{aligned}$$

3. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *continuous* for all $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$.
   Proof: $\sin(\omega/2)$ and $\omega/2$ are *continuous*, so $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *continuous* as well.

4. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *periodic* with period 2π (and so we only need to examine $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ for $\omega \in [0 : 2\pi)$). Proof of *periodicity*: This follows directly from Proposition R.2 (page 372).

5. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(-\omega) = \tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ (*symmetric* about 0) and $\tilde{S}_n(\pi - \omega) = \tilde{S}_n(\pi + \omega)$ (*symmetric* about π). Proof: This follows directly from Proposition R.3 (page 373).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

6. Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(0) = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(0) &= \lim_{\omega\to 0} \tilde{S}_n(\omega) && \text{by (3) lemma}\\
&= \lim_{\omega\to 0}\left[\left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\omega/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k-\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k+\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\right)\right] && \text{by (2) lemma}\\
&= \lim_{\omega\to 0}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{-\frac{1}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + 0 && \text{by } \textit{l'Hôpital's rule}\\
&= (-1)^{2(n+1)} = 1
\end{aligned}$$

7. Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\pi)$ converges to some value > 0:

(a) Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\pi) > 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(\pi) &= \left[\frac{\sin(\pi/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \left[\frac{\sin(\pi/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k-\frac{\pi}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k+\frac{\pi}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\right) && \text{by (2) lemma}\\
&= \left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\left[1 + \left(\frac{1}{1}\right)^{2(n+1)} + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{2(n+1)} + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{2(n+1)} + \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^{2(n+1)} + \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^{2(n+1)} + \cdots\right]\\
&= 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)} \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k-1}\right]^{2(n+1)}}_{\textit{Dirichlet Lambda function } \lambda(2n+2)}\\
&> 0 \qquad \text{because } x^2 > 0 \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{R}\setminus\{0\}
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\pi)$ *converges*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(\pi) &= 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2k-1}\right)^{2(n+1)} && \text{by item (7a)}\\
&\le 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{2(n+1)}\\
&\le 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{2}\\
&\implies \textit{convergence} && \text{by } \textit{comparison test}
\end{aligned}$$

(c) Tighter bounds for $\tilde{S}_n(\pi)$ for certain values of $n \in \{0,1,2,3,4\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n(\pi) &= 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2k-1}\right)^{2(n+1)} && \text{by item (7a)}\\
&= 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)} U_{2(n+1)} && \text{by Jolley (1961), pages 56–57 } \langle(307)\rangle\\
&= 2\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2(n+1)}\left[\frac{\pi^{2(n+1)}\alpha_{n+1}}{(4)[(2n+2)!]}\right] && \text{by Jolley (1961), pages 56–57 } \langle(307)\rangle\\
&= \frac{2^{2n+1}\alpha_{n+1}}{(2n+2)!}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \left\{ \begin{array}{lll} \frac{2^1(1)}{2!} & \text{for } n=0 & (\alpha_1 = 1) \\ \frac{2^5(1)}{4!} & \text{for } n=1 & (\alpha_2 = 1) \\ \frac{2^5(3)}{6!} & \text{for } n=2 & (\alpha_3 = 3) \\ \frac{2^7(17)}{8!} & \text{for } n=3 & (\alpha_4 = 17) \\ \frac{2^9(155)}{10!} & \text{for } n=4 & (\alpha_5 = 155) \end{array} \right\} \qquad \text{by Jolley (1961), page 234 } \langle(1130)\rangle$$

$$= \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1 & \text{for } n=0 \\ \frac{1}{3} & \text{for } n=1 \\ \frac{2}{15} & \text{for } n=2 \\ \frac{17}{315} & \text{for } n=3 \\ \frac{62}{2835} & \text{for } n=4 \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{ll} 1 & \text{for } n=0 \\ 0.3333333333333\cdots & \text{for } n=1 \\ 0.1333333333333\cdots & \text{for } n=2 \\ 0.0539682539682\cdots & \text{for } n=3 \\ 0.0218694885361\cdots & \text{for } n=4 \end{array} \right\}$$

(d) Being important for the $n = 0$ case, note that[21]

$$\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2k-1}\right)^2}_{\textit{Dirichlet Lambda function } \lambda(2)} = 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \frac{1}{7^2} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{8}$$

(e) Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\pi) \le \frac{1}{3}$: because $\tilde{S}_n(\pi) = \frac{1}{3}$ for $n = 1$ (item (7c) page 315) and because $\tilde{S}_n(\pi)$ is decreasing for increasing n.

8. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ *converges* to some value $> 0\ \forall\omega \in \mathbb{R}$. Proof:

(a) For $\omega = 0$, $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) = 1$ by item (6).

(b) Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) > 0$ for $\omega \in (0 : 2\pi)$:

$$\tilde{S}_n(\omega) = \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\omega/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k-\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k+\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\right) \qquad \text{by (2) lemma}$$

$$> 0$$

(c) Proof that $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ *converges*:

i. lemma: $\displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}$ *converges*. Proof:

$$\lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \left[\frac{1}{2y \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} \mathrm{d}y = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_1^b \left[2y \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}\right]^{-2n-2} \mathrm{d}y$$

$$= \lim_{b\to\infty} \left.\frac{\left[2y \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}\right]^{-2n-1}}{2(-2n-1)}\right|_1^b$$

$$= \lim_{b\to\infty}\left(\frac{-1}{2(2n+1)}\right)\left[\frac{1}{\left[2b \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}\right]^{2n+1}} - \frac{1}{\left[2 \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}\right]^{2n+1}}\right]$$

$$= 0 + \frac{1}{2(2n+1)\left[2 \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}\right]^{2n+1}}$$

$$< \infty \qquad \forall\omega \in [0 : 2\pi)$$

$$\Longrightarrow \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k \pm \frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} \quad \textit{converges} \qquad \text{by } \textit{integral test}$$

[21] Nahin (2011) page 153, Bailey et al. (2013) page 334 ⟨Catalan's Constant⟩, Bailey et al. (2011) ⟨(15)⟩, Wells (1987) page 36 ⟨Dictionary entry for π: pages 31–37⟩, Heinbockel (2010) page 94 ⟨(2.27) *Dirichlet Lambda function*⟩

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

ii. completion of proof using (8(c)i) lemma …

$$\begin{aligned}
&\tilde{S}_n(\omega)\\
&= \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\omega/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \left[\frac{\sin(\omega/2)}{(\pi/2)}\right]^{2(n+1)}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k-\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)} + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{2k+\frac{\omega}{\pi}}\right]^{2(n+1)}\right) && \text{by (2) lemma}\\
&\Longrightarrow \tilde{S}_n(\omega) \textit{ converges } \forall\omega \in (0:2\pi) && \text{by (8(c)i) lemma}
\end{aligned}$$

9. lemma (an expression for $\tilde{S}'_n(\omega)$):

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}'_n(\omega) &\triangleq \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\tilde{S}_n(\omega)\\
&= \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)} && \text{by (1) lemma page 314}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2(n+1)} && \text{by } \textit{linearity} \text{ of } \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega} \text{ operator}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}2(n+1)\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right] && \text{by } \textit{power rule}\\
&= 2(n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\frac{1}{2}\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)-\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right] && \text{by } \textit{quotient rule}\\
&= (n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

10. lemma: $\tilde{S}'_n(0) = \tilde{S}'_n(\pi) = 0$. Proof: This follows from Proposition R.3 (page 373). Here is alternate proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}'_n(0) &= \lim_{\omega\to 0}\tilde{S}'_n(\omega)\\
&= \lim_{\omega\to 0}(n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right] && \text{by (9) lemma}\\
&= \lim_{\omega\to 0}(n+1)\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right]\\
&= (n+1)\lim_{\omega\to 0}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\lim_{\omega\to 0}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right]\\
&= (n+1)[-1]^{2n+1}\lim_{\omega\to 0}\left[\frac{-\frac{1}{2}\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)+\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}{-\frac{2}{2}\left(-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}\right] && \text{by } \textit{l'Hôpital's rule}\\
&= (1)(0)\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n'(\pi) &= (n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\left(k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2}\right] && \text{by (9) lemma}\\
&= (n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{1}{k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{0\left(k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)+1}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2}\right]\\
&= (n+1)\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2n+3}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{1}{2k-1}\right]^{2n+3}\\
&= (n+1)\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2n+3}\left[\left(\frac{1}{1}\right)^{2n+3}+\left(\frac{1}{-1}\right)^{2n+3}+\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{2n+3}+\left(\frac{1}{-3}\right)^{2n+3}+\ldots\right]\\
&= (n+1)\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{2n+3}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}(-1)^{k+1}\alpha_k \qquad \text{where } \alpha_k \triangleq \left\{\begin{array}{ll}\left(\frac{1}{k}\right)^{2n+3} & \text{for } k \text{ odd}\\ \left(\frac{1}{k-1}\right)^{2n+3} & \text{for } k \text{ even}\end{array}\right\}\\
&= 0 \qquad \text{because } \lim_{k\to\infty}\alpha_k = 0 \text{ and by } \textit{Alternating Series Test}
\end{aligned}$$

11. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *decreasing* with respect to $\omega \in [0 : \pi]$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_n'(\omega) &= (n+1)\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+1}\left[\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)+\sin\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}{\left(k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^2}\right] && \text{by (9) lemma page 317}\\
&= \underbrace{(n+1)\left(\sin\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^{2n+1}}_{\geq 0 \text{ for } \omega\in[0:2\pi)}\underbrace{\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\frac{1}{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}\right]^{2n+2}}_{>0}\left[\underbrace{\left(\cos\frac{\omega}{2}\right)}_{\text{sign change at } \omega=\pi}+\frac{\overbrace{\sin\frac{\omega}{2}}^{>0 \text{ for } \omega\in(0:2\pi)}}{\underbrace{k\pi-\frac{\omega}{2}}_{\textit{decreasing} \text{ w.r.t. } \omega\in\mathbb{R}}}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

12. lemma: $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *increasing* with respect to $\omega \in [\pi : 2\pi)$. Proof: This is true because $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *decreasing* in $[0 : \pi]$ ((11) lemma) and because $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *symmetric* about $\omega = \pi$ ((5) lemma).

13. Proof that $0 < \tilde{S}_n(\omega) \leq 1$:
    (a) $\tilde{S}_n(\omega) > 0$ by (8) lemma and
    (b) $\tilde{S}_n(0) = 1$ by item (6) and
    (c) $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *decreasing* from $\omega = 0$ to $\omega = \pi$ by (11) lemma and
    (d) $\tilde{S}_n(\omega)$ is *increasing* from $\omega = \pi$ to $\omega = 2\pi$ by (12) lemma and
    (e) $\tilde{S}_n(2\pi) = 1$ because $\tilde{S}_n(2\pi) = \tilde{S}_n(0)$ by (4) lemma.

✏

Theorem M.8. [22]

THM					
	1. $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is a*	RIESZ BASIS	*for* $\operatorname{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$		$\forall n \in \mathbb{W}$
	2. $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is an*	ORTHONORMAL BASIS	*for* $\operatorname{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$	$\Longleftrightarrow$	$n = 0$

✎PROOF:

[22] Wojtaszczyk (1997) page 56 ⟨Proposition 3.12⟩, Prasad and Iyengar (1997) page 148 ⟨Theorem 6.3⟩, Forster and Massopust (2009) page 66 ⟨Theorem 2.25⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a *Riesz basis* for $\mathsf{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$:

$$\begin{aligned} & 0 < \tilde{S}_n(\omega) \le 1 && \text{by Lemma M.6 page 313 (1)} \\ \implies & (\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ is a } \textit{Riesz basis} \text{ for } \mathsf{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} && \text{by Theorem R.2 page 374} \end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\{n=0\} \iff (\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is an *orthonormal basis* for $\mathsf{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$:

$$\begin{aligned} n=0 \iff & \tilde{S}_n(\omega) = 1 && \text{by Lemma M.6 page 313 (2), (4)} \\ \iff & (\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \text{ is an } \textit{orthonormal basis} \text{ for } \mathsf{span}(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!) && \text{by Theorem R.3 page 377} \end{aligned}$$

✏

M.6 Mutiresolution properties

M.6.1 Introduction

In 1989, Stéphane G. Mallat introduced the *Multiresolution Analysis* (MRA) structure (Definition 2.1 page 16) An MRA is very powerful because it can be used to approximate functions at incrementally increasing "scales" of resolution, and furthermore induces a *wavelet*. In fact, the MRA has become the dominate wavelet construction method. Moreover, P.G. Lemarié has proved that all wavelets with *compact support* are generated by an MRA. [23]

M.6.2 B-spline dyadic decomposition

One key feature of an MRA is *dyadic decomposition* such that $\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \sum_k \alpha_n \mathsf{N}_n(2x-n)$ for some sequence $(\!(\alpha_n)\!)$. As it turns out, *B-splines* also have this property (next theorem).

Theorem M.9 (*B-spline dyadic decomposition*). [24] *Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE.

THM
$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k) \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{W},\ \forall x\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Base case ...proof for $n=0$ case:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{N}_0(x) &= \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_A(x) \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\ &= \mathbb{1}_{[0:½)}(x) + \mathbb{1}_{[½:1)}(x) \\ &= \mathbb{1}_{[2\times 0:2\times ½)}(2x) + \mathbb{1}_{[2\times ½-1:2\times 1-1)}(2x-1) \\ &= \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(2x) + \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(2x-1) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^0}\sum_{k=0}^{0+1}\binom{0+1}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k) \end{aligned}$$

[23] Mallat (1999) page 240, Definition 2.1 (page 16)
[24] Prasad and Iyengar (1997) pages 151–152 ⟨proof using Fourier transform⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

2. Induction step…proof that n case $\implies$ $n+1$ case:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{N}_{n+1}(x) &= \int_0^1 \mathsf{N}_n(x-\tau)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-2\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by induction hypothesis}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\int_{\tau=0}^{\tau=1}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-2\tau-k)\,\mathrm{d}\tau && \text{by \textit{linearity} of } \textstyle\sum \text{ operator}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^n}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\int_{u=0}^{u=2}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-u-k)\frac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq 2\tau \implies \tau = \tfrac{1}{2}u\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\left[\int_{u=0}^{u=1}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k-u)\,\mathrm{d}u + \int_{u=1}^{u=2}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k-u)\,\mathrm{d}u\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\left[\int_{u=0}^{u=1}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k-u)\,\mathrm{d}u + \int_{v=0}^{v=1}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k-v-1)\,\mathrm{d}v\right] && \begin{array}{l}\text{where } v \triangleq u-1\\ \implies u = v+1\end{array}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\left[\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k)+\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k-1)\right] && \text{by Lemma M.2 page 295}\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\left[\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n+1}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k) + \sum_{m=1}^{n+2}\binom{n+1}{m-1}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-m)\right] && \text{where } m \triangleq k+1 \implies k = m-1\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\left[\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{n+1}\left[\binom{n+1}{k}+\binom{n+1}{k-1}\right]\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k)}_{\text{common indices of above two summations}} + \underbrace{\binom{n+1}{0}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-0)}_{k=0\text{ term}} + \underbrace{\binom{n+2}{n+2}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-n-2)}_{m=n+2\text{ term}}\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\left[\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{n+1}\binom{n+2}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k)}_{\text{by \textit{Stifel formual} (Theorem B.1 page 133)}} + \underbrace{\binom{n+2}{0}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-0)}_{\text{because } \binom{n+1}{0}=1=\binom{n+2}{0}} + \binom{n+2}{n+2}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-n-2)\right]\\
&= \frac{1}{2^{n+1}}\sum_{k=0}^{n+2}\binom{n+2}{k}\mathsf{N}_n(2x-k)
\end{aligned}
$$

✍

Example M.16. [25]The 0 *order B-spline dyadic decomposition*

$$\mathsf{N}_0(x) = \frac{1}{1}\sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\binom{1}{k}\mathsf{N}_0(2x-k)$$

is illustrated to the right.

[25] Strang (1989) page 615 ⟨Box function⟩, Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 441 ⟨Box function⟩

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Example M.17. [26]The 1*st order B-spline dyadic decomposition*

$$\mathsf{N}_1(x) = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=0}^{k=2}\binom{2}{k}\mathsf{N}_1(2x-k)$$

is illustrated to the right.

Example M.18. The 2*nd order B-spline dyadic decomposition*

$$\mathsf{N}_2(x) = \frac{1}{4}\sum_{k=0}^{k=3}\binom{3}{k}\mathsf{N}_2(2x-k)$$

is illustrated to the right.

M.6.3 B-spline MRA scaling functions

Theorem M.10. *Let f* $N_n(x)$ *be the* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295)*.
Let $V_j \triangleq \operatorname{span}\left(\left(\mathsf{N}_n\left(2^j x - k\right)\right)\right)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

THM $\left(\left(V_j\right)\right)_{j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *is a* MULTIRESOLUTION ANALYSIS *on* $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *with* SCALING FUNCTION $\phi(x) \triangleq \mathsf{N}_n(x)$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma: $(\!(\mathsf{N}_n(x-k))\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is a *Riesz sequence*. Proof: by Theorem M.8 (page 318).
2. lemma: $\exists\,(\!(h_k)\!)$ such that $\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k \mathsf{N}_n(2x-k)$. Proof: by Theorem M.9 (page 319). In fact, note that $h_k = \frac{1}{2^n\sqrt{2}}\binom{n+1}{k}$
3. lemma: $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega)$ is *continuous* at 0. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(\omega) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}}\left(\operatorname{sinc}\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^{n+1} && \text{by Lemma M.5 page 310}\\ &\Longrightarrow \textit{continuous} \text{ at } 0 && \text{by known property of sinc function}\end{aligned}$$

4. lemma: $\tilde{\phi}(0) \neq 0$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{N}_n(0) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}e^{-i\frac{(n+1)\omega}{2}}\left(\operatorname{sinc}\frac{\omega}{2}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{\omega=0} && \text{by Lemma M.5 page 310}\\ &= 1\cdot\frac{1}{1/2} = 2 && \text{by } \textit{l'Hôpital's rule}\\ &\neq 0\end{aligned}$$

5. The completion of this proof follows directly from (1) lemma, (2) lemma, (3) lemma, (4) lemma, and Theorem 2.6 (page 31).

✏

[26] Strang (1989) page 615 ⟨Hat function⟩, Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 442 ⟨Hat function⟩, Heil (2011) page 380 ⟨Fig. 12.10⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure M.4: *dilation equation* demonstrations for selected B-splines (Example M.19 page 322)

M.6.4 B-spline MRA coefficient sequences

Because each *B-spline* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ is the *scaling function* for an *MRA* (Theorem M.10 page 321), each *B-spline* also satisfies the *dilation equation* (Theorem 2.1 page 22) such that

$$\mathsf{N}_n(x) = \sqrt{2}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k \mathsf{N}(2x-k) \quad \text{where} \quad h_k = \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\binom{n+1}{k} & \text{for } n = 0,1,\ldots,n \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}$$

The resulting *sequence* $(\!(h_k)\!)_{k\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is the *order n B-spline MRA coefficient sequence* induced by the *order n B-spline MRA scaling sequence* $\phi(x) \triangleq \mathsf{N}_n(x)$.[27]

Example M.19. See Figure M.4 (page 322) for some *dilation equation* demonstrations of selected B-splines.

Theorem M.11 (B-spline scaling coefficients)**.** *Let* $\left(\mathbf{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, (\!(\mathbf{V}_j)\!), \phi, (\!(h_n)\!)\right)$ *be an* MRA SYSTEM *(Definition 2.3 page 25). Let* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ *be a* nTH ORDER B-SPLINE *(Definition M.2 page 295).*

THM

$$\underbrace{\phi(x) \triangleq \mathsf{N}_n(x)}_{\text{(1) B-spline scaling function}} \implies (\!(h_k)\!) = \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\binom{n}{k} & \text{for } k = 0,1,\ldots,n \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right. \qquad \text{(2) scaling sequence in "time"}$$

$$\iff \check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\Big|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^n}\left(1+z^{-1}\right)^{n+1}\Big|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} \qquad \text{(3) scaling sequence in "z domain"}$$

$$\iff \tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) = 2\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{n+1}{2}\omega}\left[\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]^{n+1} \qquad \text{(4) scaling sequence in "frequency"}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (3): By Theorem M.10 page 321 we know that $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ is a *scaling function* (Definition 2.1 page 16). So then we know that we can use Lemma 2.1 page 22.

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) &= \sqrt{2}\frac{\tilde{\phi}(2\omega)}{\tilde{\phi}(\omega)} && \text{by Lemma 2.1 page 22} \\ &= \sqrt{2}\frac{\tilde{\mathsf{N}}_n(2\omega)}{\tilde{\mathsf{N}}_n(\omega)} && \text{by (1)} \\ &= \sqrt{2}\frac{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1-e^{-i2\omega}}{2i\omega}\right)^{n+1}}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1-e^{-i\omega}}{i\omega}\right)^{n+1}} && \text{by Lemma M.5 page 310} \end{aligned}$$

[27] For *Octave/MatLab* code useful for plotting a function given a sequence of coefficients $(\!(h_k)\!)$, see Section V.1 (page 397).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\left(\frac{1-z^{-2}}{1-z^{-1}}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\left[\left(\frac{1-z^{-2}}{1-z^{-1}}\right)\left(\frac{1+z^{-1}}{1+z^{-1}}\right)\right]^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\left(\frac{\left(1-z^{-2}\right)\left(1+z^{-1}\right)}{1-z^{-2}}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+z^{-1}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}}
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that (3) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (2):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\Big|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+z^{-1}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} && \text{by (3)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n+1}\binom{n}{k}z^{-k}\right)\Bigg|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} && \text{by } \textit{binomial theorem}\\
\Longleftrightarrow \qquad h_k &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n+1}}\binom{n}{k} && \text{by definition of } Z \textit{ transform} \text{ (Definition O.4 page 340)}
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (4):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega) &= \check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\Big|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} && \text{by definition of } DTFT \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+z^{-1}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} && \text{by (3)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+e^{-i\omega}\right)^{n+1} && \text{by definition of } z\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left[e^{-i\frac{1}{2}\omega}\left(e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}+e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}e^{-i\frac{n+1}{2}\omega}\left[2\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= 2\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{n+1}{2}\omega}\left[\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]^{n+1}
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Proof that (3) $\Longleftarrow$ (4):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\Big|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}} &= \check{\mathsf{h}}\left(e^{i\omega}\right)\\
&= \tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\\
&= 2\sqrt{2}e^{-i\frac{n+1}{2}\omega}\left[\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]^{n+1} && \text{by (4)}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}e^{-i\frac{n+1}{2}\omega}\left[2\cos\left(\frac{\omega}{2}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left[e^{-i\frac{1}{2}\omega}\left(e^{i\frac{\omega}{2}}+e^{-i\frac{\omega}{2}}\right)\right]^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+e^{-i\omega}\right)^{n+1}\\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2^{n}}\left(1+z^{-1}\right)^{n+1}\Bigg|_{z\triangleq e^{i\omega}}
\end{aligned}
$$

CC BY-NC-ND

✏

Example M.20 (2 coefficient case). [28] Let $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \langle\!\langle V_j \rangle\!\rangle, \phi, \langle\!\langle h_n \rangle\!\rangle\right)$ be an *MRA system* (Definition 2.3 page 25).

EX

$$\underbrace{\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \operatorname{supp}\phi(x) = [0:1] \quad \text{and} \\ 2. & \langle\!\langle \phi(x-k) \rangle\!\rangle \text{ forms a} \\ & \textit{partition of unity} \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{(A)}} \iff \underbrace{h_n = \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n=0 \\ \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \text{for } n=1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{array}\right\}}_{\text{(B)}} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\phi(x) = \mathsf{N}_0(x)\right\}}_{\text{(C)}}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (B):

   (a) lemma: Only h_0 and h_1 are *non-zero*; All other coefficients h_k are 0. Proof: This follows from $\operatorname{supp}\phi(x) = [0:1]$ (Definition 2.4 page 31) and by Theorem 2.7 page 32.

   (b) lemma (equations for $\langle\!\langle h_k \rangle\!\rangle$): Because $\langle\!\langle h_k \rangle\!\rangle$ is a *scaling coefficient sequence* (Definition 2.1 page 16), it must satisfy the *admissibility equation* (Theorem 2.3 page 27). And because $\langle\!\langle \phi(x-k) \rangle\!\rangle$ forms a *partition of unity*, it must satisfy the equations given by Theorem 2.8 (page 34). (1a) lemma and these two constraints yield two simultaneous equations and two unknowns:

$$\begin{array}{rcll} h_0 + h_1 & = & \sqrt{2} & (\textit{admissibility condition}) \\ h_0 - h_1 & = & 0 & (\textit{partition of unity / zero at } -1 \textit{ / vanishing 0th moment}) \end{array}$$

   (c) lemma: The equations provided by (1b) lemma can be expressed in matrix algebra form as follows…

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}} \begin{bmatrix} h_0 \\ h_1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

   (d) lemma: The *inverse* $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ of $\mathbf{A}$ can be expressed as demonstrated below…

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right] \to \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right] \to \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{array}\right] \to \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{array}\right]$$

$$\Longrightarrow \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

   (e) Proof for the values of $\langle\!\langle h_k \rangle\!\rangle$ (B):

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} h_0 \\ h_1 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\begin{bmatrix} h_0 \\ h_1 \end{bmatrix} &= \mathbf{A}^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} h_0 \\ h_1 \end{bmatrix} && \text{by (1c) lemma} \\ &= \mathbf{A}^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} && \text{by (1c) lemma} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} && \text{by (1d) lemma} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

[28] Haar (1910), Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 14–15 ⟨"Sources and comments"⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that (B) $\Longrightarrow$ (C):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{(B)} \Longrightarrow \phi(x) &= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k\sqrt{2}\phi(2x-k) && \textit{dilation equation} && \text{(Theorem 2.1 page 22)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\sqrt{2}\phi(2x-k) && \text{by item (1e) page 324}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\phi(2x-k)\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\binom{1}{k}\phi(2x-k) && \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k} && \text{(Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&\Longrightarrow \text{(D)} && \text{by } \textit{B-spline dyadic decomposition} && \text{(Theorem M.9 page 319)}
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Proof that (B) $\Longleftarrow$ (C):

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{(C)} \Longrightarrow \mathsf{N}_0(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\binom{1}{k}\mathsf{N}_0(2x-k) && \text{by } \textit{B-spline dyadic decomposition} && \text{(Theorem M.9 page 319)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{k=1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)\sqrt{2}\mathsf{N}_0(2x-k) && \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k} && \text{(Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} h_k\sqrt{2}\mathsf{N}_0(2x-k) && \text{by definition of } \binom{n}{k} && \text{(Definition B.3 page 132)}\\
&\Longrightarrow \text{(B)}
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Proof that (A) $\Longleftarrow$ (C):
   1. Proof that (C) $\Longrightarrow$ $\operatorname{supp}\phi(x) = [0 : 1]$: by Theorem M.4 (page 306)
   2. Proof that (C) $\Longrightarrow$ $(\!(\phi(x-k))\!)$ forms a *partition of unity*: by Theorem M.7 (page 312)

✍

CC BY-NC-ND

EX	n=0,	(÷0!)	1;							
	n=1,	(÷1!)	1,	0;						
			−1,	2;						
	n=2,	(÷2!)	1,	0,	0;					
			−2,	6,	−3;					
			1,	−6,	9;					
	n=3,	(÷3!)	1,	0,	0,	0;				
			−3,	12,	−12,	4;				
			3,	−24,	60,	−44;				
			−1,	12,	−48,	64;				
	n=4,	(÷4!)	1,	0,	0,	0,	0;			
			−4,	20,	−30,	20,	−5;			
			6,	−60,	210,	−300,	155;			
			−4,	60,	−330,	780,	−655;			
			1,	−20,	150,	−500,	625;			
	n=5,	(÷5!)	1,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0;		
			−5,	30,	−60,	60,	−30,	6;		
			10,	−120,	540,	−1140,	1170,	−474;		
			−10,	180,	−1260,	4260,	−6930,	4386;		
			5,	−120,	1140,	−5340,	12270,	−10974;		
			−1,	30,	−360,	2160,	−6480,	7776;		
	n=6,	(÷6!)	1,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0;	
			−6,	42,	−105,	140,	−105,	42,	−7;	
			15,	−210,	1155,	−3220,	4935,	−3990,	1337;	
			−20,	420,	−3570,	15680,	−37590,	47040,	−24178;	
			15,	−420,	4830,	−29120,	96810,	−168000,	119182;	
			−6,	210,	−3045,	23380,	−100065,	225750,	−208943;	
			1,	−42,	735,	−6860,	36015,	−100842,	117649;	
	n=7,	(÷7!)	1,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0;
			−7,	56,	−168,	280,	−280,	168,	−56,	8;
			21,	−336,	2184,	−7560,	15400,	−18648,	12488,	−3576;
			−35,	840,	−8400,	45360,	−143360,	267120,	−273280,	118896;
			35,	−1120,	15120,	−111440,	483840,	−1238160,	1733760,	−1027984;
			−21,	840,	−14280,	133560,	−741160,	2436840,	−4391240,	3347016;
			7,	−336,	6888,	−78120,	528920,	−2135448,	4753336,	−4491192;
			−1,	56,	−1344,	17920,	−143360,	688128,	−1835008,	2097152;
	n=8,	(÷8!)	1,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0,	0;
			−8,	72,	−252,	504,	−630,	504,	−252,	72,	−9
			28,	−504,	3780,	−15624,	39690,	−64008,	64260,	−36792,	9207
			−56,	1512,	−17388,	111384,	−436590,	1079064,	−1650348,	1432872,	−541917
			70,	−2520,	39060,	−340200,	1821330,	−6146280,	12800340,	−15082200,	7715619
			−56,	2520,	−49140,	541800,	−3691170,	15903720,	−42324660,	63667800,	−41503131
			28,	−1512,	35532,	−474264,	3929310,	−20674584,	67410252,	−124449192,	99584613
			−8,	504,	−13860,	217224,	−2121210,	13208328,	−51179940,	112731192,	−107948223
			1,	−72,	2268,	−40824,	459270,	−3306744,	14880348,	−38263752,	43046721

Table M.1: Coefficients of the *B-splines* $\mathsf{N}_n(x)$ multiplied by $n!$ (Example M.9 page 302)

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX N

INTERPOLATION

N.1 Polynomial interpolation

Definition N.1. [1] *The **Lagrange polynomial** $L_{P,n}(x)$ with respect to the $n+1$ points $P = \{(x_k, y_k) | k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ is defined as*

DEF

$$L_{P,n}(x) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{n} y_k \prod_{m \neq n} \frac{x - x_m}{x_k - x_m}$$

Proposition N.1. *Let $L_{P,n}(x)$ be the Lagrange polynomial with respect to the points $P = \{(x_k, y_k) | k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n\}$.*

PRP

1. *$L_{P,n}(x)$ is an nth order polynomial.*
2. *$L_{P,n}(x)$ intersects all $n+1$ points in P.*

Example N.1 (Lagrange interpolation). The Lagrange polynomial $L_{P,3}(x)$ with respect to the 4 points $P = \{(-2, 1),\ (-1, 3),\ (3, 2),\ (5, 4)\}$ is

EX

$$L_{P,3}(x) = \frac{79}{840}x^3 + \frac{-378}{840}x^2 + \frac{-7}{840}x + \frac{2970}{840}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
L_{P,3}(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n} y_k \prod_{m \neq n} \frac{x - x_m}{x_k - x_m} \qquad \text{by Definition N.1} \\
&= y_0 \frac{(x+1)(x-3)(x-5)}{(x_0 - x_1)(x_0 - x_2)(x_0 - x_3)} + y_1 \frac{(x+2)(x-3)(x-5)}{(x_1 - x_0)(x_1 - x_2)(x_1 - x_3)} \\
&\quad + y_2 \frac{(x+2)(x+1)(x-5)}{(x_2 - x_0)(x_2 - x_1)(x_2 - x_3)} + y_3 \frac{(x+2)(x+1)(x-3)}{(x_3 - x_0)(x_3 - x_1)(x_3 - x_2)} \\
&= 1 \frac{(x+1)(x-3)(x-5)}{(-2+1)(-2-3)(-2-5)} + 3 \frac{(x+2)(x-3)(x-5)}{(-1+2)(-1-3)(-1-5)} \\
&\quad + 2 \frac{(x+2)(x+1)(x-5)}{(3+2)(3+1)(3-5)} + 4 \frac{(x+2)(x+1)(x-3)}{(5+2)(5+1)(5-3)}
\end{aligned}$$

[1] Matthews and Fink (1992), page 206

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= 1\underbrace{\frac{x^3-7x^2+7x+15}{-35}}_{\text{roots}=-1,3,5} + 3\underbrace{\frac{x^3-6x^2-x+30}{24}}_{\text{roots}=-2,3,5} + 2\underbrace{\frac{x^3-2x^2-13x-10}{-40}}_{\text{roots}=-2,-1,5} + 4\underbrace{\frac{x^3-7x-6}{84}}_{\text{roots}=-2,-1,3} \\
&= -\frac{x^3-7x^2+7x+15}{35} + \frac{x^3-6x^2-x+30}{8} - \frac{x^3-2x^2-13x-10}{20} + \frac{x^3-7x-6}{21} \\
&= x^3\left(\frac{-8\cdot 20\cdot 21+35\cdot 20\cdot 21-35\cdot 8\cdot 21+35\cdot 8\cdot 20}{35\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21}\right) \\
&\quad + x^2\left(\frac{7\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21-6\cdot 35\cdot 20\cdot 21+2\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 21+0\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 20}{35\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21}\right) \\
&\quad + x\left(\frac{-7\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21-35\cdot 20\cdot 21+13\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 21-7\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 20}{35\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21}\right) \\
&\quad + \left(\frac{-15\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21+30\cdot 35\cdot 20\cdot 21+10\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 21-6\cdot 35\cdot 8\cdot 20}{35\cdot 8\cdot 20\cdot 21}\right) \\
&= \frac{11060}{117600}x^3 + \frac{-52920}{117600}x^2 + \frac{-980}{117600}x + \frac{415800}{117600} \\
&= \frac{79}{840}x^3 + \frac{-378}{840}x^2 + \frac{-7}{840}x + \frac{2970}{840}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Definition N.2. [2] *The **Newton polynomial** $N_{P,n}(x)$ with respect to the $n+1$ points $P = \{(x_k, y_k) | k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ is defined as*

DEF

$$N_{P,n}(x) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{n} \alpha_k \prod_{m=0}^{k} (x - x_m)$$

Proposition N.2. *Let $N_{P,n}(x)$ be the Newton polynomial with respect to the points $P = \{(x_k, y_k) | k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n\}$.*

PRP

1. *$N_{P,n}(x)$ is an nth order polynomial.*
2. *$N_{P,n}(x)$ intersects all $n+1$ points in P.*

Example N.2 (Newton polynomial interpolation). The Newton polynomial $N_{P,3}(x)$ with respect to the 4 points
$P = \{(-2,1),\ (-1,3),\ (3,2),\ (5,4)\}$ is

EX

$$N_{P,3}(x) = \frac{79}{840}x^3 + \frac{-378}{840}x^2 + \frac{-7}{840}x + \frac{2970}{840}$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
N_{P,3}(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n} \alpha_k \prod_{m=1}^{k} (x - x_m) \\
&= \alpha_0 + \alpha_1(x - x_0) + \alpha_2(x - x_0)(x - x_1) + \alpha_3(x - x_0)(x - x_1)(x - x_2) \\
&= \alpha_0 + \alpha_1(x + 2) + \alpha_2(x + 2)(x + 1) + \alpha_3(x + 2)(x + 1)(x - 3) \\
&= \alpha_0 + \alpha_1(x + 2) + \alpha_2(x^2 + 3x + 2) + \alpha_3(x^3 - 7x - 6) \\
&= x^3(\alpha_3) + x^2(\alpha_2) + x(-7\alpha_3 + 3\alpha_2 + \alpha_1) + (-6\alpha_3 + 2\alpha_2 + 2\alpha_1 + \alpha_0) \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 & \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -6 & -7 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ x \\ x^2 \\ x^3 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

[2] Matthews and Fink (1992), page 220

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} y_0 \\ y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (x_1 - x_0) & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (x_2 - x_0) & (x_2 - x_0)(x_2 - x_1) & 0 \\ 1 & (x_3 - x_0) & (x_3 - x_0)(x_3 - x_1) & (x_3 - x_0)(x_3 - x_1)(x_3 - x_2) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (-1+2) & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & (3+2) & (3+2)(3+1) & 0 \\ 1 & (5+2) & (5+2)(5+1) & (5+2)(5+1)(5-3) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 5 & 20 & 0 \\ 1 & 7 & 42 & 84 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 5 & 20 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 7 & 42 & 84 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 20 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 42 & 84 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 20 & 0 & 4 & -5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 42 & 84 & 6 & -7 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 42 & 84 & 6 & -7 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 84 & 6-\frac{42}{5} & -7+\frac{42}{4} & -\frac{42}{20} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 84 & -\frac{12}{5} & \frac{14}{4} & -\frac{42}{20} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{4}{20} & -\frac{5}{20} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 84 & -\frac{24}{10} & \frac{35}{10} & -\frac{21}{10} & \frac{10}{10} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{4}{20} & -\frac{5}{20} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{24}{840} & \frac{35}{840} & -\frac{21}{840} & \frac{10}{840} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$\begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 \\ \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{4}{20} & -\frac{5}{20} & \frac{1}{20} & 0 \\ -\frac{24}{840} & \frac{35}{840} & -\frac{21}{840} & \frac{10}{840} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -\frac{9}{20} \\ \frac{79}{840} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$N_{P,3}(x) = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_0 & \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \alpha_3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -6 & -7 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ x \\ x^2 \\ x^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} 1 & 2 & -\frac{9}{20} & \frac{79}{840} \end{array}\right] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -6 & -7 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ x \\ x^2 \\ x^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \left[\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} 1+4-\frac{9}{10}-\frac{79}{140} & 2-\frac{27}{20}-\frac{79}{120} & -\frac{9}{20} & \frac{79}{840} \end{array}\right] \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ x \\ x^2 \\ x^3 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \frac{79}{840}x^3 - \frac{378}{840}x^2 - \frac{7}{840}x + \frac{2970}{840}$$

✏

Example N.3 (Least squares polynomial interpolation). [3] The best 3rd order polynomial in the **least squares** $S_{P,3}(x)$ sense with respect to the 4 points
$P = \{(-2,1),\ (-1,3),\ (3,2),\ (5,4)\}$ is

EX $S_{P,3}(x) = \frac{79}{840}x^3 + \frac{-378}{840}x^2 + \frac{-7}{840}x + \frac{2970}{840}$

✎PROOF:

$$\boldsymbol{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_0 \\ x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \boldsymbol{y} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

We want to find a third order polynomial

$$dx^3 + cx^2 + bx + a$$

that best approximates the 4 points in the least squares sense. We define the matrix U (known) and vector $\hat{\theta}$ (to be computed) as follows:

$$U^H \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_0 & x_0^2 & x_0^3 \\ 1 & x_1 & x_1^2 & x_1^3 \\ 1 & x_2 & x_2^2 & x_2^3 \\ 1 & x_3 & x_3^2 & x_3^3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \hat{\theta} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{bmatrix}$$

[3] van Overschee and de Moor (2012) page 14 ⟨Table 1.1; historical perspective as relates to "subspace identification"⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

EX p	$(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y) = (1-y)^p\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+k}{k}y^k$
1	$1 - y$
2	$1 - 3y^2 + 2y^3$
3	$1 - 10y^3 + 15y^4 - 6y^5$
4	$1 - 35y^4 + 84y^5 - 70y^6 + 20y^7$
5	$1 - 126y^5 + 420y^6 - 540y^7 + 315y^8 - 70y^9$
6	$1 - 462y^6 + 1980y^7 - 3465y^8 + 3080y^9 - 1386y^{10} + 252y^{11}$

Table N.1: Low-pass term $(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)$

Then, using *Least squares*, the best coefficients for the polynomial are

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\theta} &= \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{bmatrix} \\
&= R^{-1}W \\
&= (UU^H)^{-1}\,(U\boldsymbol{y}) \\
&= \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_0 & x_0^2 & x_0^3 \\ 1 & x_1 & x_1^2 & x_1^3 \\ 1 & x_2 & x_2^2 & x_2^3 \\ 1 & x_3 & x_3^2 & x_3^3 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_0 & x_0^2 & x_0^3 \\ 1 & x_1 & x_1^2 & x_1^3 \\ 1 & x_2 & x_2^2 & x_2^3 \\ 1 & x_3 & x_3^2 & x_3^3 \end{bmatrix}\right)^{-1} \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_0 & x_0^2 & x_0^3 \\ 1 & x_1 & x_1^2 & x_1^3 \\ 1 & x_2 & x_2^2 & x_2^3 \\ 1 & x_3 & x_3^2 & x_3^3 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} y_0 \\ y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & (-2) & (-2)^2 & (-2)^3 \\ 1 & (-1) & (-1)^2 & (-1)^3 \\ 1 & (3) & (3)^2 & (3)^3 \\ 1 & (5) & (5)^2 & (5)^3 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} 1 & (-2) & (-2)^2 & (-2)^3 \\ 1 & (-1) & (-1)^2 & (-1)^3 \\ 1 & (3) & (3)^2 & (3)^3 \\ 1 & (5) & (5)^2 & (5)^3 \end{bmatrix}\right)^{-1} \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & (-2) & (-2)^2 & (-2)^3 \\ 1 & (-1) & (-1)^2 & (-1)^3 \\ 1 & (3) & (3)^2 & (3)^3 \\ 1 & (5) & (5)^2 & (5)^3 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 4 & -8 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 & 9 & 27 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 & 125 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 4 & -8 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 & 9 & 27 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 & 125 \end{bmatrix}\right)^{-1} \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 4 & -8 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 & 9 & 27 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 & 125 \end{bmatrix}^H \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 2970 \\ -7 \\ -378 \\ 79 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

N.2 Hermite interpolation

The quadrature condition can be expressed as a polynomial in $y = \sin^2\frac{\omega}{2}$ (Lemma 6.2 page 98). The first term in this polynomial quadrature condition is a low-pass response and the second term is a high pass; and they meet in the middle at $\omega = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

$$\underbrace{(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}(y)}_{\text{low-pass}} + \underbrace{y^p\mathsf{P}(1-y)}_{\text{high-pass}} = 1$$

The low-pass and high-pass terms are especially smooth at $\omega = 0$ ($y = 0$) and $\omega = \pi$ ($y = 1$) in that the first $p-1$ derivatives at both points are zero for both terms. This is illustrated in Figure N.1 (page

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure N.1: Polynomial quadrature condition low-pass and high-pass terms

332).

Theorem N.1 (*Hermite Interpolation*).

THM

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[(1-y)^p\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p+k-1}{k}y^k\right]\Bigg|_{y=0} = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \text{for } n=0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[(1-y)^p\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p+k-1}{k}y^k\right]\Bigg|_{y=1} = 0 \quad \text{for } n=0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[y^p\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p+k-1}{k}(1-y)^k\right]\Bigg|_{y=0} = 0 \quad \text{for } n=0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[y^p\sum_{k=0}^{p-1}\binom{p+k-1}{k}(1-y)^k\right]\Bigg|_{y=1} = \bar{\delta}_n \quad \text{for } n=0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$$

✎PROOF: Let

$$\mathsf{f}(y) \triangleq (1-y)^p\sum_{n=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+n}{n}y^n$$

$$\mathsf{g}(y) \triangleq y^p\sum_{n=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+n}{n}(1-y)^n$$

$$q \triangleq p-1$$

1. Proof that $\mathsf{f}(0)=1$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathsf{f}(0) &= (1-y)^p\sum_{m=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+m}{m}y^m\Bigg|_{y=0}\\ &= (1-y)^p\left[\binom{p-1}{0}+\sum_{m=1}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+m}{m}y^m\right]\Bigg|_{y=0}\\ &= 1\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that $\mathsf{f}(y) = p\sum_{n=0}^{2p-1}\left[\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)}(-1)^k\frac{(p+n-k-1)!}{(p-k)!(n-k)!\,k!}\right]y^n$:

$$\begin{aligned}
(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y) &= \sum_{n=0}^{p}\binom{p}{n}(-1)^n y^n\sum_{m=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+m}{m}y^m\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{2p-1}\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)}\binom{p}{k}(-1)^k\binom{p-1+n-k}{n-k}y^n && \text{by Theorem C.2 page 144}\\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{2p-1}\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)}(-1)^k\frac{p!}{(p-k)!k!}\frac{(p-1+n-k)!}{(p-1)!(n-k)!}y^n\\
&= p\sum_{n=0}^{2p-1}\left[\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)}(-1)^k\frac{(p+n-k-1)!}{(p-k)!(n-k)!\,k!}\right]y^n
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}(0) = \bar{\delta}_n$ for $n = 0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)\right]\Big|_{y=0} &= \frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[p\sum_{m=0}^{2p-1}\left[\sum_{k=\max(0,m-q)}^{\min(m,p)}(-1)^k\frac{(p+m-k-1)!}{(p-k)!(m-k)!\,k!}\right]y^m\right]\Bigg|_{y=0} && \text{by 1.}\\
&= p\sum_{m=n}^{2p-1}\sum_{k=\max(0,m-q)}^{\min(m,p)}(-1)^k\frac{(p-1+m-k)!}{(p-k)!(m-k)!k!}\frac{m!}{(m-n)!}y^{m-n}\Bigg|_{y=0}\\
&= p\sum_{k=\max(0,n-q)}^{\min(n,p)}(-1)^k\frac{(p-1+n-k)!}{(p-k)!}\frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!}\\
&= p\sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^k\binom{n}{k}\frac{(p+n-k-1)!}{(p-k)!}\\
&\stackrel{?}{=} \bar{\delta}_n \qquad \text{for } n = 0,1,2,\ldots,p-1
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}(0) = \bar{\delta}_n$ for $n = 0,1,2,\ldots,p-1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[(1-y)^p\mathsf{P}_m(y)\right]\Big|_{y=0}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^{n-k}}{\mathrm{d}y^{n-k}}(1-y)^p\right]\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}\mathsf{P}_m(y)\right]\Bigg|_{y=0} && \text{by Lemma E.2 (Leibnitz rule)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^{n-k}}{\mathrm{d}y^{n-k}}(1-y)^p\right]\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}\sum_{m=0}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+m}{m}y^m\right]\Bigg|_{y=0} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{P}_m(y)\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[(-1)^{n-k}\frac{p!}{(p-n+k)!}(1-y)^{(p-n+k)}\right]\left[\sum_{m=k}^{p-1}\binom{p-1+m}{m}\frac{m!}{(m-k)!}y^{m-k}\right]\Bigg|_{y=0}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[(-1)^{n-k}\frac{p!}{(p-n+k)!}\right]\left[\binom{p-1+k}{k}k!\right]\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[(-1)^{n-k}\frac{p!}{(p-n+k)!}\right]\left[\frac{(p-1+k)!}{(p-1)!k!}\,k!\right]\\
&= (-1)^n p\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}(-1)^k\frac{(p+k-1)!}{(p+k-n)!}\\
&\stackrel{?}{=} \bar{\delta}_n \qquad \text{for } k = 0,1,2,\ldots,p-1
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

5. Proof that $\mathsf{f}^{(n)}(1) = 0$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, p-1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}^n}{\mathrm{d}y^n}\left[(1-y)^p \mathsf{P}_m(y)\right]\Big|_{y=1} &= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}^k}{\mathrm{d}y^k}(1-y)^p\right]\mathsf{P}_m^{(n-k)}(y)\Big|_{y=1} && \text{by Lemma E.2 (Leibnitz rule)}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\left[(-1)^k\frac{p!}{(p-k)!}(1-y)^{p-k}\right]\mathsf{P}_m^{(n-k)}(y)\Big|_{y=1}\\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}\,0\cdot\mathsf{P}_m^{(n-k)}(y)\Big|_{y=1} && \text{by Lemma E.2}\\
&= 0 \qquad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, p-1
\end{aligned}$$

✏

N.3 Cardinal Series and Sampling

N.3.1 Cardinal series basis

The *Paley-Wiener* class of functions (next definition) are those with a bandlimited Fourier transform. The cardinal series forms an orthogonal basis for such a space (Theorem N.3 page 335). In a *frame* $(\!(\boldsymbol{x}_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ with *frame operator* $\mathbf{S}$ on a *Hilbert Space* $\boldsymbol{H}$ with *inner product* $\langle\triangle\,|\,\triangledown\rangle$, a function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ in the space spanned by the frame can be represented by

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\left\langle \mathsf{f}\,|\,\mathbf{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}_n\right\rangle}_{\text{“Fourier coefficient”}} \boldsymbol{x}_n.$$

If the frame is *orthonormal* (giving an *orthonormal basis*), then $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}$ and

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f}\,|\,\boldsymbol{x}_n\rangle\,\boldsymbol{x}_n.$$

In the case of the cardinal series, the *Fourier coefficients* (Definition L.11 page 276) are particularly simple—these coefficients are samples of f taken at regular intervals (Theorem N.4 page 335). In fact, one could represent the coefficients using inner product notation with the *Dirac delta distribution* δ as follows:

$$\langle \mathsf{f}(x)\,|\,\delta(x-n\tau)\rangle \triangleq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n\tau)\,\mathrm{d}t \triangleq \mathsf{f}(n\tau)$$

Definition N.3. [4]

DEF *A function* $\mathsf{f}\in\mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{C}}$ *is in the* ***Paley-Wiener*** *class of functions* $\boldsymbol{PW}_\sigma^p$ *if there exists* $\mathsf{F}\in\boldsymbol{L}^p(-\sigma:\sigma)$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{f}(x) = \int_{-\sigma}^{\sigma}\mathsf{F}(\omega)e^{ix\omega}\,\mathrm{d}\omega \qquad (\mathsf{f} \text{ has a BANDLIMITED Fourier transform } \mathsf{F} \text{ with bandwidth } \sigma)$$

for $p\in[1:\infty)$ *and* $\sigma\in(0:\infty)$.

Theorem N.2 (Paley-Wiener Theorem for Functions). [5] *Let* f *be an* ENTIRE FUNCTION *(the domain of* f *is the entire complex plane* $\mathbb{C}$*). Let* $\sigma\in\mathbb{R}^+$.

THM
$$\left\{\mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{PW}_\sigma^2\right\} \iff \left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \exists C\in\mathbb{R}^+ \text{ such that } |\mathsf{f}(z)|\le Ce^{\sigma|z|} \text{ (EXPONENTIAL TYPE) and}\\ 2. & \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}_{\mathbb{R}}^2\end{array}\right\}$$

[4] Higgins (1996) page 52 ⟨Definition 6.15⟩

[5] Boas (1954) page 103 ⟨6.8.1 Theorem of Paley and Wiener⟩, Katznelson (2004) page 212 ⟨7.4 Theorem⟩, Zygmund (2002b) pages 272–273 ⟨(7·2) THEOREM OF PALEY-WIENER⟩, YOSIDA (1980) PAGE 161, RUDIN (1987) PAGE 375 ⟨19.3 THEOREM⟩, YOUNG (2001) PAGE 85 ⟨THEOREM 18⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Theorem N.3 (Cardinal sequence). [6]

THM

$$\left\{\frac{1}{\tau} \geq 2\sigma\right\} \implies \textit{The sequence} \quad \left(\left(\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)}\right)\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \quad \textit{is an } \textsc{orthonormal basis} \textit{ for } \boldsymbol{PW}_\sigma^2.$$

Theorem N.4 (Sampling Theorem). [7]

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 1. & \mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{PW}_\sigma^2 \quad \textit{and} \\ 2. & \frac{1}{\tau} \geq 2\sigma \end{array}\right\} \implies \mathsf{f}(x) = \underbrace{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)}}_{\textsc{Cardinal series}}.$$

✎PROOF:

$$\text{Let} \quad \mathsf{s}(x) \triangleq \frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}x\right]}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}x} \iff \tilde{\mathsf{s}}(\omega) = \begin{cases} \tau & : |f| \leq \frac{1}{2\tau} \\ 0 & : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

1. Proof that the set is *orthonormal*: see Hardy (1941)
2. Proof that the set is a *basis*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{f}(x) &= \int_\omega \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)e^{i\omega t}\,d\omega && \text{by } \textit{inverse Fourier transform} && \text{(Theorem K.1 page 256)} \\
&= \int_\omega \mathbf{T}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}_{\mathsf{d}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{s}}(\omega)e^{i\omega t}\,d\omega && \text{if } W \leq \frac{1}{2T} \\
&= \mathbf{T}\mathsf{f}_{\mathsf{d}}(x) \star \mathsf{s}(x) && \text{by } \textit{Convolution theorem} && \text{(Theorem O.2 page 342)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}\int_u [\mathsf{f}_{\mathsf{d}}(u)]\mathsf{s}(x-u)\,du && \text{by } \textit{convolution} \text{ definition} && \text{(Definition K.3 page 258)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}\int_u \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(u)\delta(u-n\tau)\right]\mathsf{s}(x-u)\,du && \text{by } \textit{sampling} \text{ definition} && \text{(Theorem N.5 page 336)} \\
&= \mathbf{T}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\int_u \mathsf{f}(u)\mathsf{s}(x-u)\delta(u-n\tau)\,du \\
&= \mathbf{T}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)\mathsf{s}(x-n\tau) && \text{by prop. of } \textit{Dirac delta} \\
&= \mathbf{T}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)\frac{\sin\left[\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)\right]}{\frac{\pi}{\tau}(x-n\tau)} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{s}(x)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[6] Higgins (1996) page 52 ⟨Definition 6.15⟩, Hardy (1941) ⟨*orthonormality*⟩, Higgins (1985), page 56 ⟨H1.; historical notes⟩

[7] Whittaker (1915), Kotelnikov (1933), Whittaker (1935), Shannon (1948) ⟨Theorem 13⟩, Shannon (1949) page 11 II (1991) page 1, Nashed and Walter (1991), Higgins (1996) page 5, Young (2001) pages 90–91 ⟨THE PALEY-WIENER SPACE⟩, Papoulis (1980) pages 418–419 ⟨The Sampling Theorem⟩. The *sampling theorem* was "discovered" and published by multiple people: Nyquist in 1928 (DSP?), Whittaker in 1935 (interpolation theory), and Shannon in 1949 (communication theory). references: Mallat (1999), page 43, Oppenheim and Schafer (1999), page 143.

CC BY-NC-ND

N.3.2 Sampling

Definition N.4. [8] *Let $\delta(x)$ be the* DIRAC DELTA *distribution.*

DEF *The* ***Shah Function*** $\text{Ш}(x)$ *is defined as* $\text{Ш}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \delta(x-n)$

If $\mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d}(x)$ is the function $\mathsf{f}(x)$ sampled at rate $1/T$, then $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}_\mathsf{d}(\omega)$ is simply $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *replicated* every $1/T$ Hertz and *scaled* by $1/T$. This is proven in Theorem N.5 (next) and illustrated in Figure N.2 (page 336).

Figure N.2: Sampling in frequency domain

Theorem N.5. *Let* $\mathsf{f}, \mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d} \in \mathbf{L}^2_\mathbb{R}$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}, \tilde{\mathsf{f}}_\mathsf{d} \in \mathbf{L}^2_\mathbb{R}$ *be their respective fourier transforms. Let* $\mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d}(x)$ *be the* ***sampled*** $\mathsf{f}(x)$ *such that*

$$\mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d}(x) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n\tau).$$

THM $$\left\{\mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x)\text{Ш}(x) \triangleq \mathsf{f}(x)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\delta(x-n\tau)\right\} \quad\Longrightarrow\quad \left\{\tilde{\mathsf{f}}_\mathsf{d}(\omega) = \frac{2\pi}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{f}}_\mathsf{d}(\omega) &\triangleq \int_t \mathsf{f}_\mathsf{d}(x)e^{-i\omega t}\,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \int_t \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n\tau)\right] e^{-i\omega t}\,\mathrm{d}t \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_t \mathsf{f}(x)\delta(x-n\tau)e^{-i\omega t}\,\mathrm{d}t
\end{aligned}$$

[8] Bracewell (1978) page 77 ⟨The sampling or replicating symbol Ш(x)⟩, Córdoba (1989)191. Note: The symbol Ш is the Cyrillic upper case "sha" character, which has been assigned Unicode location U+0428. Reference: http://unicode.org/cldr/utility/character.jsp?a=0428

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(n\tau)e^{-i\omega n\tau} \qquad \text{by definition of } \delta$$

$$= \frac{2\pi}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega + \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right) \qquad \text{by } IPSF \qquad \text{(Theorem 1.3 page 10)}$$

$$= \frac{2\pi}{\tau}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{\tau}n\right)$$

✍

Suppose a waveform $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is sampled at every time T generating a sequence of sampled values $\mathsf{f}(n\tau)$. Then in general, we can *approximate* $\mathsf{f}(x)$ by using interpolation between the points $\mathsf{f}(n\tau)$. Interpolation can be performed using several interpolation techniques.

In general all techniques lead only to an approximation of $\mathsf{f}(x)$. However, if $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *bandlimited* with bandwidth $W \le \frac{1}{2T}$, then $\mathsf{f}(x)$ is *perfectly reconstructed* (not just approximated) from the sampled values $\mathsf{f}(n\tau)$ (Theorem N.4 page 335).

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX O

OPERATIONS ON SEQUENCES

O.1 Convolution operator

Definition O.1. [1] *Let X^Y be the set of all functions from a set Y to a set X. Let $\mathbb{Z}$ be the set of integers.*

DEF

*A function f in X^Y is a **sequence** over X if $Y = \mathbb{Z}$.*
A sequence may be denoted in the form $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ or simply as $(\!(x_n)\!)$.

Definition O.2. [2] *Let $(\mathbb{F}, +, \cdot, 0, 1)$ be a* FIELD *(Definition A.5 page 130).*

DEF

*The **space of all absolutely square summable sequences** $\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}$ over $\mathbb{F}$ is defined as*

$$\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}} \triangleq \left\{ (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mid \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |x_n|^2 < \infty \right\}$$

The space $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is an example of a *separable Hilbert space*. In fact, $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is the *only* separable Hilbert space in the sense that all separable Hilbert spaces are isomorphically equivalent. For example, $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ is isomorphic to $L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$, the *space of all absolutely square Lebesgue integrable functions*.

Definition O.3.

DEF

*The **convolution** operation $\star$ is defined as*

$$(\!(x_n)\!) \star (\!(y_n)\!) \triangleq \left(\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m} \right) \right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}, (\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

Proposition O.1. *Let $\star$ be the* CONVOLUTION OPERATOR *(Definition O.3 page 339).*

PRP

$$(\!(x_n)\!) \star (\!(y_n)\!) = (\!(y_n)\!) \star (\!(x_n)\!) \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}, (\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} \qquad (\star \text{ is COMMUTATIVE})$$

[1] Bromwich (1908), page 1, Thomson et al. (2008) page 23 ⟨Definition 2.1⟩, Joshi (1997) page 31
[2] Kubrusly (2011) page 347 ⟨Example 5.K⟩

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
[x \star y](n) &\triangleq \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m} && \text{by Definition O.3 page 339}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{n-k} y(k) && \text{where } k = n-m \iff m = n-k\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{n-k} y(k) && \text{by change commutivity of addition}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{n-m} y_m && \text{by change of variables}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y_m x_{n-m} && \text{by commutative property of the field over } \mathbb{C}\\
&\triangleq (y \star x)_n && \text{by Definition O.3 page 339}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Proposition O.2. *Let $\star$ be the* CONVOLUTION OPERATOR *(Definition O.3 page 339). Let $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ be the set of* ABSOLUTELY SUMMABLE *sequences (Definition O.2 page 339).*

PRP

$$
\left\{ \begin{array}{lll} (A). & \mathsf{x}(n) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{and} \\ (B). & \mathsf{y}(n) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \end{array} \right\} \implies \left\{ \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[k]\mathsf{y}[n+k] = \mathsf{x}[-n] \star \mathsf{y}(n) \right\}
$$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[k]\mathsf{y}[n+k] &= \sum_{-p\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[-p]\mathsf{y}[n-p] && \text{where } p \triangleq -k && \implies k = -p\\
&= \sum_{p\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[-p]\mathsf{y}[n-p] && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ hypothesis} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)}\\
&= \sum_{p\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}'[p]\mathsf{y}[n-p] && \text{where } \mathsf{x}'[n] \triangleq \mathsf{x}[-n] && \implies \mathsf{x}[-n] = \mathsf{x}'[n]\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{x}'[n] \star \mathsf{y}[n] && \text{by definition of } \textit{convolution} \star && \text{(Definition O.3 page 339)}\\
&\triangleq \mathsf{x}[-n] \star \mathsf{y}[n] && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{x}'[n]
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

O.2 Z-transform

Definition O.4. [3]

DEF

*The **z-transform** $\mathbf{Z}$ of $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is defined as*

$$
\left[\mathbf{Z}\left(\!(x_n)\!\right)\right](z) \triangleq \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}}_{\textit{Laurent series}} \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}
$$

Theorem O.1. *Let $X(z) \triangleq \mathbf{Z}\mathsf{x}[n]$ be the* Z-TRANSFORM *of $\mathsf{x}[n]$.*

THM

$$
\left\{ \check{\mathsf{x}}(z) \triangleq \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\mathsf{x}[n])\!\right) \right\} \implies \left\{ \begin{array}{llll}
(1). & \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\alpha\mathsf{x}[n])\!\right) = \alpha\check{\mathsf{x}}(z) & \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{and}\\
(2). & \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\mathsf{x}[n-k])\!\right) = z^{-k}\check{\mathsf{x}}(z) & \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{and}\\
(3). & \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\mathsf{x}[-n])\!\right) = \check{\mathsf{x}}\left(\frac{1}{z}\right) & \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{and}\\
(4). & \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\mathsf{x}^*[n])\!\right) = \check{\mathsf{x}}^*\left(z^*\right) & \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} & \text{and}\\
(5). & \mathbf{Z}\left(\!(\mathsf{x}^*[-n])\!\right) = \check{\mathsf{x}}^*\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right) & \forall (\!(x_n)\!) \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}} &
\end{array} \right\}
$$

[3] *Laurent series*: Abramovich and Aliprantis (2002) page 49

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha\mathbb{Z}\check{\mathsf{x}}(z) &\triangleq \alpha\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[n]\right)\!\right) && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{x}}(z) \\
&\triangleq \alpha\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[n]z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} \text{ operator} \\
&\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(\alpha\mathsf{x}[n])z^{-n} && \text{by } \textit{distributive} \text{ property} \\
&\triangleq \mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\alpha\mathsf{x}[n]\right)\!\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} \text{ operator} \\
z^{-k}\check{\mathsf{x}}(z) &= z^{-k}\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[n]\right)\!\right) && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{x}}(z) && \text{(left hypothesis)} \\
&\triangleq z^{-k}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty}\mathsf{x}[n]z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
&= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty}\mathsf{x}[n]z^{-n-k} \\
&= \sum_{m-k=-\infty}^{m-k=+\infty}\mathsf{x}[m-k]z^{-m} && \text{where } m\triangleq n+k && \implies n=m-k \\
&= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{m=+\infty}\mathsf{x}[m-k]z^{-m} \\
&= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty}\mathsf{x}[n-k]z^{-n} && \text{where } n\triangleq m \\
&\triangleq \mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[n-k]\right)\!\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}^*[n]\right)\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}^*[n]z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
&\triangleq \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[n](z^*)^{-n}\right)^* && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
&\triangleq \check{\mathsf{x}}^*(z^*) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[-n]\right)\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[-n]z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
&= \sum_{-m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[m]z^{m} && \text{where } m\triangleq -n && \implies n=-m \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[m]z^{m} && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[m]\left(\frac{1}{z}\right)^{-m} && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)} \\
&\triangleq \check{\mathsf{x}}\left(\frac{1}{z}\right) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}^*[-n]\right)\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}^*[-n]z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} && \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)} \\
&= \sum_{-m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}^*[m]z^{m} && \text{where } m\triangleq -n && \implies n=-m \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}^*[m]z^{m} && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}^*[m]\left(\frac{1}{z}\right)^{-m} && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)} \\
&= \left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathsf{x}[m]\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right)^{-m}\right)^* && \text{by } \textit{absolutely summable} \text{ property} && \text{(Definition O.2 page 339)}
\end{aligned}
$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure O.1: Direct form 1 order 2 IIR filters

$$\triangleq \check{x}^*\left(\frac{1}{z^*}\right) \qquad \text{by definition of } \mathbf{Z} \qquad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}$$

✏

Theorem O.2 (convolution theorem)**.** *Let $\star$ be the convolution operator* (*Definition O.3 page 339*)*.*

THM

$$\mathbf{Z}\underbrace{\left(\langle\!\langle x_n\rangle\!\rangle \star \langle\!\langle y_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)}_{\textit{sequence convolution}} = \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{Z}\langle\!\langle x_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)\left(\mathbf{Z}\langle\!\langle y_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)}_{\textit{series multiplication}} \qquad \forall \langle\!\langle x_n\rangle\!\rangle_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}, \langle\!\langle y_n\rangle\!\rangle_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{Z}(x\star y)](z) &\triangleq \mathbf{Z}\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m}\right) && \text{by Definition O.3 page 339}\\
&\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m} z^{-n} && \text{by Definition O.4 page 340}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m} z^{-n}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_{n-m} z^{-n}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y_k z^{-(m+k)} && \text{where } k = n-m \iff n = m+k\\
&= \left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m z^{-m}\right]\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} y_k z^{-k}\right]\\
&\triangleq \left(\mathbf{Z}\langle\!\langle x_n\rangle\!\rangle\right)\left(\mathbf{Z}\langle\!\langle y_n\rangle\!\rangle\right) && \text{by Definition O.4 page 340}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

O.3 From z-domain back to time-domain

$$\check{y}(z) = b_0X(z) + b_1z^{-1}X(z) + b_2z^{-2}X(z) - a_1z^{-1}Y(z) + a_2z^{-2}Y(z)$$

$$y[n] = b_0x[n] + b_1x[n-1] + b_2x[n-2] - a_1y[n-1] - a_2y[n-2]$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Example O.1. See Figure O.1 (page 342)

$$\frac{3z^2+5z+7}{2z^2+10z+12} = \frac{3z^2+5z+7}{2\left(z^2+5z+6\right)} = \frac{\left(\frac{3}{2}z^2+\frac{5}{2}z+\frac{7}{2}\right)}{z^2+5z+6} = \frac{\left(\frac{3}{2}+\frac{5}{2}z^{-1}+\frac{7}{2}z^{-2}\right)}{1+5z^{-1}+6z^{-2}}$$

O.4 Zero locations

The system property of *minimum phase* is defined in Definition O.5 (next) and illustrated in Figure O.2 (page 343).

not minimum phase *minimum phase*

Figure O.2: Minimum Phase filter

Definition O.5. [4] *Let* $\check{x}(z) \triangleq \mathbf{Z}(\!(x_n)\!)$ *be the* Z TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) of a sequence* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $(\!(z_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be the* ZEROS *of* $\check{x}(z)$.

DEF *The sequence* $(\!(x_n)\!)$ *is* ***minimum phase*** *if*

$$\underbrace{|z_n| < 1 \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}}_{\check{x}(z) \text{ has all its ZEROS inside the unit circle}}$$

The impulse response of a minimum phase filter has most of its energy concentrated near the beginning of its support, as demonstrated next.

Theorem O.3 (Robinson's Energy Delay Theorem). [5] *Let* $\mathsf{p}(z) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N} a_n z^{-n}$ *and* $\mathsf{q}(z) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N} b_n z^{-n}$ *be polynomials.*

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} \mathsf{p} & \text{is MINIMUM PHASE} \\ \mathsf{q} & \text{is NOT minimum phase} \end{array}\right\} \text{ and } \Longrightarrow \underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{m-1} |a_n|^2}_{\substack{\text{"energy" of the first } m \text{ coefficients of } \mathsf{p}(z)}} \geq \underbrace{\sum_{n=0}^{m-1} |b_n|^2}_{\substack{\text{"energy" of the first } m \text{ coefficients of } \mathsf{q}(z)}} \qquad \forall 0 \leq m \leq N$$

But for more *symmetry*, put some zeros inside and some outside the unit circle.

Example O.2. An example of a minimum phase polynomial is the Daubechies-4 scaling function. The minimum phase polynomial causes most of the energy to be concentrated near the origin, making it very *asymmetric*. In contrast, the Symlet-4 has a design very similar to that of Daubechies-4, but the selected zeros are not all within the unit circle in the complex z plane. This results in a

[4] Farina and Rinaldi (2000) page 91, Dumitrescu (2007) page 36

[5] Dumitrescu (2007) page 36, Robinson (1962), Robinson (1966) ⟨???⟩, Claerbout (1976), pages 52–53

Figure O.3: Daubechies-4 and Symlet-4 scaling functions pole-zero plots

scaling function that is more symmetric and less contrated near the origin. Both scaling functions are illustrated in Figure O.3 (page 344).

O.5 Pole locations

Definition O.6.

DEF *A filter (or system or operator)* **H** *is* ***causal*** *if its current output does not depend on future inputs.*

Definition O.7.

DEF *A filter (or system or operator)* **H** *is* ***time-invariant*** *if the mapping it performs does not change with time.*

Definition O.8.

DEF *An operation* **H** *is* ***linear*** *if any output* y_n *can be described as a linear combination of inputs* x_n *as in*

$$y_n = \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} h(m)x(n-m) .$$

For a filter to be *stable*, place all the poles *inside* the unit circle.

Theorem O.4. *A causal LTI filter is* ***stable*** *if all of its poles are* ***inside*** *the unit circle.*

Example O.3. Stable/unstable filters are illustrated in Figure O.4 (page 345).

True or False? This filter has no poles:

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Figure O.4: Pole-zero plot stable/unstable causal LTI filters (Example O.3 page 344)

$H(z) = b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2}$

$$H(z) = b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} = \frac{z^2}{z^2} \times \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2}}{1} = \frac{b_0 z^2 + b_1 z^1 + b_2}{z^2}$$

O.6 Mirroring for real coefficients

If you want real coefficients, choose poles and zeros in conjugate pairs (next).

Proposition O.3.

PRP { ZEROS *and* POLES *occur in* CONJUGATE PAIRS } $\Longrightarrow$ { COEFFICIENTS *are* REAL. }

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

BY-NC-ND

Figure O.5: Conjugate pair structure yielding real coefficients

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}(z-p_1)(z-p_1^*) &= [z-(a+ib)][z-(a-ib)]\\ &= z^2+[-a+ib-ib-a]z-[ib]^2\\ &= z^2-2az+b^2\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example O.4. See Figure O.5 (page 346).

$$\begin{aligned}H(z) &= G\frac{[z-z_1][z-z_2]}{[z-p_1][z-p_2]} = G\frac{[z-(1+i)][z-(1-i)]}{[z-(-2/3+i1/2)][z-(-2/3-i1/2)]}\\ &= G\frac{z^2-z[(1-i)+(1+i)]+(1-i)(1+i)}{z^2-z[(-2/3+i1/2)+(-2/3+i1/2)]+(-2/3+i1/2)(-2/3+i1/2)}\\ &= G\frac{z^2-2z+2}{z^2-4/3z+(4/3+1/4)} = G\frac{z^2-2z+2}{z^2-4/3z+19/12}\end{aligned}$$

O.7 Rational polynomial operators

A digital filter is simply an operator on $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. If the digital filter is a causal LTI system, then it can be expressed as a rational polynomial in z as shown next.

Lemma O.1. *A causal LTI operator* **H** *can be expressed as a rational expression* $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$.

$$\begin{aligned}\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \frac{b_0+b_1z^{-1}+b_2z^{-2}+\cdots+b_Nz^{-N}}{1+a_1z^{-1}+a_2z^{-2}+\cdots+a_Nz^{-N}}\\ &= \frac{\sum_{n=0}^{N} b_nz^{-n}}{1+\sum_{n=1}^{N} a_nz^{-n}}\end{aligned}$$

A filter operation $\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)$ can be expressed as a product of its roots (poles and zeros).

$$\begin{aligned}\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \frac{b_0+b_1z^{-1}+b_2z^{-2}+\cdots+b_Nz^{-N}}{1+a_1z^{-1}+a_2z^{-2}+\cdots+a_Nz^{-N}}\\ &= \alpha\frac{(z-z_1)(z-z_2)\cdots(z-z_N)}{(z-p_1)(z-p_2)\cdots(z-p_N)}\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

where α is a constant, z_i are the zeros, and p_i are the poles. The poles and zeros of such a rational expression are often plotted in the z-plane with a unit circle about the origin (representing $z = e^{i\omega}$). Poles are marked with $\times$ and zeros with $\bigcirc$. An example is shown in Figure O.6 page 347. Notice that in this figure the zeros and poles are either real or occur in complex conjugate pairs.

Figure O.6: Pole-zero plot for rational expression with real coefficients

O.8 Filter Banks

Conjugate quadrature filters (next definition) are used in *filter banks*. If $\check{x}(z)$ is a *low-pass filter*, then the conjugate quadrature filter of $\check{y}(z)$ is a *high-pass filter*.

Definition O.9. [6] *Let* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *and* $(\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *be* SEQUENCES *(Definition O.1 page 339) in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

DEF

The sequence $(\!(y_n)\!)$ *is a* ***conjugate quadrature filter*** *with shift* N *with respect to* $(\!(x_n)\!)$ *if*

$$y_n = \pm(-1)^n x^*_{N-n}$$

A CONJUGATE QUADRATURE FILTER *is also called a* ***CQF*** *or a* ***Smith-Barnwell filter****.*
Any triple $\left((\!(x_n)\!), (\!(y_n)\!), N\right)$ *in this form is said to satisfy the* ***conjugate quadrature filter condition*** *or the* ***CQF condition****.*

Theorem O.5 (CQF theorem). [7] *Let* $\check{y}(\omega)$ *and* $\check{x}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT*s (Definition P.1 page 353) of the sequences* $(\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *and* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$*, respectively, in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

THM

$$\underbrace{y_n = \pm(-1)^n x^*_{N-n}}_{(1)\text{ CQF in “time”}} \iff \check{y}(z) = \pm(-1)^N z^{-N}\check{x}^*\left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right) \qquad (2)\ \text{CQF in “z-domain”}$$

$$\iff \check{y}(\omega) = \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi) \qquad (3)\ \text{CQF in “frequency”}$$

$$\iff x_n = \pm(-1)^N(-1)^n y^*_{N-n} \qquad (4)\ \text{“reversed” CQF in “time”}$$

$$\iff \check{x}(z) = \pm z^{-N}\check{y}^*\left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right) \qquad (5)\ \text{“reversed” CQF in “z-domain”}$$

$$\iff \check{x}(\omega) = \pm e^{-i\omega N}\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) \qquad (6)\ \text{“reversed” CQF in “frequency”}$$

$\forall N\in\mathbb{Z}$

✎PROOF:

[6] Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 109, Haddad and Akansu (1992) pages 256–259 ⟨section 4.5⟩, Vaidyanathan (1993) page 342 ⟨(7.2.7), (7.2.8)⟩, Smith and Barnwell (1984a), Smith and Barnwell (1984b), Mintzer (1985)

[7] Strang and Nguyen (1996) page 109, Mallat (1999) pages 236–238 ⟨(7.58),(7.73)⟩, Haddad and Akansu (1992) pages 256–259 ⟨section 4.5⟩, Vaidyanathan (1993) page 342 ⟨(7.2.7), (7.2.8)⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{y}(z) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y_n z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } z\text{-transform} \quad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{(\pm)(-1)^n x^*_{N-n}}_{CQF} z^{-n} && \text{by (1)}\\
&= \pm \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{N-m} x^*_m z^{-(N-m)} && \text{where } m \triangleq N-n \implies \quad n = N-m\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{-m} x^*_m \left(z^{-1}\right)^{-m}\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x^*_m \left(-\frac{1}{z}\right)^{-m}\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m \left(-\frac{1}{z^*}\right)^{-m}\right]^*\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \check{x}^*\left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right) && \text{by definition of } z\text{-transform} \quad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{y}(z) &= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \check{x}^*\left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right) && \text{by (2)}\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m \left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right)^{-m}\right]^* && \text{by definition of } z\text{-transform} \quad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}\\
&= \pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x^*_m \left(-z^{-1}\right)^{-m}\right] && \text{by definition of } z\text{-transform} \quad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (\pm)(-1)^{N-m} x^*_m z^{-(N-m)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (\pm)(-1)^n x^*_{N-n} z^{-n} && \text{where } n = N-m \implies \quad m \triangleq N-n\\
&\implies x_n = \pm(-1)^n x^*_{N-n}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{y}(\omega) &\triangleq \check{x}(z)\Big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} && \text{by definition of } DTFT \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \left[\pm(-1)^N z^{-N} \check{x}\left(\frac{-1}{z^*}\right)\right]_{z=e^{i\omega}} && \text{by (2)}\\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \check{x}\left(e^{i\pi} e^{\iota\omega}\right)\\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \check{x}\left(e^{i(\omega+\pi)}\right)\\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \check{x}(\omega+\pi) && \text{by definition of } DTFT \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (6):

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{x}(\omega) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y_n e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } DTFT \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \underbrace{\pm(-1)^n x^*_{N-n}}_{CQF} e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by (1)}\\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \pm(-1)^{N-m} x^*_m e^{-i\omega(N-m)} && \text{where } m \triangleq N-n \implies \quad n = N-m\\
&= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^m x^*_m e^{i\omega m}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} e^{i\pi m} x_m^* e^{i\omega m}$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m^* e^{i(\omega+\pi)m}$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i(\omega+\pi)m}\right]^*$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N} \check{x}^*(\omega+\pi) \qquad \text{by definition of } DTFT \qquad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}$$

5. Proof that (1) $\Longleftarrow$ (3):

$$y_n = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \check{y}(\omega)e^{i\omega n}\,d\omega \qquad \text{by } \textit{inverse DTFT} \qquad \text{(Theorem P.3 page 359)}$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \underbrace{\pm(-1)^N e^{-iN\omega}\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)}_{\text{right hypothesis}} e^{i\omega n}\,d\omega \qquad \text{by right hypothesis}$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{+\pi} \check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)e^{i\omega(n-N)}\,d\omega \qquad \text{by right hypothesis}$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \check{x}^*(\upsilon)e^{i(\upsilon-\pi)(n-N)}\,d\upsilon \qquad \text{where } \upsilon \triangleq \omega+\pi \implies \omega = \upsilon-\pi$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N e^{-i\pi(n-N)} \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \check{x}^*(\upsilon)e^{i\upsilon(n-N)}\,d\upsilon$$
$$= \pm(-1)^N \underbrace{(-1)^N}_{e^{i\pi N}}\underbrace{(-1)^n}_{e^{-i\pi n}} \left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \check{x}(\upsilon)e^{i\upsilon(N-n)}\,d\upsilon\right]^*$$
$$= \pm(-1)^n x_{N-n}^* \qquad \text{by } \textit{inverse DTFT} \qquad \text{(Theorem P.3 page 359)}$$

6. Proof that (1) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
y_n = \pm(-1)^n x_{N-n}^* &\Longleftrightarrow (\pm)(-1)^n y_n = (\pm)(\pm)(-1)^n(-1)^n x_{N-n}^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow \pm(-1)^n y_n = x_{N-n}^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow \left(\pm(-1)^n y_n\right)^* = \left(x_{N-n}^*\right)^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow \pm(-1)^n y_n^* = x_{N-n} \\
&\Longleftrightarrow x_{N-n} = \pm(-1)^n y_n^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow x_m = \pm(-1)^{N-m} y_{N-m}^* \qquad \text{where } m \triangleq N-n \implies n = N-m \\
&\Longleftrightarrow x_m = \pm(-1)^{N-m} y_{N-m}^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow x_m = \pm(-1)^N(-1)^m y_{N-m}^* \\
&\Longleftrightarrow x_n = \pm(-1)^N(-1)^n y_{N-n}^* \qquad \text{by change of free variables}
\end{aligned}$$

7. Proofs for (5) and (6): not included. See proofs for (2) and (3).

✍

Theorem O.6. [8] *Let* $\check{y}(\omega)$ *and* $\check{x}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFTs *(Definition P.1 page 353) of the sequences* $(\!(y_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *and* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$*, respectively, in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition O.2 page 339).*

THM

Let $y_n = \pm(-1)^n x_{N-n}^*$ (CQF CONDITION, *Definition O.9 page 347*)*. Then*

$$\left\{\begin{array}{llll}
(A) & \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{y}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = 0 & \Longleftrightarrow \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} = 0 & (B) \\
 & & \Longleftrightarrow \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n x_k = 0 & (C) \\
 & & \Longleftrightarrow \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n y_k = 0 & (D)
\end{array}\right\} \quad \forall n\in\mathbb{W}$$

[8] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

CC BY-NC-ND

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (A) $\Longrightarrow$ (B):

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{y}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by (A)} \\
&= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n (\pm)(-1)^N e^{-i\omega N}\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by } \textit{CQF theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem O.5 page 347)} \\
&= (\pm)(-1)^N \sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{\ell}\left[e^{-i\omega N}\right]\cdot\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=0} && \text{by } \textit{Leibnitz GPR} \quad \text{(Lemma E.2 page 185)} \\
&= (\pm)(-1)^N \sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}-iN^{\ell}e^{-i\omega N}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=0} \\
&= (\pm)(-1)^N \cancelto{1}{e^{-i0N}} \sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}-iN^{\ell}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{x}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=0}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(0)}(\pi) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(1)}(\pi) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(2)}(\pi) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(3)}(\pi) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(4)}(\pi) &= 0 \\
\vdots \quad & \quad \vdots \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{x}^{(n)}(\pi) &= 0 \quad \text{for } n = 0,1,2,\ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Proof that (A) $\Longleftarrow$ (B):

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by (B)} \\
&= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n (\pm)e^{-i\omega N}\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by } \textit{CQF theorem} \quad \text{(Theorem O.5 page 347)} \\
&= (\pm)\sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{\ell}\left[e^{-i\omega N}\right]\cdot\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by } \textit{Leibnitz GPR} \quad \text{(Lemma E.2 page 185)} \\
&= (\pm)\sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}(-iN)^{\ell}e^{-i\omega N}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} \\
&= (\pm)\cancelto{1}{e^{-i\pi N}}\sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}-iN^{\ell}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} \\
&= (\pm)(-1)^N\sum_{\ell=0}^{n}\binom{n}{\ell}-iN^{\ell}\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^{n-\ell}\left[\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(0)}(0) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(1)}(0) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(2)}(0) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(3)}(0) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(4)}(0) &= 0 \\
\vdots \quad & \quad \vdots \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(n)}(0) &= 0 \\
\Longrightarrow \quad \check{y}^{(n)}(0) &= 0 \quad \text{for } n = 0,1,2,\ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

3. Proof that (B) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (C): by Theorem P.5 page 361

4. Proof that (A) $\Longleftrightarrow$ (D): by Theorem P.5 page 361

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$\times$

$= \quad 1$

$$\frac{(z-z_1)(z-z_2)(z-z_3)(z-z_4)}{(z-p_1)(z-p_2)(z-p_3)(z-p_4)} \times \frac{(z-p_1)(z-p_2)(z-p_3)(z-p_4)}{(z-z_1)(z-z_2)(z-z_3)(z-z_4)} = 1$$

5. Proof that (CQF) $\not\Leftarrow$ (A): Here is a counterexample: $\check{y}(\omega) = 0$.

✏

O.9 Inverting non-minimum phase filters

Minimum phase filters are easy to invert: each *zero* becomes a *pole* and each *pole* becomes a *zero*.

unstable

$\times$

all-pass

$=$

stable!

$$\begin{aligned}
|A(z)|_{z=e^{i\omega}} &= \frac{1}{r}\left|\frac{z-re^{i\phi}}{z-\frac{1}{r}e^{i\phi}}\right|_{z=e^{i\omega}} &&= \left|\frac{z-re^{i\phi}}{rz-e^{i\phi}}\right|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \left|e^{i\phi}\left(\frac{e^{-i\phi}z-r}{rz-e^{i\phi}}\right)\right|_{z=e^{i\omega}} &&= \left|z\left(\frac{e^{-i\phi}-rz^{-1}}{rz-e^{i\phi}}\right)\right|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \left|-z\left(\frac{rz^{-1}-e^{-i\phi}}{rz-e^{i\phi}}\right)\right|_{z=e^{i\omega}} &&= \left|\underbrace{e^{i\pi}}_{-1}e^{i\omega}\left(\frac{re^{-i\omega}-e^{-i\phi}}{re^{i\omega}-e^{i\phi}}\right)\right| \\
&= \left|\frac{1}{e^{-iv}}\left(\frac{re^{-i\omega}-e^{-i\phi}}{\left(re^{i\omega}-e^{i\phi}\right)^*}\right)\right| &&= \left|\frac{re^{-i\omega}-e^{-i\phi}}{re^{-i\omega}-e^{-i\phi}}\right| \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX P

DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM

P.1 Definition

Definition P.1.

DEF *The **discrete-time Fourier transform** $\check{\mathbf{F}}$ of $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ is defined as*

$$\left[\check{\mathbf{F}}\,(\!(x_n)\!)\right](\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n e^{-i\omega n} \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

If we compare the definition of the *Discrete Time Fourier Transform* (Definition P.1 page 353) to the definition of the Z-transform (Definition O.4 page 340), we see that the DTFT is just a special case of the more general Z-Transform, with $z = e^{i\omega}$. If we imagine $z \in \mathbb{C}$ as a complex plane, then $e^{i\omega}$ is a unit circle in this plane. The "frequency" ω in the DTFT is the unit circle in the much larger z-plane, as illustrated to the right.

P.2 Properties

Proposition P.1 (DTFT periodicity)**.** *Let $\check{x}(\omega) \triangleq \check{\mathbf{F}}\left[(\!(x_n)\!)\right](\omega)$ be the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ in $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.*

PRP $$\underbrace{\check{x}(\omega) = \check{x}(\omega + 2\pi n)}_{\text{PERIODIC } \textit{with period } 2\pi} \qquad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}\check{x}(\omega + 2\pi n) &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i(\omega+2\pi n)m} &&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i\omega m} \cancelto{1}{e^{-i2\pi n m}} \\ &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i\omega m} &&= \check{x}(\omega)\end{aligned}$$

✎

Theorem P.1. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \breve{\mathbf{F}}\big[(\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!)\big](\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!|x_n|\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM

$$\left\{\ \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!\right)\ \right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{llcll} (1). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[-n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega) & \textit{and} \\ (2). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(-\omega) & \textit{and} \\ (3). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[-n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(\omega) & \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[-n]|\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[-n]e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } DTFT && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{i\omega m} && \text{where } m \triangleq -n \implies n = -m \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{-i(-\omega)m} \\
&\triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega) && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[n]|\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}^*[n]e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } DTFT && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[n]e^{i\omega n}\right)^* && \text{by } \textit{distributive} \text{ property of } *\textbf{-algebras} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\
&= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[n]e^{-i(-\omega)n}\right)^* \\
&\triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(-\omega) && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[-n]|\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}^*[-n]e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } DTFT && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[-n]e^{i\omega n}\right)^* && \text{by } \textit{distributive} \text{ property of } *\textbf{-algebras} && \text{(Definition ?? page ??)} \\
&= \left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{-i\omega m}\right)^* && \text{where } m \triangleq -n \implies n = -m \\
&\triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(\omega) && \text{by left hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem P.2. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \breve{\mathbf{F}}\big[(\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!)\big](\omega)$ *be the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ *in* $\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$.

THM

$$\left\{\begin{array}{lll} (1). & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!\right) & \textit{and} \\ (2). & (\!|\mathsf{x}[n]|\!) \textit{ is } \text{REAL-VALUED} & \end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{llcllll} (1). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[-n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega) & & & \textit{and} \\ (2). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(-\omega) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) & \textit{and} \\ (3). & \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}^*[-n]|\!\right) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(\omega) & = & \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega) & \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!|\mathsf{x}[-n]|\!\right) &\triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[-n]e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } DTFT && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{i\omega m} && \text{where } m \triangleq -n \implies n = -m \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{-i(-\omega)m}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$\triangleq \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega) \qquad \text{by left hypothesis}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{\tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(-\omega)} &= \boxed{\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}^*[n]\right)\!\right)} && \text{by Theorem P.1 page 354}\\
&= \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[n]\right)\!\right) && \text{by \textit{real-valued} hypothesis}\\
&= \boxed{\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{\tilde{\mathsf{x}}^*(\omega)} &= \boxed{\breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}^*[-n]\right)\!\right)} && \text{by Theorem P.1 page 354}\\
&= \breve{\mathbf{F}}\left(\!\left(\mathsf{x}[-n]\right)\!\right) && \text{by \textit{real-valued} hypothesis}\\
&= \boxed{\tilde{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega)} && \text{by result (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

✍

Proposition P.2. *Let* $\breve{\mathsf{x}}(z)$ *be the* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) and* $\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)$ *the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of* $(\!(x_n)\!)$.

PRP

$$\underbrace{\left\{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n = c\right\}}_{\text{(1) time domain}} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\breve{\mathsf{x}}(z)\Big|_{z=1} = c\right\}}_{\text{(2) } z \text{ domain}} \iff \underbrace{\left\{\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} = c\right\}}_{\text{(3) frequency domain}} \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}, c\in\mathbb{R}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\implies$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathsf{x}}(z)\Big|_{z=1} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}\Big|_{z=1} && \text{by definition of } \breve{\mathsf{x}}(z) \text{ (Definition O.4 page 340)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n && \text{because } z^n = 1 \text{ for all } n\in\mathbb{Z}\\
&= c && \text{by hypothesis (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that (2) $\implies$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=0} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n e^{-i\omega n}\Big|_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \breve{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) \quad \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}\Big|_{z=1}\\
&= \breve{\mathsf{x}}(z)\Big|_{z=1} && \text{by definition of } \breve{\mathsf{x}}(z) \quad \text{(Definition O.4 page 340)}\\
&= c && \text{by hypothesis (2)}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE
CC BY-NC-ND

3. Proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n e^{-i\omega n}\Big|_{\omega=0} \\
&= \check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega) && \text{(Definition P.1 page 353)} \\
&= c && \text{by hypothesis (3)}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition P.3. *If the coefficients are **real**, then the magnitude response (MR) is **symmetric**.*

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(-\omega)\right| &\triangleq \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\right|_{z=e^{-i\omega}} && \triangleq \left|\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]z^{-m}\right|_{z=e^{-i\omega}} \\
&= \left|\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{i\omega m}\right| && = \left|\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}^*[m]e^{-i\omega m}\right)^*\right| \\
&= \underbrace{\left|\left(\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{-i\omega m}\right)^*\right|}_{\text{if } x[m] \text{ is } real} && = \left|\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{x}[m]e^{-i\omega m}\right| \\
&\triangleq \left|\check{\mathsf{h}}(z)\right|_{z=e^{-i\omega}} && \triangleq \left|\tilde{\mathsf{h}}(\omega)\right|
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition P.4. [1]

PRP

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n x_n = c}_{\text{(1) in "time"}} \iff \underbrace{\check{\mathsf{x}}(z)|_{z=-1} = c}_{\text{(2) in "z domain"}} \iff \underbrace{\check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)|_{\omega=\pi} = c}_{\text{(3) in "frequency"}}$$

$$\iff \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_{2n}, \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_{2n+1}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n + c\right), \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_n - c\right)\right)}_{\text{(4) sum of even, sum of odd}}$$

$\forall c\in\mathbb{R}, (x_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}, (y_n)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that (1) $\Longrightarrow$ (2):

$$\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{x}}(z)|_{z=-1} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}\Big|_{z=-1} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n x_n \\
&= c && \text{by (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

[1] Chui (1992) page 123

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

2. Proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ (3):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n e^{-i\omega n}\Big|_{\omega=\pi} &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n x_n \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{-n} x_n && = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} z^{-n} x_n\Big|_{z=-1} \\
&= c && \text{by (2)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that (3) $\Longrightarrow$ (1):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n x_n &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{-n} x_n \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} e^{-i\omega n} x_n\Big|_{\omega=\pi} \\
&= c && \text{by (3)}
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that (2) $\Longrightarrow$ (4):

   (a) Define $A \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_{2n}$ $\qquad B \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} h_{2n+1}$.

   (b) Proof that $A - B = c$:

$$\begin{aligned}
c &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^n x_n && \text{by (2)} \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e} (-1)^n x_n}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o} (-1)^n x_n}_{\text{odd terms}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n} x_{2n} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n+1} x_{2n+1} \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n}}_{A} - \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n+1}}_{B} \\
&\triangleq A - B && \text{by definitions of } A \text{ and } B
\end{aligned}$$

   (c) Proof that $A + B = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n &= \sum_{n \text{ even}} x_n + \sum_{n \text{ odd}} x_n \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n}}_{A} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n+1}}_{B} \\
&= A + B && \text{by definitions of } A \text{ and } B
\end{aligned}$$

   (d) This gives two simultaneous equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
A - B &= c \\
A + B &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

(e) Solutions to these equations give

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n} \triangleq A \qquad = \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n + c\right)$$

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n+1} \triangleq B \qquad = \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n - c\right)$$

5. Proof that (2) $\Longleftarrow$ (4):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n x_n &= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e}(-1)^n x_n}_{\text{even terms}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o}(-1)^n x_n}_{\text{odd terms}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{2n} x_{2n} + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^{2n+1} x_{2n+1} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n} - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_{2n+1} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n + c\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n - c\right) && \text{by (3)} \\
&= c
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Lemma P.1. *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

LEM

$$\underbrace{(\!(x_n \in \mathbb{R})\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}}_{\text{REAL-VALUED } \textit{sequence}} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{|\check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)|^2 = |\check{\mathsf{x}}(-\omega)|^2}_{\text{EVEN}} \qquad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
|\check{\mathsf{x}}(\omega)|^2 &= |\check{\mathsf{x}}(z)|^2\big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \check{\mathsf{x}}(z)\check{\mathsf{x}}^*(z)\big|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}\right]\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m z^{-n}\right]^*\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n z^{-n}\right]\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m^*(z^*)^{-m}\right]\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n x_m^* z^{-n}(z^*)^{-m}\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[|x_n|^2 + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m^* z^{-n}(z^*)^{-m} + \sum_{m<n} x_n x_m^* z^{-n}(z^*)^{-m}\right]\Bigg|_{z=e^{i\omega}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[|x_n|^2 + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m e^{i\omega(m-n)} + \sum_{m<n} x_n x_m e^{i\omega(m-n)}\right] \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[|x_n|^2 + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m e^{i\omega(m-n)} + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m e^{-i\omega(m-n)}\right] \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[|x_n|^2 + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m \left(e^{i\omega(m-n)} + e^{-i\omega(m-n)}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[|x_n|^2 + \sum_{m>n} x_n x_m 2\cos[\omega(m-n)] \right]$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |x_n|^2 + 2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m>n} x_n x_m \cos[\omega(m-n)]$$

Since cos is real and even, then $|\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)|^2$ must also be real and even. ✏

Theorem P.3 (inverse DTFT). [2] *Let $\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)$ be the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Let $\check{\mathrm{x}}^{-1}$ be the inverse of $\check{\mathrm{x}}$.*

THM

$$\underbrace{\left\{ \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} x_n e^{-i\omega n} \right\}}_{\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega) \triangleq \check{\mathbf{F}}(\!(x_n)\!)} \implies \underbrace{\left\{ x_n = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha-\pi}^{\alpha+\pi} \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega) e^{i\omega n}\, d\omega \quad \forall \alpha\in\mathbb{R} \right\}}_{(\!(x_n)\!) = \check{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\check{\mathbf{F}}(\!(x_n)\!)} \quad \forall (\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha-\pi}^{\alpha+\pi} \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega) e^{i\omega n}\, d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha-\pi}^{\alpha+\pi} \underbrace{\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i\omega m} \right]}_{\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)} e^{i\omega n}\, d\omega \qquad \text{by definition of } \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\alpha-\pi}^{\alpha+\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m e^{-i\omega(m-n)}\, d\omega$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m \int_{\alpha-\pi}^{\alpha+\pi} e^{-i\omega(m-n)}\, d\omega$$
$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m \left[2\pi\bar{\delta}_{m-n}\right]$$
$$= x_n$$

✏

Theorem P.4 (orthonormal quadrature conditions). [3] *Let $\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)$ be the* DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \in \ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. Let $\bar{\delta}_n$ be the* KRONECKER DELTA FUNCTION *at n (Definition L.12 page 276).*

THM

$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y^*_{m-2n} = 0 \iff \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)\check{\mathrm{y}}^*(\omega) + \check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega+\pi)\check{\mathrm{y}}^*(\omega+\pi) = 0 \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}, \forall (\!(x_n)\!),(\!(y_n)\!)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$
$$\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m x^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n \iff |\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega)|^2 + |\check{\mathrm{x}}(\omega+\pi)|^2 = 2 \qquad \forall n\in\mathbb{Z}, \forall (\!(x_n)\!),(\!(y_n)\!)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{R}}$$

✎PROOF: Let $z \triangleq e^{i\omega}$.

[2] J.S.Chitode (2009) page 3-95 ⟨(3.6.2)⟩
[3] Daubechies (1992) pages 132–137 ⟨(5.1.20),(5.1.39)⟩

CC BY-NC-ND

1. Proof that $2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} = \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n}\\
&= 2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{k-2n} z^{-2n}\\
&= 2\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{n \text{ even}} y^*_{k-n} z^{-n}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{k-n} z^{-n}\left(1+e^{i\pi n}\right)\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{k-n} z^{-n} + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{k-n} z^{-n} e^{i\pi n}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{m} z^{-(k-m)} + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{m} e^{-i(\omega+\pi)(k-m)} \qquad \text{where } m \triangleq k-n\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k z^{-k} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{m} z^{m} + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i(\omega+\pi)k} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y^*_{m} e^{+i(\omega+\pi)m}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i\omega k}\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y_m e^{-i\omega m}\right]^* + \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i(\omega+\pi)k}\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} y_m e^{-i(\omega+\pi)m}\right]^*\\
&\triangleq \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi)
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y^*_{m-2n} = 0 \implies \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= 2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Proof that $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m y^*_{m-2n} = 0 \impliedby \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} &= \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (1)}\\
&= 0 && \text{by right hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus by the above equation, $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} = 0$. The only way for this to be true is if $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n} = 0$.

4. Proof that $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m x^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n \implies |\check{x}(\omega)|^2 + |\check{x}(\omega'+\pi)|^2 = 2$:
Let $g_n \triangleq x_n$.

$$\begin{aligned}
2 &= 2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \bar{\delta}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} e^{-i2\omega n}\\
&= 2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (1)}
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that $\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} x_m x^*_{m-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n \impliedby |\check{x}(\omega)|^2 + |\check{x}(\omega'+\pi)|^2 = 2$:
Let $g_n \triangleq x_n$.

$$\begin{aligned}
2\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} &= \check{x}(\omega)\check{y}^*(\omega) + \check{x}(\omega+\pi)\check{y}^*(\omega+\pi) && \text{by item (1)}\\
&= 2 && \text{by right hypothesis}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Thus by the above equation, $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left[\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n}\right] e^{-i2\omega n} = 1$. The only way for this to be true is if $\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k y^*_{k-2n} = \bar{\delta}_n$.

✏

P.3 Derivatives

Theorem P.5. [4] *Let* $\check{x}(\omega)$ *be the* DTFT *(Definition P.1 page 353) of a sequence* $(\!(x_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

THM									
	(A)	$\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big\vert_{\omega=0}$	$=$	0	$\Longleftrightarrow$	$\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n x_k$	$=$	0	(B) $\forall n\in\mathbb{W}$
	(C)	$\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big\vert_{\omega=\pi}$	$=$	0	$\Longleftrightarrow$	$\sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n x_k$	$=$	0	(D) $\forall n\in\mathbb{W}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $(A) \Longrightarrow (B)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big\vert_{\omega=0} && \text{by hypothesis (A)}\\
&= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \check{x}(\omega) \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n e^{-i\omega k}\right]\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0}\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n x_k
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $(A) \Longleftarrow (B)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big\vert_{\omega=0} &= \left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{g}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[\left[\frac{d}{d\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega k}\right]\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n e^{-i\omega k}\right]\Bigg\vert_{\omega=0}\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} k^n x_k\\
&= 0 && \text{by hypothesis (B)}
\end{aligned}$$

[4] Vidakovic (1999), pages 82–83, Mallat (1999), pages 241–242

CC BY-NC-ND

3. Proof that $(C) \implies (D)$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by hypothesis (C)}\\
&= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by definition of } \check{x} \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n e^{-i\omega k}\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n (-1)^k\right]\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n x_k
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Proof that $(C) \impliedby (D)$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \check{x}(\omega)\Big|_{\omega=\pi} &= \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi} && \text{by definition of } \check{x} \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\omega}\right]^n e^{-i\omega k}\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n e^{-i\omega k}\right]\Bigg|_{\omega=\pi}\\
&= \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} x_k \left[(-i)^n k^n (-1)^k\right]\\
&= (-i)^n \sum_{k\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^k k^n x_k\\
&= 0 && \text{by hypothesis (D)}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX Q

PARTITION OF UNITY

Q.1 Definition and motivation

Figure Q.1: Implications of scaling function properties

A very common property of scaling functions (Definition 2.1 page 16) is the *partition of unity* property (Definition Q.1 page 364). The partition of unity is a kind of generalization of *orthonormality*; that is, *all* orthonormal scaling functions form a partition of unity (Theorem 5.1 page 73). But the partition of unity property is not just a consequence of orthonormality, but also a generalization of orthonormality, in that if you remove the orthonormality constraint, the partition of unity is still a reasonable constraint in and of itself.

There are two reasons why the partition of unity property is a reasonable constraint on its own:

- Without a partition of unity, it is difficult to represent a function as simple as a constant.[1]
- For a multiresolution system $\left(\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(\boldsymbol{V}_j \right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n \right)\!\right)\right)$, the partition of unity property is equivalent to $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}(-1)^n h_n = 0$ (Theorem 2.8 page 34). As viewed from the perspective of discrete time signal processing (APPENDIX O page 339), this implies that the scaling coefficients form a "*lowpass filter*"; lowpass filters provide a kind of "coarse approximation" of a function. And that is what the scaling function is "supposed" to do—to provide a coarse approximation at some resolution or "scale" (Definition 2.1 page 16).

[1] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

Definition Q.1. [2]

DEF

A function $\mathsf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{R}}$ *forms a* ***partition of unity*** *if*

$$\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) = 1 \qquad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Q.2 Results

Theorem Q.1. [3] *Let* $\left(L^2_{\mathbb{R}}, \left(\!\left(V_j\right)\!\right), \phi, \left(\!\left(h_n\right)\!\right)\right)$ *be a multiresolution system* (Definition 2.3 page 25). *Let* $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM (Definition K.2 page 255) *of a function* $\mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$. *Let* $\bar{\delta}_n$ *be the* KRONECKER DELTA FUNCTION.

THM

$$\underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} = c}_{\text{PARTITION OF UNITY } \textit{in "time"}} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}\right](2\pi n) = \bar{\delta}_n}_{\text{PARTITION OF UNITY } \textit{in "frequency"}}$$

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{Z}_e$ be the set of even integers and $\mathbb{Z}_o$ the set of odd integers.

1. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
c &= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m \mathsf{f}(x) && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-m) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi m) e^{i2\pi m x} && \text{by } PSF \quad \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10)} \\
&= \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi}\,\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) e^{i2\pi n x}}_{\text{real and constant for } n=0} + \underbrace{\sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}\setminus n} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi m) e^{i2\pi m x}}_{\text{complex and non-constant}} \\
&\Longrightarrow \sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) = c\bar{\delta}_n && \text{because } c \text{ is real and constant for all } x
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \quad \text{(Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) e^{-i2\pi n x} && \text{by } PSF \quad \text{(Theorem 1.2 page 10)} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \bar{\delta}_n e^{-i2\pi n x} && \text{by right hypothesis} \\
&= \sqrt{2\pi} \frac{c}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-i2\pi 0 x} && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta}_n \quad \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)} \\
&= c
\end{aligned}$$

✏

[2] Kelley (1955) page 171, Munkres (2000) page 225, Jänich (1984) page 116, Willard (1970), page 152 ⟨item 20C⟩, Willard (2004) page 152 ⟨item 20C⟩

[3] Jawerth and Sweldens (1994) page 8

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Corollary Q.1.

COR $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\exists g \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}} \text{ such that}\\ f(x) = \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) \star g(x)\end{array}\right\} \implies \left\{\begin{array}{l}f(x) \text{ generates}\\ a \text{ PARTITION OF UNITY}\end{array}\right\}$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
f(x) = \mathbb{1}_{[0:1)}(x) \star g(x) &\implies \tilde{f}(\omega) = \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\left[\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}\right](\omega)\tilde{g}(\omega) && \text{by } \textit{convolution theorem} && \text{(Theorem O.2 page 342)}\\
&\iff \tilde{f}(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\frac{\sin(\omega)}{\omega}\tilde{g}(\omega) && \text{by } \textit{rectangular pulse} \text{ ex.} && \text{(Example K.1 page 262)}\\
&\implies \tilde{f}(2\pi n) = 0\\
&\iff f(x) \text{ generates a } \textit{partition of unity} && \text{by Theorem Q.1 page 364}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Q.3 Examples

Example Q.1. All *B-splines* (Definition M.2 page 295) form a partition of unity (Theorem M.4 page 306). All B-splines of order $n = 1$ or greater can be generated by convolution with a *pulse* function, similar to that specified in Corollary Q.1 (page 365) and as illustrated below:

(Example M.13 page 313)

(Example M.14 page 313)

(Example M.15 page 313)

Example Q.2. Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition H.2 page 213) as follows:

CC BY-NC-ND

EX

$$\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } |x| \le 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then f induces a *partition of unity*:

Note that $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}}\left[\underbrace{\frac{2\sin\omega}{\omega}}_{2\,\mathrm{sinc}(\omega)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega-\pi)}{(\omega-\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega-\pi)} + \underbrace{\frac{\sin(\omega+\pi)}{(\omega+\pi)}}_{\mathrm{sinc}(\omega+\pi)}\right]$

and so $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(2\pi n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\bar{\delta}_n$:

✎PROOF: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1) on a set A.

1. Proof that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f} = 1$ (time domain proof):

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\cos^2(x)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\cos^2(x)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) && \text{because } \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 1 \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_o} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n)}_{\text{odd part}} + \underbrace{\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}_e} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-n)}_{\text{even part}} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-2n)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-2n-1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x-n\pi\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x-n\pi-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n}\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} (-1)^{2n}\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) && \text{by Theorem H.11 page 226} \\
&= \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n) + \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-2n-1) \\
&= \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\cdot 1 + \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\cdot 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by } \textit{square identity} \text{ (Theorem H.11 page 226)}
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) = \cdots$: by Example K.3 page 263

✏

Example Q.3. Let a function f be defined in terms of the sine function (Definition H.3 page 213) as follows:

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CNT

$$\mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) & \text{for } x \in [0:2] \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = 1$ and f induces a *partition of unity*

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}} \mathsf{f}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x &= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x)\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \int_0^2 \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathrm{d}x && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_{A(x)} \text{ (Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \int_0^2 \frac{1}{2}[1-\cos(\pi x)]\,\mathrm{d}x && \text{by Theorem H.11 page 226} \\
&= \frac{1}{2}\left[x - \frac{1}{\pi}\sin(\pi x)\right]_0^2 \\
&= \frac{1}{2}[2-0-0-0] \\
&= 1
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathsf{f}(x)$ forms a *partition of unity*:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2]}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x) \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x) && \text{because } \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 2 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^{m-1}\sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x) && \text{where } m \triangleq n+1 \implies n = m-1 \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m+1)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[0:2)}(x-m+1) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m)+\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-m) \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(x-m)\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x-m) && \text{by Theorem H.11 page 226} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1)}(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T} \text{ (Definition 1.3 page 2)} \\
&= \sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^m\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right)\mathbb{1}_{[-1:1]}(x) && \text{because } \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) = 0 \text{ when } x = 1 \\
&= 1 && \text{by Example Q.2 page 365}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Example Q.4 (raised cosine). [4] Let a function f be defined in terms of the cosine function (Definition H.2 page 213) as follows:

[4] Proakis (2001) pages 560–561

CC BY-NC-ND

EX

$$\text{Let } \mathsf{f}(x) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 \le |x| < \frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x| - \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\} & \text{for } \frac{1-\beta}{2} \le |x| < \frac{1+\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Then f induces a *partition of unity*:

✎PROOF:

1. definition: Let $\mathbb{1}_A(x)$ be the *set indicator function* (Definition 1.2 page 1) on a set A.
   Let $A \triangleq \left[\frac{1+\beta}{-2} : \frac{1-\beta}{-2}\right)$, $\quad B \triangleq \left[\frac{1-\beta}{-2} : \frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)$, and $\quad C \triangleq \left[\frac{1-\beta}{2} : \frac{1+\beta}{2}\right)$

2. lemma: $\mathbb{1}_A(x-1) = \mathbb{1}_C(x)$. Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{1}_A(x-1) &\triangleq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } -\frac{1+\beta}{2} \le x-1 < -\frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition 1.2 page 1) and } A \text{ ((2) lemma page 368)} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1-\frac{1+\beta}{2} \le x < 1-\frac{1-\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
&= \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \frac{1-\beta}{2} \le x < \frac{1+\beta}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
&\triangleq \mathbb{1}_C(x) && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1} \text{ (Definition 1.2 page 1) and } C \text{ ((2) lemma page 368)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. lemma: $-1 + \frac{1-\beta}{2} = -\beta - \frac{1-\beta}{2}$. Proof:

$$-1 + \frac{1-\beta}{2} = \frac{-2+1-\beta}{2} \quad = \frac{-1-\beta}{2} = (-\beta+\beta) - \left(\frac{1+\beta}{2}\right) \quad = -\beta + \frac{2\beta-1-\beta}{2} = -\beta - \frac{1-\beta}{2}$$

4. Proof that $\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f} = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n) && \text{by Definition 1.3} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_A(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by definition 1 page 368} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) \\
&\quad + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n-1)\mathbb{1}_A(x-n-1) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by Proposition 1.1} \\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n-1)\mathbb{1}_C(x-n) + \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{f}(x-n)\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by (2) lemma page 368}
\end{aligned}$$

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$
\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x-n|-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(|x-n-1|-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{f}(x)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left((x-n)-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(-(x-n-1)-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by def. of } \mathbb{1}_C(x)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-1+\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\beta-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n) && \text{by (3) lemma page 368}\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}-\frac{\pi\beta}{\beta}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1+\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)\\
&\quad+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\left\{1-\cos\left[\frac{\pi}{\beta}\left(x-n-\frac{1-\beta}{2}\right)\right]\right\}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n)\\
&= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_C(x-n)+\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_B(x-n)\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\mathbb{1}_{B\cup C}(x-n)\\
&= 1
\end{aligned}
$$

✍

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX R

POWER SPECTRUM FUNCTIONS

R.1 Correlation

Definition R.1 and Definition R.2 define four quantities. In this document, the quantities' notation and terminology are similar to those used in the study of *random processes*.

Definition R.1. [1] *Let* $\langle \triangle \mid \triangledown \rangle$ *be the* STANDARD INNER PRODUCT *in* $\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *(Definition E.1 page 183).*

DEF	$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}}(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{g}(x) \rangle$,	$n \in \mathbb{Z}$; $\mathsf{f}, \mathsf{g} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***cross-correlation function*** *of* f *and* g.
	$\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{ff}}(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathbf{T}^n \mathsf{f}(x) \rangle$,	$n \in \mathbb{Z}$; $\mathsf{f} \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***autocorrelation function*** *of* f.

Definition R.2. [2] *Let* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}}(n)$ *and* $\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{ff}}(n)$ *be the sequences defined in Definition R.1 page 371. Let* $\mathbf{Z}\left(\!\!\left(x_n\right)\!\!\right)$ *be the* Z-TRANSFORM *(Definition O.4 page 340) of a sequence* $\left(\!\!\left(x_n\right)\!\!\right)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$.

DEF	$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(z)$	$\triangleq$	$\mathbf{Z}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}}(n)\right]$,	$\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***complex cross-power spectrum*** *of* f *and* g.
	$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(z)$	$\triangleq$	$\mathbf{Z}\left[\mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{ff}}(n)\right]$,	$\mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***complex auto-power spectrum*** *of* f.

R.2 Power Spectrum

Definition R.3. [3] *Let* $\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(z)$ *and* $\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(z)$ *be the functions defined in Definition R.2 page 371.*

DEF	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}\left(e^{i\omega}\right)$,	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***cross-power spectrum*** *of* f *and* g.
	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$\check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}\left(e^{i\omega}\right)$,	$\forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$,	*is the* ***auto-power spectrum*** *of* f.

Theorem R.1. [4] *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$ *be defined as in Definition R.3 (page 371). Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)$ *be the* FOURIER TRANSFORM *(Definition K.2 page 255) of a function* $\mathsf{f}(x) \in \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$.

THM	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$	$=$	$2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+2\pi n)$	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$
	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$	$=$	$2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\lvert\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\right\rvert^2$	$\forall \mathsf{f}\in\boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{F}}$

[1] Chui (1992) page 134, Papoulis (1991) pages 294–332 ⟨(10-29), (10-169)⟩
[2] Chui (1992) page 134, Papoulis (1991) page 334 ⟨(10-178)⟩
[3] Chui (1992) page 134, Papoulis (1991) page 333 ⟨(10-179)⟩
[4] Chui (1992) page 135

✎PROOF: Let $z \triangleq e^{i\omega}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) &\triangleq \check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(z) && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}}(n) z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \check{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.2 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle\, z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}[\mathsf{f}(x)] \,\middle|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\big[\mathsf{g}(x-n)\big] \right\rangle z^{-n} && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.3 page 257)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left\langle \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(v) \,\middle|\, e^{-ivn}\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(v) \right\rangle z^{-n} && \text{by } \textit{shift relation} && \text{(Theorem K.4 page 257)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \sqrt{2\pi}\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(v)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(v)e^{ivu}\,\mathrm{d}v\right]_{u=n} z^{-n} && \text{by definition of } \boldsymbol{L}^2_{\mathbb{R}} && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}\\
&= \sqrt{2\pi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left[\tilde{\mathbf{F}}^{-1}\left(\sqrt{2\pi}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(v)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(v)\right)\right]_{u=n} e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by Theorem K.1 page 256}\\
&= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+2\pi n) && \text{by } \textit{IPSF} \text{ with } \tau = 1 && \text{(Theorem 1.3 page 10)}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) &= \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)\big|_{\mathsf{g}=\mathsf{f}} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)}\\
&= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega+2\pi n)\Big|_{\mathsf{g}\triangleq\mathsf{f}} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(\omega+2\pi n)\\
&= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 && \text{because } |z|^2 \triangleq zz^* \quad \forall z\in\mathbb{C}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition R.1. *Let $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$ be defined as in Definition R.3 (page 371).*

PRP

$$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) \geq 0 \quad \text{(NON-NEGATIVE)}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) &= 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&\geq 0 && \text{because } |z| \geq 0 \quad \forall z\in\mathbb{C}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition R.2. *Let $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$ and $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$ be defined as in Definition R.3 (page 371).*

PRP

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega+2\pi) &= \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) \quad \text{(PERIODIC } \textit{with period } 2\pi\text{)}\\
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega+2\pi) &= \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) \quad \text{(PERIODIC } \textit{with period } 2\pi\text{)}
\end{aligned}$$

BY-NC-ND
COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_{fg}(\omega+2\pi) &= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}(\omega+2\pi+2\pi n)\tilde{g}^*(\omega+2\pi+2\pi n) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}[\omega+2\pi(n+1)]\tilde{g}^*[\omega+2\pi(n+1)]\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}[\omega+2\pi m]\tilde{g}^*[\omega+2\pi m] && \text{where } m\triangleq n+1\\
&= \tilde{S}_{fg}(\omega) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega+2\pi) &= \tilde{S}_{fg}(\omega+2\pi)\big|_{g=f}\\
&= \tilde{S}_{fg}(\omega)\big|_{g=f} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Proposition R.3. *Let $\tilde{S}_{fg}(\omega)$ and $\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)$ be defined as in Definition R.3 (page 371).*

PRP					
	f,g *are real*	$\Longrightarrow$	$\tilde{S}_{fg}(-\omega)$	$=$	$\tilde{S}_{gf}(\omega)$
	f *is real*	$\Longrightarrow$	$\tilde{S}_{ff}(-\omega)$	$=$	$\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)$ (SYMMETRIC *about* 0)
	f,g *are real*	$\Longrightarrow$	$\tilde{S}_{fg}(\pi-\omega)$	$=$	$\tilde{S}_{gf}(\pi+\omega)$
	f *is real*	$\Longrightarrow$	$\tilde{S}_{ff}(\pi-\omega)$	$=$	$\tilde{S}_{ff}(\pi+\omega)$ (SYMMETRIC *about* π)

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_{fg}(-\omega) &= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}(-\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{g}^*(-\omega+2\pi n) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}^*(\omega-2\pi n)\tilde{g}(\omega-2\pi n) && \text{by hypothesis and Theorem K.5 page 258}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{g}(\omega+2\pi m)\tilde{f}^*(\omega+2\pi m) && \text{where } m\triangleq -n\\
&= \tilde{S}_{gf}(\omega) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_{fg}(\pi-\omega) &= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}(\pi-\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{g}^*(\pi-\omega+2\pi n) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}^*(-\pi+\omega-2\pi n)\tilde{g}(-\pi+\omega-2\pi n) && \text{by hypothesis and Theorem K.5 page 258}\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}^*(\pi+\omega-2\pi-2\pi n)\tilde{g}(\pi+\omega-2\pi-2\pi n)\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{f}^*(\pi+\omega+2\pi(-n-1))\tilde{g}(\pi+\omega+2\pi(-n-1))\\
&= 2\pi\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}}\tilde{g}(\pi+\omega+2\pi m)\tilde{f}^*(\pi+\omega+2\pi m) && \text{where } m\triangleq -n-1\\
&= \tilde{S}_{gf}(\pi+\omega) && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{S}_{ff}(-\omega) &= \tilde{S}_{fg}(-\omega)\big|_{g\triangleq f}\\
&= \tilde{S}_{gf}(+\omega)\big|_{g\triangleq f} && \text{by previous result}\\
&= \tilde{S}_{ff}(+\omega) && \text{by definition of } g\ (g\triangleq f)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\tilde{S}_{ff}(\pi-\omega) = \tilde{S}_{fg}(\pi-\omega)\big|_{g\triangleq f}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

$$= \tilde{S}_{gf}(\pi+\omega)\big|_{g\triangleq f} \qquad \text{by previous result}$$
$$= \tilde{S}_{ff}(\pi+\omega) \qquad \text{by definition of } g \ (g \triangleq f)$$

✏

Proposition R.4. *Let* $\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)$ *be the* AUTO-POWER SPECTRUM *(Definition R.3 page 371) of a function* $f(x) \in L^2_{\mathbb{R}}$ *and* $\tilde{S}'_{ff}(\omega) \triangleq \frac{d}{d\omega}\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)$ *(Definition E.2 page 183).*

PRP

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} (a). & f \text{ is REAL and} \\ (b). & \tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega) \text{ is CONTINUOUS at } \omega = 0 \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} (1). & \tilde{S}'_{ff}(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \\ (2). & \underbrace{\tilde{S}'_{ff}(\omega) = -\tilde{S}'_{ff}(-\omega) \quad \forall_{\omega\in\mathbb{R}}}_{\text{ANTI-SYMMETRIC about } 0} \end{array}\right\}$$

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} (c). & f \text{ is REAL and} \\ (d). & \tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega) \text{ is CONTINUOUS at } \omega = \pi \end{array}\right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} (3). & \tilde{S}'_{ff}(\pi) = 0 \quad \text{and} \\ (4). & \underbrace{\tilde{S}'_{ff}(\pi+\omega) = -\tilde{S}'_{ff}(\pi-\omega) \quad \forall_{\omega\in\mathbb{R}}}_{\text{ANTI-SYMMETRIC about } \pi} \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF: This follows from Proposition R.3 (page 373) and Proposition E.1 (page 183). ✏

Theorem R.2 (next) is a major result and provides strong motivation for bothering with *power spectrum* functions in the first place. In particular, the *auto-power spectrum* being *bounded* provides a necessary and sufficient condition for a sequence of functions $(\!(\phi(x-n))\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ to be a *Riesz basis* (Definition L.13 page 283) for the *span* $\operatorname{span}(\!(\phi(x-n))\!)$ of the sequence.

Theorem R.2. [5] *Let* $\tilde{S}_{ff}(\omega)$ *be defined as in Definition R.3 (page 371). Let* $\|\cdot\|$ *be defined as in Definition E.1 (page 183). Let* $0 < A < B$.

THM

$$\underbrace{\left\{A\sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}}|a_n|^2 \le \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2 \le B\sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}}|\alpha_n|^2 \quad \forall_{(\!(a_n)\!)\in\ell^2_{\mathbb{F}}}\right\}}_{(\!(\phi(x-n))\!) \text{ is a RIESZ BASIS for } \operatorname{span}(\!(\phi(x-n))\!) \text{ (Theorem L.13 page 284)}} \iff \left\{A \le \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) \le B\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. lemma:

$$\left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2 = \left\|\tilde{\mathbf{F}}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2 \qquad \text{because } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \text{ is } \textit{unitary} \text{ (Theorem K.2 page 256)}$$
$$= \left\|\breve{a}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right\|^2 \qquad \text{by Proposition 1.13 page 9}$$
$$= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\breve{a}(\omega)\tilde{\phi}(\omega)\right|^2 d\omega \qquad \text{by definition of } \|\cdot\|$$
$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_0^{2\pi} \left|\breve{a}(\omega+2\pi n)\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 d\omega$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |\breve{a}(\omega+2\pi n)|^2 \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 d\omega$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 d\omega \qquad \text{by Proposition P.1 page 353}$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 \frac{1}{2\pi} 2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\phi}(\omega+2\pi n)\right|^2 d\omega$$

[5] Wojtaszczyk (1997) pages 22–23 ⟨Proposition 2.8⟩, Igari (1996) page 219 ⟨Lemma 9.6⟩, Pinsky (2002) page 306 ⟨Theorem 6.4.8⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,d\omega \qquad \text{by definition of } \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) \text{ (Theorem R.1 page 371)}$$

2. lemma:

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2\,d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} \left|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right|^2 d\omega \qquad \text{by def. of } DTFT \text{ (Definition P.1 page 353)}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right]\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} a_m e^{-i\omega m}\right]^* d\omega$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} \left[\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right]\left[\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} a_m^* e^{i\omega m}\right] d\omega$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n a_m^* \int_0^{2\pi} e^{-i\omega(n-m)}\,d\omega$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}\sum_{m\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n a_m^* 2\pi\bar{\delta}_{nm}$$

$$= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |a_n|^2 \qquad \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} \text{ (Definition L.12 page 276)}$$

3. Proof for ($\Longleftarrow$) case:

$$\boxed{A\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |a_n|^2} = \frac{A}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2\,d\omega \qquad \text{by (2) lemma page 375}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 A\,d\omega$$

$$\boxed{\le} \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,d\omega \qquad \text{by right hypothesis}$$

$$= \boxed{\left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2} \qquad \text{by (1) lemma page 374}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,d\omega \qquad \text{by (1) lemma page 374}$$

$$\boxed{\le} \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2 B\,d\omega \qquad \text{by right hypothesis}$$

$$= \frac{B}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} |\breve{a}(\omega)|^2\,d\omega$$

$$= \boxed{B\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |a_n|^2} \qquad \text{by (2) lemma page 375}$$

4. Proof for ($\Longrightarrow$) case:

   (a) Let $Y \triangleq \left\{\omega \in [0:2\pi] | \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) > \alpha\right\}$
   and $X \triangleq \left\{\omega \in [0:2\pi] | \tilde{S}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) < \alpha\right\}$

   (b) Let $\mathbb{1}_{A(x)}$ be the *set indicator* (Definition 1.2 page 1) of a set A.
   Let $(\!(b_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be the *inverse DTFT* (Theorem P.3 page 359) of $\mathbb{1}_Y(\omega)$ such that
   $\mathbb{1}_Y(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} b_n e^{-i\omega n} \triangleq \tilde{b}(\omega)$.
   Let $(\!(a_n)\!)_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}$ be the *inverse DTFT* (Theorem P.3 page 359) of $\mathbb{1}_X(\omega)$ such that
   $\mathbb{1}_X(\omega) \triangleq \sum_{n\in\mathbb{N}} a_n e^{-i\omega n} \triangleq \breve{a}(\omega)$.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

(c) Proof that $\alpha \le B$:
Let $\mu(A)$ be the *measure* of a set A.

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{B}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|b_n|^2 &\ge \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}|\tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by (1) lemma page 374} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}|\mathbb{1}_Y(\omega)|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_Y(\omega) \quad \text{(item (4b) page 375)} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_Y |1|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_Y(\omega) \quad \text{(item (4b) page 375)} \\
&\boxed{\ge}\frac{\alpha}{2\pi}\mu(Y) && \text{by definition of } Y \quad \text{(item (4a) page 375)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}|\mathbb{1}_Y(\omega)|^2\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_Y(\omega) \quad \text{(item (4b) page 375)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}\left|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} b_n e^{-i\omega n}\right|^2\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } (\!(b_n)\!) \quad \text{(item (4b) page 375)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}|\tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega)|^2\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{b}}(\omega) \quad \text{(item (4b) page 375)} \\
&= \boxed{\alpha}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|b_n|^2 && \text{by (2) lemma page 375}
\end{aligned}$$

(d) Proof that $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) \le B$:
(i). $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) > \alpha$ whenever $\omega \in Y$ (item (4a) page 375).
(ii). But even then, $\alpha \le B$ (item (4c) page 376).
(iii). So, $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) \le B$.

(e) Proof that $A \le \alpha$:
Let $\mu(A)$ be the *measure* of a set A.

$$\begin{aligned}
\boxed{A}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|a_n|^2 &\le \left\|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n\phi(x-n)\right\|^2 && \text{by left hypothesis} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}|\breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by (1) lemma page 374} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}|\mathbb{1}_X(\omega)|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_X(\omega) \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_X |1|^2\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_X(\omega) \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&\boxed{\le}\frac{\alpha}{2\pi}\mu(X) && \text{by definition of } X \quad \text{(item (4a) page 375)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}|\mathbb{1}_X(\omega)|^2\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \mathbb{1}_X(\omega) \quad \text{(Definition 1.2 page 1)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}\left|\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} a_n e^{-i\omega n}\right|^2\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } (\!(a_n)\!) \quad \text{((2) lemma page 375)} \\
&= \int_0^{2\pi}|\breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega)|^2\,\mathsf{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \breve{\mathsf{a}}(\omega) \quad \text{((2) lemma page 375)} \\
&= \boxed{\alpha}\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}|a_n|^2 && \text{by (2) lemma page 375}
\end{aligned}$$

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

(f) Proof that $A \le \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)$:
  (i). $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega) < \alpha$ whenever $\omega \in X$ (item (4a) page 375).
  (ii). But even then, $A \le \alpha$ (item (4e) page 376).
  (iii). So, $A \le \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\phi\phi}(\omega)$.

✏

In the case that f and g are *orthonormal*, the spectral density relations simplify considerably (next).

Theorem R.3. [6] *Let* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}$ *and* $\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}$ *be the* SPECTRAL DENSITY FUNCTIONS *(Definition R.3 page 371).*

THM								
	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle$	$=$	$\bar{\delta}_n$	$(\!(\mathsf{f}(x-n))\!)$ *is* ORTHONORMAL)	$\iff$	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)$	$=$ 1	$\forall \mathsf{f} \in L^2_{\mathbb{F}}$
	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle$	$=$	0	$(\!(\mathsf{f}(x)$ *is* ORTHOGONAL *to* $(\!(\mathsf{g}(x-n))\!)$	$\iff$	$\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega)$	$=$ 0	$\forall \mathsf{f},\mathsf{g} \in L^2_{\mathbb{F}}$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \iff \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) = 1$: This follows directly from Theorem R.2 (page 374) with $A = B = 1$ (by *Parseval's Identity* Theorem L.9 page 278 since $\{\mathbf{T}^n\mathsf{f}\}$ is *orthonormal*)

2. Alternate proof that $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \implies \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{ff}}(n)e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle\, e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{ff}} && \text{(Definition R.1 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \bar{\delta}_n e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= 1 && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

3. Alternate proof that $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle = \bar{\delta}_n \impliedby \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega) = 1$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \mid \mathsf{f}(x-n)\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) \mid \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x-n)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.3 page 257)}\\
&= \left\langle \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \mid e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{shift property} \text{ of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.4 page 257)}\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)e^{i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{f}}^*(\omega)\,\mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \mid \nabla\rangle && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right|^2 e^{i\omega n}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{2\pi n}^{2\pi(n+1)} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\right|^2 e^{i\omega n}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{0}^{2\pi} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u+2\pi n)\right|^2 e^{i(u+2\pi n)n}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq \omega - 2\pi n \implies \omega = u + 2\pi n\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \left[2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \left|\tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u+2\pi n)\right|^2\right] e^{iun}\cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi nn}}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{ff}}(\omega)e^{iun}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} e^{iun}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= \bar{\delta}_n && \text{by definition of } \bar{\delta} && \text{(Definition L.12 page 276)}
\end{aligned}$$

[6] Hernández and Weiss (1996) page 50 ⟨PROPOSITION 2.1.11⟩, Wojtaszczyk (1997) PAGE 23 ⟨COROLLARY 2.9⟩, Igari (1996) PAGES 214–215 ⟨LEMMA 9.2⟩, Pinsky (2002) PAGE 306 ⟨COROLLARY 6.4.9⟩

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

4. Proof that $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle = 0 \implies \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) &= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}}(n)e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.3 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle\, e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by definition of } \mathsf{R}_{\mathsf{fg}} && \text{(Definition R.1 page 371)}\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} 0e^{-i\omega n} && \text{by left hypothesis}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that $\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle = 0 \impliedby \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(\omega) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \mathsf{g}(x-n)\rangle\\
&= \left\langle \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \tilde{\mathbf{F}}\mathsf{g}(x-n)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{unitary} \text{ property of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.3 page 257)}\\
&= \left\langle \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega) \,|\, e^{-i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{g}}(\omega)\right\rangle && \text{by } \textit{shift property} \text{ of } \tilde{\mathbf{F}} && \text{(Theorem K.4 page 257)}\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)e^{i\omega n}\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)\,\mathrm{d}\omega && \text{by definition of } \langle \triangle \,|\, \triangledown\rangle && \text{(Definition E.1 page 183)}\\
&= \int_{\mathbb{R}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)e^{i\omega n}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{2\pi n}^{2\pi(n+1)} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(\omega)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(\omega)e^{i\omega n}\,\mathrm{d}\omega\\
&= \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \int_{0}^{2\pi} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(u+2\pi n)e^{i(u+2\pi n)n}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{where } u \triangleq \omega - 2\pi n \implies \omega = u + 2\pi n\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \left[2\pi \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \tilde{\mathsf{f}}(u+2\pi n)\tilde{\mathsf{g}}^*(u+2\pi n)\right] e^{iun}\cancelto{1}{e^{i2\pi nn}}\,\mathrm{d}u\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} \tilde{\mathsf{S}}_{\mathsf{fg}}(u)e^{iun}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by Theorem R.1 page 371}\\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{0}^{2\pi} 0\cdot e^{iun}\,\mathrm{d}u && \text{by right hypothesis}\\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

✏

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

APPENDIX S

POLLEN PARAMETERIZED WAVELETS

David Pollen showed that there are an uncountably infinite number of compactly supported scaling functions (and wavelets) available for coefficient length 4 and greater. This is stated in Theorem S.1, demonstrated in Example S.1 (page 379) and illustrated in Figure S.1 (page 380).

Theorem S.1 (Pollen parameterization theorem). [1]

THM

$$\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\begin{bmatrix}-1 & 1\end{bmatrix} E(z^2)\begin{bmatrix}-z^{-1}\\ 1\end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$E(z) = \begin{cases} U_1 U_2 \cdots U_{2k} & \textit{for } h_n \textit{ of length } 4k+2,\ k \in \mathbb{W} \\ U_1 U_2 \cdots U_{2k+1} & \textit{for } h_n \textit{ of length } 4k+4,\ k \in \mathbb{W} \end{cases}$$

$$U(z) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathsf{u}(z) & \mathsf{v}(z) \\ -\mathsf{v}(z^{-1}) & \mathsf{u}(z^{-1}) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathsf{u}(z) = \frac{1}{2}\left[(1-\cos\theta)z + (1+\cos\theta)\right]$$

$$\mathsf{v}(z) = \frac{1}{2}\left[(-\sin\theta) + (\sin\theta)z^{-1}\right]$$

Example S.1 (Pollen length-4 scaling coefficients). [2]

EX

n	h_n
0	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(1-\cos\theta+\sin\theta)$
1	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(1+\cos\theta+\sin\theta)$
2	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(1+\cos\theta-\sin\theta)$
3	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(1-\cos\theta-\sin\theta)$

[1] Klappenecker (1996), page 3
[2] Klappenecker (1996), page 3, Burrus et al. (1998), page 66

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\check{\mathsf{h}}(z) &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,[-1 \quad 1]\,E(z^2)\begin{bmatrix} -z^{-1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,[-1 \quad 1]\,U(z^2)\begin{bmatrix} -z^{-1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,[-1 \quad 1]\begin{bmatrix} \mathsf{u}(z^2) & \mathsf{v}(z^2) \\ -\mathsf{v}(z^{-2}) & \mathsf{u}(z^{-2}) \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} -z^{-1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,[-1 \quad 1]\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2}\left[(1-\cos\theta)z^2 + (1+\cos\theta)\right] & \frac{1}{2}\left[(-\sin\theta) + (\sin\theta)z^{-2}\right] \\ -\frac{1}{2}\left[(-\sin\theta) + (\sin\theta)z^2\right] & \frac{1}{2}\left[(1-\cos\theta)z^{-2} + (1+\cos\theta)\right] \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} -z^{-1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\begin{bmatrix} -\left[(1-\cos\theta)z^2 + (1+\cos\theta)\right] + \left[(-\sin\theta) + (\sin\theta)z^2\right] \\ -\left[(-\sin\theta) + (\sin\theta)z^{-2}\right] + \left[(1-\cos\theta)z^{-2} + (1+\cos\theta)\right] \end{bmatrix}^T \begin{bmatrix} -z^{-1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\Big[(1-\cos\theta)z + (1+\cos\theta)z^{-1} - (\sin\theta)z^{-1} + (\sin\theta)z \\
&\qquad + \sin\theta - (\sin\theta)z^{-2} + (1-\cos\theta)z^{-2} + (1+\cos\theta)\Big] \\
&= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}\Big[(1-\cos\theta+\sin\theta)z + (1+\cos\theta+\sin\theta) \\
&\qquad + (1+\cos\theta-\sin\theta)z^{-1} + (1-\cos\theta-\sin\theta)z^{-2}\Big]
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Figure S.1: Pollen length-4 wavelet function with varying parameter θ

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Example S.2 (Pollen length-6 scaling coefficients). [3] Length-6 scaling coefficients have two parameters, here designated α and β. The scaling coefficients are as follows.

EX

n	h_n
0	$\frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}[(1+\cos(\alpha)+\sin(\alpha))(1-\cos(\beta)-\sin(\beta))+2\sin(\beta)\cos(\alpha)]$
1	$\frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}[(1-\cos(\alpha)+\sin(\alpha))(1+\cos(\beta)-\sin(\beta))-2\sin(\beta)\cos(\alpha)]$
2	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}[(1+\cos(\alpha-\beta)+\sin(\alpha-\beta)]$
3	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}[(1+\cos(\alpha-\beta)-\sin(\alpha-\beta)]$
4	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}-h(0)-h(2)$
5	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}-h(1)-h(3)$

[3] Burrus et al. (1998), page 66, Vidakovic (1999), page 95

CC BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX T

FAST WAVELET TRANSFORM (FWT)

The Fast Wavelet Transform can be computed using simple discrete filter operations (as a conjugate mirror filter).

Definition T.1 (Wavelet Transform)**.** *Let the wavelet transform* $\mathbf{W} : \{f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{C}\} \to \{w : \mathbb{Z}^2 \to \mathbb{C}\}$ *be defined as* [1]

DEF

$$[\mathbf{W}\mathsf{f}](j,n) \triangleq \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \psi_{k,n}(x) \right\rangle$$

Definition T.2. *The following relations are defined as described below:*

DEF

scaling coefficients	$v_j : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{C}$	*such that*	$v_j(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\left\langle f(x) \,|\, \phi_{j,n}(x) \right\rangle$
wavelet coefficients	$w_j : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{C}$	*such that*	$w_j(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\left\langle f(x) \,|\, \psi_{j,n}(x) \right\rangle$
scaling filter coefficients	$\bar{\mathsf{h}} : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{C}$	*such that*	$\bar{\mathsf{h}}(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\mathsf{h}(-n)$
wavelet filter coefficients	$\bar{\mathsf{g}} : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{C}$	*such that*	$\bar{\mathsf{g}}(n)$	$\triangleq$	$\mathsf{g}(-n)$

The scaling and wavelet filter coefficients at scale j are equal to the filtered and downsampled (Theorem **??** page **??**) scaling filter coefficients at scale $j+1$:[2]

- The convolution (Definition O.3 page 339) of $v_{j+1}(n)$ with $\bar{\mathsf{h}}(n)$ and then downsampling by 2 produces $v_j(n)$.
- The convolution of $v_{j+1}(n)$ with $\bar{\mathsf{g}}(n)$ and then downsampling by 2 produces $w_j(n)$.

This is formally stated and proved in the next theorem.

[1] Notice that this definition is similar to the definition of transforms of other analysis systems:

Laplace Transform	$\mathcal{L}f(s)$	$\triangleq$	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, e^{sx} \rangle$	$\triangleq$	$\int_x \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-sx}\, \mathsf{d}x$
Continuous Fourier Transform	$\mathcal{F}f(\omega)$	$\triangleq$	$\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, e^{i\omega x} \right\rangle$	$\triangleq$	$\int_x \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\omega x}\, \mathsf{d}x$
Fourier Series Transform	$\mathcal{F}_s f(k)$	$\triangleq$	$\left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, e^{i\frac{2\pi}{T}kx} \right\rangle$	$\triangleq$	$\int_x \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{T}kx}\, \mathsf{d}x$
Z-Transform	$\mathcal{Z}f(z)$	$\triangleq$	$\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, z^n \rangle$	$\triangleq$	$\sum_n \mathsf{f}(x) z^{-n}$
Discrete Fourier Transform	$\mathcal{F}_d f(k)$	$\triangleq$	$\left\langle f(n) \,|\, e^{i\frac{2\pi}{N}kn} \right\rangle$	$\triangleq$	$\sum_n \mathsf{f}(x) e^{-i\frac{2\pi}{N}kn}$

[2] Mallat (1999), page 257, Burrus et al. (1998), page 35

Theorem T.1.

$$\begin{aligned} v_j(n) &= [\bar{\mathsf{h}} \star v_{j+1}](2n) \\ w_j(n) &= [\bar{\mathsf{g}} \star v_{j+1}](2n) \end{aligned}$$

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
v_j(n) &= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \phi_{j,n}(x) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^j}\phi\left(2^j x - n\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^j}\sqrt{2}\sum_m h(m)\phi\left(2(2^j x - n) - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sum_m h(j)\sqrt{2^{j+1}}\phi\left(2^{j+1}x - 2n - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m h(m) \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^{j+1}}\phi\left(2^{j+1}x - 2n - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m h(m) \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \phi_{j+1,2n+m}(x) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m h(m) v_{j+1}(2n+m) \\
&= \sum_p h(p-2n) v_{j+1}(p) && \text{let } p = 2n+m \iff m = p-2n \\
&= \sum_p \bar{\mathsf{h}}(2n-p) v_{j+1}(p) \\
&= [\bar{\mathsf{h}} \star v_{j+1}](2n)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
w_j(n) &= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \psi_{j,n}(x) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^j}\psi\left(2^j x - n\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^j}\sqrt{2}\sum_m \mathsf{g}(j)\phi\left(2(2^j x - n) - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sum_m \mathsf{g}(m)\sqrt{2^{j+1}}\phi\left(2^{j+1}x - 2n - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m \mathsf{g}(m) \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \sqrt{2^{j+1}}\phi\left(2^{j+1}x - 2n - m\right) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m \mathsf{g}(m) \left\langle \mathsf{f}(x) \,|\, \phi_{j+1,2n+m}(x) \right\rangle \\
&= \sum_m \mathsf{g}(m) v_{j+1}(2n+m) \\
&= \sum_p \mathsf{g}(p-2n) v_{j+1}(p) && \text{let } p = 2n+m \iff m = p-2n \\
&= \sum_p \bar{\mathsf{g}}(2n-p) v_{j+1}(p) \\
&= [\bar{\mathsf{g}} \star v_{j+1}](2n)
\end{aligned}$$

✏

These filtering and downsampling operations are equivalent to the operations performed by a filter bank. Therefore, a filter bank can be used to implement a Fast Wavelet Transform (FWT). This is illustrated in Figure T.1 page 385.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Figure T.1: k-Stage Fast Wavelet Transform

BY-NC-ND

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX U

TRANSLATION SPACES

U.1 Translation

U.1.1 Definitions

Definition U.1. *Let X be a set and $\mathbf{I}$ be the identity operator on X.*

DEF

$\mathbf{T}_x$ *is a* ***translation operator*** *on X if*

1. $\exists 0 \in X$ such that $\mathbf{T}_0 = \mathbf{I}$ $\quad \forall A \in 2^X$ (IDENTITY) *and*
2. $\mathbf{T}_x \mathbf{T}_y = \mathbf{T}_y \mathbf{T}_x$ $\quad \forall x, y \in X$ (COMMUTATIVE) *and*
3. $\mathbf{T}_x \bigcup_{i \in I} A_i = \bigcup_{i \in I} \mathbf{T}_x A_i$ $\quad \forall A, Y \in 2^X, x \in X$ (DISTRIBUTIVE *over* $\cup$) *and*
4. $\bigcup_{b \in B} \mathbf{T}_b A = \bigcup_{a \in A} \mathbf{T}_a B$ $\quad \forall A, B \in 2^X$ *and*
5. $\mathbf{T}_x (A \cap B) = \left(\mathbf{T}_x A\right) \cap \left(\mathbf{T}_x B\right)$ $\quad \forall A, B \in 2^X, x \in X$ *and*
6. $\mathbf{T}_x \left(A^{\mathsf{c}}\right) = \mathsf{c}\left(\mathbf{T}_x A\right)$ $\quad \forall A, B \in 2^X, x \in X.$

The pair $(X, \mathbf{T})$ is a ***translation space*** *on X.*

Definition U.2. [1] *Let X be a set on which is defined the translation opertor $\mathbf{T}_x$.* ***Minkowski addition*** *$\oplus$ and* ***Minkowski subtraction*** *$\ominus$ is defined as follows:*

DEF

$$A \oplus B = \bigcup_{b \in B} \mathbf{T}_b A \qquad \forall\, A, B \in 2^X \qquad \text{(MINKOWSKI ADDITION)}$$

$$A \ominus B = \bigcap_{b \in B} \mathbf{T}_b A \qquad \forall\, A, B \in 2^X \qquad \text{(MINKOWSKI SUBTRACTION)}$$

Theorem U.1 (next) shows a relationship between Minkowski addition and Minkowski subtraction.

Theorem U.1 (de Morgan relations)**.** [2] *Let $(X, +)$ be a group with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$ and Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$.*

THM

$$\mathsf{c}(A \oplus B) = A^{\mathsf{c}} \ominus B \qquad \forall\, A, B \in 2^X$$

$$\mathsf{c}(A \ominus B) = A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B \qquad \forall\, A, B \in 2^X$$

---

[1] Matheron (1975) page 17
Lay (1982) page 7

[2] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), page 159

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{c}(A \oplus B) &= \mathsf{c}\left(\bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A\right) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}\\
&= \bigcap_{b\in B} \mathsf{c}\left(\mathbf{T}_b A\right) && \text{by Demorgan relation page 387}\\
&= \bigcap_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b\left(A^{\mathsf{c}}\right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&= A^{\mathsf{c}} \ominus B && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{c}(A \ominus B) &= \mathsf{c}\left(\bigcap_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A\right) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}\\
&= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathsf{c}\left(\mathbf{T}_b A\right) && \text{by Demorgan relation page 387}\\
&= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b\left(A^{\mathsf{c}}\right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&= A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

U.1.2 Examples

Example U.1 (Translation on groups). [3] Let $\oplus$ be the Minkowski addition operator defined in terms of the *translation operator* $\mathbf{T}$. Let $(X,+)$ be a *group*.

EX

$$\left\{\ \mathbf{T}_x A \triangleq \{a+x|a\in A\} \quad \forall A\in 2^X\ \right\} \Longrightarrow \left\{\begin{array}{ll} \mathbf{T}_x \text{ is a translation operator} & \text{and}\\ A\oplus B = \left\{a+b|a\in A \text{ and } b\in B\right\} & \forall\, A,B\in 2^X \end{array}\right\}$$

✎PROOF:

1. Proof that $\exists 0 \in X$ such that $\mathbf{T}_0 = \mathbf{I}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_0 A &= \{a+0|a\in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_x\\
&= \{a|a\in A\} && \text{by additive identity property of groups}\\
&= A
\end{aligned}$$

2. Proof that $\mathbf{T}_x\mathbf{T}_y = \mathbf{T}_y\mathbf{T}_x$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x\mathbf{T}_y A &= \mathbf{T}_x\,\{a+y|a\in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_y\\
&= \{a+y+x|a\in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_y\\
&= \{a+x+y|a\in A\} && \text{by commutative property of groups}\\
&= \mathbf{T}_y\,\{a+x|a\in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_y\\
&= \mathbf{T}_y\mathbf{T}_x\,\{a|a\in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_x
\end{aligned}$$

[3] Matheron (1975) pages 16–17
Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991) page 159
Lay (1982) page 7

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

3. Proof that $\mathbf{T}_x \bigcup_{i\in I} A_i = \bigcup_{i\in I} \mathbf{T}_x A_i$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x \bigcup_i A_i &= \left\{ y + x | y \in \bigcup_i A_i \right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_y \\
&= \left\{ y + x | \bigvee_i y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcup_i \left\{ y + x | y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcup_i \mathbf{T}_x \left\{ y | y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcup_i \mathbf{T}_x A
\end{aligned}$$

4. Proof that $\bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A = \bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a B$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A &= \bigcup_{b\in B} \{a + b | a \in A\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_x \\
&= \left\{ a + b | a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \right\} \\
&= \left\{ b + a | b \in B \text{ and } a \in A \right\} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \{b + a | b \in B\} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a B
\end{aligned}$$

5. Proof that $\mathbf{T}_x \bigcap_{i\in I} A_i = \bigcap_{i\in I} \mathbf{T}_x A_i$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x \bigcap_i A_i &= \left\{ y + x | y \in \bigcap_i A_i \right\} && \text{by definition of } \mathbf{T}_y \\
&= \left\{ y + x | \bigwedge_i y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcap_i \left\{ y + x | y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcap_i \mathbf{T}_x \left\{ y | y \in A_i \right\} \\
&= \bigcap_i \mathbf{T}_x A
\end{aligned}$$

6. Proof that $\mathbf{T}_x \left(A^{\mathsf{c}}\right) = \mathsf{c}\left(\mathbf{T}_x A\right)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x \mathsf{c} A &= \mathbf{T}_x \left\{ a | a \in A^{\mathsf{c}} \right\} \\
&= \left\{ a + x | a \in A^{\mathsf{c}} \right\} \\
&= \{ a + x | a \notin A \} \\
&= \{ a + x | \neg(a \in A) \} \\
&= \mathsf{c} \{ a + x | a \in A \} \\
&= \mathsf{c} \mathbf{T}_x A
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
A \oplus B &= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \left\{ a + b | a \in A \text{ and } b \in B \right\} && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

CC BY-NC-ND

Figure U.1: Illustration for Example U.2 (page 390)

Example U.2. Let

$$A \triangleq \{(0,0),\ (0,1),\ (0,-1),\ (1,1)\}$$
$$B \triangleq \{(0,0),\ (-2,1),\ \ (1,-1)\}$$

Then

$$A \oplus B = \{(0,0),\ (0,1),\ (0,-1),\ (1,1),\ (-2,1),\ (-2,2),\ (-2,0),\ (-1,2),\ (1,-1),\ (1,-2),\ (2,0)\}$$
$$A \ominus B = \{(1,0)\}$$

These relationships are illustrated in Figure U.1 (page 390).

Figure U.2: Illustration for Example U.3 page 390

Example U.3. [4] Two more examples are illustrated in Figure U.2 (page 390).

U.1.3 Additive properties

Theorem U.2. [5] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$.*

THM					
	$A \oplus \{0\}$	$=$	A	$\forall A \subseteq X$	
	$A \oplus B$	$=$	$B \oplus A$	$\forall A,B \subseteq X$	(COMMUTATIVE)
	$A \oplus (B \oplus C)$	$=$	$(A \oplus B) \oplus C$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	(ASSOCIATIVE)
	$\mathbf{T}_x(A \oplus B)$	$=$	$(\mathbf{T}_x A) \oplus B$	$\forall A,B \subseteq X,\ x \in X$	(TRANSLATION INVARIANT)

[4] Lay (1982) page 7
[5] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), pages 163–164

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus \{0\} &= A \oplus B|_{B=\{0\}} \\
&= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A \Big|_{B=\{0\}} && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \mathbf{T}_0 A \\
&= A && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus B &= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a B && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= B \oplus A && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus (B \oplus C) &= \bigcup_{y\in B\oplus C} \mathbf{T}_y A && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a (B \oplus C) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a \left(\bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c B \right) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \left(\bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_a \mathbf{T}_c B \right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a\in A} \left(\bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c \mathbf{T}_a B \right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c \left(\bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a B \right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c \left(\bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A \right) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c (A \oplus B) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= (A \oplus B) \oplus C && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x (A \oplus B) &= \mathbf{T}_x \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b A && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_x \mathbf{T}_b A && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{b\in B} \mathbf{T}_b \mathbf{T}_x A && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&= \left(\mathbf{T}_x A\right) \oplus B && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem U.3. [6] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$.*

[6] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), page 163

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

BY-NC-ND

THM

$A \oplus (B \cup C)$	$=$	$(A \oplus B) \cup (A \oplus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	($\oplus$ *is* LEFT DISTRIBUTIVE *over* $\cup$)
$(A \cup B) \oplus C$	$=$	$(A \oplus C) \cup (B \oplus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	($\oplus$ RIGHT DISTRIBUTIVE *over* $\cup$)
$A \oplus (B \cap C)$	$\subseteq$	$(A \oplus B) \cap (A \oplus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	
$(A \cap B) \oplus C$	$\subseteq$	$(A \oplus C) \cap (B \oplus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
(A \cup B) \oplus C &= \bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c(A \cup B) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}\\
&= \bigcup_{c \in C} \big[(\mathbf{T}_c A) \cup (\mathbf{T}_c B)\big] && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&= \left(\bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c A\right) \cup \left(\bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c B\right) &&\\
&= (A \oplus C) \cup (B \oplus C) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus (B \cup C) &= (B \cup C) \oplus A && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&= (B \oplus A) \cup (C \oplus A) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= (A \oplus B) \cup (A \oplus C) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
(A \cap B) \oplus C &= \bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c(A \cap B) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&= \bigcup_{c \in C} \big[(\mathbf{T}_c A) \cap (\mathbf{T}_c B)\big] && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&\subseteq \left(\bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c A\right) \cap \left(\bigcup_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c B\right) && \text{by minimax inequality}\\
&= (A \oplus C) \cap (B \oplus C) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus (B \cap C) &= (B \cap C) \oplus A && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&\subseteq (B \oplus A) \cap (C \oplus A) && \text{by previous result}\\
&= (A \oplus B) \cap (A \oplus C) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

U.1.4 Subtractive properties

Theorem U.4. [7] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with with Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$.*

THM

	$A \ominus \{0\}$	$=$	A	$\forall A \subseteq X$	
	$A \ominus B$	$=$	$B^c \ominus A^c$	$\forall A,B \subseteq X$	
	$\mathbf{T}_x(A \ominus B)$	$=$	$(\mathbf{T}_x A) \ominus B$	$\forall A,B \subseteq X,\ x \in X$	(TRANSLATION INVARIANT)
$A \subseteq B \implies$	$A \ominus C$	$\subseteq$	$B \ominus C$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	(INCREASING)

[7] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), pages 164–165

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
A \ominus \{0\} &= \mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus \{0\}) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}}) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&= A
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
A \ominus B &= \mathsf{cc}(A \ominus B)\\
&= \mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}(B \oplus A^{\mathsf{c}}) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&= B^{\mathsf{c}} \ominus A^{\mathsf{c}} && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{T}_x(A \ominus B) &= \mathbf{T}_x\mathsf{c}\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B\big) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}\mathbf{T}_x\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B\big) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}\big(\mathbf{T}_x A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B\big) && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&= \mathsf{c}\big(\mathsf{c}\mathbf{T}_x A \oplus B\big) && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathbf{T}_x A \ominus B && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
A \ominus C &= \bigcap_{c \in C} A_c && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}\\
&\subseteq \bigcap_{c \in C} B_c && \text{by } A \subseteq B \text{ hypothesis}\\
&= B \ominus C && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

✏

Theorem U.5. [8] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with with Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$.*

THM					
	$A \ominus (B \cup C)$	$=$	$(A \ominus B) \cap (A \ominus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	($\ominus$ LEFT DISTRIBUTIVE *over* $\cup$)
	$(A \cap B) \ominus C$	$=$	$(A \ominus C) \cap (B \ominus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	($\ominus$ RIGHT DISTRIBUTIVE *over* $\cap$)
	$(A \cup B) \ominus C$	$\supseteq$	$(A \ominus C) \cup (B \ominus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	
	$A \ominus (B \cap C)$	$\supseteq$	$(A \ominus B) \cup (A \ominus C)$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$	

✎PROOF:

$$\begin{aligned}
A \ominus (B \cup C) &= \mathsf{cc}\Big[\, A \ominus (B \cup C) \,\Big]\\
&= \mathsf{c}\Big[\, A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus (B \cup C) \,\Big] && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}\Big[\, (A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B) \cup (A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C) \,\Big] && \text{by Theorem U.3 page 391}\\
&= \big[\mathsf{c}\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B\big)\big] \cap \big[\mathsf{c}\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C\big)\big] && \text{by Demorgan relation page 387}\\
&= (A \ominus B) \cap (A \ominus C) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(A \cap B) \ominus C &= \mathsf{c}[(A \cap B) \ominus C]\\
&= \mathsf{c}[\mathsf{c}(A \cap B) \oplus C] && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}\big[(A^{\mathsf{c}} \cup B^{\mathsf{c}}) \oplus C\big]\\
&= \mathsf{c}\big[(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C) \cup (B^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C)\big] && \text{by Theorem U.3 page 391}\\
&= \mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C) \cap \mathsf{c}(B^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C)\\
&= (A \ominus C) \cap (B \ominus C) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}$$

[8] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), page 165

CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \ominus (B \cap C) &= \mathsf{cc}\Big[\ A \ominus (B \cap C)\ \Big] \\
&= \mathsf{c}\Big[\ A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus (B \cap C)\ \Big] && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387} \\
&\supseteq \mathsf{c}\big[(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B) \cap (A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C)\big] && \text{by Theorem U.3 page 391} \\
&= \big[\mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B)\big] \cup \big[\mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C)\big] && \text{by Demorgan relation page 387} \\
&= (A \ominus B) \cup (A \ominus C) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
(A \cup B) \ominus C &= \mathsf{cc}[(A \cup B) \ominus C] \\
&= \mathsf{c}[\mathsf{c}(A \cup B) \oplus C] && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387} \\
&= \mathsf{c}\big[\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \cap B^{\mathsf{c}}\big) \oplus C\big] && \text{by Demorgan relation page 387} \\
&\supseteq \mathsf{c}\big[\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C\big) \cap \big(B^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C\big)\big] \\
&= \mathsf{c}\big(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C\big) \cup \mathsf{c}\big(B^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus C\big) \\
&= (A \ominus C) \cup (B \ominus C) && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Theorem U.6. [9] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$ and Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$.*

THM				
	$A \ominus (B \oplus C)$	$=$	$(A \ominus B) \ominus C$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$
	$A \oplus (B \ominus C)$	$\subseteq$	$(A \oplus B) \ominus C$	$\forall A,B,C \subseteq X$

✎PROOF:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \ominus (B \oplus C) &= \mathsf{cc}\Big[\ A \ominus (B \oplus C)\ \Big] \\
&= \mathsf{c}\Big[\ A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus (B \oplus C)\ \Big] && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387} \\
&= \mathsf{c}\Big[\ (A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B) \oplus C\ \Big] && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390} \\
&= \mathsf{c}(A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus B) \ominus C && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387} \\
&= (A \ominus B) \ominus C && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
A \oplus (B \ominus C) &= A \oplus \left(\bigcap_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c B\right) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \left(\bigcap_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c B\right) \oplus A && \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390} \\
&= \bigcup_{a \in A} \mathbf{T}_a \left(\bigcap_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_c B\right) && \text{by Definition U.2 page 387} \\
&= \bigcup_{a \in A} \bigcap_{c \in C} \mathbf{T}_a \mathbf{T}_c B && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387} \\
&\subseteq \bigcap_{c \in C} \bigcup_{a \in A} \mathbf{T}_a \mathbf{T}_c B && \text{by minimax inequality} \\
&= \bigcap_{c \in C} \bigcup_{a \in A} \mathbf{T}_c \mathbf{T}_a B && \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}
\end{aligned}
$$

[9] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), page 166

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

$$= \bigcap_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c\left(\bigcup_{a\in A} \mathbf{T}_a B\right) \qquad \text{by Definition U.1 page 387}$$
$$= \bigcap_{c\in C} \mathbf{T}_c(B \oplus A) \qquad \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}$$
$$= (B \oplus A) \ominus C \qquad \text{by Definition U.2 page 387}$$
$$= (A \oplus B) \ominus C \qquad \text{by Theorem U.2 page 390}$$

✏

U.2 Operations

Definition U.3. [10] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group.*

DEF *The **symmetric set** of A is the set* $\check{A} \triangleq -A \qquad \forall A\subseteq X$

Definition U.4. [11] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$, Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$, and D^s be the symmetric set of set D.*

DEF *The **dilation** of A by D is the operation* $A \oplus \check{D} \qquad \forall A,D\subseteq X.$
*The **erosion** of A by E is the operation* $A \ominus \check{E} \qquad \forall A,E\subseteq X.$

Definition U.5. [12] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with Minokowski addition operator $\oplus : X^2 \to X$, Minokowski subtraction operator $\ominus : X^2 \to X$, and B^s be the symmetric set of a set B.*

DEF *The **opening** of A with respect to B is the set* $A_B \triangleq \underbrace{\underbrace{(A \ominus \check{B})}_{\text{erosion}} \oplus B}_{\text{dilation}} \qquad \forall A,B\subseteq X.$

*The **closing** of A with respect to B is the set* $A^B \triangleq \underbrace{\underbrace{(A \oplus \check{B})}_{\text{dilation}} \ominus B}_{\text{erosion}} \qquad \forall A,B\subseteq X.$

Theorem U.7. [13] *Let $(X,+)$ be a group with A_B representing the opening of a set A with respect to a set B and A^B representing the closing of a set A with respect to a set B.*

THM
(complement of the opening)→ $\mathsf{c}(A_B) = (A^{\mathsf{c}})^B$ *←(closing of the complement)* $\forall A,B\subseteq X$
(complement of the closing)→ $\mathsf{c}(A^B) = (A^{\mathsf{c}})_B$ *←(opening of the complement)* $\forall A,B\subseteq X$

✎PROOF:

$$\mathsf{c}(A_B) = \mathsf{c}\Big[\,(A \ominus \check{B}) \oplus B\,\Big] \qquad \text{by Definition U.5 page 395}$$
$$= \mathsf{c}(A \ominus \check{B}) \ominus B \qquad \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}$$
$$= \mathsf{c}(A \ominus \check{B}) \ominus B \qquad \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}$$
$$= (A^{\mathsf{c}} \oplus \check{B}) \ominus B \qquad \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}$$
$$= (A^{\mathsf{c}})^B \qquad \text{by Definition U.5 page 395}$$

[10] Matheron (1975), page 17
[11] Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), page 161
[12] Serra (1982), page 50
[13] Serra (1982), page 51

CC BY-NC-ND

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{c}(A^B) &= \mathsf{c}\Big[\,(A \oplus \check{B}) \ominus B\,\Big] && \text{by Definition U.5 page 395}\\
&= \mathsf{c}(A \oplus \check{B}) \oplus B && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= \mathsf{c}(A \oplus \check{B}) \oplus B && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= (A^{\mathsf{c}} \ominus \check{B}) \oplus B && \text{by Theorem U.1 page 387}\\
&= (A^{\mathsf{c}})_B && \text{by Definition U.5 page 395}
\end{aligned}
$$

✏

Example U.4.

EX

$$
A \triangleq \{(0,0),\ (1,0),\ (2,0),\ (0,1)\} \implies
\left\{\begin{array}{lcl} A_{(-2,1)} &=& \{(-2,1),\ (-1,1),\ (0,1),\ (-2,2)\} \quad \text{and} \\ \check{A} &=& \{(0,0),\ (-1,0),\ (-2,0),\ (0,-1)\} \end{array}\right\}
$$

Example U.5. An example similar to Example U.4 (page 396) but using solid shapes is illustrated next:

EX

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

APPENDIX V

SOURCE CODE

The source code in this appendix for *GNU Octave*. [1] Octave is similar to *MatLab* with some differences:

1. GNU Octave is free.
2. GNU Octave is open-source.
3. GNU Octave uses a separate graphics engine called *GNU-Plot* for all graphing.

Octave code can easily be adapted to MatLab code and vice-versa.

V.1 GNU Octave script file

```
printf(" ========================================================= \n");
printf("| Daniel J. Greenhoe                                        |\n");
printf("| http://banyan.cm.nctu.edu.tw/~dgreenhoe/wsd/index.html   |\n");
printf("| Experiments with odd polynomials R(1/2-y)                |\n");
printf(" ========================================================= \n");

%-----------------------------------------------------------
% References:
%
%     http://banyan.cm.nctu.edu.tw/~dgreenhoe/wsd/index.html
%
%     C. Sidney Burrus, Ramesh A. Gopinath, and Haitao Guo
%     Introduction to Wavelets and Wavelet Transforms; A Primer
%     Prentice Hall, 1998
%     ISBN 0-13-489600-9
%-----------------------------------------------------------

%=====================================
% Initialization
%=====================================
clear;

%=====================================
% Function Declarations
%=====================================

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: downsample x(n) by L
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

[1] *GNU Octave*: http://www.octave.org/

```
function y = downSample(x,L)
   n = length(x);
   m = ceil(n/L);
   y = 0*x(1:m);
   for i=0:(m-1)
      y(i+1) = x(i*L+1);
   endfor
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: upsample x(n) by L
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function y = upSample(x,L)
   n = length(x);
   m = n*L;
   y = zeros(1,m);
   for i=0:(n -1)
      y(i*L+1) = x(i+1);
   endfor
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate scaling function from scaling filter coefficients h(n)
%   p = scaling function
%   h = scaling filter coefficients h(n)
%   k = number of iterations
%   d = density = number phi(t) samples per h(n) sample
%
% reference: Burrus page 67
%    MatLab code:    Appendix C page 258
%    Key equation:   page 67
%
% reference: Rao
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function p = gen_phi(h,k,d)
   h = 2*h/sum(h);                  %scale to sqrt(2)*sqrt(2)
   m =  length(h)-1;                %
   p = ones(1,d*m)/m;               %<p,1>=1    ref: Rao p.53
   hu = upSample(h,d);              %upsample h(n) to match phi(t) density
   printf('\n');
   for i = 0:(k-1)                  %iterate
      printf('%d ',i);
      fflush(stdout);
      ph  = conv(hu,p);             %convolve
      p   = downSample(ph,2);       %downsample
   endfor
   p = p(1:m*d);
   printf('\n');
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate wavelet function psi(t) from scaling function phi(t)
%          and wavelet filter coefficients g(n)
%   phi = scaling function phi(t)
%   g = wavelet filter coefficients g(n)
%   d = density = number phi(t) samples per g(n) sample
% reference: Burrus page 15
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function psi = gen_psi(phi,g,d)
   g   = sqrt(2)*g;                 %scale to sqrt(2)*sqrt(2)
   gu  = upSample(g,d);             %upsample h(n) to match phi(t) density
   pg  = conv(gu,phi);              %convolve
   psi = downSample(pg,2);          %downsample
   m =  length(g)-1;                %
   psi = psi(1:m*d);                %truncate
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate wavelet coefficients g(n) from scaling coefficients h(n)
%  references:
%     Mallat page 238
%     Burrus page  15
%     Burrus page  79
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function g = h2g_coefs(h)
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
    g = h;
    N = length(h);
    for n=0:(N-1)
        g(n +1) = (-1)**(n)*h(N-1-n +1);
    endfor
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate filter coefficients from wavelet/scalar coefficients
%    _
%    h(n) = h(-n) with shift by N where N = length of h(n)
%    _
%    g(n) = g(-n) with shift by N
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function hbar = h2hbar(h)
    hbar = zeros(size(h));                  %allocate memory
    N    = length(h)      ;                  %N = length of h(n)
    for n = 0:(N-1)                         %
        hbar(n +1) = h(N-1-n +1);           %hbar(n) = h(N-1-n)
    endfor
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%                                                   -z + 2 -1/z
% Convert polynomial in y to polynomial in y = --------------
%                                                       4
%                                  /                 \
%         |                        |  -z + 2 -1/z    |
%     P(y)|                     = P| -------------- |   = Q(z)Q(1/z)
%         |y=[(-z+2-1/z)/4]        \       4         /
%
% Input
% ------
%  P = [p_{n-1} ... p_2 p_1 p_0]
%     ==> P(y)=p_{n-1}y^{m-1}+...+p_2 y^2+p_1y+p_0
%
% Output
% ------
%  QQ = [q_{2n-2} ... q_2 q_1 q_0]
%
%                        q_{2n-2}z^{2n-2} +...+ q_2 z^2 + r_1 z + r_0
%      ==>  Q(z)Q(1/z)=-----------------------------------------------
%                                          z^n
%
% Theory
% ------
% This conversion is useful when using polynomials in y = sin^2(w/2).
% Polynomials in sin^2(w/2) can be used to represent any even
% periodic funtion with period 2pi.
%   * sin^2(w/2) = (1/2)(1-cosw)
%
%                     1-cosw      1      e^{w}+e^{-w}      2 - z - 1/z    |
% y = sin^2(w/2) = -------- = --- - --------------- = --------------- |
%                       2       2          4                  4        |z=e^w
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function QQ = y2sin2(P)
    n=length(P);                        % number of terms in P(y). num 0s=n-1
    N=2*n-1;                            % number of terms in Q(z)Q(1/z)
    QQ= zeros(1,N);                     % init Q(z)Q(1/z) = 0+0z+...+0z^{N-1}
    q=1;                                % init q(z)       = 1
    for k=0:n-1                         %
      QQ = [QQ,0](2:N+1);               % z[-z + 2 -1/z] = -z^2 + 2z - 1
      QQ = QQ + \                       % Q(z)Q(1/z)
        P(n-k)*[zeros(1,N-2*k-1),q]/4^k;%    = SUM p1k_k*[(-z+2-z^-1)/4]^k
      q = conv(q,[-1 2 -1]);            % q(z) = q(z)[-z^2 + 2z - 1]
    endfor                              %
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Generate Daubechies class scaling coefficients
%  - Daubechies-p: minimum support (2p-1, R(y)=0) and minimum phase
%  - Symmlets-p:   minimum support (2p-1, R(y)=0) and quasi-linear phase
%  - Experimental: non-minimum support (>2p-1, R(y)!=0)
%
%  Input
%  ------
```


CC BY-NC-ND

```
%  p = number of vanishing moments
%  R = [r_{m-1} ... r_2 r_1 r_0] ==> R(y)=r_{m-1}y^{m-1}+...+r_2 y^2+r_1y+r_0
%
%  Output
%  ------
%  n  = p + m
%
%  QQ = [q_{2n-1} ... q_1 q_0]
%
%                     q_{2n-1}z^{2n-1}+...+r_2 z^2+r_1z+r_0
%    ==>  Q(z)Q(1/z)=-------------------------------------
%                                  z^n
%
%  rQQ= [ r_1 r_2 ... r_{n-1}  r_n r_{n+1}...r_{n-2} ]
%       |<--roots inside -->|<--roots outside  --->|
%       |   unit circle     |   unit circle        |
%
%  A  = [a_p ... a_2 a_1 a_0]
%
%                        (z+1)^p
%    ==>  A(z) = sqrt(2)(---)   = a_pz^p + ... + a_2z^2 + a_1z + a_0
%                        ( 2 )
%
%  rA = [ r_1 r_2 ... r_p ] = roots of A(z)
%
%
%  Theory
%  ------
%  h(n) = scaling coefficients
%
%  H(z) = SUM h(n) z^{-n}
%          n
%       = A(z)Q(z)
%
%                 (z+1)^p
%       = sqrt(2)(---)   Q(z)
%                 ( 2 )
%
%  Finding Q(z) involves factoring a polynomial P(...):
%
%  P(y) = Pm(y) + y^p R(1/2-y)
%
%  In general, R is any polynomial that satisfies R(1/2-y)=-R(y-1/2)
%    (R is an odd polynomial about y=1/2)
%  For Daubechies-p wavelets and symmlets, R(y)=0
%    (giving Daubechies-p and symmlets minimum support)
%
%          p-1 ( p-1+k )
%  Pm(y) = SUM (        ) y^k
%          k=0 (    k   )
%
%  Q(z)Q(1/z) = P([2-z-1/z]/4)
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------
function [n,A,QQ,rA,rQQ] = gen_Dclass(p,R)
                                      % Compute A(z) = sqrt(2)[ (z+1)/2 ]^p
                                      % ------------------------------------
   A=1;                               % A(z) = (z+1)^0 = 1
   for k=1:p                          %
     A=conv(A,[1 1]);                 % A(z) = (z+1)^k  k=1,2,3,...,p
   endfor                             %
   A = (sqrt(2)/2^p)*A;               % A(z) = sqrt(2)[(z+1)/2]^p
   rA = sort(roots(A))';              % rA   = roots of A(z)

                                      % Pm(y)
                                      % ------------------------------------
   Pm = zeros(1,p);                   % init Pm(y) = 0y^{p-1}+...+0y^2+0y+0
   for k=0:p-1                        %
     Pm(p-k) = bincoeff(p-1+k,k);     % Pm(y) = SUM {p-1+k choose k} y^k
   endfor                             %

                                      % P( [2-z-1/z]/4 )
                                      % ------------------------------------
   m=length(R);                       %
   P=[zeros(1,m),Pm] + [R,zeros(1,p)]; % P(y) = Pm(y) + y^p R(y)
   while P(1)==0                      % remove leading zero coefficient terms
     n=length(P);                     %   n = number of terms in P(y)
     P=P(2:n);                        %   remove leading zero coefficient
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
    endwhile                                %
    n=length(P);                            % number of terms in P(y). num 0s=n-1
    QQ = y2sin2(P);                         % Q(z)Q(1/z) = P(y)|_y={(-z+2-1/z)/4}

                                            % Compute H(z)=A(z)Q(z)
                                            % ----------------------------------
    rQQ = sort(roots(QQ))';                 % roots of Q(z)Q(1/z) (p-1 roots of Q(z), p-1 roots of Q(1/z))
    rQ  = rQQ(1:n-1);                       % roots of Q(z) (p-1 roots inside unit circle)
    Q   = poly(rQ);                         % convert roots into poly Q(z)
    Q   = sign(real(Q)).*abs(Q);            % eliminate any extraneous imag. components
    H   = conv(A,Q);                        % H(z) = A(z)Q(z)
    rH  = sort(roots(H))';                  % roots of H(z)
    h   = (sqrt(2)/sum(H))*H;               % admissibility cond: SUM h_n = sqrt(2)
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate Daubechies-p scaling coefficients
%
%  Input
%  ------
%  p:   number of vanishing moments
%
%  Output
%  ------
%  n  = p + m
%  h:   scaling coefficients
%  rQQ: roots of Q(z)Q(z^-1)
%                 |   |_______ p-1 roots outside unit circle
%                 |___________ p-1 roots inside  unit circle
%  rH:  roots of H(z)          p roots at z=-1 and p-1 roots of Q(z)
%
%
%  Theory
%  ------
%  h(n) = scaling coefficients
%
%  H(z) = SUM h(n) z^{-n}
%          n
%       = A(z)Q(z)
%
%                 (z+1)^p
%       = sqrt(2)(---)   Q(z)
%                 ( 2 )
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function [h,rQQ,rH] = gen_Dp(p)
  R = [0];                                  % for Daubechies-p, R(y)=0
  [n,A,QQ,rA,rQQ] = gen_Dclass(p,R);        %
  rQ  = rQQ(1:p-1);                         % roots of Q(z) (p-1 roots inside unit circle)
  Q   = poly(rQ);                           % convert roots into poly Q(z)
  Q   = sign(real(Q)).*abs(Q);              % eliminate any extraneous imag. components
  H   = conv(A,Q);                          % H(z) = A(z)Q(z)
  rH  = sort(roots(H))';                    % roots of H(z)
  h   = (sqrt(2)/sum(H))*H;                 % admissibility cond: SUM h_n = sqrt(2)
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
%function: Generate Symmlets-p scaling coefficients
%
%  Input
%  ------
%  p:   number of vanishing moments
%
%  Output
%  ------
%  h:   scaling coefficients
%  rQQ: roots of Q(z)Q(z^-1)
%                 |   |_______ p-1 roots outside unit circle
%                 |___________ p-1 roots inside  unit circle
%  rH:  roots of H(z)          p roots at z=-1 and p-1 roots of Q(z)
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function [h,rQQ,rH] = gen_Sp(p)
                                            % Initialization
                                            % ---------------------
  N = 1024;                                 % number of data points for linear measure
  R = [0];                                  % for Symmlets-p, R(y)=0
```


CC BY-NC-ND

```
  [n,A,QQ,rA,rQQ]=gen_Dclass(p,R);      %
  Nquads     = floor(p/2);              % number of zero quads
  Nsol       = 2^Nquads;                % number of possible solutions
  rQQ_mat     = zeros(p-1,Nsol);        % allocate matrix of roots for all solutions
  mse        = zeros(1,   Nsol);        % allocate mean square error of each solution
  sqMag      = zeros(1,   Nsol);        % allocate square magnitude of each solution

                                        % Main loop: generate all root selections
                                        % ----------------------------------------
  for n=0:Nsol-1                        % loop once for each possible solution
    t = conj(rQQ(1:2:p-1));             % extract one representative from each quad
    for m=0:Nquads-1                    % take conjugate recipricols of roots
      if( mod(floor(n/2^m),2) )         % if bit k of n is 1,
        t(m+1) = conj(1/t(m+1));        %   then take conjugate recipricol of root
      endif                             %
    endfor                              %

    rNew            = zeros(p-1,1);     % initialize new root column vector
    rNew(1:2:p-1)  = t;                 % rNew=[r1 (real), r2, r2*, r3, r3*,...]'
    rNew(2:2:p-1)  = conj(t(mod(p+1,2)+1:Nquads));
    rMat(:,n+1)    = rNew;              % store new root vector in root matrix

                                        % Linear phase measurements
                                        % -------------------------------
    h = real(poly(rNew));               % convert new roots into a poly in z
    [H,w] = freqz(h,[1],N);             % compute the frequency response
    phase = unwrap(angle(H));           % unwrapped phase of h
    [pCoefs,pVals]=polyfit(w,phase,1); % find the 1st order poly p(w) that best fits phase(w)
    mse(n+1) = (pVals.yf-phase)'*(pVals.yf-phase)/N;  % measure the error
    sqMag(n+1) = (rNew'*rNew);          % measure the magnitude and store
  endfor
                                        % Find best set of roots
                                        % --------------------------
  [err1,i1] = min(mse);                 % find the 1st location of minimum error
  t=mse;                                % copy mse to temporary vector t
  t(i1) = max(t);                       % get 1st minimum out of the way to find 2nd
  [err2,i2] = min(t);                   % find the 2nd location of minimum error
  t= max(mse)*ones(1,Nsol);             % set t to all large values
  if( sqMag(i1)<sqMag(i2) )             % decide which min to use based on smaller magnitude
    iMinErr = i1;                       %   if the magnitude of first is smaller
  else                                  %
    iMinErr = i2;                       %   if the magnitude of the second is smaller
  endif                                 %
  mmse = mse(iMinErr);                  % minimum mean square error
  rNew = rMat(:,iMinErr);               % extract min phase min magnitude vector

                                        % Compute H(z)=A(z)Q(z)
                                        % -------------------------------------
  rQQ = [rNew; conj(1./rNew)]';         % vector w/ both retained and discarded roots
  rQ  = rQQ(1:p-1);                     % roots of Q(z) (p-1 roots inside unit circle)
  Q   = poly(rQ);                       % convert roots into poly Q(z)
  Q   = sign(real(Q)).*abs(Q);          % eliminate any extraneous imag. components
  H   = conv(A,Q);                      % H(z) = A(z)Q(z)
  rH  = sort(roots(H))';                % roots of H(z)
  h   = (sqrt(2)/sum(H))*H;             % admissibility cond: SUM h_n = sqrt(2)
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Generate experimental coefficients with R(y)!=0
%
%  Input
%  ------
%  p:   number of vanishing moments
%  R = [r_{m-1} ... r_2 r_1 r_0] ==> R(y)=r_{m-1}y^{m-1}+...+r_2 y^2+r_1y+r_0
%
%  Output
%  ------
%  h:   scaling coefficients
%  rQQ: roots of Q(z)Q(z^-1)
%                 |    |_______ p-1 roots outside unit circle
%                 |___________ p-1 roots inside  unit circle
%  rH:  roots of H(z)          p roots at z=-1 and p-1 roots of Q(z)
%
%
%  Theory
%  ------
%  h(n) = scaling coefficients
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
%
%  H(z) = SUM h(n) z^{-n}
%          n
%       = A(z)Q(z)
%
%                 (z+1)^p
%       = sqrt(2)(---)   Q(z)
%                 ( 2 )
%
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function [n,h,rQQ,rH] = gen_Rp(p,R)
  [n,A,QQ,rA,rQQ] = gen_Dclass(p,R);  %
  rQ  = rQQ(1:n-1);                   % roots of Q(z) (n-1 roots inside unit circle)
  Q   = poly(rQ);                     % convert roots into poly Q(z)
  Q   = sign(real(Q)).*abs(Q);        % eliminate any extraneous imag. components
  H   = conv(A,Q);                    % H(z) = A(z)Q(z)
  rH  = sort(roots(H))';              % roots of H(z)
  h   = (sqrt(2)/sum(H))*H;           % admissibility cond: SUM h_n = sqrt(2)
endfunction

#-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
#function: Generate scaling coefficients h(n) from length-4 parameter alpha
#          Pollen wavelets
#  references:
#    http://www2.isye.gatech.edu/~brani/datasoft/DL.pdf  page 2
#    Burrus page  66
#-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function h = gen_pollen4(alpha)
  h =  (sqrt(2)/4) * [\
       1 + cos(alpha) - sin(alpha) ;
       1 + cos(alpha) + sin(alpha) ;
       1 - cos(alpha) + sin(alpha) ;
       1 - cos(alpha) - sin(alpha) ;
      ];
%  h =  (sqrt(2)/4) * [\  Burrus ?
%       1 - cos(alpha) + sin(alpha) ;
%       1 + cos(alpha) + sin(alpha) ;
%       1 + cos(alpha) - sin(alpha) ;
%       1 - cos(alpha) - sin(alpha) ;
%      ];
endfunction

%-----------------------------------
% Write data to file
%-----------------------------------
function data2file(h,g,rR,rH,filename,comment)
  data  = fopen(filename,"w");
  fprintf(data,'%%=========================================================================\n');
  fprintf(data,'%% Daniel J. Greenhoe \n');
  fprintf(data,'%% file: %s \n',filename);
  fprintf(data,'%% %s \n',comment);
  fprintf(data,'%% %s \n',strftime('%Y %B %d %A %r (%Z)',localtime(time)));
  fprintf(data,'%%=========================================================================\n\n');

  p=length(h)/2;
  fprintf(data ,'scaling coefficients\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'--------------------------\n' );
  for n=1:length(h)
    fprintf(data ,'h_{%02d} = %13.10f  \n',n-1,h(n) );
  endfor

  fprintf(data ,'\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'wavelet coefficients\n');
  fprintf(data ,'--------------------------\n' );
  for n=1:length(g)
    fprintf(data ,'g_{%02d} = %13.10f  \n',n-1,g(n) );
  endfor

  fprintf(data ,'\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'roots of Q(z)\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'--------------------------\n' );
  for n=1:p-1
    fprintf(data ,'r_{%02d} = %13.10f  %13.10fi \n',n-1, real(rR(n)), imag(rR(n)) );
  endfor

  fprintf(data ,'\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'roots of Q(z^-1)\n' );
```


CC BY-NC-ND

```
  fprintf(data ,'-------------------------\n');
  for n=p:length(rR)
    fprintf(data ,'r_{%02d} = %13.10f  %13.10fi \n',n-1, real(rR(n)), imag(rR(n)) );
  endfor

  fprintf(data ,'\n');
  fprintf(data ,'roots of H(z)\n');
  fprintf(data ,'-------------------------\n');
  for n=1:length(rH)
    fprintf(data ,'r_{%02d} = %13.10f  %13.10fi \n',n-1, real(rH(n)), imag(rH(n)) );
    if(n==p-1) fprintf(data,'\n'); endif
  endfor

  fprintf(data ,'\n' );
  fprintf(data ,'LaTeX drawing commands   \n');
  fprintf(data ,'-------------------------\n');
  for n=1:p-1
    fprintf(data ,'  \\put( %15.10f, %15.10f ) {\\circle {15}} \n',real(rR(n))*100, imag(rR(n))*100 );
  endfor
  fprintf(data,"\n");
  for n=p:length(rR)
    fprintf(data ,'  \\put( %15.10f, %15.10f ) {\\circle*{15}} \n',real(rR(n))*100, imag(rR(n))*100 );
  endfor

  fflush(data);
  fclose(data);
  printf('output file name = \"%s\" \n',filename);
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Write data to plot file
% <filename> can be used by the command '\fileplot' in a TeX environment
% to generate a plot of (x,y).
% The command '\fileplot' is available in the PSTricks package of TeX.
% Reference: http://www.ctan.org/pkg/pstricks
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function data2plotfile(x,y,filename,comment)
  data  = fopen(filename,'w');
  fprintf(data,'%%=========================================================================\n');
  fprintf(data,'%% Daniel J. Greenhoe \n');
  fprintf(data,'%% file: %s \n',filename);
  fprintf(data,'%% number of data points = %d\n',length(x));
  fprintf(data,'%% %s \n',comment);
  fprintf(data,'%% %s \n',strftime('%Y %B %d %A %r (%Z)',localtime(time)));
  fprintf(data,'%% The command \\fileplot{%s} may be used in a LaTeX environment for plotting
            data.\n',filename);
  fprintf(data,'%% \\fileplot is available in the LaTeX PSTricks package.\n');
  fprintf(data,'%% Reference: http://www.ctan.org/pkg/pstricks\n');
  fprintf(data,'%%=========================================================================\n');

  fprintf(data ,'[\n');
  for n=1:length(x)
    fprintf(data ,'(%13.10f,%13.10f)\n',x(n),y(n));
  endfor
  fprintf(data,']\n');
  fprintf(data,'%%---end of file---' );
  fflush(data);
  fclose(data);
  printf("data written to \'%s\' \n",filename);
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Demonstration of Daubechies-p wavelets
%  iterations: number of iterations to use to generate phi(t) (e.g. 16)
%  N:          data size (e.g. 1024)
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function demo_Dp(p,N,iterations)
                                        % calculate coefficient sequences
                                        % ------------------------
  [h,rQQ,rH] = gen_Dp(p);               % Daubechies-p
  g   = h2g_coefs(h);                   % generate wavelet coefficients g(n)
  d   = round(N/length(h));             % density=round(samples/unit(1))
  phi = gen_phi(h,  iterations,d);      % generate phi(x) from h(n)
  psi = gen_psi(phi,g,d);               % generate psi(x) from g(n)
  M   = length(phi);

                                        % Generate output data files
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
                                        % ------------------------
  x = [0:length(phi)-1]*(length(h)-1)/(length(phi)-1);
  data2file(h,g,rQQ,rH,sprintf('d%d.dat',p),     sprintf('data for Daubechies-%d wavelets',p) );
  data2plotfile(x,phi,sprintf('d%d_phi.dat',p),sprintf('plot file for Daubechies-%d scaling
            function',p));
  data2plotfile(x,psi,sprintf('d%d_psi.dat',p),sprintf('plot file for Daubechies-%d wavelet
            function',p));
  plot(x,phi,x,psi);

endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Demonstration of Symmlet-p wavelets
%  iterations: number of iterations to use to generate phi(t) (e.g. 16)
%  N:          data size (e.g. 1024)
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function demo_Symmlet_p(p,N,iterations)
                                        % Generate scaling coefficients {h_n}
                                        % ------------------------
  [h,rQQ,rH] = gen_Sp(p);               % Symmlet-p
  g    = h2g_coefs(h);                  % generate wavelet coefficients g(n)
  d    = round(N/length(h));            % density=round(samples/unit(1))
  phi  = gen_phi(h,  iterations,d);     % generate phi(x) from h(n)
  psi  = gen_psi(phi,g,d);              % generate psi(x) from g(n)
  M    = length(phi);

                                        % Generate output data files
                                        % ------------------------
  x = [0:length(phi)-1]*(length(h)-1)/(length(phi)-1);
  data2file(h,g,rQQ,rH, sprintf("s%d.dat",p),     sprintf("Symmlet-%d data file",p));
  data2plotfile(x,phi,  sprintf('s%d_phi.dat',p),sprintf('plot file for Symmlet-%d scaling
            function',p));
  data2plotfile(x,psi,  sprintf('s%d_psi.dat',p),sprintf('plot file for Symmlet-%d wavelet
            function',p));
  plot(x,phi,x,psi);
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Demonstration of Daubechies-p class wavelet with R(y)!=0
%  iterations: number of iterations to use to generate phi(t) (e.g. 16)
%  N:          data size (e.g. 1024)
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function demo_Ry_p(p,N,iterations)
                                        % R(y)
                                        % ------------------------
 R=[  3 0 5 0 7 0 3 0 1 0];                          % R(y)
 ptitle=sprintf("p=%d      R(y)=3y^9 + 5y^7 + 7y^5 + 3y^3 + y      Daniel J. Greenhoe",p);% title

                                        % Generate scaling coefficients {h_n}
                                        % ------------------------
  [n,h,rQQ,rH]= gen_Rp(p,R);            % Ry(p)
  g    = h2g_coefs(h);                  % generate wavelet coefficients g(n)
  d    = round(N/length(h));            % density=round(samples/unit(1))
  phi  = gen_phi(h,  iterations,d);     % generate phi(x) from h(n)
  psi  = gen_psi(phi,g,d);              % generate psi(x) from g(n)

                                        % Generate output
                                        % ------------------------
  data2file(h,g,rQQ,rH, sprintf("R%d.dat",p), sprintf("R(y)-%d data file",p) );   pause(delay_sec);
endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Demonstration of Pollen length 4 wavelets
%  iterations: number of iterations to use to generate phi(t) (e.g. 16)
%  N:          data size (e.g. 1024)
%  alpha:      parameter alpha
%  p4_phi.dat and p4_psi.dat can be used with LaTeX's \plotfile command.
%  \pltfile is available in the pstricks package
%   Reference: http://www.ctan.org/pkg/pstricks
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function demo_pollen4a(alpha,N,iterations)
                                        % calculate coefficient sequences
                                        % ------------------------
  h    = gen_pollen4(alpha);      % Pollen length-4
  g    = h2g_coefs(h);                  % generate wavelet coefficients g(n)
  d    = round(N/length(h));            % density=round(samples/unit(1))
  phi  = gen_phi(h,  iterations,d);     % generate phi(x) from h(n)
```


CC BY-NC-ND

```
  psi = gen_psi(phi,g,d);                % generate psi(x) from g(n)
  M   = length(phi);

                                         % Generate output data files
                                         % ------------------------
  x = [0:length(phi)-1]*(length(h)-1)/(length(phi)-1);
  %data2file(h,g,rQQ,rH,'p4.dat',   sprintf('data for Pollen-4 alpha=%13.10f wavelets',alpha));
  data2plotfile(x,phi,'p4_phi.dat',sprintf('plot file for Pollen-4 alpha=%13.10f scaling
            function',alpha));
  data2plotfile(x,psi,'p4_psi.dat',sprintf('plot file for Pollen-4 alpha=%13.10f wavelet
            function',alpha));
  plot(x,phi,x,psi);

endfunction

%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
% Demonstration of Pollen length 4 wavelets
%  iterations: number of iterations to use to generate phi(t) (e.g. 16)
%  N:          data size (e.g. 1024)
%  nalpha:     number of alpha values
%  a:          starting alpha value
%  b:          ending alpha value
%  p4_phi.dat and p4_psi.dat can be used with GNU Plot's 'splot' function
%  Reference: http://www.gnuplot.info
%-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
function demo_pollen4(a,b,nalpha,N,iterations)
  filename1='p4_psi.dat';
  filename2='p4_phi.dat';
  data1  = fopen(filename1,'w');
  data2  = fopen(filename2,'w');
  fprintf(data1,'#=========================================================================\n');
  fprintf(data1,'# Daniel J. Greenhoe \n');
  fprintf(data1,'# file: %s \n',filename1);
  fprintf(data1,'# %s \n',strftime('%Y %B %d %A %r (%Z)',localtime(time)));
  fprintf(data1,'# The command splot{%s} may be used in a GNU Plot environment for plotting
            data.\n',filename1);
  fprintf(data1,'# Reference: http://www.gnuplot.info\n');
  fprintf(data1,'#=========================================================================\n');

  fprintf(data2,'#=========================================================================\n');
  fprintf(data2,'# Daniel J. Greenhoe \n');
  fprintf(data2,'# file: %s \n',filename2);
  fprintf(data2,'# %s \n',strftime('%Y %B %d %A %r (%Z)',localtime(time)));
  fprintf(data2,'# The command splot{%s} may be used in a GNU Plot environment for plotting
            data.\n',filename2);
  fprintf(data2,'# Reference: http://www.gnuplot.info\n');
  fprintf(data2,'#=========================================================================\n');

  for i = 0:nalpha-1
                                         % calculate coefficient sequences
                                         % ------------------------
    alpha = a + i/(nalpha-1)*(b-a)       % calculate alpha
    h     = gen_pollen4(alpha);          % Pollen length-4
    g     = h2g_coefs(h);                % generate wavelet coefficients g(n)
    d     = round(N/length(h));          % density=round(samples/unit(1))
    phi   = gen_phi(h,  iterations,d);   % generate phi(x) from h(n)
    psi   = gen_psi(phi,g,d);            % generate psi(x) from g(n)
    M     = length(phi);

                                         % Generate output data files
                                         % ------------------------
    x = [0:length(phi)-1]*(length(h)-1)/(length(phi)-1);
    y1 = psi;
    y2 = phi;

    for n=1:length(x)
      fprintf(data1 ,'%13.10f  %13.10f  %13.10f\n',alpha,x(n),y1(n));
    endfor
    for n=1:length(x)
      fprintf(data2 ,'%13.10f  %13.10f  %13.10f\n',alpha,x(n),y2(n));
    endfor
    fprintf(data1 ,'\n');
    fprintf(data2 ,'\n');

  endfor
  fprintf(data1,'##---end of file---' );
  fprintf(data2,'##---end of file---' );
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
  fflush(data1);
  fflush(data2);
  fclose(data1);
  fclose(data2);
  printf("data written to \'%s\' \n",filename1);
  printf("data written to \'%s\' \n",filename2);

endfunction

%=====================================
% Main
%=====================================
                                      % parameters
                                      %-------------------------------------
N = 1024;                             % number of data points
iterations = 16;                      % number of iterations

                                      % demos
                                      %-------------------------------------
%for p=1:12
%  demo_Dp(p,N,iterations);
%endfor
%demo_Dp(16,N,iterations);

%demo_Symmlet_p( 4,N,iterations);
%demo_Symmlet_p( 8,N,iterations);
%demo_Symmlet_p(12,N,iterations);
%demo_Symmlet_p(16,N,iterations);
%demo_Ry_p(3);
%demo_pollen4a(pi/6,16,iterations)%
%demo_pollen4a(pi/4,16,iterations)%
%demo_pollen4a(pi/2,16,iterations)%
%demo_pollen4a(pi,16,iterations)%
%demo_pollen4(0,pi,256,256,iterations)%
demo_pollen4(0,pi,32,32,iterations)%
%function demo_pollen4(a,b,nalpha,N,iterations)

%=====================================
% End Processing
%=====================================
```

V.2 B-spline polynomial calculation and plotting

The polynomials for *B-splines* as demonstrated in Example M.3 (page 298)–Example M.9 (page 302) can be calculated using the free and open source software package *Maxima* along with the following script file:

```
/*=========================================================================*
 * Daniel J. Greenhoe                                                      *
 * Maxima script file                                                      *
 * To execute this script, start Maxima in a command window                *
 * in the subdirectory containing this file (e.g. c:\math\maxima\)         *
 * and then after the (%i...) prompt enter                                 *
 *   batchload("bspline.max")$                                             *
 * Data produced will be written to the file "bsplineout.txt".             *
 * reference: http://maxima.sourceforge.net/documentation.html             *
 *=========================================================================*/
/*-----------------------------------------
 * initialize script
 *-----------------------------------------*/
reset();
kill(all);
load(orthopoly);
display2d:false; /* 2-dimensional display */
writefile("bsplineout.txt");
/*-----------------------------------------
 * n = B-spline order parameter
 * may be set to any value in {1,2,3,...}
```

```
 *-----------------------------------------*/
n:2;
print("=====================================================================");
print("Daniel J. Greenhoe");
print("Output file for nth order B-spline Nn(x) calculation, n=",n," .");
print("Output produced using Maxima running the script file bspline.max");
print("=====================================================================");
Nnx:(1/n!)*sum((-1)^k*binomial(n+1,k)*(x-k)^n*unit_step(x-k),k,0,n+1);
print("-------------------------------------------------------------");
print("              n+1      k (n+1)       n                        ");
print(" n! Nn(x) = SUM (-1)   (    ) (x-k)   step(x-k) ,n=",n);
print("              k=0       ( k )                                 ");
print("              ",n+1,"      k (",n+1,")      ",n);
print(n,"! Nn(x) = SUM (-1)   (    ) (x-k)   step(x-k)");
print("              k=0       ( k )");
print("            = ",expand(n!*Nnx));
print("-------------------------------------------------------------");
assume(x<=0);     print(n!,"N(x)= ",expand(n!*Nnx)," for x<=0");  forget(x<=0);
for i:0 thru n step 1 do(
  assume(x>i,x<(i+1)),
  print(n!,"N(x)= ",expand(n!*Nnx)," for ",i,"<x<",i+1),
  tex(expand(n!*Nnx),"djg.tex"),/*write output in TeX format to file "djg.tex"*/
  forget(x>i,x<(i+1))
  );
assume(x>(n+1)); print(n!,"N(x)= ",expand(n!*Nnx)," for x>",n+1); forget(x>(n+1));
print("-------------------------------------------------------------");
print(" values at some specific points x:                           ");
print("-------------------------------------------------------------");
y:Nnx,x=(n+1)/2;print("N(",(n+1)/2,")= ",y," (center value)");
y:Nnx,x=(n+2)/2;print("N(",(n+2)/2,")= ",y);
y:Nnx,x=(n+3)/2;print("N(",(n+3)/2,")= ",y);
/*-----------------------------------------
 * close output file
 *-----------------------------------------*/
closefile();
```

Once the polynomial expressions for a *B-spline* have been calculated, they can be plotted within a LaTeX environment using the pst-plot package along with a LaTeX source file such as the following:[2]

```
%=========================================================================
% Daniel J. Greenhoe
% LaTeX file
% N_3(x) B-spline
% nominal unit = 10mm
%=========================================================================
\begin{pspicture}(-1,-0.5)(5,1)
  %-----------------------------------------
  % parameters
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psset{plotpoints=64,labelsep=1pt}%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % axes
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psaxes[linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=axis,yAxis=false,ticks=x,labels=x]{<->}(0,0)(-1,0)(5,1)% x axis
  \psaxes[linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=axis,xAxis=false,ticks=x,labels=x]{->}(0,0)(-1,0)(5,1)%  y axis
  %-----------------------------------------
  % annotation
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](2,0)(2,0.667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](0,0.667)(2,0.667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](1,0)(1,0.1667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](3,0)(3,0.1667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](0,0.1667)(3,0.1667)%
  \uput[180](0,0.667){$\sfrac{2}{3}$}%
  \uput[180](0,0.1667){$\sfrac{1}{6}$}%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % function plot
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psplot{0}{1}{+1 x 3 exp mul                                    6 div}% for 0<=x<=1
```

[2] For help with PostScript® math operators, see Adobe (1999), pages 508–509 ⟨Arithmetic and Math Operators⟩.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
  \psplot{1}{2}{-3 x 3 exp mul +12 x 2 exp mul add -12 x mul add  +4 add 6 div}% for 1<=x<=2
  \psplot{2}{3}{+3 x 3 exp mul -24 x 2 exp mul add +60 x mul add -44 add 6 div}% for 2<=x<=3
  \psplot{3}{4}{-1 x 3 exp mul +12 x 2 exp mul add -48 x mul add +64 add 6 div}% for 3<=x<=4
  \psline(0,0)(-0.5,0)\psline[linestyle=dotted](-0.5,0)(-0.75,0)%              % for x<=0
  \psline(4,0)(4.5,0)\psline[linestyle=dotted](4.5,0)(4.75,0)%                 % for x>=4
\end{pspicture}%
```

Alternatively, one can plot $N_3(x)$ more or less directly from the equation given in Theorem M.1 (page 299) without first calculating the polynomial expressions:

```
%=========================================================================
% Daniel J. Greenhoe
% LaTeX file
% N_3(x) B-spline
% nominal unit = 10mm
%=========================================================================
\begin{pspicture}(-1,-0.5)(5,1)
  %-----------------------------------------
  % parameters
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psset{plotpoints=64,labelsep=1pt}%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % axes
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psaxes[linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=axis,yAxis=false,ticks=x,labels=x]{<->}(0,0)(-1,0)(5,1)% x axis
  \psaxes[linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=axis,xAxis=false,ticks=x,labels=x]{->}(0,0)(-1,0)(5,1)%  y axis
  %-----------------------------------------
  % annotation
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](2,0)(2,0.667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](0,0.667)(2,0.667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](1,0)(1,0.1667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](3,0)(3,0.1667)%
  \psline[linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt,linecolor=red](0,0.1667)(3,0.1667)%
  \uput[180](0,0.667){$\sfrac{2}{3}$}%
  \uput[180](0,0.1667){$\sfrac{1}{6}$}%
  %-------------------------------------------------------------------------
  % for n=3
  %        1  n+1         (n+1)                    1   4          ( 4 )
  % N_n(x)--- SUM (-1)^k (    ) (x-k)^n s(x-k) = --- SUM  (-1)^k (    ) (x-k)^3 s(x-k)
  %        n! k=1         ( k )                    3! k=1         ( k )
  %
  % where s(x) = 0 for x<0 and 1 for x>=0  (step function)
  %-------------------------------------------------------------------------
  \psplot{0}{1}  {1 x 0 sub 3 exp mul   6 div}%
  \psplot{1}{2}  {1 x 0 sub 3 exp mul   4 x 1 sub 3 exp mul sub   6 div}%
  \psplot{2}{3}  {1 x 0 sub 3 exp mul   4 x 1 sub 3 exp mul sub   6 x 2 sub 3 exp mul add   6 div}%
  \psplot{3}{4}  {1 x 0 sub 3 exp mul   4 x 1 sub 3 exp mul sub   6 x 2 sub 3 exp mul add   4 x 3 sub
            3 exp mul sub   6 div}%
  \psplot{4}{4.5}{1 x 0 sub 3 exp mul   4 x 1 sub 3 exp mul sub   6 x 2 sub 3 exp mul add   4 x 3 sub
            3 exp mul sub   1 x 4 sub 3 exp mul add 6 div}%
  %    N_3(x) = [(4choose0)(x-0)^3    - (4choose1)(x-1)^3       + (4choose2)(x-2)^3       -
            (4choose3)(x-3)^3       + (4choose4)(x-4)^3       ]/3!
  %           = [         1 (x-0)^3    -         4 (x-1)^3       +         6 (x-2)^3       -         4
            (x-3)^3       +         1 (x-4)^3       ]/6
  \psline(0,0)(-0.5,0)%
  \psline[linestyle=dotted](-0.5,0)(-0.75,0)%
  \psline[linestyle=dotted](4.5,0)(4.75,0)%
\end{pspicture}%
```

The LaTeX source listed above can be made to output a pdf file with tight borders using the preview package and[3]

```
\usepackage[active,tightpage]{preview}%
\PreviewBorder=0pt%
\PreviewEnvironment{pspicture}%
```

[3] http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/25400/ps2pdf-depscrop-stops-short-with-pstricks-uput

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
CC BY-NC-ND

V.3 Auto-power spectrum plot

The plot provided in Figure M.3 (page 313) was generated using C and LaTeX code very similar to that displayed in this section:

1. C code for generating data points. This outputs to stdout (standard output terminal), but can be redirected into a file such as Snn_bspline1.dat, Snn_bspline2.dat, Snn_bspline3.dat, etc. In a *Windows* command environment ("DOS" window), this can be performed with something like this:

   C:\ mycprogram.exe > Snn_bspline1.dat

```c
int bspline_Sdat(void){
  const double n=3;       /* order of B-spline                          */
  const long M=1024;      /* approximate number of data points          */
  const long N=1000000;   /* number of iterations per data point        */
  double w=0,s=0;
  long k=0;
  printf("[\n");                                /* LaTeX \fileplot support */
  for(w=-8.0;w<=8.0;w+=16./(double)M){
    s=0;
    for(k=1; k<=N; k++){
      s += pow(1.0/(2*k-w/PI),2.*n+2.);         /* 1st summation           */
      s += pow(1.0/(2*k+w/PI),2.*n+2.);         /* 2nd summation           */
      }
    s*=pow(sin(w/2.)/(PI/2.),2.*n+2.);          /* scaling factor          */
    if(w==0) s+=1;                              /* 1st term: w=0 case      */
    else     s+=pow(sin(w/2.)/(w/2.),2.*n+2.);  /* 1st term: w!=0 case     */
    printf("(%lf, %lf)\n",w,s);                 /* print one data point    */
    }
  printf("]\n");                                /* LaTeX \fileplot support */
  return 0;
  }
```

2. The files produced by item (1) can be plotted within LaTeX using the pst-plot package.

```latex
%==========================================================================
% Daniel J. Greenhoe
% LaTeX file
% auto-power spectrum plots for B-splines of order n=0,1,2,3
% nominal xunit = 10mm
% nominal yunit = 20mm
%==========================================================================
\begin{pspicture}(-8.5,-0.25)(9,1.25)%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % axes
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psaxes[linecolor=axis,linewidth=0.75pt,yAxis=false,ticks=none,labels=none]{<->}(0,0)(-8.5,0)(8.5,1.25)% x-axis
  \psaxes[linecolor=axis,linewidth=0.75pt,xAxis=false,ticks=none,labels=none]{->}(0,0)(-8.5,0)(8.5,1.25)% y-axis
  %-----------------------------------------
  % y-axis guide lines
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](-8.5,0.333333)(8.5,0.333333)% min line for n=1 B-spline
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](-8.5,0.133333)(8.5,0.133333)% min line for n=2 B-spline
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](-8.5,0.053968)(8.5,0.053968)% min line for n=3 B-spline
  %-----------------------------------------
  % x-axis labeling
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](3.1415927,0)(3.1415927,1)%
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](-3.1415927,0)(-3.1415927,1)%
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](6.283185,0)(6.283185,1)%
  \psline[linecolor=red,linestyle=dashed,linewidth=0.75pt](-6.283185,0)(-6.283185,1)%
  \uput{2pt}[0](8.5,0){$\omega$}%
  \uput{2pt}[-90](0,0){$0$}%
  \uput{2pt}[-90](-6.2831853071795864769252867665 59,0){$-2\pi$}%
  \uput{2pt}[-90](-3.1415926535897932384626433832795,0){$-\pi$}%
  \uput{2pt}[-90](3.1415926535897932384626433832795,0){$\pi$}%
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

```
  \uput{2pt}[-90](6.28318530717958647692528676655 9,0){$2\pi$}%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % data plot
  %-----------------------------------------
  \psline(-8,1)(8,1)%                                          order n=0 B-spline data plot
  \fileplot{../../common/math/graphics/bsplines/Snn_bspline1.dat}% order n=1 B-spline data plot
  \fileplot{../../common/math/graphics/bsplines/Snn_bspline2.dat}% order n=2 B-spline data plot
  \fileplot{../../common/math/graphics/bsplines/Snn_bspline3.dat}% order n=3 B-spline data plot
  %-----------------------------------------
  % data plot lables
  %-----------------------------------------
  \uput{2pt}[90](1.9,1){$n=0$}%
  \uput{2pt}[90](3.1415297,0.333333){$n=1$}%
  \uput{2pt}[90](3.1415297,0.133333){$n=2$}%
  \uput{2pt}[-45](4.5,0.335){$n=3$}%
  %-----------------------------------------
  % y-axis labels
  %-----------------------------------------
  \uput*{2mm}[180](0,1){$1$}%
  \uput*{2mm}[180](0,0.333333){$\sfrac{1}{3}\approx0.33$}%   min value for n=1 B-spline
  \uput*{2mm}[180](0,0.133333){$\sfrac{2}{15}\approx0.13$}%  min value for n=2 B-spline
  \uput*{2mm}[0](0,0.053968){$\sfrac{17}{315}\approx0.054$}% min value for n=3 B-spline
\end{pspicture}%
```

3. The LaTeX source listed in item (2) can be made to output a pdf file with tight borders using the preview package and[4]

```
\usepackage[active,tightpage]{preview}%
\PreviewBorder=0pt%
\PreviewEnvironment{pspicture}%
```

```
%==========================================================================
% Daniel J. Greenhoe
% XeLaTeX file
% generate tight pdf graphics file for inclusion in a document
% nominal unit = 10mm
% nominal font size = \scriptsize
%=========================================================================
\input{shelltop.tex}%
\begin{document}%
  %\gsize%
  %\scriptsize%
  %\psset{unit=1\latunit}%
  \psset{xunit=1.0\latunit}%
  \psset{yunit=2.0\latunit}%
  \input{../../common/math/graphics/bsplines/Snn_bspline.tex}%
\end{document}%
```

4. The source listed in item (3) uses a file called shelltop.tex:

```
%==========================================================================
% Daniel J. Greenhoe
% XeLaTeX file
% preamble packages for shell files to
% generate tight pdf graphics file for inclusion in a document
%=========================================================================
\documentclass{article}%
%-----------------------------------------
% Style Packages
%-----------------------------------------
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/packages}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/switches}  %
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/fonts}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/dan}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/colors_rgb}%
%\usepackage{../../common/sty/colors_cmyk}%
%\usepackage{../../common/sty/colors_gray}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/math}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/wavelets}%
%\usepackage{../../common/sty/language}%
  \usepackage{../../common/sty/defaults}  % default values
```

[4] http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/25400/ps2pdf-depscrop-stops-short-with-pstricks-uput

```
%-----------------------------------------
% color space
%-----------------------------------------
%\selectcolormodel{cmyk}% use cmyk color model
 \selectcolormodel{rgb}% use rgb color model
%-----------------------------------------
% redefine some commands
%-----------------------------------------
%\newcommand{\struct}[1]{{#1}\index{#1}\index{structures!#1}}% place here and in the index and under index structures! heading
%\newcommand{\structe}[1]{\emph{#1}\index{#1}\index{structures!#1}}% place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
%\newcommand{\structb}[1]{\textbf{#1}\index{#1}\index{structures!#1}}% place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
%\newcommand{\structd}[1]{\textbf{#1}\index{#1|textbf}\index{structures!#1|textbf}\index{definitions!#1|textb
place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
\renewcommand{\struct}[1]{{#1}}% place here and in the index and under index structures! heading
\renewcommand{\structe}[1]{\emph{#1}}% place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
\renewcommand{\structb}[1]{\textbf{#1}}% place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
\renewcommand{\structd}[1]{\textbf{#1}}% place here with emphasis and in the index and under index structures! heading
%-----------------------------------------
% preview mode
% reference:
http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/25400/ps2pdf-depscrop-stops-short-with-pstricks-uput
%-----------------------------------------
\usepackage[active,tightpage]{preview}%
\PreviewBorder=0pt%
\PreviewEnvironment{pspicture}%
```


Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Back Matter

❝It appears to me that if one wants to make progress in mathematics, one should study the masters and not the pupils.❞
Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829), Norwegian mathematician [5]

❝When evening comes, I return home and go to my study. On the threshold I strip naked, taking off my muddy, sweaty workaday clothes, and put on the robes of court and palace, and in this graver dress I enter the courts of the ancients and am welcomed by them, and there I taste the food that alone is mine, and for which I was born. And there I make bold to speak to them and ask the motives of their actions, and they, in their humanity reply to me. And for the space of four hours I forget the world, remember no vexation, fear poverty no more, tremble no more at death; I pass indeed into their world.❞
Niccolò Machiavelli (1469–1527), Italian political philosopher, in a 1513 letter to friend Francesco Vettori. [6]

ancient library of Alexandria

The Book Worm by *Carl Spitzweg*, circa 1850 [7]

❝To sit alone in the lamplight with a book spread out before you, and hold intimate converse with men of unseen generations—such is a pleasure beyond compare.❞
Yoshida Kenko (Urabe Kaneyoshi) (1283? – 1350?), Japanese author and Buddhist monk [8]

[5] quote: Simmons (2007), page 187.
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Niels_Henrik_Abel.jpg, public domain
[6] quote: Machiavelli (1961), page 139?.
image: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Santi_di_Tito_-_Niccolo_Machiavelli%27s_portrait_headcrop.jpg, public domain
[7] http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Ancientlibraryalex.jpg, public domain http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Carl_Spitzweg_021.jpg,

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe
BY-NC-ND

[8] quote: Kenko (circa 1330)
image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yoshida_Kenko

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Niels Henrik Abel. Untersuchungenüber die reihe $1+\frac{m}{1}x+\frac{m\cdot(m-1)}{2}x^2+\frac{m(m-1)(m-2)}{2\cdot 3}x^3\cdots$ u.s.w. *Journal für die rein und angewandte Mathematik (Crelle's Journal)*, 1.4:311–339, 1826.

Yuri A. Abramovich and Charalambos D. Aliprantis. *An Invitation to Operator Theory*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, 2002. ISBN 0-8218-2146-6. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821821466.

Milton Abramowitz and Irene A. Stegun, editors. *Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables*. National Bureau of Standards, 1972. URL http://www.cs.bham.ac.uk/~aps/research/projects/as/book.php.

Edward H. Adelson and Peter J. Burt. Image data compression with the laplacian pyramid. In *Proceedings of the Pattern Recognition and Information Processing Conference*, pages 218–223, Dallas Texas, 1981. IEEE Computer Society Press. URL citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/summary?doi=10.1.1.50.791.

M.R. Adhikari and A. Adhikari. *Groups, Rings And Modules With Applications*. Universities Press, Hyderabad, 2 edition, 2003. ISBN 978-8173714290. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8173714290.

Adobe. *PostScript Language Reference*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, Massachusetts, 1999. ISBN 0-201-37922-8. URL http://wwwimages.adobe.com/content/dam/Adobe/en/devnet/postscript/pdfs/PLRM.pdf.

Martin Aigner. *A Course in Enumeration*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, 1 edition, 2007. ISBN 978-3540390329. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/3540390324.

Donald J. Albers and Freeman Dyson. Freeman dyson: Mathematician, physicist, and writer. *The College Mathematics Journal*, 25(1):3–21, January 1994. doi: 10.2307/2687079. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2687079.

Charalambos D. Aliprantis and Owen Burkinshaw. *Principles of Real Analysis*. Acedemic Press, London, 3 edition, 1998. ISBN 9780120502578. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0120502577.

Luis Alvarez, Frédéric Guichard, Pierre-Louis Lions, and Jean Michel Morel. Axioms and fundamental equations of image processing. *Archive for Rational Mechanics and Analysis*, 123(3):199–257, 1993. URL http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/BF00375127.

Herbert Amann and Joachim Escher. *Analysis II*. Birkhäauser Verlag AG, Basel–Boston–Berlin, 2008. ISBN 978-3-7643-7472-3. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3764374721.

George E. Andrews, Richard Askey, and Ranjan Roy. *Special Functions*, volume 71 of *Encyclopedia of mathematics and its applications*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K., new edition, February 15 2001. ISBN 0521789885. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521789885.

Tom M. Apostol. *Mathematical Analysis*. Addison-Wesley series in mathematics. Addison-Wesley, Reading, 2 edition, 1975. ISBN 986-154-103-9. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0201002884.

Kendall E. Atkinson and Weimin Han. *Theoretical Numerical Analysis: A Functional Analysis Framework*, volume 39 of *Texts in Applied Mathematics*. Springer, 3 edition, 2009. ISBN 9781441904584. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1441904581.

Léon Autonne. Sur l'hermitien (on the hermitian). In *Comptes Rendus Des SéAnces De L'AcadéMie Des Sciences*, volume 133, pages 209–268. De L'Académie des sciences (Academy of Sciences), Paris, 1901. URL http://visualiseur.bnf.fr/Visualiseur?O=NUMM-3089. Comptes Rendus Des SéAnces De L'AcadéMie Des Sciences (Reports Of the Meetings Of the Academy of Science).

Léon Autonne. Sur l'hermitien (on the hermitian). *Rendiconti del Circolo Matematico di Palermo*, 16:104–128, 1902. Rendiconti del Circolo Matematico di Palermo (Statements of the Mathematical Circle of Palermo).

Claude Gaspard Bachet. *Arithmétiques de Diophante*. 1621. URL http://www.bsb-muenchen-digital.de/~web/web1008/bsb10081407/images/index.html?digID=bsb10081407.

George Bachman. *Elements of Abstract Harmonic Analysis*. Academic paperbacks. Academic Press, New York, 1964. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=ZP8-AAAAIAAJ.

George Bachman and Lawrence Narici. *Functional Analysis*. Academic Press textbooks in mathematics; Pure and Applied Mathematics Series. Academic Press, 1 edition, 1966. ISBN 9780486402512. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486402517. "unabridged republication" available from Dover (isbn 0486402517).

George Bachman, Lawrence Narici, and Edward Beckenstein. *Fourier and Wavelet Analysis*. Universitext Series. Springer, 2000. ISBN 9780387988993. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387988998.

David H. Bailey, Jonathan M. Borwein, and Andrew Mattingly. The computation of previously inaccessible digits of π^2 and catalan's constant (2013). page 23, March 24 2011. URL https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/0b15/22a1b2f76729e19be2be1bca9f57031a4db9.pdf.

David H. Bailey, Jonathan M. Borwein, and Andrew Mattingly. 20. the computation of previously inaccessible digits of π^2 and catalan's constant (2013). In *Pi: The Next Generation: A Sourcebook on the Recent History of Pi and Its Computation*, pages 324–339. Springer, 2013. ISBN 9783319323770. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3319323776.

V. K. Balakrishnan. *Introductory Discrete Mathematics*. Dover books on mathematics. Dover Publications, Dover books on mathematics, 1996. ISBN 0486691152. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486691152.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Stefan Banach. Sur les opérations dans les ensembles abstraits et leur applications aux équations intégrales (on abstract operations and their applications to the integral equations). *Fundamenta Mathematicae*, 3:133–181, 1922. URL http://matwbn.icm.edu.pl/ksiazki/fm/fm3/fm3120.pdf.

Stefan Banach. *Théorie des opérations linéaires*. Monografje Matematyczne, Warsaw, Poland, 1932a. URL http://matwbn.icm.edu.pl/kstresc.php?tom=1&wyd=10. (Theory of linear operations).

Stefan Banach. *Theory of Linear Operations*, volume 38 of *North-Holland mathematical library*. North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1932b. ISBN 0444701842. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0444701842/. English translation of 1932 French edition, published in 1987.

Edward Barbeau. *Polynomials*. Problem Books in Mathematics. Springer, New York, 1989. ISBN 0-387-96919-5. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387406271.

Adi Ben-Israel and Robert P. Gilbert. *Computer-supported calculus*. Texts and monographs in symbolic computation. Springer, 2002. ISBN 3-211-82924-5. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3211829245.

John Benedetto and Ahmed I. Zayed, editors. *A Prelude to Sampling, Wavelets, and Tomography*, pages 1–32. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Springer, 2004. ISBN 9780817643041. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817643044.

Sterling Khazag Berberian. *Introduction to Hilbert Space*. Oxford University Press, New York, 1961. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821819127.

Daniel Bernoulli. Expectation of a new theory on the measurement of risk. *Econometrica*, 22(1):23–36, 1783. URL http://msuweb.montclair.edu/~lebelp/BernoulliDRiskEc19541738.pdf. This article was originally published in Latin and has been translated into English. The English version was published January 1954.

D. Besso. Teoremi elementari sui massimi i minimi. *Annuari Ist. Tech. Roma*, pages 7–24, 1879. see Bullen(2003) pages 453, 203.

Etienne Bézout. *Théorie Générale des équations Algébriques*. 1779a. URL http://books.google.com.tw/books?id=RDEVAAAAQAAJ. (General Theory of Algebraic Equations).

Etienne Bézout. *General Theory of Algebraic Equations*. Princeton University Press, 1779b. ISBN 978-0691114323. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0691114323. 2006 translation of Théorie générale des équations algébriques (1779).

M. Jales Bienaymé. Société philomatique de paris—extraits des procès-verbaux. *Scéance*, pages 67–68, June 13 1840. URL http://www.archive.org/details/extraitsdesproc46183941soci. see Bullen(2003) pages 453, 203.

Duncan Black, Ian Brooks, and et al. Robert Groves, editors. *Collins English Dictionary—Complete and Unabridged*. HarperCollins Publishers, 10 edition, 2009. ISBN 978-0-00-732119-3. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780007321193.

Ralph Philip Boas. *Entire Functions*, volume 5 of *Pure and Applied Mathematics. A Series of Monographs and Text Books*. Academic Press, 1954. ISBN 9780123745828. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0123745829.

Béla Bollobás. *Linear Analysis; an introductory course*. Cambridge mathematical textbooks. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2 edition, March 1 1999. ISBN 978-0521655774. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521655773.

Daniel D. Bonar, Michael J. Khoury Jr., and Michael Khoury. *Real Infinite Series*. Mathematical Association of America Textbooks. Mathematical Association of America, 2006. ISBN 9780883857458. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0883857456.

Peter B. Borwein and Tamás Erdélyi. *Polynomials and Polynomial Inequalities*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics Series. Springer, 1995. ISBN 9780387945095. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387945091.

Umberto Bottazzini. *The Higher Calculus: A History of Real and Complex Analysis from Euler to Weierstrass*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1986. ISBN 0-387-96302-2. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387963022.

V. Bouniakowsky. Sur quelques inégalités concernant les intégrales ordinaires et les intégrales aux différences finies. *Mémoires de lÁcad. de St.-Pétersbourg*, 1(9), 1859. URL http://www-stat.wharton.upenn.edu/~steele/Publications/Books/CSMC/CSMC_index.html.

Nicolas Bourbaki. *Algebra I*. Elements of Mathematics. Springer, 2003a. ISBN 3-540-64243-9. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540642439.

Nicolas Bourbaki. *Algebra II*. Elements of Mathematics. Springer, 2003b. ISBN 978-3540007067. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540007067.

Carl Benjamin Boyer and Uta C. Merzbach. *A History of Mathematics*. Wiley, New York, 2 edition, 1991. ISBN 0471543977. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0471543977.

Carl Benjamin Boyer and Uta C. Merzbach. *A History of Mathematics*. Wiley, New York, 3 edition, January 11 2011. ISBN 0470525487. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0470525487.

Ronald Newbold Bracewell. *The Fourier transform and its applications*. McGraw-Hill electrical and electronic engineering series. McGraw-Hill, 2, illustrated, international student edition edition, 1978. ISBN 9780070070134. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN007007013X.

Thomas John I'Anson Bromwich. *An Introduction to the Theory of Infinite Series*. Macmillan and Company, 1 edition, 1908. ISBN 9780821839768. URL http://www.archive.org/details/anintroductiont00bromgoog.

Andrew M. Bruckner, Judith B. Bruckner, and Brian S. Thomson. *Real Analysis*. Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, N.J., 1997. ISBN 9780134588865. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN013458886X.

P. S. Bullen. *Handbook of Means and Their Inequalities*, volume 560 of *Mathematics and Its Applications*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, Boston, 2 edition, 2003. ISBN 9781402015229. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1402015224.

C. Sidney Burrus, Ramesh A. Gopinath, and Haitao Guo. *Introduction to Wavelets and Wavelet Transforms; A Primer*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey, USA, 1998. ISBN 0-13-489600-9. URL http://www.dsp.rice.edu/software/wavebook.shtml.

Peter J. Burt and Edward H. Adelson. The laplacian pyramid as a compact image code. *IEEE Transactions On Communications*, COM-3L(4):532–540, April 1983. URL http://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/burt83laplacian.html.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Charles L. Byrne. *Signal Processing: A Mathematical Approach*. AK Peters Series. A K Peters, 2005. ISBN 1568812426.

Florian Cajori. A history of mathematical notations; notations mainly in higher mathematics. In *A History of Mathematical Notations; Two Volumes Bound as One*, volume 2. Dover, Mineola, New York, USA, 1993. ISBN 0-486-67766-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486677664. reprint of 1929 edition by *The Open Court Publishing Company*.

Gerolamo Cardano. *Ars Magna or the Rules of Algebra*. Dover Publications, Mineola, New York, 1545. ISBN 0486458733. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0486458733. English translation of the Latin *Ars Magna* edition, published in 2007.

Lennart Axel Edvard Carleson. Convergence and growth of partial sums of fourier series. *Acta Mathematica*, 116(1):135–157, 1966. doi: 10.1007/BF02392815. URL http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/BF02392815.

Lennart Axel Edvard Carleson and Björn Engquist. *After the 'golden age': what next? Lennart Carleson interviewed by Björn Engquist*, pages 455–461. Springer, Berlin, 2001. ISBN 978-3-540-66913-5. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540669132.

N. L. Carothers. *A Short Course on Banach Space Theory*. Number 64 in London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005. ISBN 0521842832. URL http://www.comm.musashi-tech.ac.jp/~arimoto/Drarimoto/preprints/calothers/Assemble.ps.

N.L. Carothers. *Real Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2000. ISBN 978-0521497565. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521497566.

Peter G. Casazza and Mark C. Lammers. *Bracket Products for Weyl-Heisenberg Frames*, pages 71–98. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, 1998. ISBN 9780817639594.

Clémente Ibarra Castanedo. *Quantitative subsurface defect evaluation by pulsed phase thermography: depth retrieval with the phase*. PhD thesis, Université Laval, October 2005. URL http://archimede.bibl.ulaval.ca/archimede/fichiers/23016/23016.html. Faculte' Des Sciences Et De Génie.

Augustin-Louis Cauchy. *Part 1: Analyse Algebrique*. Cours D'Analyse de L'école Royale Polytechnique. Debure frères, Paris, 1821. ISBN 2-87647-053-5. URL http://www.archive.org/details/coursdanalysede00caucgoog. Systems design course of the Polytechnic Royal School; 1st Part: Algebraic analysis).

Ernest Cesàro. Sur la multiplication des séries. *Bulletin des Sciences Mathématiques*, 14(2):114–120, 1890.

Lindsay Childs. *A Concrete Introduction To Higher Algebra*. Undergraduate texts in mathematics. Springer, New York, 3 edition, 2009. ISBN 978-0-387-74527-5. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387745270.

Alexandre J. Chorin and Ole H. Hald. *Stochastic Tools in Mathematics and Science*, volume 1 of *Surveys and Tutorials in the Applied Mathematical Sciences*. Springer, New York, 2 edition, 2009. ISBN 978-1-4419-1001-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781441910011.

Ole Christensen. *An Introduction to Frames and Riesz Bases*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston/Basel/Berlin, 2003. ISBN 0-8176-4295-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817642951.

Ole Christensen. *Frames and bases: An Introductory Course*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston/Basel/Berlin, 2008. ISBN 9780817646776. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817646779.

Ole Christensen. *Functions, Spaces, and Expansions: Mathematical Tools in Physics and Engineering*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston/Basel/Berlin, 2010. ISBN 978-0-8176-4979-1. doi: 10.1007/978-0-8176-4980-7. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817649794.

Charles K. Chui. *Multivariate Splines*, volume 54 of *CBMS-NSF regional conference series in applied mathematics*. SIAM, 1988. ISBN 1611970172. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1611970172.

Charles K. Chui. *An Introduction to Wavelets*. Academic Press, San Diego, California, USA, January 3 1992. ISBN 9780121745844. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0121745848.

Jon F. Claerbout. *Fundamentals of Geophysical Data Processing with Applications to Petroleum Prospecting*. International series in the earth and planetary sciences, Tab Mastering Electronics Series. McGraw-Hill, New York, 1976. ISBN 9780070111172. URL http://sep.stanford.edu/sep/prof/.

Paul M. Cohn. *Basic Algebra; Groups, Rings and Fields*. Springer, December 6 2002. ISBN 1852335874. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn1852335874.

J. L. Coolidge. The story of the binomial theorem. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 56(3): 147–157, March 1949. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2305028.

A. Córdoba. Dirac combs. *Letters in Mathematical Physics*, 17(3):191–196, 1989. URL https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00401584. print ISSN 0377-9017 online ISSN 1573-0530.

M. G. Cox. The numerical evaluation of b-splines. *IMA Journal of Applied Mathematics*, 10(2):134–149, 1972. doi: 10.1093/imamat/10.2.134. URL http://imamat.oxfordjournals.org/content/10/2/134.abstract.

Xingde Dai and David R. Larson. *Wandering vectors for unitary systems and orthogonal wavelets*. Number 640 in Memoirs of the American Mathematical Society. American Mathematical Society, Providence R.I., July 1998. ISBN 0821808001. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821808001.

Xingde Dai and Shijie Lu. Wavelets in subspaces. *Michigan Math. J.*, 43(1):81–98, 1996. doi: 10.1307/mmj/1029005391. URL http://projecteuclid.org/euclid.mmj/1029005391.

Ingrid Daubechies. *Ten Lectures on Wavelets*. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Philadelphia, 1992. ISBN 0-89871-274-2. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0898712742.

Ingrid Daubechies, A. Grossman, and Y. Meyer. Painless nonorthogonal expansions. *Journal of Mathematical Physics*, 27(5):1271–1283, May 1986. ISSN 0022-2488. URL link.aip.org/link/?jmp/27/1271.

Kenneth R. Davidson and Allan P. Donsig. *Real Analysis and Applications*. Springer, 2010. ISBN 9781441900050. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1441900055.

Charles Jean de la Vallée-Poussin. Sur l'intégrale de lebesgue. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 16(4):435–501, October 1915. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/1988879.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Pierre Rémond de Montmort, editor. *Essay D'analyse sur Les Jeux de Hazard*, volume 307. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, 2 edition, 1713. ISBN 978-0-8218-3781-8. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780821837818. "Essays on the analysis of games of chance", 2006 AMS reprint edition, An English translation concerning the *St. Petersburg Paradox* correspondence by Richard J. Pulskamp called "Correspondence of Nicolas Bernoulli concerning the St. Petersburg Game" is available at http://www.cs.xu.edu/math/Sources/Montmort/stpetersburg.pdf.

Juan-Arias de Reyna. *Pointwise Convergence of Fourier Series*, volume 1785 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin/Heidelberg/New York, 2002. ISBN 3540432701. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540432701.

Carl R. de Boor. On calculating with b-splines. *Journal of Approximation Theory*, pages 50–62, 1972.

Carl R. de Boor. *A Practical Guide to Splines*, volume 27 of *Applied Mathematical Sciences*. Springer, revised edition, 2001. ISBN 0387953663. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387953663.

René Descartes. *La géométrie*. 1637a. URL http://historical.library.cornell.edu/math/math_D.html.

René Descartes. *Discours de la méthode pour bien conduire sa raison, et chercher la verite' dans les sciences*. Jan Maire, Leiden, 1637b. URL http://www.gutenberg.org/etext/13846.

René Descartes. *Discourse on the Method of Rightly Conducting the Reason in the Search for Truth in the Sciences*. 1637c. URL http://www.gutenberg.org/etext/59.

René Descartes. *Regulae ad directionem ingenii*. 1684a. URL http://www.fh-augsburg.de/~harsch/Chronologia/Lspost17/Descartes/des_re00.html.

René Descartes. *Rules for Direction of the Mind*. 1684b. URL http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Rules_for_the_Direction_of_the_Mind.

René Descartes. *The Geometry of Rene Descartes*. Courier Dover Publications, June 1 1954. ISBN 0486600688. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0486600688. orginally published by Open Court Publishing, Chicago, 1925; translation of La géométrie.

Jean Alexandre Dieudonné. *Foundations of Modern Analysis*. Academic Press, New York, 1969. ISBN 1406727911. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1406727911.

R. J. Duffin and A. C. Schaeffer. A class of nonharmonic fourier series. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 72(2):341–366, March 1952. ISSN 1088-6850. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/1990760.

Bogdan Dumitrescu. *Positive Trigonometric Polynomials and Signal Processing Applications*. Signals and Communication Technology. Springer, 2007. ISBN 978-1-4020-5124-1. URL gen.lib.rus.ec/get?md5=5346e169091b2d928d8333cd053300f9.

Nelson Dunford and Jacob T. Schwartz. *Linear operators. Part 1, General Theory*, volume 7 of *Pure and applied mathematics*. Interscience Publishers, New York, 1957. ISBN 0471226394. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471608483. with the assistance of William G. Bade and Robert G. Bartle.

John R. Durbin. *Modern Algebra; An Introduction*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 4 edition, 2000. ISBN 0-471-32147-8. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0471321478.

Anthony William Fairbank Edwards. *Pascal's Arithmetical Triangle: The Story of a Mathematical Idea*. John Hopkins University Press, 2002. ISBN 0801869463. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0801869463.

Robert E. Edwards. *Functional Analysis: Theory and Applications*. Dover books on mathematics. Dover, New York, 1995. ISBN 0-486-68143-2. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486681432.

Yuli Eidelman, Vitali D. Milman, and Antonis Tsolomitis. *Functional Analysis: An Introduction*, volume 66 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, 2004. ISBN 0821836463. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821836463.

Per Enflo. A counterexample to the approximation problem in banach spaces. *Acta Mathematica*, 130:309–317, 1973. URL http://link.springer.com/content/pdf/10.1007/BF02392270.

Euclid. *Elements*. circa 300BC. URL http://farside.ph.utexas.edu/euclid.html.

Leonhard Euler. *Introductio in analysin infinitorum*, volume 1. Marcum-Michaelem Bousquet & Socios, Lausannæ, 1748. URL http://www.math.dartmouth.edu/~euler/pages/E101.html. Introduction to the Analysis of the Infinite.

Leonhard Euler. *Introduction to the Analysis of the Infinite*. Springer, 1988. ISBN 0387968245. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387968245. translation of 1748 Introductio in analysin infinitorum.

David Ewen. *The Book of Modern Composers*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 1950. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=yHw4AAAAIAAJ.

David Ewen. *The New Book of Modern Composers*. Alfred A. Knopf, New York, 3 edition, 1961. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=bZIaAAAAMAAJ.

Marián Fabian, Petr Habala, Petr Hájek, Vicente Montesinos, Vaclav Zizler, and Václav Zizler. *Banach Space Theory: The Basis for Linear and Nonlinear Analysis*. CMS Books in Mathematics. Springer, 2010. ISBN 1441975144. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn1441975144.

Lorenzo Farina and Sergio Rinaldi. *Positive Linear Systems: Theory and Applications*. Pure and applied mathematics. John Wiley & Sons, 1 edition, July 3 2000. ISBN 9780471384564. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0471384569.

Kevin Ferland. *Discrete Mathematics: An Introduction to Proofs and Combinatorics*. Cengage Learning, 2009. ISBN 0618415386. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0618415386.

G.L. Fix and G. Strang. Fourier analysis of the finite element method in ritz-galerkin theory. *Studies in Applied Mathematics*, 48:265–273, 1969.

Harley Flanders. Differentiation under the integral sign. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 80(6):615–627, June–July 1973. URL http://sgpwe.izt.uam.mx/files/users/uami/jdf/proyectos/Derivar_inetegral.pdf. http://www.jstor.org/pss/2319163.

Francis J. Flanigan. *Complex Variables; Harmonic and Analytic Functions*. Dover, New York, 1983. ISBN 9780486613888. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486613887.

Gerald B. Folland. *Fourier Analysis and its Applications*. Wadsworth & Brooks / Cole Advanced Books & Software, Pacific Grove, California, USA, 1992. ISBN 0-534-17094-3. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0534170943.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Brigitte Forster and Peter Massopust, editors. *Four Short Courses on Harmonic Analysis: Wavelets, Frames, Time-Frequency Methods, and Applications to Signal and Image Analysis*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Springer, November 19 2009. ISBN 9780817648909. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817648909.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. Mémoire sur la propagation de la chaleur dans les corps solides (dissertation on the propagation of heat in solid bodies). In M. Gaston Darboux, editor, *Œuvres De Fourier*, pages 215–221. Ministère de L'instruction Publique, Paris, France, 2 edition, December 21 1807. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k33707/f220n7.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. Refroidissement séculaire du globe terrestre". In M. Gaston Darboux, editor, *Œuvres De Fourier*, volume 2, pages 271–288. Ministère de L'instruction Publique, Paris, France, April 1820. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k33707/f276.image. original paper at pages 58–70.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. *Théorie Analytique de la Chaleur (The Analytical Theory of Heat)*. Chez Firmin Didot, pere et fils, Paris, 1822. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=04X2vlqZx7hydlQUWEq&id=TDQJAAAAIAAJ.

Jean-Baptiste-Joseph Fourier. *The Analytical Theory of Heat (Théorie Analytique de la Chaleur)*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, February 20 1878. URL http://www.archive.org/details/analyticaltheory00fourrich. 1878 English translation of the original 1822 French edition. A 2003 Dover edition is also available: isbn 0486495310.

Ferdinand Georg Frobenius. Uber lineare substitutionen und bilineare formen. *Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik (Crelle's Journal)*, 84:1–63, 1878. ISSN 0075-4102. URL http://www.digizeitschriften.de/home/services/pdfterms/?ID=509796.

Ferdinand Georg Frobenius. Uber lineare substitutionen und bilineare formen. In Jean Pierre Serre, editor, *Gesammelte Abhandlungen (Collected Papers)*, volume I, pages 343–405. Springer, Berlin, 1968. URL http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/253015. reprint of Frobenius' 1878 paper.

Paul Abraham Fuhrmann. *A Polynomial Approach to Linear Algebra*. Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, 2 edition, 2012. ISBN 978-1461403371. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1461403375.

Dennis Gabor. Theory of communication. *Journal of the Institution of Electrical Engineers*, 93(26): 429–457, November 1946. URL http://bigwww.epfl.ch/chaudhury/gabor.pdf.

Jean Gallier. *Discrete Mathematics*. Universitext. Springer, 2010. ISBN 1441980466. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1441980466.

Carl Friedrich Gauss. *Carl Friedrich Gauss Werke*, volume 8. Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften, B.G. Teubneur In Leipzig, Göttingen, 1900. URL http://gdz.sub.uni-goettingen.de/dms/load/img/?PPN=PPN236010751.

Israel M. Gelfand and Mark A. Naimark. *Normed Rings with an Involution and their Representations*, pages 240–274. Chelsea Publishing Company, Bronx, 1964. ISBN 0821820222. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821820222.

John Robilliard Giles. *Introduction to the Analysis of Normed Linear Spaces*. Number 13 in Australian Mathematical Society lecture series. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2000. ISBN 0-521-65375-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521653754.

T. N. T. Goodman, S. L. Lee, and W. S. Tang. Wavelets in wandering subspaces. *Transactions of the A.M.S.*, 338(2):639–654, August 1993a. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2154421. Transactions of the American Mathematical Society.

T. N. T. Goodman, S. L. Lee, and W. S. Tang. Wavelets in wandering subspaces. *Advances in Computational Mathematics 1*, pages 109–126, February 1993b.

Jaideva C. Goswami and Andrew K. Chan. *Fundamentals of Wavelets; Theory, Algorithms, and Applications*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999. ISBN 0-471-19748-3. URL http://vadkudr.boom.ru/Collection/fundwave_contents.html.

Ronald L. Graham, Donald Ervin Knuth, and Oren Patashnik. *Concrete Mathematics: A Foundation for Computer Science*. Addison-Wesley, 2 edition, 1994. ISBN 0201558025. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0201558025.

Andrew Granville. Zaphod beeblebrox's brain and the fifty–ninth row of pascal's triangle. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 99(4):318–331, April 1992. URL http://mathdl.maa.org/mathDL/22/?pa=content&sa=viewDocument&nodeId=2709.

Andrew Granville. Correction to: Zaphod beeblebrox's brain and the fifty–ninth row of pascal's triangle. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 104(9):848–851, November 1997. URL http://www.gianpierobiancoli.it/wp-content/uploads/2009/10/beeb.pdf.

Ivor Grattan-Guinness. *Convolutions in French mathematics, 1800-1840: from the calculus and mechanics to mathematical analysis and mathematical physics. Volume I: The Settings*, volume 2 of *Science networks. Historical Studies*. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 1 edition, 1990. ISBN 9783764322373. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3764322373.

Daniel J. Greenhoe. *Structure and Analysis of Mathematical Spaces*, volume 2 of *Mathematical Structure and Design series*. version 0.30 edition, January 2017a. URL https://www.researchgate.net/publication/312201065.

Daniel J. Greenhoe. The sequence a(n,m) of the m polynomial coefficients of the n-th order b-spline scaled by n!, read by rows, with n in 0,1,2,... and m in 1,2,3,...,(n+1)2. *Online Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences*, July 2017b. URL https://oeis.org/A289358.

Jonathan L. Gross. *Combinatorial Methods with Computer Applications*, volume 45 of *Discrete Mathematics and its Applications*. CRC Press, 2008. ISBN 1584887435. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1584887435.

Frédéric Guichard, Jean-Michel Morel, and Robert Ryan. Contrast invariant image analysis and pde's. 2012. URL http://dev.ipol.im/~morel/JMMBook2012.pdf.

Ernst Adolph Guillemin. *Synthesis of Passive Networks: Theory and Methods Appropriate to the Realization and Approximation Problems*. John Wiley & Sons, 1957. ISBN 9780882754819. URL http://books.google.com.tw/books?id=JQ4nAAAAMAAJ.

Amritava Gupta. *Real & Abstract Analysis*. Academic Publishers Calcutta, 1998. ISBN 9788186358443. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8186358447. first published in 1998, reprinted in 2000 and 2006.

Alfréd Haar. Zur theorie der orthogonalen funktionensysteme. *Mathematische Annalen*, 69:331–371, September 1910. ISSN 1432-1807. doi: 10.1007/BF01456326.

Norman B. Haaser and Joseph A. Sullivan. *Real Analysis*. Dover Publications, New York, 1991. ISBN 0-486-66509-7. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486665097.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Paul R. Haddad and Ali N. Akansu. *Multiresolution Signal Decomposition: Transforms, Subbands, and Wavelets*. Acedemic Press, October 1 1992. ISBN 0323138365. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0323138365.

Henry Sinclair Hall and Samuel Ratcliffe Knight. *Higher algebra, a sequel to elementary algebra for schools*. Macmillan, London, 1894. URL http://www.archive.org/details/higheralgebraas00kniggoog.

Paul R. Halmos. *Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces*. Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1 edition, 1948. ISBN 0691090955. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0691090955.

Paul R. Halmos. *Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2 edition, 1958. ISBN 0-387-90093-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387900934.

Paul R. Halmos. *Intoduction to Hilbert Space and the Theory of Spectral Multiplicity*. Chelsea Publishing Company, New York, 2 edition, 1998. ISBN 0821813781. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821813781.

Georg Hamel. Eine basis aller zahlen und die unstetigen lösungen der funktionalgleichung $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$. *Mathematische Annalen*, 60(3):459–462, 1905. URL http://gdz.sub.uni-goettingen.de/dms/load/img/?PPN=GDZPPN002260395&IDDOC=28580.

Deguang Han, Keri Kornelson, David Larson, and Eric Weber. *Frames for Undergraduates*, volume 40 of *Student Mathematical Library*. American Mathematical Society, 2007. ISBN 0821842129. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821842129. Deguang Han = ???

G.H. Hardy. Prolegomena to a chapter on inequalities. *Journal of the London Mathematical Society*, 1–4:61–78, November 8 1929. URL http://jlms.oxfordjournals.org/content/vols1-4/issue13/index.dtl#PRESIDENTIAL_ADDRESS. "Presidential Address" to the London Mathematical Society.

Godfrey H. Hardy. *A Mathematician's Apology*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1940. URL http://www.math.ualberta.ca/~mss/misc/A%20Mathematician's%20Apology.pdf.

Godfrey Harold Hardy. Notes on special systems of orthogonal functions (iv): the orthogonal functions of whittaker's cardinal series. *Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*, 37(4):331–348, October 1941. URL http://dx.doi.org/10.1017/S0305004100017977.

Godfrey Harold Hardy. *Divergent Series*. Oxford University Press, 1949. URL http://archive.org/details/divergentseries033523mbp.

Godfrey Harold Hardy, John Edensor Littlewood, and George Pólya. *Inequalities*. Cambridge Mathematical Library. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2 edition, 1952. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521358809.

John Michael Harris, Jeffry L. Hirst, and Michael J. Mossinghoff. *Combinatorics and Graph Theory*. Undergraduate texts in mathematics. Springer, 2 edition, 2008. ISBN 0387797106. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387797106.

Felix Hausdorff. *Set Theory*. Chelsea Publishing Company, New York, 3 edition, 1937. ISBN 0828401195. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0828401195. 1957 translation of the 1937 German *Grundzüge der Mengenlehre*.

Jean Van Heijenoort. *From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book in Mathematical Logic, 1879-1931*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1967. URL http://www.hup.harvard.edu/catalog/VANFGX.html.

Christopher Heil. *A Basis Theory Primer*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, Boston, expanded edition edition, 2011. ISBN 9780817646868. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780817646868.

Christopher E. Heil and David F. Walnut. Continuous and discrete wavelet transforms. *Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics*, 31(4), December 1989. URL http://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.132.1241&rep=rep1&type=pdf.

J. H. Heinbockel. *Introduction to Finite and Infinite Series and Related Topics*. Trafford Publishing, 2010. ISBN 9781426949548. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781426949545.

Charles Hermite. Lettre à stieltjes. In B. Baillaud and H. Bourget, editors, *Correspondance d'Hermite et de Stieltjes*, volume 2, pages 317–319. Gauthier-Villars, Paris, May 20 1893. published in 1905.

Eugenio Hernández and Guido Weiss. *A First Course on Wavelets*. CRC Press, New York, 1996. ISBN 0849382742. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849382742.

J. R. Higgins. Five short stories about the cardinal series. *Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society*, 12(1):45–89, 1985. URL http://www.ams.org/journals/bull/1985-12-01/S0273-0979-1985-15293-0/.

John Rowland Higgins. *Sampling Theory in Fourier and Signal Analysis: Foundations*. Oxford Science Publications. Oxford University Press, August 1 1996. ISBN 9780198596998. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0198596995.

Omar Hijab. *Introduction to Calculus and Classical Analysis*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, 3 edition, 2011. ISBN 9781441994875. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1441994874.

David Hilbert, Lothar Nordheim, and John von Neumann. über die grundlagen der quantenmechanik (on the bases of quantum mechanics). *Mathematische Annalen*, 98:1–30, 1927. ISSN 0025-5831 (print) 1432-1807 (online). URL http://dz-srv1.sub.uni-goettingen.de/cache/toc/D27776.html.

Otto Hölder. üeber einen mittelwerthssatz. *Göttingen Nachrichten*, pages 38–47, 1889. URL http://www.digizeitschriften.de/dms/img/?PPN=GDZPPN00252421X.

Klaus Höllig. *Finite Element Methods With B-Splines*, volume 26 of *Frontiers in Applied Mathematics*. SIAM, 2003. ISBN 0-89871-533-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0898715334.

Roger A. Horn and Charles R. Johnson. *Matrix Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1990. ISBN 0-521-30586-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0521305861. Library: QA188H66 1985.

Alfred Edward Housman. *More Poems*. Alfred A. Knopf, 1936. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=rTMiAAAAMAAJ.

Satoru Igari. *Real Analysis—With an Introduction to Wavelet Theory*, volume 177 of *Translations of mathematical monographs*. American Mathematical Society, 1996. ISBN 9780821821046. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821821040.

Robert J. Marks II. *Introduction to Shannon Sampling and Interpolation Theory*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1991. ISBN 0-387-97391-5,3-540-97391-5. URL http://marksmannet.com/RobertMarks/REPRINTS/1999_IntroductionToShannonSamplingAndInterpolationTheory.pdf.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Taizo Iijima. Basic theory of pattern observation. *Papers of Technical Group on Automata and Automatic Control*, December 1959. see Weickert 1999 for historical information.

Klaus Jänich. *Topology*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathamatics. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1984. ISBN 0387908927. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0387908927. translated from German edition *Topologie*.

A. J. E. M. Janssen. The zak transform: A signal transform for sampled time-continuous signals. *Philips Journal of Research*, 43(1):23–69, 1988.

Bjorn Jawerth and Wim Sweldens. An overview of wavelet based multiresolutional analysis. *SIAM Review*, 36:377–412, September 1994. URL http://cm.bell-labs.com/who/wim/papers/papers.html#overview.

Alan Jeffrey and Hui Hui Dai. *Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals*. Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals Series. Academic Press, 4 edition, January 18 2008. ISBN 9780080556840. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0080556841.

J. L. W. V. Jensen. Sur les fonctions convexes et les ine'galite's entre les valeurs moyennes (on the convex functions and the inequalities between the average values). *Acta Mathematica*, 30 (1):175–193, December 1906. ISSN 0001-5962. doi: 10.1007/BF02418571. URL http://www.springerlink.com/content/r55q1411g840j446/.

Leonard Benjamin William Jolley. *Summation of Series*. Dover, New York, second revised edition, 1961. URL http://plouffe.fr/simon/math/SummationofSeries.pdf.

Palle E. T. Jørgensen, Kathy Merrill, Judith Packer, and Lawrence W. Baggett. *Representations, Wavelets and Frames: A Celebration of the Mathematical Work of Lawrence Baggett*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser, 2008. ISBN 9780817646820. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817646825.

K. D. Joshi. *Applied Discrete Structures*. New Age International, New Delhi, 1997. ISBN 8122408265. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8122408265.

J.S.Chitode. *Signals And Systems*. Technical Publications, 2009. ISBN 9788184316780. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN818431678X.

Mikhail I. Kadets and Vladimir M. Kadets. *Series in Banach Spaces: Conditional and Unconditional Convergence*, volume 94 of *Operator Theory, Advances and Applications*. Springer/Birkhäuser, 1997. ISBN 9783764354015. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3764354011.

Jean-Pierre Kahane. Partial differential equations, trigonometric series, and the concept of function around 1800: a brief story about lagrange and fourier. In Dorina Mitrea and V. G. Mazía, editors, *Perspectives In Partial Differential Equations, Harmonic Analysis And Applications: a Volume in Honor of Vladimir G. Maz'ya's 70th birthday*, volume 79 of *Proceedings of Symposia in Pure Mathematics*, pages 187–206. American Mathematical Society, 2008. ISBN 0821844245. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821844245.

David W. Kammler. *A First Course in Fourier Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, 2 edition, 2008. ISBN 9780521883405. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521883407.

Edward Kasner and James Roy Newman. *Mathematics and the Imagination*. Simon and Schuster, 1940. ISBN 0486417034. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486417034. "unabridged and unaltered republication" available from Dover.

Djalil Kateb and Pierre Gilles Lemarié-Rieusset. The phase of the daubechies filters. *Revista Mathemática Iberoamericana*, 13(2):245–305, 1997. URL http://rmi.rsme.es/.

Yitzhak Katznelson. *An Introduction to Harmonic Analysis*. Cambridge mathematical library. Cambridge University Press, 3 edition, 2004. ISBN 0521543592. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521543592.

James P. Keener. *Principles of Applied Mathematics; Transformation and Approximation*. Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, Reading, Massachusets, 1988. ISBN 0-201-15674-1. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0201156741.

John Leroy Kelley. *General Topology*. University Series in Higher Mathematics. Van Nostrand, New York, 1955. ISBN 0387901256. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387901256. Republished by Springer-Verlag, New York, 1975.

Yoshida Kenko. *The Tsuredzure Gusa of Yoshida No Kaneyoshi. Being the meditations of a recluse in the 14th Century (Essays in Idleness)*. circa 1330. URL http://www.humanistictexts.org/kenko.htm. 1911 translation of circa 1330 text.

Andreas Klappenecker. Algebraic wavelet filters. *International Journal of Imaging Systems and Technology*, 7:166–169, autumn 1996. URL http://faculty.cs.tamu.edu/klappi/pub.html. http://iaks-www.ira.uka.de/home/klappi/pub.html.

John R. Klauder. *A Modern Approach to Functional Integration*. Applied and Numerical Harmonic Analysis. Birkhäuser/Springer, 2010. ISBN 0817647902. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0817647902. john.klauder@gmail.com.

Morris Kline. *Mathematical Thought From Ancient To Modern Times*, volume 3. Oxford University Press, New York, 1972. ISBN 9780195061376. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0195061373.

Anthony W Knapp. *Advanced Real Analysis*. Cornerstones. Birkhäuser, Boston, Massachusetts, USA, 1 edition, July 29 2005a. ISBN 0817643826. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817643826.

Anthony W Knapp. *Basic Real Analysis*. Cornerstones. Birkhäuser, Boston, Massachusetts, USA, 1 edition, July 29 2005b. ISBN 0817632506. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817632506.

Donald Ervin Knuth. Convolution polynomials. *The Mathematica Journal*, 2(4):67–78, July 1 1992a. URL http://arxiv.org/abs/math/9207221.

Donald Ervin Knuth. Two notes on notation. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 99(5):403–422, May 1992b. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2325085. archive version available at http://arxiv.org/pdf/math/9205211v1.pdf.

Granino A. Korn and Theresea M. Korn. *Mathematical Handbook for Scientists and Engineers; Definitions, Theorems, and Formulas for Reference and Review*. 2 edition, 1968. ISBN 0486411478. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486411478.

Vladimir Aleksandrovich Kotelnikov. On the transmission capacity of the 'ether' and of cables in electrical communications. In *Proceedings of the first All-Union Conference on the technological reconstruction of the communications sector and the development of low-current engineering*, Moscow, 1933. URL http://ict.open.ac.uk/classics/1.pdf.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Carlos S. Kubrusly. *The Elements of Operator Theory*. Springer, 1 edition, 2001. ISBN 9780817641740. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817641742.

Carlos S. Kubrusly. *The Elements of Operator Theory*. Springer, 2 edition, 2011. ISBN 9780817649975. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817649972.

Andrew Kurdila and Michael Zabarankin. *Convex Functional Analysis*. Systems & Control: Foundations & Applications. Birkhäuser, Boston, 2005. ISBN 9783764321987. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3764321989.

Joseph-Louis Lagrange, Pierre-Simon Laplace, Étienne Louis Malus, René Just Haüy, and Adrien-Marie Legendre. Proclamation des prix décernés dans la séance publique de 6 janvier 1812. *Esprit des Journaux, Francais et étrangers par Une Societe de Gens Delettres*, 2:111–112, January 6 1812a. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=QpUUAAAAQAAJ.

Joseph-Louis Lagrange, Pierre-Simon Laplace, Étienne Louis Malus, René Just Haüy, and Adrien-Marie Legendre. Proclamation des prix décernés dans la séance publique de 6 janvier 1812. *Mercure De France, Journal Littéraire et Politique*, 50:374–375, January 6 1812b. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=8HxBAAAAcAAJ.

Imre Lakatos. *Proofs and Refutations: The Logic of Mathematical Discovery*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1976. ISBN 0521290384. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521290384.

Traian Lalescu. *Sur les équations de Volterra*. PhD thesis, University of Paris, 1908. advisor was Émile Picard.

Traian Lalescu. *Introduction à la théorie des équations intégrales (Introduction to the Theory of Integral Equations)*. Librairie Scientifique A. Hermann, Paris, 1911. URL http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/1278521. first book about integral equations ever published.

Rupert Lasser. *Introduction to Fourier Series*, volume 199 of *Monographs and textbooks in pure and applied mathematics*. Marcel Dekker, New York, New York, USA, February 8 1996. ISBN 978-0824796105. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0824796101. QA404.L33 1996.

Peter D. Lax. *Functional Analysis*. John Wiley & Sons Inc., USA, 2002. ISBN 0-471-55604-1. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0471556041. QA320.L345 2002.

Steven R. Lay. *Convex Sets and their Applications*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1982. ISBN 0-471-09584-2. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0471095842.

Gottfried W. Leibniz. Symbolismus memorabilis calculi algebraici et infinitesimalis, in comparatione potentiarum et differentiarum; et de lege homogeneorum transcendentali. *Miscellanea Berolinensia ad incrementum scientiarum, ex scriptis Societati Regiae scientarum*, pages 160–165, 1710. URL http://bibliothek.bbaw.de/bibliothek-digital/digitalequellen/schriften/anzeige/index_html?band=01-misc/1&seite:int=184.

Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz. Letter to christian huygens, 1679. In Leroy E. Loemker, editor, *Philosophical Papers and Letters*, volume 2 of *The New Synthese Historical Library*, chapter 27, pages 248–249. Kluwer Academic Press, Dordrecht, 2 edition, September 8 1679. ISBN 902770693X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN902770693X.

Pierre Gilles Lemarié, editor. *Les Ondelettes en 1989*, volume 1438 of *Lecture Notes in Mathematics*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1990. ISBN 978-3-540-52932-3. URL http://link.springer.com/book/10.1007/BFb0083510/.

Tony Lindeberg. *Scale-Space Theory in Computer Vision*. The Springer International Series in Engineering and Computer Science. Springer, 1993. ISBN 9780792394181. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0792394186.

Joram Lindenstrauss and Lior Tzafriri. *Classical Banach Spaces I: Sequence Spaces*, volume 92 of *Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete*. Springer-Verlag, 1977. ISBN 978-3642665592. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/3642665594.

J. Liouville. Sur l'integration d'une classe d'équations différentielles du second ordre en quantités finies explicites. *Journal De Mathematiques Pures Et Appliquees*, 4:423–456, 1839. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k16383z.

Lynn H. Loomis and Ethan D. Bolker. *Harmonic analysis*. Mathematical Association of America, 1965. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=MEfvAAAAMAAJ.

Nikolai Luzin. Sur la convergence des séries trigonom etriers de fourier. *C. R. Acad. Sci.*, 156:1655–1658, 1913.

Niccolò Machiavelli. *The Literary Works of Machiavelli: Mandragola, Clizia, A Dialogue on Language, and Belfagor, with Selections from the Private Correspondence*. Oxford University Press, 1961. ISBN 0313212481. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0313212481.

Colin Maclaurin. *Treatise of Fluxions*. W. Baynes, 1742. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/B000863E7M.

Khosrow Maleknejad, Monireh Nosrati Sahlan, and Azadeh Ostad. Numerical solution of fractional integro-differential equation by using cubic b-spline wavelets. In *Proceedings of the World Congress on Engineering*, volume I, London, July 3–5 2013. URL https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/bbe0/55f40768bbefe9e6476bdce701effb9243f7.pdf.

Lech Maligranda. A simple proof of the hölder and the minkowski inequality. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 102(3):256–259, March 1995. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2975013.

Stéphane G. Mallat. Multiresolution approximations and wavelet orthonormal bases of $l^2(\mathbb{R})$. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 315(1):69–87, September 1989. URL http://blanche.polytechnique.fr/~mallat/papiers/math_multiresolution.pdf.

Stéphane G. Mallat. *A Wavelet Tour of Signal Processing*. Elsevier, 2 edition, September 15 1999. ISBN 0-12-466606-X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN012466606X.

Stéphane G. Mallat. *A Wavelet Tour of Signal Processing: The Sparse Way*. Acedemic Press, 3 edition, 2009. ISBN 0123743702. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0123743702.

Georges Matheron. *Random Sets and Integral Geometry*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1975. ISBN 0-471-57621-2. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0471576212. Library QA273.5.M37.

John H. Matthews and Kurtis D. Fink. *Numerical Methods Using MatLab 3rd edition*. Prentice-Hall, Inc., Upper River, NJ, 1992. ISBN 0-13-013164-4.

maxima. *Maxima Manual version 5.28.0*. 5.28.0 edition. URL http://maxima.sourceforge.net/documentation.html.

Stefan Mazur and Stanislaus M. Ulam. Sur les transformations isométriques d'espaces vectoriels normées. *Comptes rendus de l'Académie des sciences*, 194:946–948, 1932.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Claudia Menini and Freddy Van Oystaeyen. *Abstract Algebra; A Comprehensive Treatment*. Marcel Dekker Inc, New York, April 2004. ISBN 0-8247-0985-3. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0824709853.

Franz Mertens. Ueber die multiplicationsregel für zwei unendliche reihen. *Journal f ur die rein und angewandte Mathematik (Crelle's Journal)*, 79:182–184, 1875.

William Henry Metzler, Edward Drake Roe, and Warren Gardner Bullard. *College Algebra*. Longsmans, Green, & Co., New York, 1908. URL http://archive.org/details/collegealgebra00metzrich.

Yves Meyer. *Wavelets and Operators*, volume 37 of *Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics*. Cambridge University Press, January 12 1992. ISBN 0521458692. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521458692.

Anthony N. Michel and Charles J. Herget. *Applied Algebra and Functional Analysis*. Dover Publications, Inc., 1993. ISBN 0-486-67598-X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN048667598X. original version published by Prentice-Hall in 1981.

Gradimir V. Milovanović and Igorž. Milovanović. On a generalization of certain results of a. ostrowski and a. lupaş. *Publikacije Elektrotehničkog Fakulteta (Publications Electrical Engineering)*, (643):62–69, 1979. URL http://www.mi.sanu.ac.rs/~gvm/radovi/643.pdf.

Hermann Minkowski. *Geometrie der Zahlen*. Druck und Verlag von B.G. Teubner, Leipzig, 1910. URL http://www.archive.org/details/geometriederzahl00minkrich. Geometry of Numbers.

Fred Mintzer. Filters for distortion-free two-band multi-rate filter banks. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing*, 32, 1985.

H. P. Mulholland. On generalizations of minkowski's inequality in the form of a triangle inequality. *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society*, s2-51:294–307, 1950. URL http://plms.oxfordjournals.org/content/s2-51/1/294.extract. received 1946 October 10, read 1947 June 19.

Eddie Ortiz Muniz. A method for deriving various formulas in electrostatics and electromagnetism using lagrange's trigonometric identities. *American Journal of Physics*, 21(140), 1953. doi: 10.1119/1.1933371. URL http://dx.doi.org/10.1119/1.1933371.

James R. Munkres. *Topology*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2 edition, 2000. ISBN 0131816292. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0131816292.

Paul J. Nahin. *Dr. Euler's Fabulous Formula: Cures Many Mathematical Ills*. Princeton Science Library. Princeton University Press, reprint, revised edition, April 25 2011. ISBN 9781400838479. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1400838479.

M. Zuhair Nashed and Gilbert G. Walter. General sampling theorems for functions in reproducing kernel hilbert spaces. *Mathematics of Control, Signals and Systems*, 4(4):363–390, 1991. URL http://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/BF02570568.

Ben Noble and James W. Daniel. *Applied Linear Algebra*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, USA, 3 edition, 1988. ISBN 0-13-041260-0. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0130412600. Library QA184.N6 1988 512.5 87-11511.

Timur Oikhberg and Haskell Rosenthal. A metric characterization of normed linear spaces. *Rocky Mountain Journal Of Mathematics*, 37(2):597–608, 2007. URL http://www.ma.utexas.edu/users/rosenthl/pdf-papers/95-oikh.pdf.

Alan V. Oppenheim and Ronald W. Schafer. *Discrete-Time Signal Processing*. Prentice Hall, 2 edition, 1999. ISBN 9780137549207. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0137549202.

Judith Packer. Applications of the work of stone and von neumann to wavelets. In Robert S. Doran and Richard V. Kadison, editors, *Operator Algebras, Quantization, and Noncommutative Geometry: A Centennial Celebration Honoring John Von Neumann and Marshall H. Stone : AMS Special Session on Operator Algebras, Quantization, and Noncommutative Geometry, a Centennial Celebration Honoring John Von Neumann and Marshall H. Stone, January 15-16, 2003, Baltimore, Maryland*, volume 365 of *Contemporary mathematics—American Mathematical Society*, pages 253–280, Baltimore, Maryland, 2004. American Mathematical Society. ISBN 9780821834022. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0821834029.

Lincoln P. Paine. *Warships of the World to 1900*. Ships of the World Series. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2000. ISBN 9780395984147. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780395984149.

Anthanasios Papoulis. *Probability, Random Variables, and Stochastic Processes*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 3 edition, 1991. ISBN 0070484775. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0070484775.

Athanasios Papoulis. *Circuits and Systems: A Modern Approach*. HRW series in electrical and computer engineering. Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 1980. ISBN 9780030560972. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0030560977.

Blaise Pascal. *Traité du Triangle Arithmétique*. 1655.

Giuseppe Peano. *Calcolo geometrico secondo l'Ausdehnungslehre di H. Grassmann preceduto dalle operazioni della logica deduttiva*. Fratelli Bocca Editori, Torino, 1888a. Geometric Calculus: According to the *Ausdehnungslehre* of H. Grassmann.

Giuseppe Peano. *Geometric Calculus: According to the Ausdehnungslehre of H. Grassmann*. Springer (2000), 1888b. ISBN 0817641262. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0817641262. originally published in 1888 in Italian.

Michael Pedersen. *Functional Analysis in Applied Mathematics and Engineering*. Chapman & Hall/CRC, New York, 2000. ISBN 9780849371691. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849371694. Library QA320.P394 1999.

Wesley J. Perschbacher, editor. *The New Analytical Greek Lexicon*. Hendrickson Publishers, Peabody, Mass., 1990. ISBN 978-0-943575-33-9. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0943575338.

J. E. Pečarić, Frank Proschan, and Yung Liang Tong. *Convex Functions, Partial Orderings, and Statistical Applications*, volume 187 of *Mathematics in Science and Engineering*. Academic Press, San Diego, California, 1992. ISBN 978-0125492508. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0125492502.

Mark A. Pinsky. *Introduction to Fourier Analysis and Wavelets*. Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, 2002. ISBN 0-534-37660-6. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0534376606.

Ioannis Pitas and Anastasios N. Venetsanopoulos. *Nonlinear Digital Filters: Principles and Applications*. The Kluwer international series in engineering and computer science. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, 1991. ISBN 978-0792390497. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0792390490.

Henri Poincaré. *La Science et l'hypothèse*. 1902a. URL http://fr.wikisource.org/wiki/La_Science_et_l%27hypoth%C3%A8se. (Science and Hypothesis).

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Henri Poincaré. *Science and Hypothesis*. Dover Publications (1952), New York, 1902b. ISBN 0486602214. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn0486602214. translation of La Science et l'hypothèse.

Lakshman Prasad and Sundararaja S. Iyengar. *Wavelet Analysis with Applications to Image Processing*. CRC Press LLC, Boca Raton, 1997. ISBN 978-0849331695. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849331692. Library TA1637.P7 1997.

Victor V. Prasolov. *Polynomials*, volume 11 of *Algorithms and Computation in Mathematics*. Springer, 2004. ISBN 978-3-540-40714-0. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540407146. translated from Russian (2001, 2nd edition).

John G. Proakis. *Digital Communications*. McGraw Hill, 4 edition, 2001. ISBN 0-07-232111-3. URL http://www.mhhe.com/.

Ptolemy. *Ptolemy's Almagest*. Springer-Verlag (1984), New York, circa 100AD. ISBN 0387912207. URL http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k3974x.

Shie Qian and Dapang Chen. *Joint time-frequency analysis: methods and applications*. PTR Prentice Hall, 1996. ISBN 9780132543842. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0132543842.

Inder K. Rana. *An Introduction to Measure and Integration*, volume 45 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, R.I., 2 edition, 2002. ISBN 978-0821829745. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821829742.

Charles Earl Rickart. *General Theory of Banach Algebras*. University series in higher mathematics. D. Van Nostrand Company, Yale University, 1960. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=PVrvAAAAMAAJ.

Theodore J. Rivlin. *An Introduction to the Approximation of Functions*. Dover Publications, New York, 1969. ISBN 0-486-64069-8. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486640698.

Theodore J. Rivlin. *The Chebyshev Polynomials*. Pure and Applied Mathematics: A Wiley-Interscience Series of Texts, Monographs and Tracts. John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1974. ISBN 0-471-72470-X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN047172470X.

Enders A. Robinson. *Random Wavelets and Cybernetic Systems*, volume 9 of *Griffins Statistical Monographs & Courses*. Lubrecht & Cramer Limited, London, June 1962. ISBN 0852640757. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0852640757.

Enders A. Robinson. Multichannel z-transforms and minimum delay. *Geophyics*, 31(3):482–500, June 1966. doi: 10.1190/1.1439788. URL http://dx.doi.org/10.1190/1.1439788.

Maxwell Rosenlicht. *Introduction to Analysis*. Dover Publications, New York, 1968. ISBN 0-486-65038-3. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486650383.

Joseph J. Rotman. *Advanced Modern Algebra*, volume 114 of *Graduate studies in mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, 2 edition, 2010. ISBN 978-0-8218-4741-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821847414.

Walter Rudin. *Principles of Mathematical Analysis*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 3 edition, 1976. ISBN 007054235X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN007054235X. Library QA300.R8 1976.

Walter Rudin. *Real and Complex Analysis*. McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, New York, USA, 3 edition, 1987. ISBN 9780070542341. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0070542341. Library QA300.R8 1976.

Walter Rudin. *Functional Analysis*. McGraw-Hill, New York, 2 edition, 1991. ISBN 0-07-118845-2. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0070542252. Library QA320.R83 1991.

Bryan P. Rynne and Martin A. Youngson. *Linear Functional Analysis*. Springer undergraduate mathematics series. Springer, 2 edition, January 1 2008. ISBN 9781848000056. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1848000057.

Shôichirô Sakai. *C*-Algebras and W*-Algebras*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1 edition, 1998. ISBN 9783540636335. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540636331. reprint of 1971 edition.

H. A. Scharz. über ein die flächen kleinsten flächeninhalts betreffendes problem der variationsrechnung. *Acta Soc. Scient. Fen.*, 15:315–362, 1885. URL http://www-stat.wharton.upenn.edu/~steele/Publications/Books/CSMC/CSMC_index.html.

Juljusz Schauder. Zur theorie stetiger abbildungen in funktionalräumen. *Mathematische Zeitschrift*, 26:47–65, 1927. URL http://eudml.org/doc/167911;jsessionid=156A34EBAB6C0E2DDAAC8C1232D23E8F.

Juljusz Schauder. Eine eigenschaft des haarschen orthogonalsystems. *Mathematische Zeitschrift*, 28:317–320, 1928.

Gert Schubring. *Conflicts Between Generalization, Rigor, and Intuition: Number Concepts Underlying the Development of Analysis in 17th–19th Century France and Germany*. Sources and studies in the history of mathematics and physical sciences. Springer, New York, 1 edition, June 2005. ISBN 0387228365. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0387228365.

Larry L. Schumaker. *Spline Functions: Basic Theory*. Cambridge Mathematical Library. Cambridge University Press, 3 edition, August 2007. ISBN 978-0-521-70512-7. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521705126.

Isaac Schur. Uber die charakterischen wurzeln einer linearen substitution mit enier anwendung auf die theorie der integralgleichungen (over the characteristic roots of one linear substitution with an application to the theory of the integral). *Mathematische Annalen*, 66:488–510, 1909. URL http://dz-srv1.sub.uni-goettingen.de/cache/toc/D38231.html.

Mícheál Ó Searcóid. *Elements of Abstract Analysis*. Springer Undergraduate Mathematics Series. Springer, 2002. ISBN 9781852334246. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN185233424X.

Atle Selberg. Harmonic analysis and discontinuous groups in weakly symmetric riemannian spaces with applications to dirichlet series. *Journal of the Indian Mathematical Society*, 20:47–87, 1956.

Jean Serra. *Image Analysis and Mathematical Processing*, volume 1. Academic Press Limited, San Diego, 1982. ISBN 0-12-637240-3.

Claude E. Shannon. A mathematical theory of communication. *The Bell System Technical Journal*, 27:379–343,623–656, July,October 1948. URL http://cm.bell-labs.com/cm/ms/what/shannonday/shannon1948.pdf.

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Claude E. Shannon. Communication in the presence of noise. *Proceedings of the IRE*, 37:10–21, January 1949. ISSN 0096-8390. doi: 10.1109/JRPROC.1949.232969. URL www.stanford.edu/class/ee104/shannonpaper.pdf.

Jianhong Shen and Gilbert Strang. Asymptotic analysis of daubechies polynomials. *Proceedings of the American Mathematical Soceity*, 124(12):3819–3833, December 1996. URL http://www.ams.org/proc/1996-124-12/S0002-9939-96-03557-5/home.html.

Bernard Shizgal. *Spectral Methods in Chemistry and Physics: Applications to Kinetic Theory and Quantum Mechanics*. Scientific Computation. Springer, January 7 2015. ISBN 9789401794541. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9401794545.

George Finlay Simmons. *Calculus Gems: Brief Lives and Memorable Mathematicians*. Mathematical Association of America, Washington DC, 2007. ISBN 0883855615. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0883855615.

Iván Singer. *Bases in Banach Spaces I*, volume 154 of *Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften in Einzeldarstellungen mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Anwendungsgebiete*. Springer-Verlag New York, New York, 1970. ISBN 9780387048338.

Neil J. A. Sloane. On-line encyclopedia of integer sequences. World Wide Web, 2014. URL http://oeis.org/.

Jonathan D. H. Smith. *Introduction to Abstract Algebra*. CRC Press, March 23 2011. ISBN 1420063723. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1420063723.

M.J.T. Smith and T.P. Barnwell. A procedure for designing exact reconstruction filter banks for tree-structured subband coders. *IEEE International Conference on Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing*, 9:421–424, 1984a. T.P. Barnwell is T.P. Barnwell III.

M.J.T. Smith and T.P. Barnwell. The design of digital filters for exact reconstruction in subband coding. *IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech and Signal Processing*, 34(3):434–441, June 1984b. ISSN 0096-3518. doi: 10.1109/TASSP.1986.1164832. T.P. Barnwell is T.P. Barnwell III.

Houshang H. Sohrab. *Basic Real Analysis*. Birkhäuser, Boston, 1 edition, 2003. ISBN 978-0817642112. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817642110.

K.P. Soman, K.I. Ramachandran, and N.G. Resmi. *Insight Into Wavelets: From Theory to Practice*. PHI Learning Private Limited, New Delhi, 3 edition, 2010. ISBN 978-81-203-4053-4. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9788120340534.

Lynn Arthur Steen. Highlights in the history of spectral theory. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 80(4):359–381, April 1973. ISSN 00029890. URL http://www.jstor.org/stable/2319079.

Johan Frederik Steffensen. *Interpolation*. Williams & Wilkins, 1927. URL http://books.google.com.tw/books?id=3lXQAAAAMAAJ.

Johan Frederik Steffensen. *Interpolation*. Chelsea Publishing, New York, 2 edition, 1950. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0486450090/. Dover reprint edition available.

Michael Stifel. *Arithmetica Integra*. Nuremburg, 1544. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=qAG7IgAACAAJ.

Josef Stoer and R. Bulirsch. *Introduction to Numerical Analysis*, volume 12 of *Texts in Applied Mathematics*. Springer Science & Business Media, 3 edition, August 21 2002. ISBN 9780387954523. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN038795452X.

Marshall Harvey Stone. *Linear transformations in Hilbert space and their applications to analysis*, volume 15 of *American Mathematical Society. Colloquium publications*. American Mathematical Society, New York, 1932. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0821810154. 1990 reprint of the original 1932 edition.

Jeffrey Stopple. *A Primer of Analytic Number Theory: From Pythagoras to Riemann*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, June 2003. ISBN 0521012538. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521012538.

Gilbert Strang. Wavelets and dilation equations: A brief introduction. *SIAM Review*, 31(4): 614–627, December 1989. ISSN 0036-1445. URL https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/d118/a25a91488b4b37457cdc506472819de90523.pdf.

Gilbert Strang and Truong Nguyen. *Wavelets and Filter Banks*. Wellesley-Cambridge Press, Wellesley, MA, 1996. ISBN 9780961408879. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0961408871.

Robert S. Strichartz. *The Way of Analysis*. Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Boston-London, 1995. ISBN 978-0867204711. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0867204710.

Endre Süli and David F. Mayers. *An Introduction to Numerical Analysis*. Cambridge University Press, August 28 2003. ISBN 9780521007948. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521007941.

Wim Sweldens and Robert Piessens. Wavelet sampling techniques. In *1993 Proceedings of the Statistical Computing Section*, pages 20–29. American Statistical Association, August 1993. URL http://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/18531.html.

Tamás Szabó and Gábor Horváth. An efficient hardware implementation of feed-forward neural networks. *Applied Intelligence*, 1:143–158, 2004. URL https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Gabor_Horvath/publication/263107833.

Otto Szász and Joshua Barlaz. *Introduction to the Theory of Divergent Series*. Department of Mathematics Graduate School of Arts and Sciences University of Cincinnati, revised edition, 1952. URL http://books.google.com/books?id=ELsrAAAAYAAJ.

Gábor J. Székely. *Paradoxes in Probability Theory and Mathematical Statistics*. Mathematics and Its Applications. Springer, D. Reidel Publishing Company, Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Dordrecht/Boston/Lancaster/Tokyo, January 31 1986. ISBN 978-9027718990.

Erik Talvila. Necessary and sufficient conditions for differentiating under the integral sign. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 108(6):544–548, June–July 2001. URL http://arxiv.org/abs/math/0101012.

Brook Taylor. *Methodus Incrementorum Directa et Inversa*. London, 1715.

Audrey Terras. *Fourier Analysis on Finite Groups and Applications*. Number 43 in London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1999. ISBN 0-521-45718-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521457181.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Brian S. Thomson, Andrew M. Bruckner, and Judith B. Bruckner. *Elementary Real Analysis*. www.classicalrealanalysis.com, 2 edition, 2008. ISBN 9781434843678. URL http://classicalrealanalysis.info/com/Elementary-Real-Analysis.php.

Elmer Tolsted. An elementary derivation of cauchy, hölder, and minkowski inequalities from young's inequality. *Mathematics Magazine*, 37:2–12, 1964. URL http://mathdl.maa.org/mathDL/22/?pa=content&sa=viewDocument&nodeId=3036.

Stanislaw Marcin Ulam. *Adventures of a Mathematician*. University of California Press, Berkeley, 1991. ISBN 0520071549. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0520071549.

P.P. Vaidyanathan. Multirate digital filters, filter banks, polyphase networks, and applications: A tutorial. *Proceedings of the IEEE*, 78(1):56–93, January 1990. doi: 10.1109/5.52200. URL http://homes.esat.kuleuven.be/~vlenir/dspII/boeken/vaidyanathan.pdf.

P.P. Vaidyanathan. *Multirate Systems and Filter Banks*. Prentice Hall Signal Processing Series. Prentice Hall, 1993. ISBN 0136057187. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0136057187.

Jussi Väisälä. A proof of the mazur-ulam theorem. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 110(7): 633–635, August–September 2003. URL http://www.helsinki.fi/~jvaisala/mazurulam.pdf.

Peter van Overschee and B. L. de Moor. *Subspace Identification for Linear Systems: Theory — Implementation — Applications*. Springer Science & Business Media, illustrated edition, 2012. ISBN 9781461304654. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=isbn1461304652.

Alexandre-Théophile Vandermonde. Mémoire sur des irrationnelles de différents ordres avec une application au cercle. *Histoire de l'Académie Royale des Sciences*, pages 71–72, 1772.

Brani Vidakovic. *Statistical Modeling by Wavelets*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc, New York, 1999. ISBN 0-471-29365-2. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0471293652.

John von Neumann. Allgemeine eigenwerttheorie hermitescher funktionaloperatoren. *Mathematische Annalen*, 102(1):49–131, 1929. ISSN 0025-5831 (print) 1432-1807 (online). URL http://resolver.sub.uni-goettingen.de/purl?GDZPPN002273535. General eigenvalue theory of Hermitian functional operators.

David F. Walnut. *An Introduction to Wavelet Analysis*. Applied and numerical harmonic analysis. Springer, 2002. ISBN 0817639624. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0817639624.

Gilbert G. Walter and XiaoPing Shen. *Wavelets and Other Orthogonal Systems*. Chapman and Hall/CRC, New York, 2 edition, 2001. ISBN 1-58488-227-1. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1584882271. Library QA403.3.W34 2000.

Seth Warner. *Modern Algebra*. Dover, Mineola, 1990. ISBN 0-486-66341-8. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486663418. "An unabridged, corrected republication of the work originally published in two volumes by Prentice Hall, Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, in 1965".

Heinrich Martin Weber. Die allgemeinen grundlagen der galois'schen gleichungstheorie. *Mathematische Annalen*, 43(4):521–549, December 1893. URL http://resolver.sub.uni-goettingen.de/purl?GDZPPN002254670. The general foundation of Galois' equation theory.

H. L. Wei and S. A. Billings. An efficient nonlinear cardinal b-spline model for high tide forecasts at the venice lagoon. *Nonlinear Processes in Geophysics*, 13:577–584, 2006. URL https://www.nonlin-processes-geophys.net/13/577/2006/.

Joachim Weickert. Linear scale-space has first been proposed in japan. *Journal of Mathematical Imaging and Vision*, 10:237–252, May 1999. URL http://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?id=607668.

David Wells. *The Penguin Dictionary of Curious and Interesting Numbers*. revised edition, April 7 1987. ISBN 9780140080292. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/0140080295.

Hermann Weyl. The method of orthogonal projection in potential theory. *Duke Mathematical Journal*, 7(1):411–444, 1940. URL http://projecteuclid.org/euclid.dmj/1077492266.

Edmund Taylor Whittaker. On the functions which are represented by the expansions of the interpolation theory. *Proceedings of the Royal Society Edinburgh*, 35:181–194, 1915.

Edmund Taylor Whittaker and G. N. Watson. *A Course of Modern Analysis an Introduction to the General Theory of Infinite Processes and of Analytic Functions*. Cambridge at the University Press, London, 3 edition, 1920. URL http://archive.org/details/courseofmodernan00whit.

John Macnaghten Whittaker. *Interpolatory Function Theory*, volume 33 of *Cambridge tracts in mathematics and mathematical physics*. Cambridge University Press, 1935. URL http://books.google.com.tw/books?id=yyPvAAAAMAAJ.

Stephen B. Wicker. *Error Control Systems for Digital Communication and Storage*. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, 1995. ISBN 0-13-200809-2. URL http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/0132008092.

Stephen Willard. *General Topology*. Addison-Wesley Series in Mathematics. Addison-Wesley, 1970. ISBN 9780486434797. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486434796. a 2004 Dover edition has been published which "is an unabridged republication of the work originally published by the Addison-Wesley Publishing Company ...1970".

Stephen Willard. *General Topology*. Courier Dover Publications, 2004. ISBN 0486434796. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486434796. republication of 1970 Addison-Wesley edition.

P. Wojtaszczyk. *A Mathematical Introduction to Wavelets*, volume 37 of *London Mathematical Society student texts*. Cambridge University Press, February 13 1997. ISBN 9780521578943. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521578949.

Kôsaku Yosida. *Functional Analysis*, volume 123 of *Classics in Mathematics*. Springer, 6 reprint revised edition, 1980. ISBN 9783540586548. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN3540586547.

Robert M. Young. *An introduction to nonharmonic Fourier series*, volume 93 of *Pure and applied mathematics*. Academic Press, 1 edition, 1980. ISBN 0127728503. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0127728503.

Robert M. Young. *An introduction to nonharmonic Fourier series*, volume 93 of *Pure and applied mathematics*. Academic Press, revised first edition, May 16 2001. ISBN 0127729550. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0127729550.

William Henry Young. On classes of summable functions and their fourier series. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London*, 87(594):225–229, August 1912. URL http://www.archive.org/details/philtrans02496252.

Ahmed I. Zayed. *Handbook of Function and Generalized Function Transformations*. Mathematical Sciences Reference Series. CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1996. ISBN 0849378516. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0849378516.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

Shì Jié Zhū. Jade mirror of the four unknowns (chinese: 四元玉鑑, pinyin: Sì yúan yù jiàn), 1303. URL http://www.amazon.com/dp/7538269231/. author: 朱世傑 (pinyin: Zhū Shì Jié); Many many thanks to Po-Ning Chen (Chinese: 陳伯寧, pinyin: Chén Bó Niǵ) for his consultation with regards to the translation of the book title: "Originally, '鑑' is a basin or container made by metals. It can then be used as a mirror after pouring water into it, and hence is extended to indicate a book that reflects faithfully about a subject. '玉' is a precious stone and hence can be translated as Jade. The combination of the two characters is therefore translated as 'The Jade Mirror'."—Po-Ning Chen (陳伯寧), 2012 September 12).

Gary Zukav. *The Dancing Wu Li Masters : An Overview of the New Physics*. Bantam Books, New York, 1980. ISBN 055326382X. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN055326382X.

Reinhard Zumkeller. Triangle of partial sums of alternating binomial coefficients: T(n,k) = sum(binomial(n,k)*(-1)^k: 0<=k<=n). Technical Report A110555, The On-Line Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences, July 27 2005. URL http://oeis.org/A110555.

Antoni Zygmund. Trigonometric series volume i. In *Trigonometric Series*, volume 1, page 383. Cambridge University Press, London/New York/Melbourne, 3 edition, 2002a. ISBN 9780521890533. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521890535.

Antoni Zygmund. Trigonometric series volume ii. In *Trigonometric Series*, page 364. Cambridge University Press, London/New York/Melbourne, 3 edition, 2002b. ISBN 0-521-89053-5. URL http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521890535.

Copyright © 2019 Daniel J. Greenhoe

REFERENCE INDEX

Abramovich and Aliprantis (2002), 130, 340
Abel (1826), 207
Aliprantis and Burkinshaw (1998), 1, 157, 160, 161, 163, 164, 168, 198, 272, 274, 278
Adelson and Burt (1981), 42
Adhikari and Adhikari (2003), 147
Adobe (1999), 408
Aigner (2007), 131, 132
Klappenecker (1996), 379
Ptolemy (circa 100AD), 223
Alvarez et al. (1993), 42
Amann and Escher (2008), 199
Andrews et al. (2001), 10
Apostol (1975), 144, 205
Abramowitz and Stegun (1972), 211, 212, 234, 237
Atkinson and Han (2009), 43
Autonne (1901), 178
Autonne (1902), 178
Bachet (1621), 147
Bachman (1964), 258
Bachman and Narici (1966), 171, 202, 265, 267, 269, 278
Bachman et al. (2000), 2, 16, 255, 270, 273, 283
Bailey et al. (2011), 316
Bailey et al. (2013), 316
Balakrishnan (1996), 133
Banach (1922), 155, 160
Banach (1932b), 160
Banach (1932a), 160, 270
Barbeau (1989), 143
Ben-Israel and Gilbert (2002), 185
Berberian (1961), 157–159, 175, 187, 265, 278, 283
Bernoulli (1783), 205
Besso (1879), 190
Bézout (1779b), 147
Bézout (1779a), 147
Bienaymé (1840), 190
Boas (1954), 334
Bollobás (1999), 164, 165, 189, 190, 194, 274
Bonar et al. (2006), 209
Borwein and Erdélyi (1995), 143, 148
Bottazzini (1986), 218, 219
Bouniakowsky (1859), 198
Bourbaki (2003b), 147
Bourbaki (2003a), 152
Boyer and Merzbach (1991), 211
Boyer and Merzbach (2011), 198
Bracewell (1978), 258, 278, 336
Bromwich (1908), 202, 203, 207, 339
Bruckner et al. (1997), 242, 244
Bullen (2003), 190, 194, 196, 198
Burrus et al. (1998), 379, 381, 383
Burt and Adelson (1983), 42
Byrne (2005), 291
Cardano (1545), 129
Carleson and Engquist (2001), 252
Carothers (2000), 195, 196, 198
Carothers (2005), 267, 270
Casazza and Lammers (1998), 2
Cauchy (1821), 194, 198, 207
Cesàro (1890), 207
Childs (2009), 147
J.S.Chitode (2009), 359
Chorin and Hald (2009), 255, 256
Christensen (2003), 2, 4, 5, 16, 265, 270, 278, 283, 284, 288, 291
Christensen (2008), 284, 288, 295, 298, 299, 304, 306, 308, 310, 312
Christensen (2010), 298
Chui (1988), 295, 304, 306, 312
Chui (1992), 30, 34, 49, 71, 81, 99, 184, 295, 299, 308, 356, 371
Claerbout (1976), 343
Cohn (2002), 130
Black et al. (2009), 15
Coolidge (1949), 132, 133, 152
Córdoba (1989), 336
Cox (1972), 304, 306, 312
Dai and Lu (1996), 2
Dai and Larson (1998), 2, 4
Daubechies (1992), 16, 65, 86, 99, 120, 147, 271, 287, 359
Davidson and Donsig (2010), 236
de Boor (1972), 304, 306, 312
de Boor (2001), 304, 306, 312
Descartes (1954), 148
Descartes (1637a), 148
Descartes (1637b), 1
Daubechies et al. (1986), 288
Dieudonné (1969), 174
Duffin and Schaeffer (1952), 288
Dumitrescu (2007), 343
Dunford and Schwartz (1957), 166
Durbin (2000), 129, 130
Albers and Dyson (1994), 41
Lagrange et al. (1812a), 251
Edwards (1995), 274

Edwards (2002), 137
Eidelman et al. (2004), 158
Enflo (1973), 270
Whittaker (1915), 335
Euclid (circa 300BC), 152
Euler (1748), 211, 218, 219, 228
Ewen (1950), x
Ewen (1961), x
Fabian et al. (2010), 276
Farina and Rinaldi (2000), 343
Ferland (2009), 133
Fix and Strang (1969), 261
Flanders (1973), 185
Flanigan (1983), 152, 213
Folland (1992), 10, 216, 242
Forster and Massopust (2009), 13, 318
Fourier (1807), 251
Fourier (1820), 187
Fourier (1878), 255
Fourier (1822), 255
Frobenius (1968), 174
Frobenius (1878), 174
Fuhrmann (2012), 143–145, 147, 152
Gabor (1946), 13
Gallier (2010), 133, 138
Gauss (1900), 10
Gelfand and Naimark (1964), 211
Giles (2000), 166, 169, 270, 274
Goodman et al. (1993b), 4
Goodman et al. (1993a), 2, 4
Goswami and Chan (1999), 30, 49, 59, 71, 81, 260
Graham et al. (1994), 131–133, 138, 152, 202
Granville (1992), 137
Granville (1997), 137
Grattan-Guinness (1990), 201
Greenhoe (2017a), 302
Gross (2008), 133, 138
Guichard et al. (2012), 42
Guillemin (1957), 234
Gupta (1998), 269
Haar (1910), 40, 324
Haaser and Sullivan (1991), 155, 168, 269
Haddad and Akansu (1992), 347
Hall and Knight (1894), 137, 199, 202, 204
Halmos (1948), 155
Halmos (1958), 171
Halmos (1998), 169
Hamel (1905), 267
Han et al. (2007), 276, 291
Hardy (1929), 187
Hardy et al. (1952), 189, 195, 196, 198
Hardy (1941), 335
Hardy (1949), 207
Harris et al. (2008), 133, 138
Hausdorff (1937), 1
Heijenoort (1967), x
Heil and Walnut (1989), 2
Heil (2011), 2, 156, 242, 265, 267, 269, 270, 278, 283, 284, 288, 291, 298, 321
Heinbockel (2010), 209, 316
Hermite (1893), 231
Hernández and Weiss (1996), 16, 82, 86, 377
Higgins (1985), 335
Higgins (1996), 12, 334, 335
Hijab (2011), 303
Hilbert et al. (1927), 157
Hölder (1889), 196
Höllig (2003), 303, 304, 306, 312
Horn and Johnson (1990), 161
Housman (1936), x
Igari (1996), 286, 374, 377
Iijima (1959), 42
Janssen (1988), 12
Jawerth and Sweldens (1994), 16, 22, 34, 55, 59, 80, 260, 261, 312, 363, 364
Jeffrey and Dai (2008), 245, 246, 256
Jensen (1906), 194
Whittaker (1935), 335
Jolley (1961), 202, 315, 316
Jørgensen et al. (2008), 288
Joshi (1997), 339
Kadets and Kadets (1997), 202
Kahane (2008), 251
Kammler (2008), 2
Kasner and Newman (1940), 227
Kateb and Lemarié-Rieusset (1997), 107
Katznelson (2004), 242, 251, 334
Keener (1988), 173
Kelley (1955), 364
Kenko (circa 1330), 414
Klauder (2010), 202
Jänich (1984), 364
Kline (1972), 201
Knapp (2005a), 178
Knapp (2005b), 10, 185, 255, 256
Knuth (1992b), 131
Knuth (1992a), 138
Korn and Korn (1968), 150–152
Kotelnikov (1933), 335
Kubrusly (2001), 155, 157, 171, 175, 176, 202, 265, 267, 269, 272, 278, 283
Kubrusly (2011), 339
Kurdila and Zabarankin (2005), 265
Lakatos (1976), 231
Lalescu (1908), 216
Lalescu (1911), 216
Lasser (1996), 10
Lax (2002), 12, 173
Lay (1982), 387, 388, 390
Leibniz (1710), 185
Leibniz (1679), 155
Lemarié (1990), 15
Lindeberg (1993), 42
Lindenstrauss and Tzafriri (1977), 270
Liouville (1839), 213, 216
Loomis and Bolker (1965), 255
Machiavelli (1961), 413
Maclaurin (1742), 152
Maleknejad et al. (2013), 300
Maligranda (1995), 195, 196
Mallat (2009), 74
Mallat (1989), 16, 42, 74, 79, 287
Mallat (1999), 15, 16, 22, 32, 51, 55, 56, 58, 59, 67, 71, 74, 79, 81, 86, 89, 147, 228, 260, 261, 287, 319, 335, 347, 349, 361, 383
II (1991), 335
Matheron (1975), 387, 388, 395
Matthews and Fink (1992), 327, 328
maxima, 236, 239
Mazur and Ulam (1932), 166
Lagrange et al. (1812b), 251
Menini and Oystaeyen (2004), 199
Mertens (1875), 207
Metzler et al. (1908), 152
Meyer (1992), 16, 74
Michel and Herget (1993), 130, 156, 158, 160, 162, 167, 169, 171, 174, 176–178, 211, 265, 267, 269
Milovanović and Milovanović (1979), 190
Minkowski (1910), 196
Mintzer (1985), 347
de Montmort (1713), 205
Mulholland (1950), 190
Muniz (1953), 245, 246
Munkres (2000), 364
Nahin (2011), 316

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

Nashed and Walter (1991), 335
Noble and Daniel (1988), 182
Greenhoe (2017b), 302
Sloane (2014), 202
Oikhberg and Rosenthal (2007), 166
Oppenheim and Schafer (1999), 335
van Overschee and de Moor (2012), 330
Packer (2004), 2
Paine (2000), vi
Papoulis (1980), 335
Papoulis (1991), 371
Pascal (1655), 137
Peano (1888b), 155, 168
Pečarić et al. (1992), 189
Pedersen (2000), 216, 273, 274
Perschbacher (1990), 15
Pinsky (2002), 16, 31, 69, 99, 103, 240, 374, 377
Pitas and Venetsanopoulos (1991), 387, 388, 390–395
Poincaré (1902b), 41
de la Vallée-Poussin (1915), 1
Prasad and Iyengar (1997), 184, 295, 306, 318, 319
Prasolov (2004), 148
Proakis (2001), 38, 367
?, 185
Qian and Chen (1996), 13
Rana (2002), 190
Rickart (1960), 211
Rivlin (1974), 231, 236
Rivlin (1969), 140
Robinson (1962), 343
Robinson (1966), 343
Rosenlicht (1968), 212, 213, 215–217
Rotman (2010), 152
Rudin (1991), 161, 163, 165, 168–171, 174, 178
Rudin (1976), 192, 193
Rudin (1987), 10, 219, 334
Rynne and Youngson (2008), 269
Sakai (1998), 169
Schauder (1927), 270
Schauder (1928), 270
Schubring (2005), 241
Schumaker (2007), 297, 298, 300, 303, 304, 306, 312
Schur (1909), 178
Scharz (1885), 198
Searcóid (2002), 265
Selberg (1956), 12
Serra (1982), 395
Shannon (1948), 335
Shannon (1949), 335
Shen and Strang (1996), 107
Shizgal (2015), 300
Simmons (2007), 413
Singer (1970), 270
Smith and Barnwell (1984a), 347
Smith and Barnwell (1984b), 347
Smith (2011), 25
Sohrab (2003), 152, 269
Soman et al. (2010), 91, 94
Steen (1973), 178
Steffensen (1927), 131
Steffensen (1950), 131
Stifel (1544), 132, 133
Stoer and Bulirsch (2002), 298
Stone (1932), 157, 169, 172
Stopple (2003), 95
Strang and Nguyen (1996), 43, 89, 107, 320, 321, 347
Strang (1989), 320, 321
Strichartz (1995), 152
Süli and Mayers (2003), 236
Sweldens and Piessens (1993), 55, 59, 260, 261
Szabó and Horváth (2004), 300
Szász and Barlaz (1952), 202, 207
Székely (1986), 205
Talvila (2001), 185
Taylor (1715), 152
Terras (1999), 12
Thomson et al. (2008), 207, 208, 339
Tolsted (1964), 195, 196
Ulam (1991), 166
Vaidyanathan (1990), 71, 81
Vaidyanathan (1993), 347
Väisälä (2003), 166
Vandermonde (1772), 138
Vidakovic (1999), 55, 56, 58, 59, 65, 71, 79, 89–91, 107, 260, 261, 287, 349, 361, 381
von Neumann (1929), 169, 172
Walnut (2002), 2, 16
Walter and Shen (2001), 274
Warner (1990), 147, 152
Weber (1893), 130
Wei and Billings (2006), 300
Wells (1987), 316
Weyl (1940), 274
Whittaker and Watson (1920), 207, 208
Wicker (1995), 145
Willard (1970), 364
Willard (2004), 364
Wojtaszczyk (1997), 2, 5, 16, 18, 31, 40, 43, 67, 69, 82, 86, 283, 285–287, 304, 306, 311, 312, 318, 324, 374, 377
Yosida (1980), 334
Young (1912), 195
Young (1980), 276
Young (2001), 267, 269–271, 276, 280, 281, 283, 284, 288, 334, 335
Benedetto and Zayed (2004), 2
Zayed (1996), 12
Zhū (1303), 138
Zukav (1980), 227
Zygmund (2002a), 207
Zygmund (2002b), 334

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

SUBJECT INDEX

0 order B-spline, 313
0 order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 320
0th order B-spline, 297
1st order B-spline, 298, 313
1st order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 321
2nd order B-spline, 298, 313
2nd order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 321
2π periodic, 82–84
3rd order B-spline, 300
4th order B-spline, 301
5th order B-spline, 301
6th order B-spline, 301
7th order B-spline, 301, 302
D_p wavelet system, **106**, 108
$*$-algebra, 170, **354**
gcd, 99
n choose k, 132
nth derivative, 308
nth moment, **55**, 55, 57, 59, 63, **260**, 260, 261
nth order B-spline, 299, 304, 306, 312, 313, 319, 321, 322
nth order cardinal B-spline, **295**
nth vanishing moment, **55**, 58
nth-order B-spline, 311
p vanishing moments, **55**, 65, 89, 90, 109
x to the m central, **131**
x to the m falling, **131**
x to the m rising, **131**
ϕ-mean, **189**
*-algebras, 169
LaTeX, vi
TeX-Gyre Project, vi
XeLaTeX, vi
attention markers, 166
problem, 122, 160, 166
0 order B-spline, 310
1st order B-spline, 311
2 coefficient case, **40**, **90**, **324**
2nd Order Pascal's Identity, 136
2nd order B-spline, 311

Fourier coefficients, 55

Abel, 198
Abel, Niels Henrik, 413
absolute value, xii, **130**
absolutely convergent, **202**, 202, 207
absolutely summable, 340, 341
Absorption identity, 136
absorption identity, 133
addition
Minkowski, 388
additive, 7, 19, 68, 157, 159, 168
additive inverse, 221, 223
additive property, 256
additivity, 168, 292
adjoint, 4, 7, **165**, 165, 169, 256
admissibility, 27, 89
admissibility condition, **27**, 36, 40, 51, 70, 73, 74, 90, 324
admissibility equation, 40, 324
Adobe Systems Incorporated, vi
affine, 166
algebra, 129, **130**
algebra of sets, xiii
alternate Vandermonde's convolution, 138, 140
Alternating Series Test, 318
AM-GM inequality, 194
analysis, 15
AND, xiii
anti-derivative, 296
anti-symmetric, 183, 259, 374
antiautomorphic, 170
arithmetic mean, **194**
arithmetic mean geometric mean inequality, 194
associates, 156
associative, 129, 130, 156, 159, 178, 187, 188, 390
asymmetric, 119, 343
auto-power spectrum, 30, 49, 70, 71, 313, **371**, 374
autocorrelation, 172
autocorrelation function, **371**
autocorrelation kernel, 172
autocorrelation operator, 173
Avant-Garde, vi
average, **194**

B-spline, 65, 300, 302, 308, 309, 311, 312, 319, 322, 326, 407, 408
B-spline $\mathsf{N}_1(x)$, 33
B-spline $\mathsf{N}_2(x)$, 33
B-spline dyadic decomposition, 319, 325
B-spline general form, 306
B-spline partition of unity, 312
B-spline recursion, 304
B-spline scaling coefficients, **322**
B-splines, 21, 313, 365
Bézout's Theorem, 100
Banach space, 270, 271
bandlimited, 12, 21, 334, 337
basis, 12, 13, 25, 36, 41, 60, 267–269, 276, 312, 335

frame, 288
orthogonal, 276
orthonormal, 276
Riesz, 283, 284
tight frame, 288
basis sequence, 311
Battle-Lemarié orthogonalization, **79**, **287**
Bessel's Equality, **273**, 274, 275, 279, 280
Bessel's Inequality, 281
Bessel's inequality, **274**
Best Approximation Theorem, **274**, 274
Bezout's Theorem, 105
bijection, 281
bijective, xiii, 166, 281
binomial coefficient, **132**, 132, 133, 138, 297, 298
Binomial Theorem, 99, 138, 140, **152**, 152, 220
Binomial theorem, 152
binomial theorem, 185, 323
biorthogonal, **283**, 285, 286
Bohr, Harald, 187
Borel measure, 183, 255
Borel sets, 183, 255
bounded, xiii, 20, **163**, 271, 374
bounded bijective, 284
bounded linear operators, **163**
bounded operator, 163, 169
Bézout's Identity, 147

Cardano, Gerolamo, 129
Cardinal sequence, **335**
Cardinal Series, **12**
Cardinal series, 12, 21, 335
Carl Spitzweg, 413
Cartesian product, xii
Cauchy product, 144, 205, 206
Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality, 198
Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, 198, 289
Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality for inner-product spaces, 198
causal, **344**, 344
ceiling, 32
Chain Rule, 303
characteristic function, xii, **2**
characterized, 15
Chebyshev polynomial, 236
Chebyshev polynomial of the first kind, **236**
Chebyshev polynomials, 96, 236
closed, 16, 20, 31
closed support, 306
closing, **395**
closure, 16, 20, 31, 269, 306
coefficient, **143**
coefficient functionals, **270**, 270
coefficients, 345
column sum, 138
comb function, 252
commutative, 7, 156, 159, 223, 339, 340, 387, 390
commutative ring, 129, **130**, 130
commutator relation, **4**, 17, 34
compact support, 15, 17, 52, 319
compactly supported, 42
comparison test, 209, 315
complement, xii
complete, 20, **269**
complete metric space, 269
complete set, 269
completeness, 20
complex auto-power spectrum, **371**
complex conjugate pairs, 106, 120
complex cross-power spectrum, **371**
complex exponential, 41, 309
complex linear space, **156**
complex number system, 221
concave, 189, 191
conditionally convergent, **202**, 202
conjugate linear, 170
conjugate mirror filter, 89
conjugate pairs, 345
conjugate quadrature filter, 50, 89, **347**, 347
conjugate quadrature filter condition, 50, **347**
Conjugate quadrature filters, 347
conjugate recipricol pairs, 240
conjugate reciprocal pairs, 106, 120
conjugate symmetric, 168
conjugate symmetric property, 256
constant, 5, 6, 217
continuity, 25
continuous, xiii, 5, 6, 18, 25, 31, 41, 64, 69, 74, 78, 90, 109, 158, 183, 189, 190, 308, 314, 321, 374
continuous point spectrum, 228, 309
convergence, 315
convergent, 202, 207, 271
converges, 209, 315–317
converges strongly, **209**
converges weakly, **209**
convex, 189–191
Convolution, 144
convolution, 258, 295, 335, **339**, 339, 340
convolution operation, **258**
convolution operator, 339, 340
Convolution Theorem, 310
Convolution theorem, 335
convolution theorem, **258**, 263, **342**, 365
coordinate functionals, **270**
coordinates, **267**
cosine, **213**
countably infinite, 270
counting measure, xiii
CQF, 89, **347**, 347, 348
CQF condition, 50, 58, 64, 65, 89, **347**, 349
CQF conditions, 51
CQF theorem, 51, 89, **347**, 350
cross-correlation function, **371**
cross-power spectrum, 49, **371**
CS Inequality, 18, 292

Daubechies wavelet function, 52
Daubechies wavelets, 109
Daubechies-1, 109
Daubechies-2 wavelet system, **110**, 110
Daubechies-3 wavelet system, **111**, 111
Daubechies-4 wavelet system, **113**, 113
Daubechies-8 wavelet system, **114**, 115
Daubechies-p, 95
Daubechies-p wavelet system, 107, 108, 118
Daubechies-$p1$, 40, 91
Daubechies-$p2$, 91
Daubechies-$p3$, 94
Daubechies-1, 52
Daubechies-2, 52
Daubechies-3, 52
Daubechies-3 scaling function, 33
Daubechies-p wavelet system, 65, **106**, 108
decreasing, 189, 318
definitions
D_p wavelet system, **106**
$*$-algebra, **354**
nth moment, **55**

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

nth order cardinal B-spline, 295
x to the m central, 131
x to the m falling, 131
x to the m rising, 131
absolute value, 130
absolutely convergent, 202
algebra, 130
binomial coefficient, 132
biorthogonal, 283
bounded, 163
bounded linear operators, 163
closing, 395
coefficient, 143
coefficient functionals, 270
commutative ring, 130
complete, 269
complex auto-power spectrum, 371
complex cross-power spectrum, 371
complex linear space, 156
conditionally convergent, 202
converges strongly, 209
converges weakly, 209
coordinate functionals, 270
coordinates, 267
CQF, 347
Daubechies-2 wavelet system, 110
Daubechies-3 wavelet system, 111
Daubechies-4 wavelet system, 113
Daubechies-8 wavelet system, 114
Daubechies-p wavelet system, 106
degree, 143
dilation, 395
dilation operator inverse, 2
dividend, 145
divisor, 145
equal, 143, 156
equivalent, 271
erosion, 395
exact frame, 288
expansion, 267, 270
exponential function, 218
factorial, 131
field, 130
Fourier coefficients, 276
Fourier expansion, 276
Fourier series, 276
frame, 288
frame bounds, 288
fundamental, 269
group, 129
Hamel basis, 267
imaginary part, 211
inner product space, 168
isometric, 175
Lagrange polynomial, 327
leading coefficient, 143
linear basis, 267
linear combination, 265
linear space, 156
lower index, 132
Maclaurin series, 152
minimum phase, 343
Minkowski addition, 387
Minkowski subtraction, 387
modulus, 130
MRA, 16
MRA space, 16
MRA system, 25
multiresolution analysis, 16
multiresolution analysis space, 16
multiresolution system, 25
Newton polynomial, 328
normal, 174
normalized tight frame, 288
normed linear space, 160, 161
normed space of linear operators, 161
opening, 395
operator norm, 161
optimal lower frame bound, 288
optimal upper frame bound, 288
orthogonal basis, 276
orthonormal, 67
orthonormal basis, 276
orthonormal MRA system, 25, 67
orthonormal wavelet system, 67
Paley-Wiener, 334
Parseval frame, 288
partition of unity, 364
poles, 152
polynomial, 143
power mean, 190
quotient, 145
rational function, 152
real linear space, 156
real part, 211
remainder, 145
Riesz basis, 283
ring, 129
scalars, 156
scaling function, 16
scaling subspace, 16
Schauder basis, 270
Selberg Trace Formula, 12
sequence, 339
Smith-Barnwell filter, 347
space of all absolutely square summable sequences, 339
space of Lebesgue square-integrable functions, 183
spans, 265
standard inner product, 183
standard norm, 183
summable (C,k) to the limit x, 207
summable by Euler's method to limit a, 208
summable by the k-th arithmetic mean of Cesàro to limit x, 207
summation, 187
support, 32
symmetric set, 395
tight frame, 288
total, 269
translation operator, 387
translation operator inverse, 2
translation space, 387
underlying set, 156
unitary, 178
upper index, 132
vector space, 156
vectors, 156
wavelet analysis, 43
wavelet coefficient sequence, 44
wavelet system, 44
zeros, 152
degree, 143
delay, 181
DeMoivre's Theorem, 231, 231, 233
dense, 16–18, 20, 31, 269, 270
Descartes rule of signs, 151
Descartes, René, xi, 1, 148

difference, xii
differential operator, 228, 309
dilation, 180, **395**
dilation equation, 21, **22**, 22, 28–30, 32–34, 38, 40, 67, 68, 322, 325
dilation equation in "time|hyperpage, 22
dilation operator, **2**, 2, 4, 5, 74
dilation operator adjoint, 4
dilation operator inverse, **2**
dimension, **267**
Dirac delta, 252, 335, 336
Dirac delta distribution, 12, 334
Dirichlet Kernel, 242–244
Dirichlet Lambda function, 315, 316
discrete, 42
Discrete Time Fourier Series, xiv
Discrete Time Fourier Transform, xiv, 353
Discrete time Fourier transform, 22, 24, 48
discrete time Fourier transform, 30, 49, 71, 81
discrete time signal processing, 363
discrete-time Fourier transform, 27, **353**, 353–355, 359
Dissertation on the propagation of heat in solid bodies, 251
distributes, 156
distributive, 42, 170, 341, 354, 387
distributivity, 4
divergent, 202, 208
dividend, **145**
divisor, **145**
domain, xii, 1
Dominated Convergence Theorem, 78
double angle formulas, **223**, 224, 225, 247
DTFT, 9, 23, 50, 56, 58, 74, 83, 87, 88, 271, 323, 347–349, 354, 358, 361, 375
DTFT periodicity, 51, **353**
dyadic, 42
dyadic decomposition, 319
Dyson, Freeman, 41

Eigendecomposition, 290
eigenvalue, 290
eigenvector, 290
empty set, xiii
energy, 343
entire function, 334
equal, **143**, 143, **156**
equalities
Bessel's, 273
equality by definition, xii
equality relation, xii
equation, 22
equations
dilation equation, **22**, 22
refinement equation, **22**
two-scale difference equation, **22**
two-scale relation, **22**
equivalent, **271**, 271, 283
erosion, **395**
Euclid, 152
Euclid's Algorithm (Extended), 99
Euler formulas, 97, **219**, 220–222, 225, 226, 262, 310
Euler's identity, **218**, 218, 219, 223
even, 96, 236, 244, 358
exact frame, **288**
examples
2 coefficient case, **40**, **90**, **324**
Cardinal Series, **12**
Fourier Series, **12**
Fourier Transform, **13**
Gabor Transform, **13**
Haar scaling function, 26, 68
Haar wavelet, 81
Haar wavelet system, **40**, **90**
Least squares polynomial interpolation, **330**
linear functions, **12**
Logarithmic Series, **202**
Mercedes Frame, **291**
order 0 B-spline wavelet system, **40**
Peace Frame, **291**
Pollen length-6 scaling coefficients, **381**
raised cosine, 39, **367**
raised sine, **38**
Rectangular pulse, 263
rectangular pulse, **262**, 310, 365
St. Petersberg Paradox, 205
St. Petersburg Paradox, 205
triangle, **263**
wavelets, **13**
exclusive OR, xiii
existential quantifier, xiii
expansion, **267**, **270**
exponential function, **218**
exponential type, 334
Extended Euclid's Algorithm, 100
Extended Euclidean Algorithm, 145–147

factorial, **131**
factorial expansion, 133, 134
false, xii
Fast Wavelet Transform, 15, 42
fast wavelet transform, 383
Fatou's Lemma, 76
Fejér-Riesz factorization, 104, 105
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization, 105, 107, 119, 121
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization theorem, 107
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization, **240**, 240
field, 129, **130**, 143, 144, 147, 152, 155, 339
field of complex numbers, 169
filter banks, 347
floor, 32
FontLab Studio, vi
for each, xiii
formulas
Stifel, 133
Fourier Analysis, 42
Fourier analysis, 308
fourier analysis, 255
Fourier coefficient, 334
Fourier coefficients, 12, **276**, 334
Fourier expansion, 55, **276**, 276–278, **280**, 282
Fourier kernel, **255**
Fourier Series, xiii, **12**, 96, 251
Fourier series, 98, **276**
Fourier Series adjoint, **254**
Fourier series expansion, 278
Fourier Series operator, **251**
Fourier Transform, xiii, xiv, 9, **13**, 18, 19, 74, 181, 228, 255, **256**, 259, 287, 310
adjoint, **256**
Fourier transform, 10, 15, 22, 24, 34, 48, 56, 64, 65, 69, 181, 260, 262, 263, 271, 309, 364, 371
inverse, **256**
Fourier transform magnitude, 310, 311
Fourier Transform operator, 4
Fourier transform scaling factor, 256
Fourier, Joseph, 255
frame, 286, **288**, 288, 292, 334
frame bound, 289, 291

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

frame bounds, **288**, 292
frame operator, **288**, 288, 289, 291, 334
frame property, 17, 19
frames, 266
Fredholm integral operators, 179
Free Software Foundation, vi
frequency dilation equation, 70
function, 2, 156, 183, 255, 296
characteristic, 1
even, 358
indicator, 1
step, 295
functional, 169
functions, xiii
0 order B-spline, 313
0th order B-spline, 297
1st order B-spline, 298, 313
2nd order B-spline, 298, 313
3rd order B-spline, 300
4th order B-spline, 301
5th order B-spline, 301
6th order B-spline, 301
7th order B-spline, 301, 302
nth derivative, 308
nth moment, 55, 260
nth order B-spline, 299, 304, 306, 312, 313, 319, 321, 322
nth-order B-spline, 311
ϕ-mean, **189**
0 order B-spline, 310
1st order B-spline, 311
2nd order B-spline, 311
Fourier coefficients, 55
anti-derivative, 296
arithmetic mean, **194**
auto-power spectrum, 30, 49, 313, **371**, 374
autocorrelation function, **371**
average, **194**
B-spline, 300, 302, 308, 309, 311, 312, 319, 322, 326, 407, 408
B-spline $N_1(x)$, 33
B-spline $N_2(x)$, 33
B-splines, 21, 313, 365
binomial coefficient, 297, 298
Borel measure, 183, 255
characteristic function, **2**
Chebyshev polynomial, 236
Chebyshev polynomial of the first kind, **236**
Chebyshev polynomials, 96
complex exponential, 41, 309
conjugate quadrature filter, **347**
continuous point spectrum, 228, 309
Convolution, 144
cosine, **213**
cross-correlation function, **371**
cross-power spectrum, 49, **371**
Daubechies wavelet function, 52
Daubechies-$p1$, 40
Daubechies-1, 52
Daubechies-2, 52
Daubechies-3, 52
Daubechies-3 scaling function, 33
dilation equation, 38, 40, 322, 325
dilation operator, 5
Dirac delta, 335, 336
Dirichlet Kernel, 242, 244
Dirichlet Lambda function, 315, 316
Discrete Time Fourier Transform, 353
Discrete time Fourier transform, 22, 24, 48
discrete time Fourier transform, 30, 49
discrete-time Fourier transform, 27, 353–355
DTFT, 56, 348, 349, 358, 361
eigenvector, 290
Fourier coefficient, 334
Fourier coefficients, 12, 334
Fourier kernel, **255**
Fourier transform, 10, 22, 24, 34, 48, 56, 64, 260, 262, 263, 364, 371
geometric mean, **194**
harmonic mean, **194**
indicator function, **2**
induced norm, 279
inner product, **168**, 255, 308, 334
integer sequence, 302
kernel, 309
Kronecker delta function, 34, **276**, 364
kronecker delta function, 359
linear functional, 165
measure, 376
Minkowski addition, 46
mother wavelet, 42, **43**
norm, **160**
order n B-spline, 302
order n B-spline MRA coefficient sequence, 322
order n B-spline MRA scaling sequence, 322
orthonormal quadrature condition, 82
Parseval's equation, 254
Plancherel's formula, 254
Poisson Summation Formula, 11, 12
polynomial, 60
power spectrum, 374
power sum, 302
projection operator, 55
pulse, 365
Riesz sequence, **283**
scalar product, **168**
scaling coefficient sequence, **25**, 324
scaling coefficients, 31, 67
scaling function, 22, 31, 321, 322
sequence, 209, 322
set indicator, 375
set indicator function, 17, 36, 38, 263, 366, 368
Shah Function, **336**
sine, **213**
spectral density function, 377
spiral function, 202
standard inner product, 371
step function, **295**, 295–299
subspace addition, 47
Taylor expansion, 212
Taylor polynomial expansion, 55
Taylor series, 152
translation operator, 2, 261
Volterra integral equation, 221, 223
Volterra integral equation of the second type, 216
wavelet, 13, 319
wavelet function, **43**, 44
Z transform, 323
z transform, 343
Z-transform, 27, 355
z-transform, 73, 348, 371
Zak Transform, 12

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

fundamental, **269**
Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, **148**
Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, 296, 303
Fundamental theorem of calculus, 184, 185
Fundamental theorem of linear equations, 160
FWT, 383

g.l.b., 21
Gabor Transform, **13**
Gaussian Pyramid, 42
general, 67
Generalized AM-GM inequality, 194
generalized arithmetic mean geometric mean inequality, 194
Generalized associative property, **187**
Generalized Parseval's Identity, 278
generalized product rule, **185**, 185
geometric mean, **194**
Geometric Series, **199**
geometric series, 242, 245
GNU Octave, 144, 397
abs, 401–403
angle, 402
ceil, 398
clear, 397
conj, 402
const, 410
conv, 398–403
cos, 236, 239, 403
double, 410
else, 402, 410
endfor, 398–400, 402–404, 406
endfunction, 398, 399, 401–407
endif, 402, 404
endwhile, 400
fclose, 404, 407
floor, 402
fopen, 403, 404, 406
for, 398–400, 402–404, 406, 408, 410
fprintf, 403, 404, 406
freqz, 402
function, 397–401, 403–406
if, 402, 404, 410
imag, 403, 404
int, 410
length, 398–401, 403–406
long, 410
max, 402
min, 402
ones, 398, 402
pause, 405
plot, 405, 406
poly, 401–403
polyfit, 402
printf, 397, 398, 404, 407
real, 401–404
return, 410
roots, 400–403
round, 404–406
sign, 401–403
sin, 403
size, 399
sort, 400–403
sprintf, 405, 406
sqrt, 398, 400–403
stdout, 398
step, 408
sum, 398, 401–403
unwrap, 402
void, 410
while, 400
zeros, 398–400, 402
GNU-Plot, 397
Golden Hind, vi
GPR, 185
Greatest Common Divisor, 99
greatest lower bound, xiii, 16, 21, 31
greatest value, 33
group, **129**, 129, 388
Gutenberg Press, vi

Hölder's Inequality, **196**
Haar, 26
Haar MRA system, 90
Haar scaling coefficients, 91
Haar scaling function, 26, 68, 81
Haar wavelet, 81, 90
Haar wavelet system, **40**, **90**, 108, 109
Haar wavelets, 109
half-angle formulas, 73, 97, 98, **226**
Hamel bases, 266
Hamel basis, **267**, 267, 269
Hardy, G.H., 187
harmonic analysis, 255
harmonic mean, **194**
Harmonic shifted orthonormality requirement, 377
Hasse diagram, 15, 21, 43, 45
Hermite Interpolation, 332
Hermite interpolation, 96
Hermite, Charles, 231
hermitian, **172**
Hermitian symmetric, 240, 259
hermitian symmetric, 172
Heuristica, vi
Hexagon Identity, 137
hexagon identity, 133
high-pass filter, 347
Hilbert Space, 334
Hilbert space, 255, 276, 278, 280, 283, 286, 288
homogeneous, 20, 70, 130, 157, 159–161, 168, 276, 277, 281, 284–286
Housman, Alfred Edward, ix

identities
Fourier expansion, 277, 278
Parseval frame, 277
identity, 129, 156, 387
identity element, 156
identity operator, 3, **156**, 156
if, xiii
if and only if, xiii
image, xii
image set, 158, 160, 170, 171, 174, 178, 179
imaginary part, xiii, **211**
implied by, xiii
implies, xiii
implies and is implied by, xiii
impossible, 312
inclusive OR, xiii
increasing, 189, 318, 392
indicator function, xii, **2**
induced norm, 279
induction, 302, 303, 312
inequalities
AM-GM, 194
Cauchy-Bunyakovsky-Schwarz, 198
Cauchy-Schwarz, 198
Hölder, 196
Minkowski (sequences), 196
Young, 195
inequality
Bessel's, 274
triangle, 160, 161
infinite sum, 265
injective, xiii, 158, 159
inner product, 20, **168**, 255, 308, 334
inner product space, **168**, 272–274, 276, 283, 308
inner-product, xiii
inside, 344
integer sequence, 302
integrable, 76
integral, 308
integral domain, 129
integral test, 316
intersection, xii
into, 282
inverse, 2, 129, 156, 289, 291,

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

324
inverse DTFT, 349, **359**, 375
inverse Fourier Series, **252**
Inverse Fourier transform, **256**
inverse Fourier Transform, 181
inverse Fourier transform, 335
Inverse Poisson Summation Formula, **10**, 10
invertible, 184, 271, 288
involutary, 170
IPSF, **10**, 10, 337, 372
irrational numbers, 6
irreflexive ordering relation, xiii
isometric, 166, **175**, 175, 254, 257, 277, 285, 286
isometric in distance, 7
isometric in length, 7
isometric operator, 174, 176, 178
isometry, 175
isomorphic, 281

Jacobi, Carl Gustav Jacob, 241
jaib, 211
Jensen's Inequality, 189, 194
jiba, 211
jiva, 211
join, xiii

Kaneyoshi, Urabe, 413
Kenko, Yoshida, 413
kernel, 309
Kronecker delta function, 34, 67, **276**, 364
kronecker delta function, 359

l'Hôpital's rule, 192, 244, 253, 315, 317, 321
l.u.b., 21
Lagrange polynomial, **327**
Lagrange trigonometric identities, **245**
Lagrange, Joseph Louis, 95
Laplace Transform, 228
Laplace transform, 228
Laurent series, 340
leading coefficient, **143**
Least squares, 331
least squares, 330
Least squares polynomial interpolation, **330**
least upper bound, xiii, 21, 29, 31
least value, 32
Lebesgue integration, 306, 307
Lebesgue square-integrable functions, 1, 255
left distributive, 129, 130, 159, 392, 393
Leibnitz GPR, 56–58, 350
Leibniz Integration Rule, 304
Leibniz integration rule, **185**
Leibniz rule, **185**, 185
Leibniz, Gottfried, xi, 155
limit, 201
linear, 12, 21, **157**, 157, 228, 344
linear basis, **267**
linear bounded, xiii
linear combination, **265**
linear combinations, 266
linear functional, 165
linear functions, **12**
linear independence, 272, 273
linear operator, 284, 286
linear operators, 157, 165, 282
linear ops., 282, 286
linear space, 20, **156**, 156, 265, 267
linear spaces, 156
linear span, 25, **265**
linear subspace, 265
linear time invariant, 228, 309
linearity, 19, 28, 157, 158, 298, 299, 317, 320
linearly dependent, **265**, 267–269
linearly independent, **265**, 267–269, 272, 273
linearly ordered, 16, 31, 42
linearly ordered set, 21
Liquid Crystal, vi
Logarithmic Series, **202**
low-pass filter, 73, 347
low-pass response, 89
lower index, **132**
lowpass filter, 363
LTI, 309

Machiavelli, Niccolò, 413
Maclaurin series, 99, **152**
maps to, xii
MatLab, 144, 322, 397
matrix
rotation, 182
Maxima, 236, 239, 299, 301, 302, 407
Mazur-Ulam theorem, 166
measurable, 82
measure, 376
meet, xiii
Mercedes Frame, **291**
metric, xiii, 20
Minimum phase, 351
minimum phase, 52, 108, 109, 119, **343**, 343, 344
energy, 343
Minkowski addition, 43, 46, 83, **387**, 387
Minkowski subtraction, **387**, 387
Minkowski's Inequality, 190
Minkowski's Inequality for sequences, **196**
modular, 42
modulus, **130**
mother wavelet, 42, **43**
MRA, **16**, 16, 22, 31, 36–39, 42, 74, 78, 322
MRA space, **16**, 16, 20, 22
MRA system, **25**, 25, 27, 29–32, 67, 69–71, 79, 322, 324
Multiresolution Analysis, 15, 319
multiresolution analysis, **16**, 16, 21, 42, 44, 310, 321
multiresolution analysis space, **16**, 22
multiresolution anaysis, 43
multiresolution system, **25**, 34, 44

necessary, 74
Neumann Expansion Theorem, 167
Newton polynomial, **328**
non-Boolean, 42
non-complemented, 42
non-distributive, 42
non-homogeneous, 216
non-modular, 42
non-negative, 130, 161, 168, 190, 306, 312, 372
non-zero, 324
nonBoolean, 45
noncommutative, 3
noncomplemented, 45
nondegenerate, 6, 17, 19, 20, 130, 160, 161, 168
nondistributive, 45
nonmodular, 45
norm, 20, **160**, 161
normal, **174**, 174
normal operator, 174, 178
normalized tight frame, **288**
normed linear space, **160, 161**
normed linear spaces, 21, 175
normed space of linear operators, **161**
northwest diagonal, 138
NOT, xii
not, 79
not constant, 6
not symmetric, 307

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

CC BY-NC-ND

not total, 279
null space, xii, 158–160, 169–171, 174, 179
nyquist sampling rate, 336

Octave, 106, 120, 322
odd, 96, 236, 244
odd polynomials, 96
ondelette, 43
one sided shift operator, 177
only if, xiii
opening, **395**
operations
0 order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 320
1st order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 321
2nd order B-spline dyadic decomposition, 321
adjoint, 4, 7, **165**, 165
closure, 31, 306
convolution, 295, 335, **339**, 340
convolution operation, **258**
differential operator, 228, 309
dilation operator, **2**, 2, 4, 74
dilation operator adjoint, 4
Discrete Time Fourier Series, xiv
Discrete Time Fourier Transform, xiv
discrete-time Fourier transform, **353**
DTFT, 9, 23, 50, 58, 74, 83, 87, 88, 271, 323, 347, 349, 354, 375
Eigendecomposition, 290
Fourier analysis, 308
Fourier Series, xiii, 96, 251
Fourier series, 98
Fourier Series adjoint, **254**
Fourier Series operator, **251**
Fourier Transform, xiii, xiv, 9, 18, 19, 74, 181, **256**, 259, 287
Fourier transform, 65, 69, 271, 309
Fourier transform magnitude, 310, 311
frame operator, **288**, 288, 289, 291, 334
Hermite interpolation, 96
identity operator, 3, **156**
integral, 308
inverse, 2, 289, 291, 324
inverse DTFT, 375
inverse Fourier Series, **252**
inverse Fourier Transform, 181
Laplace transform, 228
Lebesgue integration, 306, 307
linear operators, 165
linear span, **265**
Minkowski addition, 43, 83
operator, **156**, 288
operator inverse, 23
project, 308
projection, **171**
projection operator, 17–19, 69
rotation matrix, 84
sampling, 335
sampling operator, **9**, 10
support, 306
translation operator, **2**, 2, 4, 74, 388
translation operator adjoint, 4
unitary Fourier Transform, **256**
z-domain, 65
Z-Transform, xiv
Z-transform, 50
z-transform, 65, 105, **340**, 340
operator, 2, 155, **156**, 288
autocorrelation, 172
bounded, 163
definition, 156
delay, 181
dilation, 180
identity, 156
isometric, 174, 176, 178
linear, 157
norm, 161
normal, 174, 178
null space, 170
projection, 171
range, 170
self-adjoint, 173
shift, 177
translation, 180
unbounded, 163
unitary, 174, 178, 179, 254, 257
operator adjoint, 169
operator inverse, 23
operator norm, xiii, 6, **161**
operator star-algebra, 169
optimal lower frame bound, **288**
optimal upper frame bound, **288**
order, xii, xiii
order n B-spline, 302
order n B-spline MRA coefficient sequence, 322
order n B-spline MRA scaling sequence, 322
order 0 B-spline wavelet system, **40**
ordered pair, xii
ordered set, 31, 45
orthnormal, 50
ortho. quadrature condition, 89
orthogonal, 47, 56, 83, 84, 226, **272**, 272, 276, 308, 377
orthogonal basis, **276**
orthogonal complement, 67
orthogonal quadrature condition, 71
orthogonality, 44, 272
inner product space, 272
orthonormal, 25, 30, 31, 50, **67**, 68–71, 73, 74, 78–80, 82, 89, 90, 95, 104, 273–279, 292, 334, 335, 377
orthonormal bases, 266
orthonormal basis, 69, 79, 254, **276**, 280, 281, 283–285, 287, 318, 319, 334
orthonormal expansion, 276, 280
orthonormal MRA system, **25**, **67**, 67, 70, 74, 80, 90
orthonormal quad. cond., 75
orthonormal quadrature condition, **71**, 71, 73, **81**, 82, 97, 108
orthonormal quadrature conditions, 108, **359**
orthonormal wavelet, 86
orthonormal wavelet system, 30, 47, 48, **67**, 67, 79, 80, 89, 108
orthonormality, 40, 52, 83, 109, 274, 284, 285, 292, 335, 363
orthornormal basis, 277

Paley-Wiener, 12, **334**, 334
Paley-Wiener Theorem for Functions, **334**
Parallel summation formula, 139
parallel summation formula, 138
Parseval frame, 277, **288**, 288
Parseval frames, 266
Parseval's equation, 254, 257
Parseval's Identity, 20, 70, 278, 280, 282, 288, 377

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

partition of unity, 16, 33, 34, 36, 38, 40, 52, 73, 91, 109, 312, 313, 324, 325, 363, **364**, 364–368
Pascal's Identity, 135
Pascal's identity, 133, 300
Pascal's Rule, 133, 134, 153
Pascal's rule, 133
Pascal's Triangle, 137
Peace Frame, **291**
Peirce, Benjamin, 227
Per Enflo, 270
Perfect reconstruction, **276**
periodic, 2, 10, 87, 96, 98, 199, 314, 353, 372
periodicity, 314
permutations, 202
Plancheral's formula, 254
Plancherel's formula, 254, 257
Poincaré, Jules Henri, 41
Poisson Summation Formula, **10**, 11, 12
polar identity, 273
pole, 351
poles, **152**, 345
Pollen length-6 scaling coefficients, **381**
Pollen parameterization theorem, 379
polynomial, 60, **143**
Lagrange, 327
least squares, 330
Newton, 328
trigonometric, **231**
polynomials, 152
power mean, **190**, 190, 194
power rule, 317
power set, xiii
power spectrum, 374
power sum, 302
Power Sums, **199**
Primorial numbers, 43
product identities, **221**, 222, 223, 226, 245, 246
product rule, 305
project, 308
projection, **171**
projection operator, 17–19, 55, 69, 171
Projection Theorem, 67
proper subset, xii
proper superset, xii
properties
2π periodic, 82–84
nth vanishing moment, **55**, 58
p vanishing moments, **55**, 65, 89, 90, 109
absolute value, xii
absolutely convergent, 202, 207
absolutely summable, 340, 341
additive, 7, 19, 68, 157, 159, 168
additive inverse, 221, 223
additivity, 168, 292
admissibility, 27, 89
admissibility condition, 40, 70, 73, 74, 90, 324
admissibility equation, 324
affine, 166
algebra of sets, xiii
AND, xiii
anti-symmetric, 183, 259, 374
antiautomorphic, 170
associates, 156
associative, 129, 130, 156, 159, 178, 187, 188, 390
asymmetric, 119
bandlimited, 21, 334, 337
basis, 335
bijection, 281
bijective, 166, 281
biorthogonal, 285, 286
bounded, 20, 271, 374
bounded bijective, 284
Cartesian product, xii
causal, **344**
characteristic function, xii
closed, 16, 20, 31
closed support, 306
closure, 20, 269
commutative, 7, 156, 159, 223, 339, 340, 387, 390
compact support, 15, 17, 52, 319
compactly supported, 42
complement, xii
complete, 20
completeness, 20
concave, 189, 191
conditionally convergent, 202
conjugate linear, 170
conjugate mirror filter, 89
conjugate quadrature filter, 89
conjugate quadrature filter condition, 50, **347**
conjugate symmetric, 168
constant, 5, 6, 217
continuity, 25
continuous, 5, 6, 18, 25, 31, 41, 64, 69, 74, 78, 90, 109, 158, 183, 189, 190, 308, 314, 321, 374
convergence, 315
convergent, 202, 207, 271
converges, 209, 315–317
convex, 189–191
countably infinite, 270
counting measure, xiii
CQF, 89
CQF condition, 50, 58, 64, 65, 89, **347**, 349
decreasing, 189, 318
dense, 16–18, 20, 31, 269, 270
difference, xii
dilation equation in “time|hyperpage, 22
discrete, 42
distributes, 156
distributive, 42, 170, 341, 354, 387
distributivity, 4
divergent, 202, 208
domain, xii
dyadic, 42
dyadic decomposition, 319
empty set, xiii
equal, 143
equality by definition, xii
equality relation, xii
equivalent, 271, 283
even, 96, 236, 244, 358
exclusive OR, xiii
existential quantifier, xiii
exponential type, 334
false, xii
for each, xiii
frame property, 17, 19
greatest lower bound, xiii
hermitian, **172**
Hermitian symmetric, 240, 259
hermitian symmetric, 172
homogeneous, 20, 70, 130, 157, 159–161, 168, 276, 277, 281, 284–286
identity, 129, 156, 387
if, xiii
if and only if, xiii
image, xii
imaginary part, xiii
implied by, xiii
implies, xiii

CC BY-NC-ND

implies and is implied by, xiii
impossible, 312
inclusive OR, xiii
increasing, 189, 318, 392
indicator function, xii
injective, 158, 159
inner-product, xiii
inside, 344
integrable, 76
intersection, xii
into, 282
inverse, 129
invertible, 184, 271, 288
involutary, 170
irreflexive ordering relation, xiii
isometric, 166, 175, 254, 257, 277, 285, 286
isometric in distance, 7
isometric in length, 7
isomorphic, 281
join, xiii
least upper bound, xiii
left distributive, 129, 130, 159, 392, 393
linear, 12, 21, **157**, 157, 228
linear independence, 272, 273
linear time invariant, 228, 309
linearity, 19, 28, 157, 158, 298, 299, 317, 320
linearly dependent, **265**, 267–269
linearly independent, **265**, 267–269, 272, 273
linearly ordered, 16, 31, 42
low-pass filter, 73
low-pass response, 89
LTI, 309
maps to, xii
measurable, 82
meet, xiii
metric, xiii
Minimum phase, 351
minimum phase, 52, 108, 109, 119, 343, 344
Minkowski addition, 387
Minkowski subtraction, 387
modular, 42
non-Boolean, 42
non-complemented, 42
non-distributive, 42
non-homogeneous, 216
non-modular, 42
non-negative, 130, 161, 168, 190, 306, 312, 372
non-zero, 324
nonBoolean, 45
noncommutative, 3
noncomplemented, 45
nondegenerate, 6, 17, 19, 20, 130, 160, 161, 168
nondistributive, 45
nonmodular, 45
NOT, xii
not constant, 6
not symmetric, 307
not total, 279
null space, xii
odd, 96, 236, 244
only if, xiii
operator norm, xiii
order, xii, xiii
ordered pair, xii
orthnormal, 50
ortho. quadrature condition, 89
orthogonal, 47, 56, 83, 84, **272**, 272, 276, 308, 377
orthogonal quadrature condition, 71
orthogonality, 272
orthonormal, 25, 30, 31, 50, 68–71, 73, 74, 78, 80, 82, 89, 90, 273–279, 292, 334, 335, 377
orthonormal quadrature condition, 71, 73
orthonormality, 40, 52, 83, 274, 284, 285, 292, 335, 363
Paley-Wiener, 12, 334
partition of unity, 33, 34, 36, 38, 40, 52, 73, 312, 313, 324, 325, 363–365, 367
periodic, 2, 10, 87, 96, 98, 199, 314, 353, 372
periodicity, 314
power set, xiii
proper subset, xii
proper superset, xii
pseudo-distributes, 156
quadrature condition, 70, 74, 98
range, xii
real, 345, 356, 374
real part, xiii
real-valued, 259, 354, 355, 358
reality condition, 258
recursive, 21
reflexive ordering relation, xiii
relation, xii
relational and, xii
right distributive, 129, 130, 159, 392, 393
ring of sets, xiii
scalar commutative, 130
self adjoint, 7, 173
self-adjoint, 7, **172**, 172, 173
self-similar, 16, 21, 26, 31
separable, 270, 271, 283
set of algebras of sets, xiii
set of rings of sets, xiii
set of topologies, xiii
shift property, 377, 378
similar, 8
space of linear transforms, 158
span, xiii
spans, 267, 268
stability condition, 286, 288
stable, 344
Strang-Fix condition, 59, 261
strictly increasing, 190, 191
strictly monotonic, 189, 190
strictly positive, 19, 160
strong convergence, 209, 270, 280
subadditive, 130, 160, 161
submultiplicative, 130
subset, xii
super set, xii
support, 36, 39
surjective, 7
symmetric, 183, 259, 306, 307, 314, 318, 356, 373
symmetric difference, xii
symmetry, 133, 343
there exists, xiii
tight frame, 289
time-invariant, 228, **344**
topology of sets, xiii
total, 269, 278, 279, 283, 284
translation invariance, 21
translation invariant, 16, 390, 392
triangle inequality, 130
triangle inquality, 160
true, xii
union, xii
unique, 21, 67, 267, 270, 311
unit area, 306
unit length, 176, 179
unitary, 4, 5, 7, 18–20,

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

26, 70, 74, 178, 254, 257, 372, 374, 377, 378
universal quantifier, xiii
upper negation, 133
upper-bound condition, 76
vanishing 0th moment, 324
vanishing moments, 52, 55, 64, 95, 98
vector norm, xiii
weak convergence, 209
zero at −1, 324
zero at $z = -1$, 33, 34, 73
pseudo-distributes, 156
PSF, **10**, 34, 35, 261, 262, 364
pstricks, vi
pulse, 365
pulse function, 26
Pythagorean Theorem, 273, 275, 277, 284, 285
Pythagorean theorem, 272

quadrature, 48
Quadrature condition, **29, 30**
quadrature condition, **47**, 70, 74, 81, 98
quadrature condition in "time|hyperpage, 71
Quadrature conditions, **49**
quadrature conditions in "time|hyperpage, 82
quadrature necessary conditions, 30
quotes
Abel, 198
Abel, Niels Henrik, 413
Bohr, Harald, 187
Cardano, Gerolamo, 129
Descartes, 148
Descartes, René, xi, 1
Dyson, Freeman, 41
Euclid, 152
Fourier, Joseph, 255
Hardy, G.H., 187
Hermite, Charles, 231
Housman, Alfred Edward, ix
Jacobi, Carl Gustav Jacob, 241
Kaneyoshi, Urabe, 413
Kenko, Yoshida, 413
Lagrange, Joseph Louis, 95
Leibniz, Gottfried, xi, 155
Machiavelli, Niccolò, 413
Peirce, Benjamin, 227
Poincaré, Jules Henri, 41
Russull, Bertrand, ix
Stravinsky, Igor, ix
Ulam, Stanislaus M., 166
von Neumann, John, 227
quotient, **145**
quotient rule, 317

raised cosine, 39, **367**
raised sine, **38**
random processes, 371
range, xii, 1
range space, 169
rational function, **152**
rational numbers, 6
real, 345, 356, 374
real linear space, **156**
real number system, 221
real part, xiii, **211**
real-valued, 259, 354, 355, 358
reality condition, 258
Rectangular pulse, 263
rectangular pulse, **262**, 310, 365
recursive, 21
refinement equation, **22**
reflection, 166
reflexive ordering relation, xiii
relation, xii, 2, 156
relational and, xii
relations, xiii
function, 2
operator, 2
relation, 2
relatively prime, 100
remainder, **145**
resolution, 16, 21
Reverse Triangle Inequality, 19
Riemann Series Theorem, 202
Riesz bases, 266
Riesz basis, 16, 31, 43, 78, 79, **283**, 284–287, 310, 318, 319, 374
Riesz sequence, 18, 31, **283**, 285, 321
Riesz-Fischer Theorem, **280**
Riesz-Fischer Thm., 282
right distributive, 129, 130, 159, 392, 393
ring, **129**, 129
absolute value, 130
commutative, 129
modulus, 130
ring of complex square $n \times n$ matrices, 169
ring of sets, xiii
rings, 145
Robinson's Energy Delay Theorem, **343**
Rolle's Theorem, 152
rotation matrix, 84, 182
rotation matrix operator, 4
Routh-Hurwitz Criterion, 151
row sum, 138
Russull, Bertrand, ix

sampling, 335, 336
sampling operator, **9**, 10
Sampling Theorem, **335**
scalar commutative, 130
scalar product, **168**
scalars, **156**
scaling, 42
scaling coefficient sequence, **25**, 50, 65, 79, 89, 324
scaling coefficients, 31, 67, 383
necessary and sufficient conditions, 74
scaling filter coefficients, 383
scaling filters, 384
scaling function, **16**, 16, 22, 31, 78, 321, 322
scaling functions, 16
scaling subspace, **16**, 50
Schauder bases, 266, 271
Schauder basis, **270**, 270, 271, 276, 283
second-order pascal identity, 133
second-order Pascal's identity, 133
Selberg Trace Formula, **12**
self adjoint, 7, 173
self-adjoint, 7, **172**, 172, 173
self-similar, 16, 21, 26, 31
separable, 270, 271, 283
separable Hilbert space, 20, 281, 283–285, 339
separable Hilbert spaces, 281
sequence, 22, 209, 322, **339**
sequences, 347
series
Taylor, 152
set
symmetric, 395
set indicator, 295, 375
set indicator function, 17, 36, 38, 263, 366, 368
set of algebras of sets, xiii
set of rings of sets, xiii
set of topologies, xiii
Shah Function, **336**
shift identities, **220**, 222, 224, 248, 249
shift operator, 177
shift property, 377, 378
shift relation, 262, 263, 372
similar, 8
sinc, 262, 263
sine, 211, **213**

sinus, 211
Smith-Barnwell filter, **347**
source code, 397
southeast diagonal, 138
space
inner product, 168
linear, 155
normed vector, 160
vector, 155
space of all absolutely square Lebesgue integrable functions, 339
space of all absolutely square summable sequences, **339**
space of all absolutely square summable sequences over $\mathbb{R}$, 9
space of all continuously differentiable real functions, 213
space of Lebesgue square-integrable functions, 9, **183**
space of linear transforms, 158
space of square integrable functions, 41
span, xiii, 269, 271, 374
spans, **265**, 267, 268
spectral density function, 377
spectral factorization, 240
spiral function, 202
square identity, 366
squared identities, **226**
St. Petersberg Paradox, 205
St. Petersburg Paradox, 205
stability, 344
stability condition, 286, 288
stable, 344
standard inner product, **183**, 371
standard norm, **183**
standard othornormal basis, 277
star algebra, 211
star-algebra, 170
star-algebras, 169
step function, **295**, 295–299
Stifel formual, 320
Stifel Formula, 133
Stifel formula, 133, 185, 300
Strang-Fix condition, 59, 60, **261**, 261
Stravinsky, Igor, ix
strictly increasing, 190, 191
strictly monotonic, 189, 190
strictly positive, 19, 160
strong convergence, 209, 270, 280
structures
D_p wavelet system, 108
$*$-algebra, 170, **354**
*-algebras, 169
adjoint, 169
algebra, **130**
auto-power spectrum, 70, 71
autocorrelation kernel, 172
autocorrelation operator, 173
B-spline, 65
Banach space, 270, 271
basis, 12, 13, 25, 36, 41, 60, 267–269, 276, 312, 335
basis sequence, 311
bijection, 281
bijective, 281
Borel sets, 183, 255
bounded operator, 169
Cardinal series, 12, 21
closure, 16
coefficient functionals, 270
coefficients, 345
commutative ring, 129, 130
complete metric space, 269
complete set, 269
complex linear space, **156**
complex number system, 221
conjugate pairs, 345
conjugate quadrature filter, 50, 347
Conjugate quadrature filters, 347
conjugate recipricol pairs, 240
convolution operator, 339, 340
coordinates, **267**
CQF, 347, 348
CQF condition, 50
Daubechies-1, 109
Daubechies-2 wavelet system, **110**, 110
Daubechies-3 wavelet system, **111**, 111
Daubechies-4 wavelet system, **113**, 113
Daubechies-8 wavelet system, **114**, 115
Daubechies-p wavelet system, 107, 108, 118
Daubechies-p wavelet system, 65, 108
Dirac delta distribution, 12, 334
discrete time Fourier transform, 71, 81
discrete-time Fourier transform, 359
domain, 1
entire function, 334
equation, 22
expansion, **267**
Fast Wavelet Transform, 15, 42
field, 129, **130**, 143, 144, 147, 152, 155, 339
field of complex numbers, 169
filter banks, 347
Fourier expansion, 55
Fourier Transform, 255
frame, 286, **288**, 288, 292, 334
frames, 266
function, 183, 255, 296
functional, 169
g.l.b., 21
Gaussian Pyramid, 42
greatest lower bound, 16, 21
group, 129, 388
Haar MRA system, 90
Haar wavelet system, 108, 109
Hamel bases, 266
Hamel basis, **267**, 267, 269
Hasse diagram, 15, 21
high-pass filter, 347
Hilbert Space, 334
Hilbert space, 255, 276, 278, 280, 283, 286, 288
identity, 156
identity element, 156
image set, 158, 178, 179
infinite sum, 265
inner product, 20
inner product space, **168**, 272–274, 276, 283, 308
integral domain, 129
inverse, 2, 156
irrational numbers, 6
isometry, 175
Kronecker delta function, 67
l.u.b., 21
Laurent series, 340
least upper bound, 21, 29
Lebesgue square-integrable functions, 1, 255
limit, 201
linear basis, **267**
linear combination, **265**
linear combinations, 266

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

linear operator, 284, 286
linear operators, 282
linear ops., 282, 286
linear space, 20, 156, 265, 267
linear spaces, 156
linear span, 25
linear subspace, 265
low-pass filter, 347
lowpass filter, 363
metric, 20
MRA, 16, 22, 31, 36–39, 42, 74, 78, 322
MRA space, 16, 20, 22
MRA system, **25**, 25, 27, 29–32, 67, 69–71, 79, 322, 324
Multiresolution Analysis, 15, 319
multiresolution analysis, **16**, 16, 21, 42, 44, 310, 321
multiresolution analysis space, 22
multiresolution anaysis, 43
multiresolution system, **25**, 34, 44
norm, 20
normalized tight frame, **288**
normed linear space, **160**
normed linear spaces, 21, 175
null space, 158, 159, 179
odd polynomials, 96
operator, 155
ordered set, 31, 45
orthogonal basis, **276**
orthogonal complement, 67
orthonormal bases, 266
orthonormal basis, 69, 79, 254, **276**, 280, 281, 283–285, 287, 318, 319, 334
orthonormal MRA system, **25**, 67, 70, 74, 80, 90
orthonormal wavelet, 86
orthonormal wavelet system, 30, 47, 48, 80, 89, 108
orthornormal basis, 277
Parseval frame, **288**
Parseval frames, 266
Parseval's equation, 257
partition of unity, 36, 366–368
permutations, 202
Plancherel's formula, 257
pole, 351
poles, 345
polynomials, 152
Primorial numbers, 43
quadrature, 48
quadrature necessary conditions, 30
random processes, 371
range, 1
rational numbers, 6
real linear space, **156**
real number system, 221
Riesz bases, 266
Riesz basis, 16, 31, 43, 78, 79, 284–287, 310, 318, 319, 374
Riesz sequence, 18, 31, 285, 321
ring, 129
ring of complex square $n \times n$ matrices, 169
scalars, **156**
scaling coefficient sequence, 50, 65, 79, 89
scaling function, 22, 78
scaling subspace, 50
Schauder bases, 266, 271
Schauder basis, **270**, 270, 271, 276, 283
separable Hilbert space, 20, 281, 283–285, 339
separable Hilbert spaces, 281
sequence, 22
sequences, 347
space of all absolutely square Lebesgue integrable functions, 339
space of all absolutely square summable sequences, **339**
space of all absolutely square summable sequences over $\mathbb{R}$, 9
space of all continuously differentiable real functions, 213
space of Lebesgue square-integrable functions, 9, **183**
space of square integrable functions, 41
span, 269, 271, 374
standard othornormal basis, 277
star algebra, 211
star-algebra, 170
support, **32**, 306
tight frame, **288**, 289, 291
tight frames, 266
topological dual space, 165
topological linear space, 269
topological space, 201
topology, 20, 265
total set, 269
translation operator, 12
underlying set, **156**
unit vector, 285
vector, 267
vector space, **156**
vectors, **156**
wavelet analysis, **43**, 43, 44
wavelet coefficient sequence, **44**, 50, 89
wavelet subspace, 50, 67
wavelet system, 30, 40, **44**, 44–46, 50, 51, 55, 58, 60, 64, 65, 67, 80, 82, 86, 89
zero, 351
zeros, 343, 345
subadditive, 130, 160, 161
submultiplicative, 130
subset, xii
subspace addition, 47
sufficient, 74
sum of even, 34
sum of odd, 34
summable, 207
summable (C,k) to the limit x, **207**
summable by Euler's method to limit a, **208**
summable by the k-th arithmetic mean of Cesàro to limit x, **207**
summation, **187**
Summation around unit circle, **247**, 290
super set, xii
support, 31, **32**, 36, 39, 104, 306
support size, **32**, 32, **51**
surjective, xiii, 7
Symlets, 119
symmetric, 183, 259, 306, 307, 314, 318, 356, 373
symmetric difference, xii
symmetric set, **395**
symmetry, 133, 134, 343
synthesis, 15

Taylor expansion, 212
Taylor polynomial expansion, 55
Taylor Series, **152**
Taylor series, 152, 217, 219
Taylor series expansion, 204
Taylor series for cosine, 215, 216

CC BY-NC-ND

Taylor series for cosine/sine, **215**
Taylor series for sine, 215, 216
The basis problem, 270
The Book Worm, 413
The Fourier Series Theorem, **278**
theorems
absorption identity, 133
admissibility condition, **27**, 36, 51
alternate Vandermonde's convolution, 138
Alternating Series Test, 318
B-spline dyadic decomposition, 319, 325
B-spline general form, 306
B-spline partition of unity, 312
B-spline recursion, 304
B-spline scaling coefficients, **322**
Bézout's Theorem, 100
Battle-Lemarié orthogonalization, **79**, **287**
Bessel's Equality, **273**, 274, 275, 279, 280
Bessel's Inequality, 281
Bessel's inequality, **274**
Best Approximation Theorem, **274**, 274
Bezout's Theorem, 105
Binomial Theorem, 138, 140, **152**, 152, 220
Binomial theorem, 152
binomial theorem, 185, 323
Bézout's Identity, 147
Cardinal sequence, **335**
Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality, 198
Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, 289
column sum, 138
commutator relation, **4**, 17, 34
comparison test, 209, 315
Convolution Theorem, 310
Convolution theorem, 335
convolution theorem, **258**, 263, **342**, 365
CQF conditions, 51
CQF theorem, 51, 89, **347**, 350
CS Inequality, 18, 292
DeMoivre's Theorem, **231**, 231, 233
Descartes rule of signs, 151
dilation equation, **22**, 28–30, 32–34, 67, 68, 322
Dominated Convergence Theorem, 78
double angle formulas, **223**, 224, 225, 247
DTFT periodicity, 51, **353**
Euler formulas, 97, **219**, 220–222, 225, 226, 262, 310
Euler's identity, **218**, 218, 219, 223
Extended Euclidean Algorithm, 145
factorial expansion, 133
Fatou's Lemma, 76
Fejér-Riesz factorization, 104, 105
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization, 105, 107, 121
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization theorem, 107
Fejér-Riesz spectral factorization, **240**, 240
Fourier expansion, 278, **280**, 282
Fourier series expansion, 278
frequency dilation equation, 70
Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, **148**
Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, 296, 303
Fundamental theorem of calculus, 184, 185
Fundamental theorem of linear equations, 160
Generalized AM-GM inequality, 194
Generalized associative property, **187**
Generalized Parseval's Identity, 278
generalized product rule, **185**
Geometric Series, **199**
Hölder's Inequality, **196**
half-angle formulas, 73, 97, 98, **226**
Hermite Interpolation, 332
hexagon identity, 133
induction, 302, 303, 312
integral test, 316
inverse DTFT, 349, **359**
Inverse Fourier transform, **256**
inverse Fourier transform, 335
Inverse Poisson Summation Formula, **10**, 10
IPSF, **10**, 337, 372
Jensen's Inequality, 189, 194
l'Hôpital's rule, 192, 244, 253, 315, 317, 321
Lagrange trigonometric identities, **245**
Least squares, 331
Leibnitz GPR, 56–58, 350
Leibniz Integration Rule, 304
Leibniz integration rule, **185**
Leibniz rule, **185**, 185
Maclaurin series, 99
Mazur-Ulam theorem, 166
Minkowski's Inequality, 190
Minkowski's Inequality for sequences, **196**
Neumann Expansion Theorem, 167
northwest diagonal, 138
operator star-algebra, 169
orthonormal quad. cond., 75
orthonormal quadrature condition, **71**, **81**, 97, 108
orthonormal quadrature conditions, 108, **359**
Paley-Wiener Theorem for Functions, **334**
parallel summation formula, 138
Parseval's Identity, 20, 70, 278, 280, 282, 288, 377
Pascal's identity, 133, 300
Pascal's Rule, 133, 153
Pascal's rule, 133
Perfect reconstruction, **276**
Poisson Summation Formula, **10**
polar identity, 273
Pollen parameterization theorem, 379
power rule, 317
Power Sums, **199**
product identities, **221**, 222, 223, 226, 245, 246
Projection Theorem, 67
PSF, **10**, 34, 35, 261, 262,

COPYRIGHT © 2019 DANIEL J. GREENHOE

364
Pythagorean Theorem, 273, 275, 277, 284, 285
Pythagorean theorem, 272
Quadrature condition, **29**, **30**
quadrature condition, **47**
quadrature condition in "time|hyperpage, 71
Quadrature conditions, **49**
quadrature conditions in "time|hyperpage, 82
quotient rule, 317
Reverse Triangle Inequality, 19
Riemann Series Theorem, 202
Riesz-Fischer Theorem, **280**
Riesz-Fischer Thm., 282
Robinson's Energy Delay Theorem, **343**
Rolle's Theorem, 152
Routh-Hurwitz Criterion, 151
row sum, 138
Sampling Theorem, **335**
second-order Pascal's identity, 133
shift identities, **220**, 222, 224, 248, 249
shift relation, 262, 263, 372
southeast diagonal, 138
square identity, 366
squared identities, **226**
Stifel formual, 320
Stifel Formula, 133
Stifel formula, 133, 185, 300
Strang-Fix condition, **261**
Summation around unit circle, **247**, 290
support size, **32**, 32, **51**
Taylor Series, **152**
Taylor series, 217, 219
Taylor series for cosine, 215, 216
Taylor series for cosine/-sine, **215**
Taylor series for sine, 215, 216
The Fourier Series Theorem, **278**
transversal operator inverses, **2**
trigonometric expansion, 96, 98, **231**
trigonometric periodicity, **224**, 247, 248
trigonometric reduction, **236**
trinomial revision, 133
upper sum, 138
Vandermonde's convolution, 138
wavelet dilation equation, **44**, 47, 48, 51
Young's Inequality, **195**, 196
there exists, xiii
tight frame, **288**, 289, 291
tight frames, 266
time-invariant, 228, **344**, 344
topological dual space, 165
topological linear space, 269
topological space, 201
topology, 20, 265
topology of sets, xiii
total, **269**, 269, 278, 279, 283, 284
total set, 269
transform, 15
inverse Fourier, **256**
translation, 180
translation invariance, 21
translation invariant, 16, 390, 392
translation operator, **2**, 2, 4, 12, 74, 261, **387**, 388
translation operator adjoint, 4
translation operator inverse, **2**
translation space, **387**
transversal operator inverses, **2**
triangle, **263**
triangle inequality, 130, 161
triangle inquality, 160
trigonometric expansion, 96, 98, **231**
trigonometric periodicity, **224**, 247, 248
trigonometric reduction, **236**
Trinomial revision, 135
trinomial revision, 133
true, xii
two-scale difference equation, **22**
two-scale relation, **22**
two-sided Laplace transform, 7

Ulam, Stanislaus M., 166
underlying set, **156**
union, xii
unique, 21, 67, 267, 270, 311
unit area, 306
unit length, 176, 179
unit vector, 285
unitary, 4, 5, 7, 18–20, 26, 70, 74, **178**, 178, 181, 254, 256, 257, 372, 374, 377, 378
unitary Fourier Transform, **256**
unitary operator, 174, 178, 254
universal quantifier, xiii
upper index, **132**
Upper Negation, 136
upper negation, 133
upper sum, 138
upper-bound condition, 76
Utopia, vi

values
nth moment, **260**
ceiling, 32
dimension, **267**
eigenvalue, 290
floor, 32
frame bound, 289, 291
frame bounds, 292
greatest lower bound, 31
greatest value, 33
least upper bound, 31
least value, 32
Vandermonde's convolution, 138, 140
vanishing 0th moment, 324
vanishing moments, 52, 55, 56, 58, 64, 95, 98, 104, 260, 361
vector, 267
vector norm, xiii
vector space, **156**
vectors, **156**
Volterra integral equation, 221, 223
Volterra integral equation of the second type, 216
von Neumann, John, 227

wavelet, 13, 319
wavelet analysis, **43**, 43, 44
wavelet coefficient sequence, **44**, 50, 89
wavelet coefficients, 383
wavelet dilation equation, **44**, 47, 48, 51
wavelet filter coefficients, 383
wavelet filters, 384
wavelet function, **43**, 44
wavelet subspace, 50, 67
wavelet system, 30, 40, **44**, 44–51, 55–60, 63–65, 67, 80–82, 86, 89, 90, 93, 95, 98, 104, 106–108

CC BY-NC-ND

wavelet transform, 383
wavelets, **13**
Haar, 90
weak convergence, 209
Weierstrass functions, 231
weighted, 190
width, 243
Windows, 410
Young's Inequality, **195**, 196

Z transform, 323
z transform, 343
z-domain, 65
Z-Transform, xiv
Z-transform, 27, 50, 355
z-transform, 65, 73, 105, **340**, 340, 348, 371
Zak Transform, 12
zero, 351
zero at -1, 324, 356
zero at $z = -1$, 33, 34, 73
zeros, **152**, 343, 345

License

This document is provided under the terms of the Creative Commons license CC BY-NC-ND 4.0. For an exact statement of the license, see

https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/legalcode

The icon appearing throughout this document is based on one that was once at

https://creativecommons.org/

where it was stated, "Except where otherwise noted, content on this site is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license."

…last page …please stop reading …

BY-NC-ND